HANDBOOK OF MATHEMATICAL FORMULAS AND INTEGRALS

4th Edition

\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + u \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} - v \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \mu \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3} = 0 \quad [v>0]
Contents

Preface xix
Preface to the Fourth Edition xxii
Notes for Handbook Users xiii
Index of Special Functions and Notations xliii

0 Quick Reference List of Frequently Used Data 1
  0.1. Useful Identities 1
    0.1.1. Trigonometric Identities 1
    0.1.2. Hyperbolic Identities 2
  0.2. Complex Relationships 2
  0.3. Constants, Binomial Coefficients and the Pochhammer Symbol 3
  0.4. Derivatives of Elementary Functions 3
  0.5. Rules of Differentiation and Integration 4
  0.6. Standard Integrals 4
  0.7. Standard Series 10
  0.8. Geometry 12

1 Numerical, Algebraic, and Analytical Results for Series and Calculus 27
  1.1. Algebraic Results Involving Real and Complex Numbers 27
    1.1.1. Complex Numbers 27
    1.1.2. Algebraic Inequalities Involving Real and Complex Numbers 28
  1.2. Finite Sums 32
    1.2.1. The Binomial Theorem for Positive Integral Exponents 32
    1.2.2. Arithmetic, Geometric, and Arithmetic–Geometric Series 36
    1.2.3. Sums of Powers of Integers 36
    1.2.4. Proof by Mathematical Induction 38
  1.3. Bernoulli and Euler Numbers and Polynomials 40
    1.3.1. Bernoulli and Euler Numbers 40
    1.3.2. Bernoulli and Euler Polynomials 46
    1.3.3. The Euler–Maclaurin Summation Formula 48
    1.3.4. Accelerating the Convergence of Alternating Series 49
  1.4. Determinants 50
    1.4.1. Expansion of Second- and Third-Order Determinants 50
    1.4.2. Minors, Cofactors, and the Laplace Expansion 51
    1.4.3. Basic Properties of Determinants 53
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.4.4.</td>
<td>Jacobi’s Theorem</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.5.</td>
<td>Hadamard’s Theorem</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.6.</td>
<td>Hadamard's Inequality</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.7.</td>
<td>Cramer’s Rule</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.8.</td>
<td>Some Special Determinants</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.9.</td>
<td>Routh–Hurwitz Theorem</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5.</td>
<td>Matrices</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5.1.</td>
<td>Special Matrices</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5.2.</td>
<td>Quadratic Forms</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5.3.</td>
<td>Differentiation and Integration of Matrices</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5.4.</td>
<td>The Matrix Exponential</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5.5.</td>
<td>The Gerschgorin Circle Theorem</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6.</td>
<td>Permutations and Combinations</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6.1.</td>
<td>Permutations</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6.2.</td>
<td>Combinations</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7.</td>
<td>Partial Fraction Decomposition</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7.1.</td>
<td>Rational Functions</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7.2.</td>
<td>Method of Undetermined Coefficients</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8.</td>
<td>Convergence of Series</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8.1.</td>
<td>Types of Convergence of Numerical Series</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8.2.</td>
<td>Convergence Tests</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8.3.</td>
<td>Examples of Infinite Numerical Series</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.9.</td>
<td>Infinite Products</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.9.1.</td>
<td>Convergence of Infinite Products</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.9.2.</td>
<td>Examples of Infinite Products</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.10.</td>
<td>Functional Series</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.10.1.</td>
<td>Uniform Convergence</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.11.</td>
<td>Power Series</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.11.1.</td>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.12.</td>
<td>Taylor Series</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.12.1.</td>
<td>Definition and Forms of Remainder Term</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.12.2.</td>
<td>Order Notation (Big (O) and Little (o))</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.13.</td>
<td>Fourier Series</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.13.1.</td>
<td>Definitions</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.14.</td>
<td>Asymptotic Expansions</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.14.1.</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.15.</td>
<td>Basic Results from the Calculus</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.15.1.</td>
<td>Rules for Differentiation</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.15.2.</td>
<td>Integration</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.15.3.</td>
<td>Reduction Formulas</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.15.4.</td>
<td>Improper Integrals</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.15.5.</td>
<td>Integration of Rational Functions</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.15.6.</td>
<td>Elementary Applications of Definite Integrals</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 2 Functions and Identities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.1. Complex Numbers and Trigonometric and Hyperbolic Functions</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.1. Basic Results</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2. Logarithms and Exponentials</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.1. Basic Functional Relationships</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.2. The Number $e$</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3. The Exponential Function</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.1. Series Representations</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4. Trigonometric Identities</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.1. Trigonometric Functions</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5. Hyperbolic Identities</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.1. Hyperbolic Functions</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6. The Logarithm</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6.1. Series Representations</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7. Inverse Trigonometric and Hyperbolic Functions</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7.1. Domains of Definition and Principal Values</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7.2. Functional Relations</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.8. Series Representations of Trigonometric and Hyperbolic Functions</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.8.1. Trigonometric Functions</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.8.2. Hyperbolic Functions</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.8.3. Inverse Trigonometric Functions</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.8.4. Inverse Hyperbolic Functions</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.9. Useful Limiting Values and Inequalities Involving Elementary Functions</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.9.1. Logarithmic Functions</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.9.2. Exponential Functions</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.9.3. Trigonometric and Hyperbolic Functions</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 3 Derivatives of Elementary Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.1. Derivatives of Algebraic, Logarithmic, and Exponential Functions</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2. Derivatives of Trigonometric Functions</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3. Derivatives of Inverse Trigonometric Functions</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4. Derivatives of Hyperbolic Functions</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5. Derivatives of Inverse Hyperbolic Functions</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 4 Indefinite Integrals of Algebraic Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4.1. Algebraic and Transcendental Functions</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1.1. Definitions</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2. Indefinite Integrals of Rational Functions</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.1. Integrands Involving $x^n$</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.2. Integrands Involving $a + bx$</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.3. Integrands Involving Linear Factors</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.4. Integrands Involving $a^2 + b^2x^2$</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.5. Integrands Involving $a + bx + cx^2$</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.6.</td>
<td>Integrands Involving $a + bx^3$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.7.</td>
<td>Integrands Involving $a + bx^4$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3.</td>
<td>Nonrational Algebraic Functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3.1.</td>
<td>Integrands Containing $a + bx^k$ and $\sqrt{x}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3.2.</td>
<td>Integrands Containing $(a + bx)^{1/2}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3.3.</td>
<td>Integrands Containing $(a + cx^2)^{1/2}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3.4.</td>
<td>Integrands Containing $(a + bx + cx^2)^{1/2}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Indefinite Integrals of Exponential Functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1.</td>
<td>Basic Results</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1.1.</td>
<td>Indefinite Integrals Involving $e^{ax}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1.2.</td>
<td>Integrals Involving the Exponential Functions Combined with Rational Functions of $x$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1.3.</td>
<td>Integrands Involving the Exponential Functions Combined with Trigonometric Functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Indefinite Integrals of Logarithmic Functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.</td>
<td>Combinations of Logarithms and Polynomials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.1.</td>
<td>The Logarithm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.2.</td>
<td>Integrands Involving Combinations of $\ln(ax)$ and Powers of $x$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.3.</td>
<td>Integrands Involving $(a + bx)^m \ln^n x$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.4.</td>
<td>Integrands Involving $\ln(x^2 \pm a^2)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.5.</td>
<td>Integrands Involving $x^m \ln \left[ x + (x^2 \pm a^2)^{1/2} \right]$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Indefinite Integrals of Hyperbolic Functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.</td>
<td>Basic Results</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.1.</td>
<td>Integrands Involving $\sinh(a + bx)$ and $\cosh(a + bx)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2.</td>
<td>Integrands Involving Powers of $\sinh(bx)$ or $\cosh(bx)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2.1.</td>
<td>Integrands Involving Powers of $\sinh(bx)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2.2.</td>
<td>Integrands Involving Powers of $\cosh(bx)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.</td>
<td>Integrands Involving $(a + bx)^m \sinh(cx)$ or $(a + bx)^m \cosh(cx)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.1.</td>
<td>General Results</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.</td>
<td>Integrands Involving $x^m \sinh^n x$ or $x^m \cosh^n x$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.1.</td>
<td>Integrands Involving $x^m \sinh^n x$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.2.</td>
<td>Integrands Involving $x^m \cosh^n x$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5.</td>
<td>Integrands Involving $x^m \sinh^n x$ or $x^m \cosh^n x$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5.1.</td>
<td>Integrands Involving $x^m \sinh^n x$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5.2.</td>
<td>Integrands Involving $x^m \cosh^n x$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6.</td>
<td>Integrands Involving $(1 \pm \cosh x)^{-m}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6.1.</td>
<td>Integrands Involving $(1 \pm \cosh x)^{-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6.2.</td>
<td>Integrands Involving $(1 \pm \cosh x)^{-2}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7.7. Integrands Involving sinh(ax) cosh^{-n} x or cosh(ax) sinh^{-n} x 195
7.7.1. Integrands Involving sinh(ax) cosh^n x 195
7.7.2. Integrands Involving cosh(ax) sinh^n x 196
7.8. Integrands Involving sinh(ax + b) and cosh(cx + d) 196
7.8.1. General Case 196
7.8.2. Special Case a = c 197
7.8.3. Integrands Involving sinh^p x cosh^q x 197
7.9. Integrands Involving tanh kx and coth kx 198
7.9.1. Integrands Involving tanh^n x 198
7.9.2. Integrands Involving coth^n x 198
7.10. Integrands Involving (a + bx)^m sinh kx or (a + bx)^m cosh kx 199
7.10.1. Integrands Involving (a + bx)^m sinh kx 199
7.10.2. Integrands Involving (a + bx)^m cosh kx 199

8 Indefinite Integrals Involving Inverse Hyperbolic Functions 201
8.1. Basic Results 201
8.1.1. Integrands Involving Products of x^n and arcsinh(x/a) or arc(x/c) 201
8.2. Integrands Involving x^{-n} arcsinh(x/a) or x^{-n} arccosh(x/a) 202
8.2.1. Integrands Involving x^{-n} arcsinh(x/a) 202
8.2.2. Integrands Involving x^{-n} arccosh(x/a) 203
8.3. Integrands Involving x^n arctanh(x/a) or x^n arccoth(x/a) 204
8.3.1. Integrands Involving x^n arctanh(x/a) 204
8.3.2. Integrands Involving x^n arccoth(x/a) 204
8.4. Integrands Involving x^{-n} arctanh(x/a) or x^{-n} arccoth(x/a) 205
8.4.1. Integrands Involving x^{-n} arctanh(x/a) 205
8.4.2. Integrands Involving x^{-n} arccoth(x/a) 205

9 Indefinite Integrals of Trigonometric Functions 207
9.1. Basic Results 207
9.1.1. Simplification by Means of Substitutions 207
9.2. Integrands Involving Powers of x and Powers of sin x or cos x 209
9.2.1. Integrands Involving x^n sin^m x 209
9.2.2. Integrands Involving x^{-n} sin^m x 210
9.2.3. Integrands Involving x^n sin^{-m} x 211
9.2.4. Integrands Involving x^n cos^m x 212
9.2.5. Integrands Involving x^{-n} cos^m x 213
9.2.6. Integrands Involving x^n cos^{-m} x 213
9.2.7. Integrands Involving x^n sin x/(a + b cos x)^m or x^n cos x/(a + b sin x)^m 214
9.3. Integrands Involving tan x and/or cot x 215
9.3.1. Integrands Involving tan^n x or tan^n x/(tan x ± 1) 215
9.3.2. Integrands Involving cot^n x or tan x and cot x 216
9.4 Integrands Involving sin x and cos x
  9.4.1 Integrands Involving sin^m x cos^n x
  9.4.2 Integrands Involving sin^{-n} x
  9.4.3 Integrands Involving cos^{-n} x
  9.4.4 Integrands Involving sin^m x / cos^n x cos^m x / sin^n x
  9.4.5 Integrands Involving sin^{-m} x cos^{-n} x

9.5 Integrands Involving Sines and Cosines with Linear Arguments and Powers of x
  9.5.1 Integrands Involving Products of (ax + b)^n, sin(cx + d), and/or cos(px + q)
  9.5.2 Integrands Involving x^n sin^m x or x^n cos^m x

10 Indefinite Integrals of Inverse Trigonometric Functions
  10.1 Integrands Involving Powers of x and Powers of Inverse Trigonometric Functions
    10.1.1 Integrands Involving x^n arcsin^m(x/a)
    10.1.2 Integrands Involving x^{-n} arcsin(x/a)
    10.1.3 Integrands Involving x^n arccos^n(x/a)
    10.1.4 Integrands Involving x^{-n} arccos(x/a)
    10.1.5 Integrands Involving x^n arctan(x/a)
    10.1.6 Integrands Involving x^{-n} arctan(x/a)
    10.1.7 Integrands Involving x^n arccot(x/a)
    10.1.8 Integrands Involving x^{-n} arccot(x/a)
    10.1.9 Integrands Involving Products of Rational Functions and arccot(x/a)

11 The Gamma, Beta, Pi, and Psi Functions, and the Incomplete Gamma Functions
  11.1 The Euler Integral Limit and Infinite Product Representations for the Gamma Function \( \Gamma(x) \). The Incomplete Gamma Functions \( \Gamma(\alpha, x) \) and \( \gamma(\alpha, x) \)
    11.1.1 Definitions and Notation
    11.1.2 Special Properties of \( \Gamma(x) \)
    11.1.3 Asymptotic Representations of \( \Gamma(x) \) and \( n! \)
    11.1.4 Special Values of \( \Gamma(x) \)
    11.1.5 The Gamma Function in the Complex Plane
    11.1.6 The Psi (Digamma) Function
    11.1.7 The Beta Function
    11.1.8 Graph of \( \Gamma(x) \) and Tabular Values of \( \Gamma(x) \) and \( \ln \Gamma(x) \)
    11.1.9 The Incomplete Gamma Function

12 Elliptic Integrals and Functions
  12.1 Elliptic Integrals
    12.1.1 Legendre Normal Forms
12.1.2. Tabulations and Trigonometric Series Representations of Complete Elliptic Integrals 243
12.1.3. Tabulations and Trigonometric Series for $E(\varphi, k)$ and $F(\varphi, k)$ 245
12.2. Jacobian Elliptic Functions 247
12.2.1. The Functions $\text{sn} \ u, \text{cn} \ u$, and $\text{dn} \ u$ 247
12.2.2. Basic Results 247
12.3. Derivatives and Integrals 249
12.3.1. Derivatives of $\text{sn} \ u, \text{cn} \ u$, and $\text{dn} \ u$ 249
12.3.2. Integrals Involving $\text{sn} \ u, \text{cn} \ u$, and $\text{dn} \ u$ 249
12.4. Inverse Jacobian Elliptic Functions 250
12.4.1. Definitions 250

13 Probability Distributions and Integrals, and the Error Function 253
13.1. Distributions 253
13.1.1. Definitions 253
13.1.2. Power Series Representations ($x \geq 0$) 256
13.1.3. Asymptotic Expansions ($x \gg 0$) 256
13.2. The Error Function 257
13.2.1. Definitions 257
13.2.2. Power Series Representation 257
13.2.3. Asymptotic Expansion ($x \gg 0$) 257
13.2.4. Connection Between $P(x)$ and erf $x$ 258
13.2.5. Integrals Expressible in Terms of erf $x$ 258
13.2.6. Derivatives of erf $x$ 258
13.2.7. Integrals of erfc $x$ 258
13.2.8. Integral and Power Series Representation of $i^n \text{erfc} \ x$ 259
13.2.9. Value of $i^n \text{erfc} \ x$ at zero 259

14 Fresnel Integrals, Sine and Cosine Integrals 261
14.1. Definitions, Series Representations, and Values at Infinity 261
14.1.1. The Fresnel Integrals 261
14.1.2. Series Representations 261
14.1.3. Limiting Values as $x \to \infty$ 263
14.2. Definitions, Series Representations, and Values at Infinity 263
14.2.1. Sine and Cosine Integrals 263
14.2.2. Series Representations 263
14.2.3. Limiting Values as $x \to \infty$ 264

15 Definite Integrals 265
15.1. Integrands Involving Powers of $x$ 265
15.2. Integrands Involving Trigonometric Functions 267
15.3. Integrands Involving the Exponential Function 270
15.4. Integrands Involving the Hyperbolic Function 273
15.5. Integrands Involving the Logarithmic Function
15.6. Integrands Involving the Exponential Integral $Ei(x)$

16 Different Forms of Fourier Series
16.1. Fourier Series for $f(x)$ on $-\pi \leq x \leq \pi$
   16.1.1. The Fourier Series
16.2. Fourier Series for $f(x)$ on $-L \leq x \leq L$
   16.2.1. The Fourier Series
16.3. Fourier Series for $f(x)$ on $a \leq x \leq b$
   16.3.1. The Fourier Series
16.4. Half-Range Fourier Cosine Series for $f(x)$ on $0 \leq x \leq \pi$
   16.4.1. The Fourier Series
16.5. Half-Range Fourier Cosine Series for $f(x)$ on $0 \leq x \leq L$
   16.5.1. The Fourier Series
16.6. Half-Range Fourier Sine Series for $f(x)$ on $0 \leq x \leq \pi$
   16.6.1. The Fourier Series
16.7. Half-Range Fourier Sine Series for $f(x)$ on $0 \leq x \leq L$
   16.7.1. The Fourier Series
16.8. Complex (Exponential) Fourier Series for $f(x)$ on $-\pi \leq x \leq \pi$
   16.8.1. The Fourier Series
16.9. Complex (Exponential) Fourier Series for $f(x)$ on $-L \leq x \leq L$
   16.9.1. The Fourier Series
16.10. Representative Examples of Fourier Series
16.11. Fourier Series and Discontinuous Functions
   16.11.1. Periodic Extensions and Convergence of Fourier Series
   16.11.2. Applications to Closed-Form Summations
      of Numerical Series

17 Bessel Functions
17.1. Bessel’s Differential Equation
   17.1.1. Different Forms of Bessel’s Equation
17.2. Series Expansions for $J_0(x)$ and $Y_0(x)$
   17.2.1. Series Expansions for $J_0(x)$ and $J_0(x)$
   17.2.2. Series Expansions for $Y_0(x)$ and $Y_0(x)$
   17.2.3. Expansion of $\sin(x \sin \theta)$ and $\cos(x \sin \theta)$ in
      Terms of Bessel Functions
17.3. Bessel Functions of Fractional Order
   17.3.1. Bessel Functions $J_{\pm(n+1/2)}(x)$
   17.3.2. Bessel Functions $Y_{\pm(n+1/2)}(x)$
17.4. Asymptotic Representations for Bessel Functions
   17.4.1. Asymptotic Representations for Large Arguments
   17.4.2. Asymptotic Representation for Large Orders
17.5. Zeros of Bessel Functions
   17.5.1. Zeros of $J_n(x)$ and $Y_n(x)$
17.6. Bessel’s Modified Equation 294
17.6.1. Different Forms of Bessel’s Modified Equation 294
17.7. Series Expansions for $I_n(x)$ and $K_n(x)$ 297
17.7.1. Series Expansions for $I_n(x)$ and $I_v(x)$ 297
17.7.2. Series Expansions for $K_0(x)$ and $K_n(x)$ 298
17.8. Modified Bessel Functions of Fractional Order 298
17.8.1. Modified Bessel Functions $I_{\pm(n+1/2)}(x)$ 298
17.8.2. Modified Bessel Functions $K_{\pm(n+1/2)}(x)$ 299
17.9. Asymptotic Representations of Modified Bessel Functions 299
17.10. Relationships Between Bessel Functions 299
17.10.1. Relationships Involving $J_\nu(x)$ and $Y_\nu(x)$ 299
17.10.2. Relationships Involving $I_\nu(x)$ and $K_\nu(x)$ 301
17.11. Integral Representations of $J_n(x)$, $I_n(x)$, and $K_n(x)$ 302
17.11.1. Integral Representations of $J_n(x)$ 302
17.12. Indefinite Integrals of Bessel Functions 302
17.12.1. Integrals of $J_n(x)$, $I_n(x)$, and $K_n(x)$ 302
17.13. Definite Integrals Involving Bessel Functions 303
17.13.1. Definite Integrals Involving $J_n(x)$ and Elementary Functions 303
17.14. Spherical Bessel Functions 304
17.14.1. The Differential Equation 304
17.14.2. The Spherical Bessel Function $j_n(x)$ and $y_n(x)$ 305
17.14.3. Recurrence Relations 306
17.14.4. Series Representations 306
17.14.5. Limiting Values as $x \to 0$ 306
17.14.6. Asymptotic Expansions of $j_n(x)$ and $y_n(x)$ 307
When the Order $n$ Is Large 307
17.15. Fourier-Bessel Expansions 307

18 Orthogonal Polynomials 309
18.1. Introduction 309
18.1.1. Definition of a System of Orthogonal Polynomials 309
18.2. Legendre Polynomials $P_n(x)$ 310
18.2.1. Differential Equation Satisfied by $P_n(x)$ 310
18.2.2. Rodrigues’ Formula for $P_n(x)$ 310
18.2.3. Orthogonality Relation for $P_n(x)$ 310
18.2.4. Explicit Expressions for $P_n(x)$ 310
18.2.5. Recurrence Relations Satisfied by $P_n(x)$ 312
18.2.6. Generating Function for $P_n(x)$ 313
18.2.7. Legendre Functions of the Second Kind $Q_n(x)$ 313
18.2.8. Definite Integrals Involving $P_n(x)$ 315
18.2.9. Special Values 315
18.2.10. Associated Legendre Functions 316
18.2.11. Spherical Harmonics 318
18.3. Chebyshev Polynomials $T_n(x)$ and $U_n(x)$ 320
  18.3.1. Differential Equation Satisfied by $T_n(x)$ and $U_n(x)$ 320
  18.3.2. Rodrigues’ Formulas for $T_n(x)$ and $U_n(x)$ 320
  18.3.3. Orthogonality Relations for $T_n(x)$ and $U_n(x)$ 320
  18.3.4. Explicit Expressions for $T_n(x)$ and $U_n(x)$ 321
  18.3.5. Recurrence Relations Satisfied by $T_n(x)$ and $U_n(x)$ 325
  18.3.6. Generating Functions for $T_n(x)$ and $U_n(x)$ 325
18.4. Laguerre Polynomials $L_n(x)$ 325
  18.4.1. Differential Equation Satisfied by $L_n(x)$ 325
  18.4.2. Rodrigues’ Formula for $L_n(x)$ 325
  18.4.3. Orthogonality Relation for $L_n(x)$ 326
  18.4.4. Explicit Expressions for $L_n(x)$ and $x^n$ in Terms of $L_n(x)$ 326
  18.4.5. Recurrence Relations Satisfied by $L_n(x)$ 327
  18.4.6. Generating Function for $L_n(x)$ 327
  18.4.7. Integrals Involving $L_n(x)$ 327
  18.4.8. Generalized (Associated) Laguerre Polynomials $L_n^{(a)}(x)$ 327
18.5. Hermite Polynomials $H_n(x)$ 329
  18.5.1. Differential Equation Satisfied by $H_n(x)$ 329
  18.5.2. Rodrigues’ Formula for $H_n(x)$ 329
  18.5.3. Orthogonality Relation for $H_n(x)$ 330
  18.5.4. Explicit Expressions for $H_n(x)$ 330
  18.5.5. Recurrence Relations Satisfied by $H_n(x)$ 330
  18.5.6. Generating Function for $H_n(x)$ 331
  18.5.7. Series Expansions of $H_n(x)$ 331
  18.5.8. Powers of $x$ in Terms of $H_n(x)$ 331
  18.5.9. Definite Integrals 331
  18.5.10. Asymptotic Expansion for Large $n$ 332
18.6. Jacobi Polynomials $P_n^{(a,\beta)}(x)$ 332
  18.6.1. Differential Equation Satisfied by $P_n^{(a,\beta)}(x)$ 333
  18.6.2. Rodrigues’ Formula for $P_n^{(a,\beta)}(x)$ 333
  18.6.3. Orthogonality Relation for $P_n^{(a,\beta)}(x)$ 333
  18.6.4. A Useful Integral Involving $P_n^{(a,\beta)}(x)$ 333
  18.6.5. Explicit Expressions for $P_n^{(a,\beta)}(x)$ 333
  18.6.6. Differentiation Formulas for $P_n^{(a,\beta)}(x)$ 334
  18.6.7. Recurrence Relation Satisfied by $P_n^{(a,\beta)}(x)$ 334
  18.6.8. The Generating Function for $P_n^{(a,\beta)}(x)$ 334
  18.6.9. Asymptotic Formula for $P_n^{(a,\beta)}(x)$ for Large $n$ 335
  18.6.10. Graphs of the Jacobi Polynomials $P_n^{(a,\beta)}(x)$ 335
Contents

19 Laplace Transformation 337
  19.1. Introduction 337
    19.1.1. Definition of the Laplace Transform 337
    19.1.2. Basic Properties of the Laplace Transform 338
    19.1.3. The Dirac Delta Function δ(\(x\)) 340
    19.1.4. Laplace Transform Pairs 340
    19.1.5. Solving Initial Value Problems by the Laplace Transform 340

20 Fourier Transforms 353
  20.1. Introduction 353
    20.1.1. Fourier Exponential Transform 353
    20.1.2. Basic Properties of the Fourier Transforms 354
    20.1.3. Fourier Transform Pairs 355
    20.1.4. Fourier Cosine and Sine Transforms 357
    20.1.5. Basic Properties of the Fourier Cosine and Sine Transforms 358
    20.1.6. Fourier Cosine and Sine Transform Pairs 359

21 Numerical Integration 363
  21.1. Classical Methods 363
    21.1.1. Open- and Closed-Type Formulas 363
    21.1.2. Composite Midpoint Rule (open type) 364
    21.1.3. Composite Trapezoidal Rule (closed type) 364
    21.1.4. Composite Simpson’s Rule (closed type) 364
    21.1.5. Newton–Cotes formulas 365
    21.1.6. Gaussian Quadrature (open-type) 366
    21.1.7. Romberg Integration (closed-type) 367

22 Solutions of Standard Ordinary Differential Equations 371
  22.1. Introduction 371
    22.1.1. Basic Definitions 371
    22.1.2. Linear Dependence and Independence 371
    22.2. Separation of Variables 373
    22.3. Linear First-Order Equations 373
    22.4. Bernoulli’s Equation 374
    22.5. Exact Equations 375
    22.6. Homogeneous Equations 376
    22.7. Linear Differential Equations 376
    22.8. Constant Coefficient Linear Differential Equations—Homogeneous Case 377
    22.9. Linear Homogeneous Second-Order Equation 381
22.10. Linear Differential Equations—Inhomogeneous Case and the Green’s Function 382  
22.11. Linear Inhomogeneous Second-Order Equation 389  
22.12. Determination of Particular Integrals by the Method of Undetermined Coefficients 390  
22.13. The Cauchy–Euler Equation 393  
22.14. Legendre’s Equation 394  
22.15. Bessel’s Equations 394  
22.16. Power Series and Frobenius Methods 396  
22.17. The Hypergeometric Equation 403  
22.18. Numerical Methods 404  

23 Vector Analysis 415  
23.1. Scalars and Vectors 415  
23.1.1. Basic Definitions 415  
23.1.2. Vector Addition and Subtraction 417  
23.1.3. Scaling Vectors 418  
23.1.4. Vectors in Component Form 419  
23.2. Scalar Products 420  
23.3. Vector Products 421  
23.4. Triple Products 422  
23.5. Products of Four Vectors 423  
23.6. Derivatives of Vector Functions of a Scalar \( t \) 423  
23.7. Derivatives of Vector Functions of Several Scalar Variables 425  
23.8. Integrals of Vector Functions of a Scalar Variable \( t \) 426  
23.9. Line Integrals 427  
23.10. Vector Integral Theorems 428  
23.11. A Vector Rate of Change Theorem 431  
23.12. Useful Vector Identities and Results 431  

24 Systems of Orthogonal Coordinates 433  
24.1. Curvilinear Coordinates 433  
24.1.1. Basic Definitions 433  
24.2. Vector Operators in Orthogonal Coordinates 435  
24.3. Systems of Orthogonal Coordinates 436  

25 Partial Differential Equations and Special Functions 447  
25.1. Fundamental Ideas 447  
25.1.1. Classification of Equations 447  
25.2. Method of Separation of Variables 451  
25.2.1. Application to a Hyperbolic Problem 451  
25.3. The Sturm–Liouville Problem and Special Functions 456  
25.4. A First-Order System and the Wave Equation 456
25.5. Conservation Equations (Laws) 457
25.6. The Method of Characteristics 458
25.7. Discontinuous Solutions (Shocks) 462
25.8. Similarity Solutions 465
25.9. Burgers’s Equation, the KdV Equation, and the KdVB Equation 467
25.10. The Poisson Integral Formulas 470
25.11. The Riemann Method 471

26 Qualitative Properties of the Heat and Laplace Equation 473
26.2. The Maximum/Minimum Principle for the Laplace Equation 473
26.3. Gauss Mean Value Theorem for Harmonic Functions in the Plane 473
26.4. Gauss Mean Value Theorem for Harmonic Functions in Space 474

27 Solutions of Elliptic, Parabolic, and Hyperbolic Equations 475
27.1. Elliptic Equations (The Laplace Equation) 475
27.2. Parabolic Equations (The Heat or Diffusion Equation) 482
27.3. Hyperbolic Equations (Wave Equation) 488

28 The $z$-Transform 493
28.1. The $z$-Transform and Transform Pairs 493

29 Numerical Approximation 499
29.1. Introduction 499
  29.1.1. Linear Interpolation 499
  29.1.2. Lagrange Polynomial Interpolation 500
  29.1.3. Spline Interpolation 500
29.2. Economization of Series 501
29.3. Padé Approximation 503
29.4. Finite Difference Approximations to Ordinary and Partial Derivatives 505

30 Conformal Mapping and Boundary Value Problems 509
30.1. Analytic Functions and the Cauchy-Riemann Equations 509
30.2. Harmonic Conjugates and the Laplace Equation 510
30.3. Conformal Transformations and Orthogonal Trajectories 510
30.4. Boundary Value Problems 511
30.5. Some Useful Conformal Mappings 512

Short Classified Reference List 525
Index 529
Preface

This book contains a collection of general mathematical results, formulas, and integrals that occur throughout applications of mathematics. Many of the entries are based on the updated fifth edition of Gradshteyn and Ryzhik’s “Tables of Integrals, Series, and Products,” though during the preparation of the book, results were also taken from various other reference works. The material has been arranged in a straightforward manner, and for the convenience of the user a quick reference list of the simplest and most frequently used results is to be found in Chapter 0 at the front of the book. Tab marks have been added to pages to identify the twelve main subject areas into which the entries have been divided and also to indicate the main interconnections that exist between them. Keys to the tab marks are to be found inside the front and back covers.

The Table of Contents at the front of the book is sufficiently detailed to enable rapid location of the section in which a specific entry is to be found, and this information is supplemented by a detailed index at the end of the book. In the chapters listing integrals, instead of displaying them in their canonical form, as is customary in reference works, in order to make the tables more convenient to use, the integrands are presented in the more general form in which they are likely to arise. It is hoped that this will save the user the necessity of reducing a result to a canonical form before consulting the tables. Wherever it might be helpful, material has been added explaining the idea underlying a section or describing simple techniques that are often useful in the application of its results.

Standard notations have been used for functions, and a list of these together with their names and a reference to the section in which they occur or are defined is to be found at the front of the book. As is customary with tables of indefinite integrals, the additive arbitrary constant of integration has always been omitted. The result of an integration may take more than one form, often depending on the method used for its evaluation, so only the most common forms are listed.

A user requiring more extensive tables, or results involving the less familiar special functions, is referred to the short classified reference list at the end of the book. The list contains works the author found to be most useful and which a user is likely to find readily accessible in a library, but it is in no sense a comprehensive bibliography. Further specialist references are to be found in the bibliographies contained in these reference works.

Every effort has been made to ensure the accuracy of these tables and, whenever possible, results have been checked by means of computer symbolic algebra and integration programs, but the final responsibility for errors must rest with the author.
Preface to the Fourth Edition

The preparation of the fourth edition of this handbook provided the opportunity to enlarge the sections on special functions and orthogonal polynomials, as suggested by many users of the third edition. A number of substantial additions have also been made elsewhere, like the enhancement of the description of spherical harmonics, but a major change is the inclusion of a completely new chapter on conformal mapping. Some minor changes that have been made are correcting of a few typographical errors and rearranging the last four chapters of the third edition into a more convenient form. A significant development that occurred during the later stages of preparation of this fourth edition was that my friend and colleague Dr. Hui-Hui Dai joined me as a co-editor.

Chapter 30 on conformal mapping has been included because of its relevance to the solution of the Laplace equation in the plane. To demonstrate the connection with the Laplace equation, the chapter is preceded by a brief introduction that demonstrates the relevance of conformal mapping to the solution of boundary value problems for real harmonic functions in the plane. Chapter 30 contains an extensive atlas of useful mappings that display, in the usual diagrammatic way, how given analytic functions \( w = f(z) \) map regions of interest in the complex \( z \)-plane onto corresponding regions in the complex \( w \)-plane, and conversely. By forming composite mappings, the basic atlas of mappings can be extended to more complicated regions than those that have been listed. The development of a typical composite mapping is illustrated by using mappings from the atlas to construct a mapping with the property that a region of complicated shape in the \( z \)-plane is mapped onto the much simpler region comprising the upper half of the \( w \)-plane. By combining this result with the Poisson integral formula, described in another section of the handbook, a boundary value problem for the original, more complicated region can be solved in terms of a corresponding boundary value problem in the simpler region comprising the upper half of the \( w \)-plane.

The chapter on ordinary differential equations has been enhanced by the inclusion of material describing the construction and use of the Green’s function when solving initial and boundary value problems for linear second order ordinary differential equations. More has been added about the properties of the Laplace transform and the Laplace and Fourier convolution theorems, and the list of Laplace transform pairs has been enlarged. Furthermore, because of their use with special techniques in numerical analysis when solving differential equations, a new section has been included describing the Jacobi orthogonal polynomials. The section on the Poisson integral formulas has also been enlarged, and its use is illustrated by an example. A brief description of the Riemann method for the solution of hyperbolic equations has been included because of the important theoretical role it plays when examining general properties of wave-type equations, such as their domains of dependence.

For the convenience of users, a new feature of the handbook is a CD-ROM that contains the classified lists of integrals found in the book. These lists can be searched manually, and when results of interest have been located, they can be either printed out or used in papers or
worksheets as required. This electronic material is introduced by a set of notes (also included in the following pages) intended to help users of the handbook by drawing attention to different notations and conventions that are in current use. If these are not properly understood, they can cause confusion when results from some other sources are combined with results from this handbook. Typically, confusion can occur when dealing with Laplace’s equation and other second order linear partial differential equations using spherical polar coordinates because of the occurrence of differing notations for the angles involved and also when working with Fourier transforms for which definitions and normalizations differ. Some explanatory notes and examples have also been provided to interpret the meaning and use of the inversion integrals for Laplace and Fourier transforms.

Alan Jeffrey
alan.jeffrey@newcastle.ac.uk

Hui-Hui Dai
mahhdai@math.cityu.edu.hk
Notes for Handbook Users

The material contained in the fourth edition of the *Handbook of Mathematical Formulas and Integrals* was selected because it covers the main areas of mathematics that find frequent use in applied mathematics, physics, engineering, and other subjects that use mathematics. The material contained in the handbook includes, among other topics, algebra, calculus, indefinite and definite integrals, differential equations, integral transforms, and special functions.

For the convenience of the user, the most frequently consulted chapters of the book are to be found on the accompanying CD that allows individual results of interest to be printed out, included in a work sheet, or in a manuscript.

A major part of the handbook concerns integrals, so it is appropriate that mention of these should be made first. As is customary, when listing indefinite integrals, the arbitrary additive constant of integration has always been omitted. The results concerning integrals that are available in the mathematical literature are so numerous that a strict selection process had to be adopted when compiling this work. The criterion used amounted to choosing those results that experience suggested were likely to be the most useful in everyday applications of mathematics. To economize on space, when a simple transformation can convert an integral containing several parameters into one or more integrals with fewer parameters, only these simpler integrals have been listed.

For example, instead of listing indefinite integrals like $\int e^{ax} \sin(bx + c)\,dx$ and $\int e^{ax} \cos(bx + c)\,dx$, each containing the three parameters $a$, $b$, and $c$, the simpler indefinite integrals $\int e^{ax} \sin bx\,dx$ and $\int e^{ax} \cos bx\,dx$, contained in entries 5.1.3.1(1) and 5.1.3.1(4) have been listed. The results containing the parameter $c$ then follow after using additive property of integrals with these tabulated entries, together with the trigonometric identities $\sin(bx + c) = \sin bx \cos c + \cos bx \sin c$ and $\cos(bx + c) = \cos bx \cos c - \sin bx \sin c$.

The order in which integrals are listed can be seen from the various section headings. If a required integral is not found in the appropriate section, it is possible that it can be transformed into an entry contained in the book by using one of the following elementary methods:

1. Representing the integrand in terms of partial fractions.
2. Completing the square in denominators containing quadratic factors.
3. Integration using a substitution.
4. Integration by parts.
5. Integration using a recurrence relation (recursion formula),
or by a combination of these. It must, however, always be remembered that not all integrals can
be evaluated in terms of elementary functions. Consequently, many simple looking integrals
cannot be evaluated analytically, as is the case with
\[ \int \frac{\sin x}{a + be^x} dx. \]

A Comment on the Use of Substitutions
When using substitutions, it is important to ensure the substitution is both continuous and
one-to-one, and to remember to incorporate the substitution into the \( dx \) term in the integrand.
When a definite integral is involved the substitution must also be incorporated into the limits
of the integral.
When an integrand involves an expression of the form \( \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} \), it is usual to use the
substitution \( x = |a| \sin \theta \) which is equivalent to \( \theta = \arcsin(x/|a|) \), though the substitution
\( x = |a| \cos \theta \) would serve equally well. The occurrence of an expression of the form \( \sqrt{a^2 + x^2} \)
in an integrand can be treated by making the substitution \( x = |a| \tan \theta \), when \( \theta = \arctan(x/|a|) \)
(see also Section 9.1.1). If an expression of the form \( \sqrt{x^2 - a^2} \) occurs in an integrand, the
substitution \( x = |a| \sec \theta \) can be used. Notice that whenever the square root occurs the positive
square root is always implied, to ensure that the function is single valued.
If a substitution involving either \( \sin \theta \) or \( \cos \theta \) is used, it is necessary to restrict \( \theta \) to a
suitable interval to ensure the substitution remains one-to-one. For example, by restricting \( \theta \)
to the interval \(-\frac{1}{2} \pi \leq \theta \leq \frac{1}{2} \pi \), the function \( \sin \theta \) becomes one-to-one, whereas by restricting \( \theta \)
to the interval \( 0 \leq \theta \leq \pi \), the function \( \cos \theta \) becomes one-to-one. Similarly, when the inverse
trigonometric function \( y = \arcsin x \) is involved, equivalent to \( x = \sin y \), the function becomes
one-to-one in its principal branch \(-\frac{1}{2} \pi \leq y \leq \frac{1}{2} \pi \), so \( \arcsin(\sin x) = x \) for \(-\frac{1}{2} \pi \leq x \leq \frac{1}{2} \pi \)
and \( \sin(\arcsin x) = x \) for \(-1 \leq x \leq 1 \). Correspondingly, the inverse trigonometric function
\( y = \arccos x \), equivalently \( x = \cos y \), becomes one-to-one in its principal branch \( 0 \leq y \leq \pi \),
so \( \arccos(\cos x) = x \) for \( 0 \leq x \leq \pi \) and \( \sin(\arccos x) = x \) for \(-1 \leq x \leq 1 \).
It is important to recognize that a given integral may have more than one representation,
because the form of the result is often determined by the method used to evaluate the integral.
Some representations are more convenient to use than others so, where appropriate, integrals
of this type are listed using their simplest representation. A typical example of this type is
\[ \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{a^2 + x^2}} = \begin{cases} 
\text{arcsinh}(x/a) \\
\ln(x + \sqrt{a^2 + x^2}) 
\end{cases} \]
where the result involving the logarithmic function is usually the more convenient of the two
forms. In this handbook, both the inverse trigonometric and inverse hyperbolic functions all
carry the prefix “arc.” So, for example, the inverse sine function is written \( \arcsin x \) and the
inverse hyperbolic sine function is written \( \text{arcsinh} x \), with corresponding notational conventions
for the other inverse trigonometric and hyperbolic functions. However, many other works
denote the inverse of these functions by adding the superscript \(-1\) to the name of the function,
in which case \( \arcsin x \) becomes \( \sin^{-1} x \) and \( \text{arcsinh} x \) becomes \( \sinh^{-1} x \). Elsewhere yet another
notation is in use where, instead of using the prefix “arc” to denote an inverse hyperbolic
function, the prefix “arg” is used, so that arcsinh \( x \) becomes argsinh \( x \), with the corresponding use of the prefix “arc” to denote the other inverse hyperbolic functions. This notation is preferred by some authors because they consider that the prefix “arc” implies an angle is involved, whereas this is not the case with hyperbolic functions. So, instead, they use the prefix “arg” when working with inverse hyperbolic functions.

Example: Find \( I = \int \frac{x^5}{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}} \, dx \).

Of the two obvious substitutions \( x = |a| \sin \theta \) and \( x = |a| \cos \theta \) that can be used, we will make use of the first one, while remembering to restrict \( \theta \) to the interval \(-\frac{1}{2} \pi \leq \theta \leq \frac{1}{2} \pi\) to ensure the transformation is one-to-one. We have \( dx = |a| \cos \theta \, d\theta \), while \( \sqrt{a^2-x^2} = \sqrt{a^2-a^2 \sin^2 \theta} = |a| \sqrt{1-\sin^2 \theta} = |a| \cos \theta \). However \( \cos \theta \) is positive in the interval \(-\frac{1}{2} \pi \leq \theta \leq \frac{1}{2} \pi\), so we may set \( \sqrt{a^2-x^2} = |a| \cos \theta \). Substituting these results into the integrand of \( I \) gives

\[
I = \int \frac{|a|^5 \sin^5 \theta |a| \cos \theta \, d\theta}{|a| \cos \theta} = a^4 |a| \int \sin^5 \theta \, d\theta,
\]

and this trigonometric integral can be found using entry 9.2.2.2. This result can be expressed in terms of \( x \) by using the fact that \( \theta = \arcsin (x/|a|) \), so that after some manipulation we find that

\[
I = -\frac{1}{5} x^4 \sqrt{a^2-x^2} - \frac{4a^2}{15} \sqrt{a^2-x^2} \left(2a^2 + x^2\right).
\]

A Comment on Integration by Parts

Integration by parts can often be used to express an integral in a simpler form, but it also has another important property because it also leads to the derivation of a reduction formula, also called a recursion relation. A reduction formula expresses an integral involving one or more parameters in terms of a simpler integral of the same form, but with the parameters having smaller values. Let us consider two examples in some detail, the second of which given a brief mention in Section 1.15.3.

Example:

(a) Find a reduction formula for

\[
I_m = \int \cos^m \theta \, d\theta,
\]

and hence find an expression for \( I_5 \).

(b) Modify the result to find a recurrence relation for

\[
J_m = \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^m \theta \, d\theta,
\]

and use it to find expressions for \( J_m \) when \( m \) is even and when it is odd.
To derive the result for (a), write

\[ I_m = \int \cos^{m-1} \theta \frac{d}{d\theta} (\sin \theta) \, d\theta \]

\[ = \cos^{m-1} \theta \sin \theta - \int \sin \theta (m-1) \cos^{m-2} \theta \sin \theta \, d\theta \]

\[ = \cos^{m-1} \theta \sin \theta + (m-1) \int \cos^{m-2} \theta (1 - \cos^2 \theta) \, d\theta \]

\[ = \cos^{m-1} \theta \sin \theta + (m-1) \int \cos^{m-2} \theta \, d\theta - (m-1) \int \cos^m \theta \, d\theta. \]

Combining terms and using the form of \( I_m \), this gives the reduction formula

\[ I_m = \frac{\cos^{m-1} \theta \sin \theta}{m} + \left( \frac{m-1}{m} \right) I_{m-2}. \]

we have \( I_1 = \int \cos \theta \, d\theta = \sin \theta \). So using the expression for \( I_1 \), setting \( m = 5 \) and using the recurrence relation to step up in intervals of 2, we find that

\[ I_3 = \frac{1}{3} \cos^2 \theta \sin \theta + \frac{2}{3} I_1 = \frac{1}{3} \cos^2 \theta + \frac{2}{3} \sin \theta, \]

and hence that

\[ I_5 = \frac{1}{5} \cos^4 \theta \sin \theta + \frac{4}{5} I_3 \]

\[ = \frac{1}{5} \cos^4 \theta \sin \theta - \frac{4}{15} \sin^3 \theta + \frac{4}{5} \sin \theta. \]

The derivation of a result for (b) uses the same reasoning as in (a), apart from the fact that the limits must be applied to both the integral, and also to the \( uv \) term in \( \int uv \, d\theta = uv - \int v \, du \), so the result becomes \( \int_a^b uv \, d\theta = (uv) \big|_a^b - \int_a^b v \, du \). When this is done it leads to the result

\[ J_m = \left( \frac{\cos^{m-1} \theta \sin \theta}{m} \right) \theta = \frac{\pi}{2} + \left( \frac{m-1}{m} \right) J_{m-2} = \left( \frac{m-1}{m} \right) J_{m-2}. \]

When \( m \) is even, this recurrence relation links \( J_m \) to \( J_0 = \int_0^{\pi/2} 1 \, d\theta = \frac{\pi}{2} \), and when \( m \) is odd, it links \( J_m \) to \( J_1 = \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos \theta \, d\theta = 1 \). Using these results sequentially in the recurrence relation, we find that

\[ J_{2n} = \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \ldots (2n-1)}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \ldots 2n} \frac{1}{2} \pi, \quad (m = 2n \text{ is even}) \]

and

\[ J_{2n+1} = \frac{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \ldots 2n}{3 \cdot 5 \cdot 7 \ldots (2n+1)}, \quad (m = 2n + 1 \text{ is odd}). \]
Example: The following is an example of a recurrence formula that contains two parameters. If $I_{m,n} = \int \sin^m \theta \cos^n \theta d\theta$, an argument along the lines of the one used in the previous example, but writing

$$I_{m,n} = \int \sin^{m-1} \theta \cos^n \theta d(-\cos \theta),$$

leads to the result

$$(m + n)I_{m,n} = -\sin^{m-1} \theta \cos^{n+1} \theta + (m-1)I_{m-2,n},$$

in which $n$ remains unchanged, but $m$ decreases by 2.

Had integration by parts been used differently with $I_{m,n}$ written as

$$I_{m,n} = \int \sin^m \theta \cos^{n-1} \theta d(\sin \theta)$$

a different reduction formula would have been obtained in which $m$ remains unchanged but $n$ decreases by 2.

Some Comments on Definite Integrals

Definite integrals evaluated over the semi-infinite interval $[0, \infty)$ or over the infinite interval $(-\infty, \infty)$ are improper integrals and when they are convergent they can often be evaluated by means of contour integration. However, when considering these improper integrals, it is desirable to know in advance if they are convergent, or if they only have a finite value in the sense of a Cauchy principal value. (see Section 1.15.4). A geometrical interpretation of a Cauchy principal value for an integral of a function $f(x)$ over the interval $(-\infty, \infty)$ follows by regarding an area between the curve $y = f(x)$ and the $x$-axis as positive if it lies above the $x$-axis and negative if it lies below it. Then, when finding a Cauchy principal value, the areas to the left and right of the $y$-axis are paired off symmetrically as the limits of integration approach $\pm \infty$. If the result is a finite number, this is the Cauchy principal value to be attributed to the definite integral $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)dx$, otherwise the integral is divergent. When an improper integral is convergent, its value and its Cauchy principal value coincide.

There are various tests for the convergence of improper integrals, but the ones due to Abel and Dirichlet given in Section 1.15.4 are the main ones. Convergent integrals exist that do not satisfy all of the conditions of the theorems, showing that although these tests represent sufficient conditions for convergence, they are not necessary ones.

Example: Let us establish the convergence of the improper integral $\int_a^\infty \frac{\sin mx}{x^p} dx$, given that $a, p > 0$.

To use the Dirichlet test we set $f(x) = \sin x$ and $g(x) = 1/x^p$. Then $\lim_{x \to \infty} g(x) = 0$ and $\int_a^\infty |g'(x)|dx = 1/a^p$ is finite, so this integral involving $g(x)$ converges. We also have $F(b) = \int_a^b \sin mx dx = (\cos ma - \cos mb)/m$, from which it follows that $|F(b)| \leq 2$ for all
$a \leq x < b < \infty$. Thus the conditions of the Dirichlet test are satisfied showing that $\int_a^{\infty} \frac{\sin x}{x^p} \, dx$ is convergent for $a, p > 0$.

It is necessary to exercise caution when using the fundamental theorem of calculus to evaluate an improper integral in case the integrand has a singularity (becomes infinite) inside the interval of integration. If this occurs the use of the fundamental theorem of calculus is invalid.

**Example:** The improper integral $\int_{-a}^{a} \frac{dx}{x^2}$ with $a > 0$ has a singularity at the origin and is, in fact, divergent. This follows because if $\varepsilon, \delta > 0$, we have $\lim_{\varepsilon \to 0^-} \int_{-\varepsilon}^{-a} \frac{dx}{x^2} + \lim_{\delta \to 0^+} \int_{\delta}^{a} \frac{dx}{x^2} = \infty$. However, an incorrect application of the fundamental theorem of calculus gives $\int_{-a}^{a} \frac{dx}{x^2} = \left(-\frac{1}{x}\right)^a_{-a} = -\frac{2}{a}$. Although this result is finite, it is obviously incorrect because the integrand is positive over the interval of integration, so the definite integral must also be positive, but this is not the case here because $a > 0$ so $-2/a < 0$.

Two simple results that often save time concern the integration of even and odd functions $f(x)$ over an interval $-a \leq x \leq a$ that is symmetrical about the origin.

We have the obvious result that when $f(x)$ is odd, that is when $f(-x) = -f(x)$, then

$$\int_{-a}^{a} f(x) \, dx = 0,$$

and when $f(x)$ is even, that is when $f(-x) = f(x)$, then

$$\int_{-a}^{a} f(x) \, dx = 2 \int_{0}^{a} f(x) \, dx.$$

These simple results have many uses as, for example, when working with Fourier series and elsewhere.

**Some Comments on Notations, the Choice of Symbols, and Normalization**

Unfortunately there is no universal agreement on the choice of symbols used to identify a point $P$ in cylindrical and spherical polar coordinates. Nor is there universal agreement on the choice of symbols used to represent some special functions, or on the normalization of Fourier transforms. Accordingly, before using results derived from other sources with those given in this handbook, it is necessary to check the notations, symbols, and normalization used elsewhere prior to combining the results.

**Symbols Used with Curvilinear Coordinates**

To avoid confusion, the symbols used in this handbook relating to plane polar coordinates, cylindrical polar coordinates, and spherical polar coordinates are shown in the diagrams in Section 24.3.
The plane polar coordinates \((r, \theta)\) that identify a point \(P\) in the \((x, y)\)-plane are shown in Figure 1(a). The angle \(\theta\) is the azimuthal angle measured counterclockwise from the \(x\)-axis in the \((x, y)\)-plane to the radius vector \(r\) drawn from the origin to the point \(P\). The connection between the Cartesian and the plane polar coordinates of \(P\) is given by \(x = r \cos \theta,\ y = r \sin \theta\), with \(0 \leq \theta < 2\pi\).

![Figure 1(a)](image1a.png)

We mention here that a different convention denotes the azimuthal angle in plane polar coordinates by \(\theta\), instead of by \(\phi\).

The cylindrical polar coordinates \((r, \theta, z)\) that identify a point \(P\) in space are shown in Figure 1(b). The angle \(\theta\) is again the azimuthal angle measured as in plane polar coordinates, \(r\) is the radial distance measured from the origin in the \((x, y)\)-plane to the projection of \(P\) onto the \((x, y)\)-plane, and \(z\) is the perpendicular distance of \(P\) above the \((x, y)\)-plane. The connection between cartesian and cylindrical polar coordinates used in this handbook is given by \(x = r \cos \theta,\ y = r \sin \theta\) and \(z = z\), with \(0 \leq \theta < 2\pi\).

![Figure 1(b)](image1b.png)
Here also, in a different convention involving cylindrical polar coordinates, the azimuthal angle is denoted by φ instead of by θ.

The spherical polar coordinates \((r, \theta, \phi)\) that identify a point \(P\) in space are shown in Figure 1(c). Here, differently from plane cylindrical coordinates, the azimuthal angle measured as in plane cylindrical coordinates is denoted by \(\phi\), the radius \(r\) is measured from the origin to point \(P\), and the polar angle measured from the \(z\)-axis to the radius vector \(OP\) is denoted by \(\theta\), with \(0 \leq \phi < 2\pi\), and \(0 \leq \theta \leq \pi\). The cartesian and spherical polar coordinates used in this handbook are connected by \(x = r \sin \theta \cos \phi\), \(y = r \sin \theta \sin \phi\), \(z = r \cos \theta\).

![Figure 1(c)](image)

In a different convention the roles of \(\theta\) and \(\phi\) are interchanged, so the azimuthal angle is denoted by \(\theta\), and the polar angle is denoted by \(\phi\).

**Bessel Functions**

There is general agreement that the **Bessel function of the first kind of order** \(\nu\) is denoted by \(J_{\nu}(x)\), though sometimes the symbol \(\nu\) is reserved for orders that are not integral, in which case \(n\) is used to denote integral orders. However, notations differ about the representation of the **Bessel function of the second kind of order** \(\nu\). In this handbook, a definition of the Bessel function of the second kind is adopted that is true for all orders \(\nu\) (both integral and fractional) and it is denoted by \(Y_{\nu}(x)\). However, a widely used alternative notation for this same Bessel function of the second kind of order \(\nu\) uses the notation \(N_{\nu}(x)\). This choice of notation, sometimes called the **Neumann form of the Bessel function of the second kind of order** \(\nu\), is used in recognition of the fact that it was defined and introduced by the German mathematician Carl Neumann. His definition, but with \(Y_{\nu}(x)\) in place of \(N_{\nu}(x)\), is given in Section 17.2.2. The reason for the rather strange form of this definition is because when the second linearly independent solution of Bessel’s equation is derived using the Frobenius
method, the nature of the solution takes one form when \( \nu \) is an integer and a different one when \( \nu \) is not an integer. The form of definition of \( Y_\nu(x) \) used here overcomes this difficulty because it is valid for all \( \nu \).

The recurrence relations for all Bessel functions can be written as

\[
\begin{align*}
Z_{\nu-1}(x) + Z_{\nu+1}(x) &= \frac{2\nu}{x} Z_\nu(x), \\
Z_{\nu-1}(x) - Z_{\nu+1}(x) &= 2Z'_\nu(x), \\
Z'_\nu(x) &= Z_{\nu-1}(x) - \frac{\nu}{x} Z_\nu(x), \\
Z'_\nu(x) &= -Z_{\nu+1}(x) + \frac{\nu}{x} Z_\nu(x),
\end{align*}
\]  

where \( Z_\nu(x) \) can be either \( J_\nu(x) \) or \( Y_\nu(x) \). Thus any recurrence relation derived from these results will apply to all Bessel functions. Similar general results exist for the modified Bessel functions \( I_\nu(x) \) and \( K_\nu(x) \).

**Normalization of Fourier Transforms**

The convention adopted in this handbook is to define the Fourier transform of a function \( f(x) \) as the function \( F(\omega) \) where

\[
F(\omega) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)e^{i\omega x} dx,
\]  

when the inverse Fourier transform becomes

\[
f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F(\omega)e^{-i\omega x} d\omega,
\]

where the normalization factor multiplying each integral in this Fourier transform pair is \( 1/\sqrt{2\pi} \). However other conventions for the normalization are in common use, and they follow from the requirement that the product of the two normalization factors in the Fourier and inverse Fourier transforms must equal \( 1/(2\pi) \).

Thus another convention that is used defines the Fourier transform of \( f(x) \) as

\[
F(\omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)e^{i\omega x} dx
\]

and the inverse Fourier transform as

\[
f(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F(\omega)e^{-i\omega x} d\omega.
\]

To complicate matters still further, in some conventions the factor \( e^{i\omega x} \) in the integral defining \( F(\omega) \) is replaced by \( e^{-i\omega x} \) and to compensate the factor \( e^{-i\omega x} \) in the integral defining \( f(x) \) is replaced by \( e^{i\omega x} \).
If a Fourier transform is defined in terms of an angular frequency, the ambiguity concerning
the choice of normalization factors disappears because the Fourier transform of
\( f(x) \) becomes
\[
F(\omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)e^{2\pi ixs}dx
\]  
(6)
and the inverse Fourier transform becomes
\[
f(x) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F(\omega)e^{-2\pi ixs}d\omega.
\]  
(7)
Nevertheless, the difference between definitions still continues because sometimes the expo-
nential factor in \( F(s) \) is replaced by \( e^{-2\pi ix} \), in which case the corresponding factor in the
inverse Fourier transform becomes \( e^{2\pi ixs} \). These remarks should suffice to convince a reader
of the necessity to check the convention used before combining a Fourier transform pair from
another source with results from this handbook.

**Some Remarks Concerning Elementary Ways of Finding Inverse
Laplace Transforms**

The Laplace transform \( F(s) \) of a suitably integrable function \( f(x) \) is defined by the improper
integral
\[
F(s) = \int_{0}^{\infty} f(x)e^{-xs}dx.
\]  
(8)
Let a Laplace transform \( F(s) \) be the quotient \( F(s) = P(s)/Q(s) \) of two polynomials \( P(s) \) and
\( Q(s) \). Finding the inverse transform \( \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(s)\} = f(x) \) can be accomplished by simplifying
\( F(s) \) using partial fractions, and then using the Laplace transform pairs in Table 19.1 together
with the operational properties of the transform given in 19.1.2.1. Notice that the degree of
\( P(s) \) must be less than the degree of \( Q(s) \) because from the limiting condition in 19.11.2.1(10),
if \( F(s) \) is to be a Laplace transform of some function \( f(x) \), it is necessary that \( \lim_{s \to \infty} F(s) = 0 \).
The same approach is valid if exponential terms of the type \( e^{-as} \) occur in the numerator \( P(s) \)
because depending on the form of the partial fraction representation of \( F(s) \), such terms will
simply introduce either a Heaviside step function \( H(x-a) \), or a Dirac delta function \( \delta(x-a) \)
into the resulting expression for \( f(x) \).

On occasions, if a Laplace transform can be expressed as the product of two simpler Laplace
transforms, the convolution theorem can be used to simplify the task of inverting the Laplace
transform. However, when factoring the transform before using the convolution theorem, care
must be taken to ensure that each factor is in fact a Laplace transform of a function of \( x \).
This is easily accomplished by appeal to the limiting condition in 19.11.2.1(10), because if
\( F(s) \) is factored as \( F(s) = F_1(s)F_2(s) \), the functions \( F_1(s) \) and \( F_2(s) \) will only be the Laplace
transforms of some functions \( f_1(x) \) and \( f_2(x) \) if \( \lim_{s \to \infty} F_1(s) = 0 \) and \( \lim_{s \to \infty} F_2(s) = 0 \).
Example: (a) Find $\mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(s)\}$ if $F(s) = \frac{s^3 + 3s^2 + 5s + 15}{(s^2 + 1)(s^2 + 4s + 13)}$. (b) Find $\mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(s)\}$ if $F(s) = \frac{s^2}{(s^2 + a^2)^2}$. 

To solve (a) using partial fractions we write $F(s)$ as $F(s) = \frac{1}{s^2 + 1} + \frac{s^2}{s^2 + 4s + 13}$. Taking the inverse Laplace transform of $F(s)$ and using entry 26 in Table 19.1 gives

$$
\mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(s)\} = \sin x + \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left(\frac{s + 2}{s^2 + 4s + 13}\right).
$$

Completing the square in the denominator of the second term and writing, $\frac{s^2 + 2}{(s^2 + a^2)^2}$, we see from the first shift theorem in 19.1.2.1(4) and entry 27 in Table 19.1 that $\mathcal{L}^{-1}\left\{\frac{s + 2}{(s^2 + a^2)^2}\right\} = e^{-2x}\cos 3x$. Finally, combining results, we have

$$
\mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(s)\} = \sin x + e^{-2x}\cos 3x.
$$

To solve (b) by the convolution transform, $F(s)$ must be expressed as the product of two factors. The transform $F(s)$ can be factored in two obvious ways, the first being $F(s) = \frac{s^2}{(s^2 + a^2)^2}$ and the second being $F(s) = \frac{s}{s^2 + a^2} \frac{1}{(s^2 + a^2)}$.

Of these two expressions, only the second is the product of two Laplace transforms, namely the product of the Laplace transforms of $\cos ax$. The first result cannot be used because the factor $s^2/(s^2 + a^2)$ fails the limiting condition in 19.11.2.1(10), and so is not the Laplace transform of a function of $x$.

The inverse of the convolution theorem asserts that if $F(s)$ and $G(s)$ are Laplace transforms of the functions $f(x)$ and $g(x)$, then

$$
\mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(s)G(s)\} = \int_0^x f(\tau)g(x-\tau)d\tau. \quad (9)
$$

So setting $F(s) = G(s) = \cos ax$, it follows that

$$
f(x) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left\{\frac{s^2}{(s^2 + a^2)^2}\right\} = \int_0^x \cos \tau \cos(x-\tau)d\tau = \frac{\sin ax}{2a} + \frac{x \cos ax}{2}.
$$

When more complicated Laplace transforms occur, it is necessary to find the inverse Laplace transform by using contour integration to evaluate the inversion integral in 19.1.1.1(5). More will be said about this, and about the use of the Fourier inversion integral, after a brief review of some key results from complex analysis.
Using the Fourier and Laplace Inversion Integrals

As a preliminary to discussing the Fourier and Laplace inversion integrals, it is necessary to record some key results from complex analysis that will be used.

An analytic function A complex valued function \( f(z) \) of the complex variable \( z = x + iy \) is said to be analytic on an open domain \( G \) (an area in the \( z \)-plane without its boundary points) if it has a derivative at each point of \( G \). Other names used in place of analytic are holomorphic and regular. A function \( f(z) = u(x, y) + iv(x, y) \) will be analytic in a domain \( G \) if at every point of \( G \) it satisfies the Cauchy-Riemann equations

\[
\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} = -\frac{\partial v}{\partial x}. \tag{10}
\]

These conditions are sufficient to ensure that \( f(z) \) had a derivative at every point of \( G \), in which case

\[
\frac{df}{dz} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + i \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} - i \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}. \tag{11}
\]

A pole of \( f(z) \) An analytic function \( f(z) \) is said to have a pole of order \( p \) at \( z = z_0 \) if in some neighborhood the point \( z_0 \) of a domain \( G \) where \( f(z) \) is defined,

\[
f(z) = \frac{g(z)}{(z-z_0)^p}, \tag{12}
\]

where the function \( g(z) \) is analytic at \( z_0 \). When \( p = 1 \), the function \( f(z) \) is said to have simple pole at \( z = z_0 \).

A meromorphic function A function \( f(z) \) is said to be meromorphic if it is analytic everywhere in a domain \( G \) except for isolated points where its only singularities are poles. For example, the function \( f(z) = 1/(z^2 + a^2) = 1/[(z - ia)(z + ia)] \) is a meromorphic function with simple poles at \( z = \pm ia \).

The residue of \( f(z) \) at a pole If a function has a pole of order \( p \) at \( z = z_0 \), then its residue at \( z = z_0 \) is given by

\[
\text{Residue } (f(z) : z = z_0) = \lim_{z \to z_0} \left[ \frac{1}{(p-1)!} \frac{d^{p-1}}{dz^{p-1}} (z-z_0)^p f(z) \right].
\]

For example, the residues of \( f(z) = 1/(z^2 + a^2) \) at its poles located at \( z = \pm ia \) are

\[
\text{Residue } (1/(z^2 + a^2) : z = ia) = -i/(2a)
\]

and

\[
\text{Residue } (1/(z^2 + a^2) : z = -ia) = i/(2a).
\]
The Cauchy residue theorem Let $\Gamma$ be a simple closed curve in the $z$-plane (a non-intersecting curve in the form of a simple loop). Denoting by $\int_{\Gamma} f(z)dz$ the integral of $f(z)$ around $\Gamma$ in the counter-clockwise (positive) sense, the Cauchy residue theorem asserts that

$$\int_{\Gamma} f(z)dz = 2\pi i \times \text{(sum of residues of } f(z) \text{ inside } \Gamma). \quad (13)$$

So, for example, if $\Gamma$ is any simple closed curve that contains only the residue of $f(z) = 1/(z^2 + a^2)$ located at $z = ia$, then

$$\int_{\Gamma} \frac{1}{z^2 + a^2}dz = 2\pi i \times (-i/(2a)) = \pi/a.$$ 

Jordan’s Lemma in Integral Form, and Its Consequences

This lemma takes various forms, the most useful of which are as follows:

(i) Let $C_+$ be a circular arc of radius $R$ located in the first and/or second quadrants, with its center at the origin of the $z$-plane. Then if $f(z) \to 0$ uniformly as $R \to \infty$,

$$\lim_{R \to \infty} \int_{C_+} f(z)e^{imz}dz = 0, \quad \text{where } m > 0.$$ 

(ii) Let $C_-$ be a circular arc of radius $R$ located in the third and/or fourth quadrant with its center at the origin of the $z$ plane. Then if $f(z) \to 0$ uniformly as $R \to \infty$,

$$\lim_{R \to \infty} \int_{C_-} f(z)e^{-imz}dz = 0, \quad \text{where } m > 0.$$ 

(iii) In a somewhat different form the lemma takes the form

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} e^{-k\sin \theta}d\theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2k} \left(1 - e^{-k}\right).$$

The first two forms of Jordan’s lemma are useful in general contour integration when establishing that the integral of an analytic function around a circular arc of radius $R$ centered on the origin vanishes in the limit as $R \to \infty$. The third form is often used when estimating the magnitude of a complex function that is integrated around a quadrant. The form of Jordan’s lemma to be used depends on the nature of the integrand to which it is to be applied. Later, result (iii) will be used when determining an inverse Laplace transform by means of the Laplace inversion integral.

The Fourier Transform and Its Inverse

In this handbook, the Fourier transform $F(\omega)$ of a suitably integrable function $f(x)$ is defined as

$$F(\omega) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)e^{i\omega x}dx, \quad (14)$$
while the inverse Fourier transform becomes

\[ f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F(\omega)e^{-i\omega x} d\omega, \quad (15) \]

it being understood that when \( f(x) \) is piecewise continuous with a piecewise continuous first derivative in any finite interval, that this last result is to be interpreted as

\[ \frac{f(x_-) + f(x_+)}{2} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F(\omega)e^{-i\omega x} d\omega, \quad (16) \]

with \( f(x_\pm) \) the values of \( f(x) \) on either side of a discontinuity in \( f(x) \). Notice first that although \( f(x) \) is real, its Fourier transform \( F(\omega) \) may be complex. Although \( F(\omega) \) may often be found by direct integration care is necessary, and it is often simpler to find it by converting the line integral defining \( F(\omega) \) into a contour integral. The necessary steps involve (i) integrating \( f(x) \) along the real axis from \(-R\) to \( R\), (ii) joining the two ends of this segment of the real axis by a semicircle of radius \( R \) with its center at the origin where the semicircle is either located in the upper half-plane, or in the lower half-plane, (iii) denoting this contour by \( \Gamma_R \), and (iv) using the limiting form \( \Gamma_R \) of the contour \( \Gamma_R \) as \( R \to \infty \) as the contour around which integration is to be performed. The choice of contour in the upper or lower half of the \( z \)-plane to be used will depend on the sign of the transform variable \( \omega \).

This same procedure is usually necessary when finding the inverse Fourier transform, because when \( F(\omega) \) is complex direct integration of the inversion integral is not possible. The example that follows will illustrate the fact that considerable care is necessary when working with Fourier transforms. This is because when finding a Fourier transform, the transform variable \( \omega \) often occurs in the form \( |\omega| \), causing the transform to take one form when \( \omega \) is positive, and another when it is negative.

**Example:** Let us find the Fourier transform of \( f(x) = 1/(x^2 + a^2) \) where \( a > 0 \), the result of which is given in entry 1 of Table 20.1.

Replacing \( x \) by the complex variable \( z \), the function \( f(z) = e^{iaz}/(z^2 + a^2) \), the integrand in the Fourier transform, is seen to have simple poles at \( z = ia \) and \( z = -ia \), where the residues are, respectively, \( -ie^{-a\omega}/(2a) \) and \( ie^{a\omega}/(2a) \). For the time being, allowing \( C_R \) to be a semicircle in either the upper or the lower half of the \( z \)-plane with its center at the origin, we have

\[ F(\omega) = \lim_{R \to \infty} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-R}^{R} \frac{e^{iaz}}{(x^2 + a^2)} dx + \lim_{R \to \infty} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{C_R} \frac{e^{iaz}}{(z^2 + a^2)} dz. \]

To use the residue theorem we need to show the second integral vanishes in the limit as \( R \to \infty \). On \( C_R \) we can set \( z = Re^{i\theta} \), so \( dz = iRe^{i\theta} d\theta \), showing that

\[ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{C_R} \frac{e^{iaz}}{(z^2 + a^2)} dz = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{C_R} \frac{e^{iaR(\cos \theta+i \sin \theta)}}{R^2 e^{2i\theta} + a^2} e^{-aR \sin \theta} d\theta. \]
We now estimate the magnitude of the integral on the right by the result
\[
\left| \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{C_R} \frac{e^{i\omega z}}{(z^2 + a^2)} \, dz \right| \leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{R}{|R^2 - a^2|} \int_{C_R} e^{-\omega R \sin \theta} \, d\theta.
\]

The multiplicative factor involving $R$ on the right will vanish as $R \to \infty$, so the integral around $C_R$ will vanish if the integral on the right around $C_R$ remains finite or vanishes as $R \to \infty$. There are two cases to consider, the first being when $\omega > 0$, and the second when $\omega < 0$.

If $\omega = 0$ the integral will certainly vanish as $R \to \infty$, because then the integral around $C_R$ becomes \( \int_{C_R} d\theta = \pi \).

The case $\omega > 0$. The integral on the right around $C_R$ will vanish in the limit as $R \to \infty$ provided $\sin \theta \geq 0$ because its integrand vanishes. This happens when $C_R$ becomes the semicircle $C_{R+}$ located in the upper half of the $z$-plane.

The case $\omega < 0$. The integral around $C_R$ will vanish in the limit as $R \to \infty$, provided $\sin \theta \leq 0$ because its integrand vanishes. This happens when $C_R$ becomes the semicircle $C_{R-}$ located in the lower half of the $z$-plane.

We may now apply the residue theorem after proceeding to the limit as $R \to \infty$. When $\omega > 0$ we have $C_R = C_{R+}$, in which case only the pole at $z = ia$ lies inside the contour at which the residue is $-i e^{-\omega a} / (2a)$, so
\[
\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{i\omega x}}{(x^2 + a^2)} \, dx = 2\pi i \times \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \left[ -i e^{-\omega a} \right] = \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} e^{-\omega a} \left( \frac{2}{a} \right), \quad (\omega > 0).
\]

Similarly, when $\omega < 0$ we have $C_R = C_{R-}$, in which case only the pole at $z = -ia$ lies inside the contour at which the residue is $ie^{\omega a} / (2a)$. However, when integrating around $C_{R-}$ in the positive (counterclockwise) sense, the integration along the $x$-axis occurs in the negative sense, that is from $x = R$ to $x = -R$, leading to the result
\[
\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\infty}^{-\infty} \frac{e^{i\omega x}}{(x^2 + a^2)} \, dx = 2\pi i \times \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \left[ i e^{\omega a} \right] = -\sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} e^{\omega a} \left( \frac{2}{a} \right), \quad (\omega < 0).
\]

Reversing the order of the limits in the integral, and compensating by reversing its sign, we arrive at the result
\[
\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{i\omega x}}{(x^2 + a^2)} \, dx = \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} e^{-\omega a} \left( \frac{2}{a} \right), \quad (\omega < 0).
\]

Combining the two results for positive and negative $\omega$ we have shown the Fourier transform $F(\omega)$ of $f(x) = 1/(x^2 + a^2)$ is
\[
F(\omega) = \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} e^{-|a|\omega} \left( \frac{2}{a} \right), \quad (a > 0).
\]
The function $f(x)$ can be recovered from its Fourier transform $F(\omega)$ by means of the inversion integral, though this case is sufficiently simplest that direct integration can be used.

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{e^{-i\omega x} e^{-a|\omega|}}{a} d\omega = \frac{1}{2a} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-a|\omega|} (\cos(\omega x) - i \sin(\omega x)) d\omega.$$ 

The imaginary part of the integrand is an odd function, so its integral vanishes. The real part of the integrand is an even function, so the interval of integration can be halved and replaced by $0 \leq \omega < \infty$, while the resulting integral is doubled, with the result that

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{a} \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-a\omega} \cos(\omega x) d\omega = \frac{1}{a^2 + a^2}.$$ 

**The Inverse Laplace Transform**

Given an elementary function $f(x)$ for which the Laplace transform $F(s)$ exists, the determination of the form of $F(s)$ is usually a matter of routine integration. However, when finding $f(x)$ from $F(s)$ cannot be accomplished by use of a table of Laplace transform pairs and the properties of the transform, it becomes necessary to make use of the Laplace inversion formula

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\gamma - i\infty}^{\gamma + i\infty} F(s) e^{sx} ds. \quad (17)$$

Here the real number $\gamma$ must be chosen such that all the poles of the integrand lie to the left of the line $s = \gamma$ in the complex $s$-plane. This integral is to be interpreted as the limit as $R \to \infty$ of a contour integral around the contour shown in Figure 2. This is called the **Bromwich contour** after the Cambridge mathematician T.J.I.A. Bromwich who introduced it at the beginning of the last century.

**Example:** To illustrate the application of the Laplace inversion integral it will suffice to consider finding $f(x) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{1/\sqrt{s}\}$.

The function $1/\sqrt{s}$ has a branch point at the origin, so the Bromwich contour must be modified to make the function single valued inside the contour. We will use the contour shown in Figure 3, where the branch point is enclosed in a small circle about the origin while the complex $s$-plane is cut along the negative real axis to make the function single valued inside the contour.

Let $C_{R1}$ denote the large circular arc and $C_{R2}$ denote the small circle around the origin. Then on $C_{R1}$ $s = \gamma + Re^{i\theta}$ for $\frac{\pi}{2} \leq \theta \leq \frac{3\pi}{2}$, and for subsequent use we now set $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2} + \phi$, so $s = \gamma + iRe^{i\phi}$ with $0 \leq \phi \leq \pi$. Consequently, $ds = -Re^{i\phi} d\phi$, with the result that $|ds| = R d\phi$.

Thus, when $R$ is sufficiently large $|s| = |\gamma + iRe^{i\phi}| \geq \left||Re^{i\phi}| - |\gamma|\right| = R - \gamma$.

Also for subsequent use, we need the result that

$$|e^{sx}| = |\exp\left[x [(\gamma - R \sin \phi) + iR \cos \phi]\right]| = e^{\gamma x} \exp[-Rx \sin \phi].$$
Figure 2. The Bromwich contour for the inversion of a Laplace transform.

The integral around the modified Bromwich contour is the sum of the integrals along each of its separate parts, so we now estimate the magnitudes of the respective integrals.

The magnitude of the integral around the large circular arc $C_{R_1}$ can be estimated as

$$I_R = \left| \int_{ABEF} e^{sx} \sqrt{s} \, ds \right| \leq \int_{ABEF} |e^{sx}| |ds| \leq \frac{e^{x R}}{(R-\gamma)^{1/2}} \int_0^{\pi} \exp[-Rx \sin \phi] \, d\phi.$$  

The symmetry of $\sin \phi$ about $\phi = \frac{1}{2} \pi$ allows the inequality to be rewritten as

$$I_R \leq 2e^{x R} \frac{R}{(R-\gamma)^{1/2}} \int_0^{\pi/2} \exp[-Rx \sin \phi] \, d\phi,$$

so after use of the Jordan inequality in form (iii), this becomes

$$I_R \leq \frac{\pi e^{x R}}{(R-\gamma)^{1/2}} (1 - e^{-Rx}), \quad \text{when } x > 0.$$  

This shows that when $x > 0$, \( \lim_{R \to \infty} I_R = 0 \), so that the integral around $C_{R_1}$ vanishes in the limit as $R \to \infty$. 
On the small circle $C_{R_2}$ with radius $\varepsilon$ we have $s = \varepsilon e^{i\theta}$, so $ds = i\varepsilon e^{i\theta} d\theta$ and $s^{1/2} = e^{i\theta/2} \sqrt{\varepsilon}$, so the integral around $C_{R_2}$ becomes

$$\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \frac{1}{e^{i\theta/2} \sqrt{\varepsilon}} \exp \left[ i \varepsilon x \left( \cos \theta + i \sin \theta \right) \right] i\varepsilon e^{i\theta} d\theta,$$

but this vanishes as $\varepsilon \to 0$, so in the limit the integral around $C_{R_2}$ also vanishes.

Along the top $BC$ of the branch cut $s = re^{\pi i} = -r$, so $\sqrt{s} = e^{\pi i/2} \sqrt{r} = i\sqrt{r}$, so that $ds = -dr$. Along the bottom $BC$ of the branch cut the situation is different, because there $s = re^{-\pi i} = -r$, so $\sqrt{s} = e^{-\pi i/2} \sqrt{r} = -i\sqrt{r}$, where again $ds = -dr$.

The construction of the Bromwich contour has ensured that no poles lie inside it, so from the Cauchy residue theorem, in the limit as $R \to \infty$ and $\varepsilon \to 0$, the only contributions to the contour integral come from integration along opposite sides of the branch cut, so we arrive at the result

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\gamma^{-i\infty}}^{\gamma+i\infty} \frac{e^{sx}}{\sqrt{s}} ds = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \left\{ -\int_{\infty}^{0} \frac{i e^{-rx}}{\sqrt{r}} dr + \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{i e^{-rx}}{\sqrt{r}} dr \right\} = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-rx}}{\sqrt{r}} dr.$$

Figure 3. The modified Bromwich contour with an indentation and a cut.
Finally, the change of variable \( r = u^2 \), followed by setting \( v = u\sqrt{x} \), changes this result to

\[
\frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\gamma - i\infty}^{\gamma + i\infty} e^{sx} \frac{ds}{\sqrt{s}} = \frac{2}{\pi \sqrt{x}} \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-v^2} dv.
\]

This last definite integral is a standard integral, and from entry 15.3.1(29) we have

\[
\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-v^2} dv = \sqrt{\pi}/2,
\]

so we have shown that

\[
\mathcal{L}^{-1}\left\{ \frac{1}{\sqrt{s}} \right\} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi x}}, \quad \text{for } \Re\{s\} > 0.
\]

The inversion integral can generate an infinite series if an infinite number of isolated poles lie along a line parallel to the imaginary \( s \)-axis. This happens with \( \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left\{ \frac{1}{s \cosh s} \right\} \), where the poles are actually located on the imaginary axis.

We omit the details, but straightforward reasoning using the standard Bromwich contour shows that

\[
f(x) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left\{ \frac{1}{s \cosh s} \right\} = 1 + \frac{4}{\pi} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (-1)^{n+1} \frac{\cos \left[ \left(2n+1\right)\pi x/2 \right]}{2n + 1}.
\]

To understand why this periodic representation of \( f(x) \) has occurred, notice that \( F(s) = 1/[s \cosh s] \) is the Laplace transform of the piecewise continuous function

\[
f(x) = \begin{cases} 
0, & 0 < x < 1 \\
2, & 1 < x < 3 \\
0, & 3 < x < 4,
\end{cases}
\]

that is periodic with period 4 and defined for \( x \geq 0 \). So \( f(x) \) is in fact the Fourier series representation of this function with period 4 when it is defined for all \( x \). Here the term period is used in the usual sense that \( X \) is the period of \( f(x) \) if \( f(X + x) = f(x) \) is true for all \( x \) and \( X \) is the smallest value for which this result is true.
# Index of Special Functions and Notations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Notation</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Section of formula containing its definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$a_m$</td>
<td>Amplitude of an elliptic function</td>
<td>12.2.1.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\sim$</td>
<td>Asymptotic relationship</td>
<td>1.14.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\alpha$</td>
<td>Modular angle of an elliptic integral</td>
<td>12.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\arg z$</td>
<td>Argument of complex number $z$</td>
<td>2.1.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$A(x)$</td>
<td>$A(x) = 2P(x) - 1$; probability function</td>
<td>13.1.1.1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$A$</td>
<td>Matrix</td>
<td>1.5.1.1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$A^{-1}$</td>
<td>Multiplicative inverse of a square matrix $A$</td>
<td>1.5.1.1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$B_n$</td>
<td>Bernoulli number</td>
<td>1.3.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$B^*_n$</td>
<td>Alternative Bernoulli number</td>
<td>1.3.1.1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$B_n(x)$</td>
<td>Bernoulli polynomial</td>
<td>1.3.2.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$B(x,y)$</td>
<td>Beta function</td>
<td>11.1.7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\binom{n}{k}$</td>
<td>Binomial coefficient</td>
<td>1.2.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(a)_n$</td>
<td>Pochhammer symbol</td>
<td>0.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C(x)$</td>
<td>Fresnel cosine integral</td>
<td>14.1.1.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_{ij}$</td>
<td>Cofactor of element $a_{ij}$ in a square matrix $A$</td>
<td>1.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$^nC_m$ or $nC_m$</td>
<td>Combination symbol $^nC_m = \binom{n}{m}$</td>
<td>16.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{cn} u$</td>
<td>Jacobian elliptic function</td>
<td>12.2.1.1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{cn}^{-1} u$</td>
<td>Inverse Jacobian elliptic function</td>
<td>12.4.1.1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{curl} \mathbf{F} = \nabla \times \mathbf{F}$</td>
<td>Curl of vector $\mathbf{F}$</td>
<td>23.8.1.1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\delta(x)$</td>
<td>Dirac delta function</td>
<td>19.1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\delta_{ij}$</td>
<td>Kronecker delta symbol</td>
<td>1.4.2.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$D_n(x)$</td>
<td>Dirichlet kernel</td>
<td>1.13.1.10.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{dn} u$</td>
<td>Jacobian elliptic function</td>
<td>12.2.1.1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{dn}^{-1} u$</td>
<td>Inverse Jacobian elliptic function</td>
<td>12.4.1.1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{div} \mathbf{F} = \nabla \cdot \mathbf{F}$</td>
<td>Divergence of vector $\mathbf{F}$</td>
<td>23.8.1.1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$e^{i\theta}$</td>
<td>Euler formula; $e^{i\theta} = \cos \theta + i \sin \theta$</td>
<td>2.1.1.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$e$</td>
<td>Euler’s constant</td>
<td>0.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$Ei(x)$</td>
<td>Exponential integral</td>
<td>5.1.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$E(\varphi, k)$</td>
<td>Incomplete elliptic integral of the second kind</td>
<td>12.1.1.1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$E(k), E'(k)$</td>
<td>Complete elliptic integrals of the second kind</td>
<td>13.1.1.1.8, 13.1.1.1.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notation</td>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Section of formula containing its definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$e^{Az}$</td>
<td>Matrix exponential</td>
<td>1.5.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erf $x$</td>
<td>Error function</td>
<td>13.2.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erfc $x$</td>
<td>Complementary error function</td>
<td>13.2.1.1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$E_n$</td>
<td>Euler number</td>
<td>1.3.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$E_n^*$</td>
<td>Alternative Euler number</td>
<td>1.3.1.1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$E_n(x)$</td>
<td>Euler polynomial</td>
<td>1.3.2.3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$f(x)$</td>
<td>A function of $x$</td>
<td>1.15.1.1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$f^{(n)}(x)$</td>
<td>$n$th derivative $d^n f/dx^n$</td>
<td>1.12.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$f^{(n)}(x_0)$</td>
<td>$n$th derivative $d^n f/dx^n$ at $x_0$</td>
<td>1.12.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$F(\phi, k)$</td>
<td>Incomplete elliptic integral of the first kind</td>
<td>12.1.1.1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
<td>\Phi_n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\nabla \phi$</td>
<td>Gradient of the scalar function $\phi$</td>
<td>23.8.1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\Gamma(x)$</td>
<td>Gamma function</td>
<td>11.1.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\Gamma(a, x), \gamma(a, x)$</td>
<td>Incomplete gamma functions</td>
<td>11.1.8.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\gamma$</td>
<td>Euler–Mascheroni constant</td>
<td>1.11.1.1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$H(x)$</td>
<td>Heaviside step function</td>
<td>19.1.2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$H_n(x)$</td>
<td>Hermite polynomial</td>
<td>18.5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$i$</td>
<td>Imaginary unit</td>
<td>1.1.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{Im}{z}$</td>
<td>Imaginary part of $z = x + iy$; $\text{Im}{z} = y$</td>
<td>1.1.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$I$</td>
<td>Unit (identity) matrix</td>
<td>1.5.1.1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$i^n\text{erfc}x$</td>
<td>$n$th repeated integral of $\text{erfc}x$</td>
<td>13.2.7.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$I_v(x)$</td>
<td>Modified Bessel function of the first kind of order $v$</td>
<td>17.6.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\int f(x)dx$</td>
<td>Indefinite integral (antiderivative) of $f(x)$</td>
<td>1.15.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\int_a^b f(x)dx$</td>
<td>Definite integral of $f(x)$ from $x = a$ to $x = b$</td>
<td>1.15.2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$j_n(x)$</td>
<td>Spherical Bessel function</td>
<td>17.14.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$J_{\nu}(x)$</td>
<td>Bessel function of the first kind of order $\nu$</td>
<td>17.1.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$k$</td>
<td>Modulus of an elliptic integral</td>
<td>12.1.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$k'$</td>
<td>Complementary modulus of an elliptic integral; $k' = \sqrt{1 - k^2}$</td>
<td>12.1.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\mathbf{K}(k), \mathbf{K}'(k)$</td>
<td>Complete elliptic integrals of the first kind</td>
<td>12.1.1.1.7, 12.1.1.1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$k_v(x)$</td>
<td>Modified Bessel function of the second kind of order $v$</td>
<td>17.6.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L[f(x); s]$</td>
<td>Laplace transform of $f(x)$</td>
<td>19.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_n(x)$</td>
<td>Laguerre polynomial</td>
<td>18.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_n^{(\mu)}$</td>
<td>Generalized Laguerre polynomial</td>
<td>18.4.8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\log_a x$</td>
<td>Logarithm of $x$ to the base $a$</td>
<td>2.2.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\ln x$</td>
<td>Natural logarithm of $x$ (to the base $e$)</td>
<td>2.2.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$M_{ij}$</td>
<td>Minor of element $a_{ij}$ in a square matrix $A$</td>
<td>1.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$n!$</td>
<td>Factorial $n; n! = 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdots n$; $0! = 1$</td>
<td>1.2.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(2n)!!$</td>
<td>Double factorial; $(2n)!! = 2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \cdots (2n)$</td>
<td>15.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(2n - 1)!!$</td>
<td>Double factorial; $(2n - 1)!! = 1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (2n - 1)$</td>
<td>15.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\left\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \right\rfloor$</td>
<td>Integral part of $n/2$</td>
<td>18.2.4.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$^nP_m$ or $nP_m$</td>
<td>Permutation symbol; $^nP_m = \frac{n!}{(n-m)!}$</td>
<td>1.6.1.1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notation</td>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Section of formula containing its definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_n(x)$</td>
<td>Legendre polynomial</td>
<td>18.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_n^m(x)$</td>
<td>First solution of the associated Legendre equation</td>
<td>18.2.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x)$</td>
<td>Jacobi polynomial of degree $n$</td>
<td>18.6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_n(x)$</td>
<td>Normal probability distribution</td>
<td>13.1.1.1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\prod_{k=1}^{n} u_k$</td>
<td>Product symbol; $\prod_{k=1}^{n} u_k = u_1 u_2 \cdots u_n$</td>
<td>1.9.1.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.V. $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)dx$</td>
<td>Cauchy principal value of the integral</td>
<td>1.15.4.IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\pi$</td>
<td>Ratio of the circumference of a circle to its diameter</td>
<td>0.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\Pi(x)$</td>
<td>pi function</td>
<td>11.1.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\Pi(\varphi, n, k)$</td>
<td>Incomplete elliptic integral of the third kind</td>
<td>12.1.1.1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\psi(z)$</td>
<td>psi (digamma) function</td>
<td>11.1.6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$Q(x)$</td>
<td>Probability function; $Q(x) = 1 - P(x)$</td>
<td>13.1.1.1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$Q(x)$</td>
<td>Quadratic form</td>
<td>1.5.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$Q_n(x)$</td>
<td>Legendre function of the second kind</td>
<td>18.2.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$Q_n^m(x)$</td>
<td>Second solution of the associated Legendre equation</td>
<td>18.2.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$r$</td>
<td>Modulus of $z = x + iy$; $r = (x^2 + y^2)^{1/2}$</td>
<td>1.1.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{Re}{z}$</td>
<td>Real part of $z = x + iy$; $\text{Re}{z} = x$</td>
<td>1.1.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{sgn}(x)$</td>
<td>Sign of $x$</td>
<td>12.2.1.1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{sn} \ u$</td>
<td>Jacobian elliptic function</td>
<td>12.4.1.1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{sn}^{-1} \ u$</td>
<td>Inverse Jacobian elliptic function</td>
<td>14.1.1.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$S(x)$</td>
<td>Fresnel sine integral</td>
<td>14.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{Si}(x)$, $\text{Ci}(x)$</td>
<td>Sine and cosine integrals</td>
<td>14.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\sum_{k=m}^{n} a_k$</td>
<td>Summation symbol; $\sum_{k=m}^{n} a_k = a_m + a_{m+1} + \cdots + a_n$</td>
<td>1.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and if $n &lt; m$ we define $\sum_{k=m}^{n} a_k = 0$.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\sum_{k=m}^{\infty} a_k (x - x_0)^k$</td>
<td>Power series expanded about $x_0$</td>
<td>1.11.1.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$T_n(x)$</td>
<td>Chebyshev polynomial</td>
<td>18.3.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{tr} \ A$</td>
<td>Trace of a square matrix $A$</td>
<td>15.1.1.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$U_n(x)$</td>
<td>Chebyshev polynomial</td>
<td>18.3.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$x = f^{-1}(y)$</td>
<td>Function inverse to $y = f(x)$</td>
<td>1.11.1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$Y_n(x)$</td>
<td>Bessel function of the second kind of order $v$</td>
<td>17.1.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$Y_n^{(\nu)}(\theta, \phi)$</td>
<td>Spherical harmonic</td>
<td>18.2.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$y_n(x)$</td>
<td>Spherical Bessel function</td>
<td>17.14.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$z$</td>
<td>Complex number $z = x + iy$</td>
<td>1.1.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\bar{z}$</td>
<td>Complex conjugate of $z = x + iy$; $\bar{z} = x - iy$</td>
<td>1.1.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$z_b {x[n]}$</td>
<td>bilateral $z$-transform</td>
<td>26.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$z_u {x[n]}$</td>
<td>unilateral $z$-transform</td>
<td>26.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 0
Quick Reference List of Frequently Used Data

0.1 USEFUL IDENTITIES
0.1.1 Trigonometric Identities

\[
\begin{align*}
\sin^2 x + \cos^2 x &= 1 \\
\sec^2 x &= 1 + \tan^2 x \\
\csc^2 x &= 1 + \cot^2 x \\
\sin 2x &= 2\sin x \cos x \\
\cos 2x &= \cos^2 x - \sin^2 x \\
&= 1 - 2\sin^2 x \\
&= 2\cos^2 x - 1 \\
\sin^2 x &= \frac{1}{2} (1 - \cos 2x) \\
\cos^2 x &= \frac{1}{2} (1 + \cos 2x) \\
\sin (x + y) &= \sin x \cos y + \cos x \sin y \\
\sin (x - y) &= \sin x \cos y - \cos x \sin y \\
\cos (x + y) &= \cos x \cos y - \sin x \sin y \\
\cos (x - y) &= \cos x \cos y + \sin x \sin y \\
\tan (x + y) &= \frac{\tan x + \tan y}{1 - \tan x \tan y} \\
\tan (x - y) &= \frac{\tan x - \tan y}{1 + \tan x \tan y} \\
\cot (x + y) &= \frac{\cot x \cot y - 1}{\cot x + \cot y} \\
\cot (x - y) &= \frac{\cot x \cot y + 1}{\cot y - \cot x}
\end{align*}
\]
0.1.2 Hyperbolic Identities

\[
\begin{align*}
\cosh^2 x - \sinh^2 x &= 1 \\
\text{sech}^2 x &= 1 - \tanh^2 x \\
\csch^2 x &= \coth^2 x - 1 \\
\sinh 2x &= 2 \sinh x \cosh x \\
\cosh 2x &= \cosh^2 x + \sinh^2 x \\
&= 1 + 2 \sinh^2 x \\
&= 2 \cosh^2 x - 1 \\
\sinh^2 x &= \frac{1}{2} (\cosh 2x - 1) \\
\cosh^2 x &= \frac{1}{2} (\cosh 2x + 1) \\
\sinh (x + y) &= \sinh x \cosh y + \cosh x \sinh y \\
\sinh (x - y) &= \sinh x \cosh y - \cosh x \sinh y \\
\cosh (x + y) &= \cosh x \cosh y + \sinh x \sinh y \\
\cosh (x - y) &= \cosh x \cosh y - \sinh x \sinh y \\
\tanh (x + y) &= \frac{\tanh x + \tanh y}{1 + \tanh x \tanh y} \\
\tanh (x - y) &= \frac{\tanh x - \tanh y}{1 - \tanh x \tanh y} \\
\coth (x + y) &= \frac{\coth x \coth y + 1}{\coth x + \coth y} \\
\coth (x - y) &= \frac{1 - \coth x \coth y}{\coth x - \coth y}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\arcsinh \frac{x}{a} &= \ln \left[ \frac{x + \sqrt{x^2 + a^2}}{a} \right] \quad [\infty < x/a < \infty] \\
\arccosh \frac{x}{a} &= \ln \left[ \frac{x + \sqrt{x^2 - a^2}}{a} \right] \quad [x/a > 1] \\
\arctanh \frac{x}{a} &= \frac{1}{2} \ln \left[ \frac{a + x}{a - x} \right] \quad [x^2 < a^2]
\end{align*}
\]

0.2 COMPLEX RELATIONSHIPS

\[
\begin{align*}
e^{ix} &= \cos x + i \sin x \\
\sinh x &= \frac{e^x - e^{-x}}{2} \\
\sin x &= \frac{e^{ix} - e^{-ix}}{2i} \\
\cosh x &= \frac{e^x + e^{-x}}{2} \\
\cos x &= \frac{e^{ix} + e^{-ix}}{2} \\
\sin ix &= i \sinh x \\
(\cos x + i \sin x)^n &= \cos nx + i \sin nx \\
\sin nx &= \text{Im}\{(\cos x + i \sin x)^n\} \\
\cos nx &= \text{Re}\{(\cos x + i \sin x)^n\} \\
\cos ix &= \cos x \\
\sin ix &= i \sin x \\
\cosh ix &= \cosh x
\end{align*}
\]
0.3 CONSTANTS, BINOMIAL COEFFICIENTS AND THE
POCHHAMMER SYMBOL

\[ e = 2.71828182845904 \quad \gamma = 0.57721566490153 \]
\[ \pi = 3.14159265358979 \quad (2\pi)^{-1/2} = 0.39894228040143 \]
\[ \log_{10} e = 0.43429448190325 \quad \Gamma \left( \frac{1}{2} \right) = \pi^{1/2} = 1.77245385090551 \]
\[ \ln 10 = 2.30258509299404 \]

Binomial Coefficients

\[ \binom{p}{n} = \frac{p(p-1)\ldots(p-n+1)}{n!} = \frac{p!}{n!(p-n)!}, \quad \binom{p}{0} = 1 \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots, p \geq n] \]

Pochhammer Symbol

\[(a)_n = a(a+1)(a+2)\ldots(a+n-1) = \Gamma(a+n)/\Gamma(n)\]

0.4 DERIVATIVES OF ELEMENTARY FUNCTIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(f(x))</th>
<th>(f'(x))</th>
<th>(f(x))</th>
<th>(f'(x))</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(x^n)</td>
<td>(nx^{n-1})</td>
<td>(\sinh ax)</td>
<td>(a \cosh ax)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e^{ax})</td>
<td>(ae^{ax})</td>
<td>(\cosh ax)</td>
<td>(a \sinh ax)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\ln x)</td>
<td>(1/x)</td>
<td>(\tanh ax)</td>
<td>(a \sech^2 ax)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\sin ax)</td>
<td>(a \cos ax)</td>
<td>(\csch ax)</td>
<td>(-a \csch ax \coth ax)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\cos ax)</td>
<td>(-a \sin ax)</td>
<td>(\sech ax)</td>
<td>(-a \sech ax \tanh ax)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\tan ax)</td>
<td>(a \sec^2 ax)</td>
<td>(\coth ax)</td>
<td>(-a \csch^2 ax)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\csc ax)</td>
<td>(-a \csc ax \cot ax)</td>
<td>(\text{arcsinh} \ \frac{x}{a})</td>
<td>(1/\sqrt{x^2 + a^2})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\sec ax)</td>
<td>(a \sec ax \tan ax)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\cot ax)</td>
<td>(-a \csc^2 ax)</td>
<td>(\text{arccosh} \ \frac{x}{a})</td>
<td>(\begin{cases} \frac{1/\sqrt{x^2 - a^2}}{a} &amp; \text{for } \text{arccosh } \frac{x}{a} &gt; 0, \frac{x}{a} &gt; 1, \ -1/\sqrt{x^2 - a^2} &amp; \text{for } \text{arccosh } \frac{x}{a} &lt; 0, \frac{x}{a} &gt; 1. \end{cases})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\arcsin \frac{x}{a})</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(1/\sqrt{a^2 - x^2})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\arccos \frac{x}{a})</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(-1/\sqrt{a^2 - x^2})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\arctan \frac{x}{a})</td>
<td>(a/(a^2 + x^2))</td>
<td>(\text{arctanh} \ \frac{x}{a})</td>
<td>(a/(a^2 - x^2) \quad [x^2 &lt; a^2])</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
0.5 RULES OF DIFFERENTIATION AND INTEGRATION

1. \( \frac{d}{dx}(u + v) = \frac{du}{dx} + \frac{dv}{dx} \) (sum)

2. \( \frac{d}{dx}(uv) = u \frac{dv}{dx} + v \frac{du}{dx} \) (product)

3. \( \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{u}{v}\right) = \left(\frac{v \frac{du}{dx} - u \frac{dv}{dx}}{v^2}\right) \) for \( v \neq 0 \) (quotient)

4. \( \frac{d}{dx}[f\{g(x)\}] = f'\{g(x)\} \frac{dg}{dx} \) (function of a function)

5. \( \int (u + v) \, dx = \int u \, dx + \int v \, dx \) (sum)

6. \( \int u \, dv = uv - \int v \, du \) (integration by parts)

7. \( \frac{d}{d\alpha} \int_{\phi(\alpha)}^{\psi(\alpha)} f(x, \alpha) \, dx = \left(\frac{d\psi}{d\alpha}\right) f(\psi, \alpha) - \left(\frac{d\phi}{d\alpha}\right) f(\phi, \alpha) + \int_{\phi(\alpha)}^{\psi(\alpha)} \frac{\partial f}{\partial \alpha} \, dx \) (differentiation of an integral containing a parameter)

0.6 STANDARD INTEGRALS

Common standard forms

1. \( \int x^n \, dx = \frac{1}{n + 1} x^{n+1} \) \([n \neq -1]\)

2. \( \int \frac{1}{x} \, dx = \ln |x| = \begin{cases} \ln x, & x > 0 \\ \ln (-x), & x < 0 \end{cases} \)

3. \( e^{ax} \, dx = \frac{1}{a} e^{ax} \)

4. \( \int a^x \, dx = \frac{a^x}{\ln a} \) \([a \neq 1, a > 0]\)

5. \( \int \ln x \, dx = x \ln x - x \)

6. \( \int \sin ax \, dx = -\frac{1}{a} \cos ax \)

7. \( \int \cos ax \, dx = \frac{1}{a} \sin ax \)

8. \( \int \tan ax \, dx = -\frac{1}{a} \ln |\cos ax| \)

9. \( \int \sinh ax \, dx = \frac{1}{a} \cosh ax \)

10. \( \int \cosh ax \, dx = \frac{1}{a} \sinh ax \)
11. \(\int \tanh ax \, dx = \frac{1}{a} \ln |\cosh ax|\)

12. \(\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} \, dx = \arcsin \frac{x}{a} \quad [x^2 \leq a^2]\)

13. \(\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2 - a^2}} \, dx = \frac{1}{a} \ln |x + \sqrt{x^2 - a^2}| \quad [a^2 \leq x^2]\)

14. \(\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} \, dx = \arcsinh \frac{x}{a} = \ln |x + \sqrt{a^2 + x^2}|\)

15. \(\int \frac{1}{x^2 + a^2} \, dx = \frac{1}{a} \arctan \frac{x}{a}\)

16. \(\int \frac{dx}{a^2 - b^2x^2} = \frac{1}{2ab} \ln \left| \frac{a + bx}{a - bx} \right| = \frac{1}{ab} \tanh \frac{bx}{a} \quad [a^2 > b^2x^2]\)

**Integrands involving algebraic functions**

17. \(\int (a + bx)^n \, dx = \frac{(a + bx)^{n+1}}{b(n + 1)} \quad [n \neq -1]\)

18. \(\int \frac{1}{a + bx} \, dx = \frac{1}{b} \ln |a + bx|\)

19. \(\int x(a + bx)^n \, dx = \frac{(a + bx)^{n+1}}{b^2} \left( \frac{a + bx}{n + 2} - \frac{a}{n + 1} \right) \quad [n \neq -1, -2]\)

20. \(\int \frac{x}{a + bx} \, dx = \frac{x}{b} - \frac{a}{b^2} \ln |a + bx|\)

21. \(\int \frac{x^2}{a + bx} \, dx = \frac{1}{b^3} \left[ \frac{1}{2} (a + bx)^2 - 2a(a + bx) + a^2 \ln |a + bx| \right]\)

22. \(\int \frac{x}{(a + bx)^2} \, dx = \frac{1}{b^3} \left( \frac{a}{a + bx} + \ln |a + bx| \right)\)

23. \(\int \frac{x^2}{(a + bx)^2} \, dx = \frac{1}{b^3} \left( a + bx - \frac{a^2}{a + bx} - 2a \ln |a + bx| \right)\)

24. \(\int \frac{1}{x(a + bx)} \, dx = \frac{1}{a} \ln \left| \frac{x}{a + bx} \right|\)

25. \(\int \frac{1}{x^2(a + bx)} \, dx = -\frac{1}{ax} + \frac{b}{a^2} \ln \left| \frac{a + bx}{x} \right|\)

26. \(\int \frac{1}{x(a + bx)^2} \, dx = \frac{1}{a(a + bx)} + \frac{1}{a^2} \ln \left| \frac{x}{a + bx} \right|\)

27. \(\int \frac{1}{x \sqrt{a + bx}} \, dx = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\sqrt{a}} \ln \left| \frac{\sqrt{a + bx} - \sqrt{a}}{\sqrt{a} + \sqrt{bx + a}} \right| & \text{if } a > 0 \\ \frac{2}{\sqrt{-a}} \arctan \left( \frac{\sqrt{a + bx}}{-a} \right) & \text{if } a < 0 \end{cases}\)
28. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^2 \sqrt{a + bx}} \, dx = -\frac{\sqrt{a + bx}}{2a} + \frac{b}{2a} \int \frac{1}{x \sqrt{a + bx}} \, dx \]

29. \[ \int \frac{x}{\sqrt{a + bx}} \, dx = \frac{2}{3b^2} (bx - 2a) \sqrt{a + bx} \]

30. \[ \int \frac{x^2 \, dx}{\sqrt{a + bx}} = \frac{2}{15b^3} (8a^2 + 3b^2x^2 - 4abx) \sqrt{a + bx} \]

31. \[ \int (a + bx)^n \, dx = \frac{2}{b} \frac{(a + bx)^{1+n/2}}{n+2} \quad [n \neq -2] \]

32. \[ \int \frac{\sqrt{a + bx}}{x} \, dx = 2 \sqrt{a + bx} + a \int \frac{1}{x \sqrt{a + bx}} \, dx \]

33. \[ \int x \sqrt{a + bx} \, dx = \frac{2}{15b^2} (3bx - 2a)(a + bx)^{3/2} \]

34. \[ \int \sqrt{a^2 + x^2} \, dx = \frac{x}{2} \sqrt{a^2 + x^2} + \frac{a^2}{2} \text{arcsinh} \frac{x}{a} \]

35. \[ \int x^2 \sqrt{a^2 + x^2} \, dx = \frac{x}{8} (a^2 + 2x^2) \sqrt{a^2 + x^2} - \frac{a^4}{8} \text{arcsinh} \frac{x}{a} \]

36. \[ \int \frac{\sqrt{a^2 + x^2}}{x} \, dx = \sqrt{a^2 + x^2} - a \ln \left[ \frac{(a^2 + x^2)^{1/2} + a}{x} \right] \]

37. \[ \int \frac{\sqrt{a^2 + x^2}}{x^2} \, dx = \ln \left[ (a^2 + x^2)^{1/2} + x \right] - \sqrt{a^2 + x^2} \int \frac{1}{x} \, dx \]

38. \[ \int \frac{1}{x \sqrt{a^2 + x^2}} \, dx = -\frac{1}{a} \ln \left[ \frac{(a^2 + x^2)^{1/2} + a}{x} \right] \]

39. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^2 \sqrt{a^2 + x^2}} \, dx = -\frac{\sqrt{a^2 + x^2}}{a^2 x} \]

40. \[ \int \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} \, dx = \frac{x}{2} \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} + \frac{a^2}{2} \text{arcsin} \frac{x}{|a|} \quad [x^2 < a^2] \]

41. \[ \int \frac{1}{x \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} \, dx = -\frac{1}{a} \ln \left[ \frac{(a^2 - x^2)^{1/2} + a}{x} \right] \quad [x^2 < a^2] \]

42. \[ \int \frac{x^2 - a^2}{x} \, dx = \frac{x}{2} \sqrt{x^2 - a^2} - \frac{a^2}{2} \ln \left[ (x^2 - a^2)^{1/2} + x \right] \quad [a^2 < x^2] \]

43. \[ \int \frac{x^2 - a^2}{x} \, dx = \sqrt{x^2 - a^2} - a \text{arccsc} \frac{x}{|a|} \quad [a^2 \leq x^2] \]

44. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^2 \sqrt{x^2 - a^2}} \, dx = \frac{\sqrt{x^2 - a^2}}{a^2 x} \quad [a^2 < x^2] \]
45. \[ \int \frac{1}{(a^2 + x^2)^2} \, dx = \frac{x}{2a^2(a^2 + x^2)} + \frac{1}{2a^3} \arctan \frac{x}{a} \]
46. \[ \int \frac{1}{(a^2 - x^2)^2} \, dx = \frac{x}{2a^2(a^2 - x^2)} - \frac{1}{4a^3} \ln \left[ \frac{x-a}{x+a} \right] \quad [x^2 < a^2] \]

Integrands involving trigonometric functions, powers of x, and exponentials

47. \[ \int \sin ax \, dx = -\frac{1}{a} \cos ax \]
48. \[ \int \sin^2 ax \, dx = \frac{x}{2} - \frac{\sin 2ax}{4a} \]
49. \[ \int \cos ax \, dx = \frac{1}{a} \sin ax \]
50. \[ \int \cos^2 ax \, dx = \frac{x}{2} + \frac{\sin 2ax}{4a} \]
51. \[ \int \sin ax \sin bx \, dx = \frac{\sin(a-b)x}{2(a-b)} - \frac{\sin(a+b)x}{2(a+b)} \quad [a^2 \neq b^2] \]
52. \[ \int \cos ax \cos bx \, dx = \frac{\sin(a-b)x}{2(a-b)} + \frac{\sin(a+b)x}{2(a+b)} \quad [a^2 \neq b^2] \]
53. \[ \int \sin ax \cos bx \, dx = -\frac{\cos(a+b)x}{2(a+b)} - \frac{\cos(a-b)x}{2(a-b)} \quad [a^2 \neq b^2] \]
54. \[ \int \sin ax \cos ax \, dx = \frac{\sin^2 ax}{2a} \]
55. \[ \int x \sin ax \, dx = \frac{\sin ax}{a^2} - \frac{x \cos ax}{a} \]
56. \[ \int x^2 \sin ax \, dx = \frac{2x \sin ax}{a^2} - \frac{(a^2x^2 - 2)}{a^3} \cos ax \]
57. \[ \int x \cos ax \, dx = \frac{x \sin ax}{a} + \frac{1}{a^2} \cos ax \]
58. \[ \int x^2 \cos ax \, dx = \left( \frac{x^2}{a} - \frac{2}{a^3} \right) \sin ax + \frac{2x \cos ax}{a^2} \]
59. \[ \int e^{ax} \sin bx \, dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{a^2 + b^2} (a \sin bx - b \cos bx) \]
60. \[ \int e^{ax} \cos bx \, dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{a^2 + b^2} (a \cos bx + b \sin bx) \]
61. \[ \int \sec ax \, dx = \frac{1}{a} \ln |\sec ax + \tan ax| \]
62. \[ \int \csc ax \, dx = \frac{1}{a} \ln |\csc ax - \cot ax| \]
63. \[ \int \cot ax \, dx = \frac{1}{a} \ln |\sin ax| \]
64. \[ \int \tan^2 ax \, dx = \frac{1}{a} \tan ax - x \]
65. \[ \int \sec^2 ax \, dx = \frac{1}{a} \tan ax \]
66. \[ \int \csc^2 ax \, dx = -\frac{1}{a} \cot ax \]
67. \[ \int \cot^2 ax \, dx = -\frac{1}{a} \cot ax - x \]

Integrands involving inverse trigonometric functions

68. \[ \int \arcsin ax \, dx = x \arcsin ax + \frac{1}{a} \sqrt{1 - a^2 x^2} \quad [a^2 x^2 \leq 1] \]
69. \[ \int \arccos ax \, dx = x \arccos ax - \frac{1}{a} \sqrt{1 - a^2 x^2} \quad [a^2 x^2 \leq 1] \]
70. \[ \int \arctan ax \, dx = x \arctan ax - \frac{1}{2a} \ln (1 + a^2 x^2) \]

Integrands involving exponential and logarithmic functions

71. \[ \int e^{ax} \, dx = \frac{1}{a} e^{ax} \]
72. \[ \int b^{ax} \, dx = \frac{1}{a \ln b} b^{ax} \quad [b > 0, b \neq 1] \]
73. \[ \int xe^{ax} \, dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{a^2} (ax - 1) \]
74. \[ \int \ln ax \, dx = x \ln ax - x \]
75. \[ \int \frac{\ln ax}{x} \, dx = \frac{1}{2} (\ln ax)^2 \]
76. \[ \int \frac{1}{x \ln ax} \, dx = \ln |\ln ax| \]

Integrands involving hyperbolic functions

77. \[ \int \sinh ax \, dx = \frac{1}{a} \cosh ax \]
78. \[ \int \sinh^2 ax \, dx = \frac{\sinh 2ax}{4a} - \frac{x}{2} \]
79. \[ \int x \sinh ax \, dx = \frac{x}{a} \cosh ax - \frac{1}{a^2} \sinh ax \]
80. \[ \int \cosh ax \, dx = \frac{1}{a} \sinh ax \]
81. \( \int \cosh^2 ax \, dx = \frac{\sinh 2ax}{4a} + \frac{x}{2} \)

82. \( \int x \cosh ax \, dx = \frac{x}{a} \sinh ax - \frac{1}{a^2} \cosh ax \)

83. \( \int e^{ax} \sinh bx \, dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{2} \left( \frac{e^{bx}}{a+b} - \frac{e^{-bx}}{a-b} \right) \quad [a^2 \neq b^2] \)

84. \( \int e^{ax} \cosh bx \, dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{2} \left( \frac{e^{bx}}{a+b} + \frac{e^{-bx}}{a-b} \right) \quad [a^2 \neq b^2] \)

85. \( \int e^{ax} \sinh ax \, dx = \frac{1}{4a} e^{2ax} - \frac{1}{2}x \)

86. \( \int e^{ax} \cosh ax \, dx = \frac{1}{4a} e^{2ax} + \frac{1}{2}x \)

87. \( \int \tanh ax \, dx = \frac{1}{a} \ln (\cosh ax) \)

88. \( \int \tanh^2 ax \, dx = x - \frac{1}{a} \tanh ax \)

89. \( \int \coth ax \, dx = \frac{1}{a} \ln |\sinh ax| \)

90. \( \int \coth^2 ax \, dx = x - \frac{1}{a} \coth ax \)

91. \( \int \text{sech} ax \, dx = \frac{2}{a} \arctan e^{ax} \)

92. \( \int \text{sech}^2 ax \, dx = \frac{1}{a} \tanh ax \)

93. \( \int \text{csch} ax \, dx = \frac{1}{a} \ln \left| \tanh \frac{ax}{2} \right| \)

94. \( \int \text{csch}^2 ax \, dx = -\frac{1}{a} \coth ax \)

**Integrands involving inverse hyperbolic functions**

95. \( \int \text{arcsinh} \frac{x}{a} \, dx = x \, \text{arcsinh} \frac{x}{a} - (a^2 + x^2)^{1/2} \)
\[= x \ln \left[ \frac{x + (a^2 + x^2)^{1/2}}{a} \right] - (a^2 + x^2)^{1/2} \quad [a > 0] \]

96. \( \int \text{arccosh} \frac{x}{a} \, dx = x \, \text{arccosh} \frac{x}{a} - (x^2 - a^2)^{1/2} \)
\[= x \ln \left[ \frac{x + (x^2 - a^2)^{1/2}}{a} \right] - (x^2 - a^2)^{1/2} \quad \left[ \text{arccosh} \frac{x}{a} > 0, \ x^2 > a^2 \right] \]
\[= x \, \text{arccosh} \frac{x}{a} + (x^2 - a^2)^{1/2} \quad \left[ \text{arccosh} \frac{x}{a} < 0, \ x^2 > a^2 \right] \]
\[ x \ln \left[ \frac{x + (x^2 - a^2)^{1/2}}{a} \right] + (x^2 - a^2)^{1/2} \]

97. \[ \int \arctanh \frac{x}{a} \, dx = x \arctanh \frac{x}{a} + \frac{a}{2} \ln (a^2 - x^2) \]
\[ = \frac{x}{2} \ln \left( \frac{a + x}{a - x} \right) + \frac{a}{2} \ln (a^2 - x^2) \quad [x^2 < a^2] \]

98. \[ \int x \arcsinh \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \left( \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{a^2}{4} \right) \arcsinh \frac{x}{a} - \frac{x}{4} \sqrt{a^2 + x^2} \]
\[ = \left( \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{a^2}{4} \right) \ln \left[ \frac{x + (a^2 + x^2)^{1/2}}{a} \right] - \frac{x}{4} \sqrt{a^2 + x^2} \quad [a > 0] \]

99. \[ \int x \arccosh \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \left( \frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{a^2}{4} \right) \arccosh \frac{x}{a} - \frac{x}{4} \sqrt{x^2 - a^2} \]
\[ = \left( \frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{a^2}{4} \right) \ln \left[ \frac{x + (x^2 - a^2)^{1/2}}{a} \right] - \frac{x}{4} \sqrt{x^2 - a^2} \quad [\text{arccosh} \frac{x}{a} > 0, \quad x^2 > a^2] \]
\[ = \left( \frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{a^2}{4} \right) \arccosh \frac{x}{a} + \frac{x}{4} \sqrt{x^2 - a^2} \quad [\text{arccosh} \frac{x}{a} < 0, \quad x^2 > a^2] \]
\[ = \left( \frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{a^2}{4} \right) \ln \left[ \frac{x + (x^2 - a^2)^{1/2}}{a} \right] + \frac{x}{4} \sqrt{x^2 - a^2} \]

100. \[ \int x \arctanh \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \left( \frac{x^2 - a^2}{2} \right) \arctanh \frac{x}{a} + \frac{1}{2} ax \]
\[ = \left( \frac{x^2 - a^2}{4} \right) \ln \left[ \frac{a + x}{a - x} \right] + \frac{1}{2} ax \quad [x^2 < a^2] \]

### 0.7 STANDARD SERIES

**Power series**

1. \( (1 \pm x)^{-1} = 1 \mp x + x^2 \mp x^3 + x^4 \mp \cdots \quad [|x| < 1] \)
2. \( (1 \pm x)^{-2} = 1 \mp 2x + 3x^2 \mp 4x^3 + 5x^4 \mp \cdots \quad [|x| < 1] \)
3. \( (1 \pm x)^{-1} = 1 \mp x^2 + x^4 \mp x^6 + x^8 \mp \cdots \quad [|x| < 1] \)
4. \( (1 \pm x)^{-2} = 1 \mp 2x^2 + 3x^4 \mp 4x^6 + 5x^8 \mp \cdots \quad [|x| < 1] \)
5. \( (1 + x)^\alpha = 1 + \alpha x + \frac{\alpha(\alpha - 1)}{2!}x^2 + \frac{\alpha(\alpha - 1)(\alpha - 2)}{3!}x^3 + \cdots \)
\[ = 1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\alpha(\alpha - 1)(\alpha - 2)\cdots(\alpha - n + 1)}{n!}x^n, \quad \alpha \text{ real and } |x| < 1. \]
\[ \text{(the binomial series)} \]
These results may be extended by replacing \( x \) with \( \pm x^k \) and making the appropriate modification to the convergence condition \( |x| < 1 \). Thus, replacing \( x \) with \( \pm x^2/4 \) and setting \( \alpha = -1/2 \) in power series 5 gives

\[
\left( 1 \pm \frac{x^2}{4} \right)^{-1/2} = 1 \pm \frac{1}{8} x^2 + \frac{3}{128} x^4 + \frac{5}{1024} x^6 + \cdots
\]

for \( |x^2/4| < 1 \), which is equivalent to \( |x| < 2 \).

**Trigonometric series**

6. \( \sin x = x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \frac{x^7}{7!} + \cdots \) \([|x| < \infty]\)

7. \( \cos x = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots \) \([|x| < \infty]\)

8. \( \tan x = x + \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{2}{15} x^5 - \frac{17}{315} x^7 + \frac{62}{2835} x^9 + \cdots \) \([|x| < \pi/2]\)

**Inverse trigonometric series**

9. \( \arcsin x = x + \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{1.3}{2.4.5} x^5 + \frac{1.3.5}{2.4.6.7} x^7 + \cdots \) \([|x| < 1, -\pi/2 < \arcsin x < \pi/2]\)

10. \( \arccos x = \frac{\pi}{2} - \arcsin x \) \([|x| < 1, 0 < \arccos x < \pi]\)

11. \( \arctan x = x - \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{1}{5} x^5 - \frac{1}{7} x^7 + \cdots \) \([|x| < 1]\)

\[
= \frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{3x^3} - \frac{1}{5x^5} + \frac{1}{7x^7} - \cdots \) \([x > 1]\)

\[
= -\frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{3x^3} - \frac{1}{5x^5} + \frac{1}{7x^7} - \cdots \) \([x < -1]\)

**Exponential series**

12. \( e^x = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} + \cdots \) \([|x| < \infty]\)

13. \( e^{-x} = 1 - x + \frac{x^2}{2!} - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \cdots \) \([|x| < \infty]\)

**Logarithmic series**

14. \( \ln(1 + x) = x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{x^4}{4} + \frac{x^5}{5} - \cdots \) \([-1 < x \leq 1]\)

15. \( \ln(1 - x) = - \left( x + \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{x^4}{4} \right) + \cdots \) \([-1 \leq x < 1]\)

16. \( \ln \left( \frac{1 + x}{1 - x} \right) = 2 \left( x + \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{x^5}{5} + \frac{x^7}{7} + \cdots \right) = 2 \arctanh x \) \([|x| < 1]\)
17. \( \ln \left( \frac{1-x}{1+x} \right) = -2 \left( x + \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{x^5}{5} + \frac{x^7}{7} + \cdots \right) = -2 \, \text{arctanh} \, x \quad [|x| < 1] \)

**Hyperbolic series**

18. \( \sinh x = x + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} + \frac{x^7}{7!} + \cdots \quad [|x| < \infty] \)

19. \( \cosh x = 1 + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} + \frac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots \quad [|x| < \infty] \)

20. \( \tanh x = x - \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{2}{15} x^5 - \frac{17}{315} x^7 + \frac{62}{2835} x^9 - \cdots \quad [|x| < \pi/2] \)

**Inverse hyperbolic series**

21. \( \text{arcsinh} \, x = x - \frac{1}{2.3} x^3 + \frac{1.3}{2.4.5} x^5 - \frac{1.3.5}{2.4.6.7} x^7 + \cdots \quad [|x| < 1] \)

22. \( \text{arccosh} \, x = \pm \left( \ln(2x) - \frac{1}{2.2x^2} - \frac{1.3}{2.4.4x^4} - \frac{1.3.5}{2.4.6.6x^6} - \cdots \right) \quad [x > 1] \)

23. \( \text{arctanh} \, x = x + \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{x^5}{5} + \frac{x^7}{7} + \cdots \quad [|x| < 1] \)

**0.8 GEOMETRY**

**Triangle**

\[
\text{Area} \, A = \frac{1}{2} ah = \frac{1}{2} ac \sin \theta.
\]

For the equilateral triangle in which \( a = b = c \),

\[
A = \frac{a^2 \sqrt{3}}{4}, \quad h = \frac{a \sqrt{3}}{2}.
\]

The centroid \( C \) is located on the median \( RM \) (the line drawn from \( R \) to the midpoint \( M \) of \( PQ \)) with \( MC = \frac{1}{3} RM \).
Parallelogram

Area \( A = ah = ab\sin\alpha \).

The centroid \( C \) is located at the point of intersection of the diagonals.

\[ \text{Area } A = \frac{1}{2} (a + b)h. \]

The centroid \( C \) is located on \( PQ \), the line joining the midpoints of \( AB \) and \( CD \), with

\[ QC = \frac{h (a + 2b)}{3 (a + b)}. \]

Rhombus  A parallelogram with all sides of equal length.

Area \( A = a^2 \sin\alpha \).
The centroid $C$ is located at the point of intersection of the diagonals.

![Diagram of a cube with centroid labeled C and diagonals]

**Cube**

Area $A = 6a^2$.

Volume $V = a^3$.

Diagonal $d = a\sqrt{3}$.

The centroid $C$ is located at the midpoint of a diagonal.

![Diagram of a rectangular parallelepiped with centroid labeled C and diagonal d]

**Rectangular parallelepiped**

Area $A = 2(ab + ac + bc)$.

Volume $V = abc$.

Diagonal $d = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}$. 
The centroid $C$ is located at the midpoint of a diagonal.

**Pyramid** Rectangular base with sides of length $a$ and $b$ and four sides comprising pairs of identical isosceles triangles.

Area of sides $A_S = a\sqrt{h^2 + \left(\frac{b}{2}\right)^2} + b\sqrt{h^2 + \left(\frac{a}{2}\right)^2}$.

Area of base $A_B = ab$.

Total area $A = A_B + A_S$.

Volume $V = \frac{1}{3}abh$.

The centroid $C$ is located on the axis of symmetry with $OC = h/4$. 
**Rectangular (right) wedge**  Base is rectangular, ends are isosceles triangles of equal size, and the remaining two sides are trapezia.

Area of sides \( A_S = \frac{1}{2} (a + c) \sqrt{4h^2 + b^2} + \frac{1}{2} b \sqrt{4h^2 + 4(a - c)^2} \).

Area of base \( A_B = ab \).

Total area \( A = A_B + A_S \).

Volume \( V = \frac{bh}{6} (2a + c) \).

The centroid \( C \) is located on the axis of symmetry with

\[ OC = \frac{h}{2} \frac{(a + c)}{(2a + c)} \].

**Tetrahedron**  Formed by four equilateral triangles.

Surface area \( A = a^2 \sqrt{3} \).

Volume \( V = \frac{a^3 \sqrt{2}}{12} \).
The centroid $C$ is located on the line from the centroid $O$ of the base triangle to the vertex, with $OC = h/4$.

**Oblique prism with plane end faces** If $A_B$ is the area of a plane end face and $h$ is the perpendicular distance between the parallel end faces, then

\[
\text{Total area} = \text{Area of plane sides} + 2A_B.
\]

\[
\text{Volume } V = A_B h.
\]

The centroid $C$ is located at the midpoint of the line $C_1C_2$ joining the centroid of the parallel end faces.

**Circle**

\[
\text{Area } A = \pi r^2, \quad \text{Circumference } L = 2\pi r,
\]

where $r$ is the radius of the circle. The centroid is located at the center of the circle.

**Arc of circle**

Length of arc $AB : s = r\alpha$ (\(\alpha\) radians).
The centroid $C$ is located on the axis of symmetry with $OC = ra/s$.

**Sector of circle**

Area $A = \frac{sr}{2} = \frac{r^2 \alpha}{2}$ (in radians).

The centroid $C$ is located on the axis of symmetry with

$$OC = \frac{2ra}{3}s.$$

**Segment of circle**

\[a = 2\sqrt{2hr - h^2} .\]
\[h = r - \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{4r^2 - a^2} \quad [h < r].\]

Area $A = \frac{1}{2} [sr - a(r - h)]$. 
The centroid $C$ is located on the axis of symmetry with

$$OC = \frac{a^3}{12A}.$$ 

**Annulus**

Area $A = \pi (R^2 - r^2)$ \( [r < R] \).

The centroid $C$ is located at the center.

**Right circular cylinder**

Area of curved surface $A_S = 2\pi rh$.

Area of plane ends $A_B = 2\pi r^2$.

Total Area $A = A_B + A_S$.

Volume $V = \pi r^2 h$. 
Chapter 0  Quick Reference List of Frequently Used Data

The centroid $C$ is located on the axis of symmetry with $OC = h/2$.

![Diagram of a right circular cylinder with a centroid marked]

**Right circular cylinder with an oblique plane face**  Here, $h_1$ is the greatest height of a side of the cylinder, $h_2$ is the shortest height of a side of the cylinder, and $r$ is the radius of the cylinder.

Area of curved surface $A_S = \pi r (h_1 + h_2)$.

Area of plane end faces $A_B = \pi r^2 + \pi r \sqrt{r^2 + \left( \frac{h_1 - h_2}{2} \right)^2}$.

Total area $A = \pi r \left[ h_1 + h_2 + r + \sqrt{r^2 + \left( \frac{h_1 - h_2}{2} \right)^2} \right]$.

Volume $V = \frac{\pi r^2}{2} (h_1 + h_2)$.

The centroid $C$ is located on the axis of symmetry with

$$OC = \frac{(h_1 + h_2)}{4} + \frac{1}{16} \frac{(h_1 - h_2)^2}{(h_1 + h_2)}.$$
**Cylindrical wedge**  Here, $r$ is radius of cylinder, $h$ is height of wedge, $2a$ is base chord of wedge, $b$ is the greatest perpendicular distance from the base chord to the wall of the cylinder measured perpendicular to the axis of the cylinder, and $\alpha$ is the angle subtended at the center $O$ of the normal cross-section by the base chord.

\[
\text{Area of curved surface } A_S = \frac{2rh}{b} \left[ (b - r)\frac{\alpha}{2} + a \right].
\]

\[
\text{Volume } V = \frac{h}{3b} \left[ a \left( 3r^2 - a^2 \right) + 3r^2(b - r)\frac{\alpha}{2} \right].
\]

**Right circular cone**

Area of curved surface $A_S = \pi rs$.

Area of plane end $A_B = \pi r^2$.

Total area $A = A_B + A_S$.

Volume $V = \frac{1}{3} \pi r^2 h$. 
The centroid $C$ is located on the axis of symmetry with $OC = h/4$.

**Frustrum of a right circular cone**

$$s = \sqrt{h^2 + (r_1 - r_2)^2}.$$  

Area of curved surface $A_S = \pi s (r_1 + r_2)$.  

Area of plane ends $A_B = \pi (r_1^2 + r_2^2)$.  

Total area $A = A_B + A_S$.  

Volume $V = \frac{1}{3} \pi h (r_1^2 + r_1 r_2 + r_2^2)$.  

The centroid $C$ is located on the axis of symmetry with

$$OC = \frac{h}{4} \frac{r_1^2 + 2 r_1 r_2 + 3 r_2^2}{(r_1^2 + r_1 r_2 + r_2^2)}.$$
**General cone**  If $A$ is an area of the base and $h$ is the perpendicular height, then Volume $V = \frac{1}{3}Ah$.

The centroid $C$ is located on the line joining the centroid $O$ of the base to the vertex $P$ with

$$OC = \frac{1}{4}OP.$$ 

**Sphere**

Area $A = 4\pi r^2$ ($r$ is radius of sphere).

Volume $V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$. 
The centroid is located at the center.

**Spherical sector** Here, \( h \) is height of spherical segment cap, \( a \) is radius of plane face of spherical segment cap, and \( r \) is radius of sphere. For the area of the spherical cap and conical sides,

\[
A = \pi r (2h + a).
\]

Volume \( V = \frac{2\pi r^2 h}{3} \).

The centroid \( C \) is located on the axis of symmetry with \( OC = \frac{3}{8} (2r - h) \).

**Spherical segment** Here, \( h \) is height of spherical segment, \( a \) is radius of plane face of spherical segment, \( r \) is radius of sphere, and \( a = \sqrt{h(2r - h)} \).

Area of spherical surface \( A_S = 2\pi rh \).

Area of plane face \( A_B = \pi a^2 \).

Total area \( A = A_B + A_S \).

Volume \( V = \frac{1}{3} \pi h^2 (3r - h) = \frac{1}{6} \pi h (3a^2 + h^2) \).

The centroid \( C \) is located on the axis of symmetry with \( OC = \frac{3}{4} \left( \frac{(2r - h)^2}{3r - h} \right) \).
**Spherical segment with two parallel plane faces**  Here, $a_1$ and $a_2$ are the radii of the plane faces and $h$ is height of segment.

Area of spherical surface $A_S = 2\pi rh$.

Area of plane end faces $A_B = \pi(a_1^2 + a_2^2)$.

Total area $A = A_B + A_S$.

Volume $V = \frac{1}{6}\pi h(3a_1^2 + 3a_2^2 + h^2)$.

---

**Ellipsoids of revolution**  Let the ellipse have the equation

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

When rotated about the $x$-axis the volume is

$$V_x = \frac{4}{3}\pi ab^2.$$

When rotated about the $y$-axis the volume is

$$V_y = \frac{4}{3}\pi a^2 b.$$
Torus

Ring with circular cross-section:

\[
\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1
\]

Area \( A = 4\pi^2 r R. \)

Volume \( V = 2\pi^2 r^2 R. \)

(See Pappus’s theorem 1.15.6.1.5.)
Chapter 1
Numerical, Algebraic, and Analytical Results for Series and Calculus

1.1 ALGEBRAIC RESULTS INVOLVING REAL AND COMPLEX NUMBERS
1.1.1 Complex Numbers
1.1.1.1 Basic Definitions
If \( a, b, c, d, \ldots \) are real numbers, the set \( \mathbb{C} \) of complex numbers, in which individual complex numbers are denoted by \( z, \zeta, \omega, \ldots \), is the set of all ordered number pairs \( (a, b), (c, d), \ldots \) that obey the following rules defining the equality, sum, and product of complex numbers.

If \( z_1 = (a, b) \) and \( z_2 = (c, d) \), then:

- **(Equality)** \( z_1 = z_2 \) implies \( a = c \) and \( b = d \),
- **(Sum)** \( z_1 + z_2 \) implies \( (a + c, b + d) \),
- **(Product)** \( z_1 z_2 \) or \( z_1 \cdot z_2 \) implies \( (ac - bd, ad + bc) \).

Because \( (a, 0) + (b, 0) = (a + b, 0) \) and \( (a, 0) \cdot (b, 0) = (ab, 0) \) it is usual to set the complex number \( (x, 0) = x \) and to call it a **purely real** number, since it has the properties of a real number. The complex number \( i = (0, 1) \) is called **imaginary unit**, and from the definition of multiplication \( (0, 1) \cdot (0, 1) = (-1, 0) \), so it follows that

\[
 i^2 = -1 \quad \text{or} \quad i = \sqrt{-1}.
\]

If \( z = (x, y) \), the **real part** of \( z \), denoted by \( \text{Re}\{z\} \), is defined as \( \text{Re}\{z\} = x \), while the **imaginary part** of \( z \), denoted by \( \text{Im}\{z\} \), is defined as \( \text{Im}\{z\} = y \). A number of the form...
(0, y) = (y, 0) \cdot (0, 1) = yi is called a purely imaginary number. The zero complex number \( z = (0, 0) \) is also written \( z = 0 \). The complex conjugate \( \bar{z} \) of a complex number \( z = (x, y) \) is defined as

\[
\bar{z} = (x, -y),
\]

while its modulus (also called its absolute value) is the real number \( |z| \) defined as

\[
|z| = (x^2 + y^2)^{1/2},
\]

so that

\[
|z|^2 = z\bar{z}.
\]

The quotient of the two complex numbers \( z_1 \) and \( z_2 \) is given by

\[
\frac{z_1}{z_2} = \frac{z_1\bar{z}_2}{|z_2|^2} \quad [z_2 \neq 0].
\]

When working with complex numbers it is often more convenient to replace the ordered pair notation \( z = (x, y) \) by the equivalent notation \( z = x + iy \).

### 1.1.1.2 Properties of the Modulus and Complex Conjugate

1. If \( z = (x, y) \) then
   \[
   z + \bar{z} = 2 \text{ Re}\{z\} = 2x
   \]
   \[
   z - \bar{z} = 2i \text{ Im}\{z\} = 2iy
   \]
2. \( |z| = |\bar{z}| \)
3. \( z = (\bar{z}) \)
4. \( \frac{1}{z} = \left(\frac{1}{\bar{z}}\right) \quad [z \neq 0] \)
5. \( (\bar{z})^n = (\bar{z})^n \)
6. \( \frac{|\bar{z}_1|}{|\bar{z}_2|} = \frac{|z_1|}{|z_2|} \quad [z_2 \neq 0] \)
7. \( (z_1 + z_2 + \cdots + z_n) = \bar{z}_1 + \bar{z}_2 + \cdots + \bar{z}_n \)
8. \( \bar{z}_1\bar{z}_2\cdots\bar{z}_n = \bar{z}_1\bar{z}_2\cdots\bar{z}_n \)

### 1.1.2 Algebraic Inequalities Involving Real and Complex Numbers

#### 1.1.2.1 The Triangle and a Related Inequality

If \( a, b \) are any two real numbers, then

\[
|a + b| \leq |a| + |b| \quad \text{(triangle inequality)}
\]

\[
|a - b| \geq ||a| - |b||,
\]
where $|a|$, the absolute value of $a$ is defined as

$$|a| = \begin{cases} a, & a \geq 0 \\ -a, & a < 0 \end{cases}.$$ 

Analogously, if $a, b$ are any two complex numbers, then

$$|a + b| \leq |a| + |b| \quad \text{(triangle inequality)}$$

$$|a - b| \geq ||a| - |b||.$$

### 1.1.2.2 Lagrange’s Identity

Let $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$ and $b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_n$ be any two sets of real numbers; then

$$\left( \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k b_k \right)^2 = \left( \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k^2 \right) \left( \sum_{k=1}^{n} b_k^2 \right) - \sum_{1 \leq k < j \leq n} (a_k b_j - a_j b_k)^2.$$

### 1.1.2.3 Cauchy–Schwarz–Buniakowsky Inequality

Let $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$ and $b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_n$ be any two arbitrary sets of real numbers; then

$$\left( \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k b_k \right)^2 \leq \left( \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k^2 \right) \left( \sum_{k=1}^{n} b_k^2 \right).$$

The equality holds if, and only if, the sequences $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$ and $b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_n$ are proportional. Analogously, let $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$ and $b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_n$ be any two arbitrary sets of complex numbers; then

$$\left| \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k b_k \right|^2 \leq \left( \sum_{k=1}^{n} |a_k|^2 \right) \left( \sum_{k=1}^{n} |b_k|^2 \right).$$

The equality holds if, and only if, the sequences $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$ and $b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_n$ are proportional.

### 1.1.2.4 Minkowski’s Inequality

Let $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$ and $b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_n$ be any two sets of nonnegative real numbers and let $p > 1$; then

$$\left( \sum_{k=1}^{n} (a_k + b_k)^p \right)^{1/p} \leq \left( \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k^p \right)^{1/p} + \left( \sum_{k=1}^{n} b_k^p \right)^{1/p}.$$

The equality holds if, and only if, the sequences $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$ and $b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_n$ are proportional. Analogously, let $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$ and $b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_n$ be any two arbitrary sets of complex
numbers, and let the real number \( p \) be such that \( p > 1 \); then
\[
\left( \sum_{k=1}^{n} |a_k + b_k|^p \right)^{1/p} \leq \left( \sum_{k=1}^{n} |a_k|^p \right)^{1/p} + \left( \sum_{k=1}^{n} |b_k|^p \right)^{1/p}.
\]

1.1.2.5 Hölder’s Inequality
Let \( a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n \) and \( b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_n \) be any two sets of nonnegative real numbers, and let \( 1/p + 1/q = 1 \), with \( p > 1 \); then
\[
\left( \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k^p \right)^{1/p} \left( \sum_{k=1}^{n} b_k^q \right)^{1/q} \geq \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k b_k.
\]
The equality holds if, and only if, the sequences \( a_1^p, a_2^p, \ldots, a_n^p \) and \( b_1^q, b_2^q, \ldots, b_n^q \) are proportional. Analogously, let \( a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n \) and \( b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_n \) be any two arbitrary sets of complex numbers, and let the real number \( p, q \) be such that \( p > 1 \) and \( 1/p + 1/q = 1 \); then
\[
\left( \sum_{k=1}^{n} |a_k|^p \right)^{1/p} \left( \sum_{k=1}^{n} |b_k|^q \right)^{1/q} \geq \left| \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k b_k \right|.
\]

1.1.2.6 Chebyshev’s Inequality
Let \( a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n \) and \( b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_n \) be two arbitrary sets of real numbers such that either \( a_1 \geq a_2 \geq \cdots \geq a_n \) and \( b_1 \geq b_2 \geq \cdots \geq b_n \), or \( a_1 \leq a_2 \leq \cdots \leq a_n \) and \( b_1 \leq b_2 \leq \cdots \leq b_n \); then
\[
\frac{a_1 + a_2 + \cdots + a_n}{n} \left( \frac{b_1 + b_2 + \cdots + b_n}{n} \right) \leq \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k b_k.
\]
The equality holds if, and only if, either \( a_1 = a_2 = \cdots = a_n \) or \( b_1 = b_2 = \cdots = b_n \).

1.1.2.7 Arithmetic–Geometric Inequality
Let \( a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n \) be any set of positive numbers with arithmetic mean
\[
A_n = \left( \frac{a_1 + a_2 + \cdots + a_n}{n} \right)
\]
and geometric mean
\[
G_n = (a_1 a_2 \cdots a_n)^{1/n};
\]
then \( A_n \geq G_n \) or, equivalently,
\[
\left( \frac{a_1 + a_2 + \cdots + a_n}{n} \right) \geq (a_1 a_2 \cdots a_n)^{1/n}.
\]
The equality holds only when \( a_1 = a_2 = \cdots = a_n \).
### 1.1.2.8 Carleman’s Inequality

If \( a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n \) is any set of positive numbers, then the geometric and arithmetic means satisfy the inequality

\[
\sum_{k=1}^{n} G_k \leq eA_n
\]

or, equivalently,

\[
\sum_{k=1}^{n} \left( a_1 a_2 \cdots a_k \right)^{1/k} \leq e \left( \frac{a_1 + a_2 + \cdots + a_n}{n} \right),
\]

where \( e \) is the best possible constant in this inequality.

The next inequality to be listed is of a somewhat different nature than that of the previous ones in that it involves a function of the type known as convex. When interpreted geometrically, a function \( f(x) \) that is convex on an interval \( I = [a, b] \) is one for which all points on the graph of \( y = f(x) \) for \( a < x < b \) lie below the chord joining the points \((a, f(a)) \) and \((b, f(b))\).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Definition of convexity.} & \quad \text{A function } f(x) \text{ defined on some interval } I = [a, b] \text{ is said to be convex on } I \text{ if, and only if,} \\
& \quad f[(1 - \lambda) a + \lambda b] \leq (1 - \lambda) f(a) + \lambda f(b), \\
& \quad \text{for } a \neq b \text{ and } 0 < \lambda < 1.
\end{align*}
\]

The function is said to be strictly convex on \( I \) if the preceding inequality is strict, so that

\[
\begin{align*}
& \quad f[(1 - \lambda) a + \lambda b] < (1 - \lambda) f(a) + \lambda f(b).
\end{align*}
\]

### 1.1.2.9 Jensen’s Inequality

Let \( f(x) \) be convex on the interval \( I = [a, b] \), let \( x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n \) be points in \( I \), and take \( \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_n \) to be nonnegative numbers such that

\[
\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_n = 1.
\]
Then the point $\lambda_1 x_1 + \lambda_2 x_2 + \cdots + \lambda_n x_n$ lies in $I$ and

$$f (\lambda_1 x_1 + \lambda_2 x_2 + \cdots + \lambda_n x_n) \leq \lambda_1 f(x_1) + \lambda_2 f(x_2) + \cdots + \lambda_n f(x_n).$$

If all the $\lambda_i$'s are strictly positive and $f(x)$ is strictly convex on $I$, then the equality holds if, and only if,

$$x_1 = x_2 = \cdots = x_n.$$

### 1.2 FINITE SUMS

#### 1.2.1 The Binomial Theorem for Positive Integral Exponents

##### 1.2.1.1 Binomial Theorem and Binomial Coefficients

If $a, b$ are real or complex numbers, the \textbf{binomial theorem} for positive integral exponents $n$ is

$$(a + b)^n = \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} a^{n-k} b^k \quad [n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots],$$

with

$$\binom{n}{0} = 1, \quad \binom{n}{k} = \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!} \quad [k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, \leq n],$$

and $k! = 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdots k$ and, by definition $0! = 1$. The numbers $\binom{n}{k}$ are called \textbf{binomial coefficients}.

When expanded, the binomial theorem becomes

$$(a + b)^n = a^n + na^{n-1}b + \frac{n(n-1)}{2!}a^{n-2}b^2 + \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)}{3!}a^{n-3}b^3 + \cdots + \frac{n(n-1)}{2!}a^2b^{n-2} + nab^{n-1} + b^n.$$

An alternative form of the binomial theorem is

$$(a + b)^n = a^n \left(1 + \frac{b}{a}\right)^n = a^n \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} \left(\frac{b}{a}\right)^{n-k} \quad [n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots].$$

If $n$ is a positive integer, the binomial expansion of $(a + b)^n$ contains $n + 1$ terms, and so is a \textbf{finite sum}. However, if $n$ is not a positive integer (it may be a positive or negative real number) the binomial expansion becomes an infinite series (see 0.7.5). (For a connection with probability see 1.6.1.1.4.)
1.2 Finite Sums

1.2.1.2 Short Table of Binomial Coefficients \( \binom{n}{k} \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( n )</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>252</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>165</td>
<td>330</td>
<td>462</td>
<td>462</td>
<td>330</td>
<td>165</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>495</td>
<td>792</td>
<td>792</td>
<td>495</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reference to the first four rows of the table shows that

\[
(a+b)^1 = a + b \\
(a+b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2 \\
(a+b)^3 = a^3 + 3a^2b + 3ab^2 + b^3 \\
(a+b)^4 = a^4 + 4a^3b + 6a^2b^2 + 4ab^3 + b^4.
\]

The binomial coefficients \( \binom{n}{k} \) can be generated in a simple manner by means of the following triangular array called **Pascal’s triangle**.

\[(n = 0) \quad \begin{array}{c} \binom{1}{0} \\
(n = 1) \quad \begin{array}{cccc} \binom{1}{1} \end{array} \\
(n = 2) \quad \begin{array}{cccccc} \binom{1}{2} & \binom{2}{1} & \binom{1}{1} \\
(n = 3) \quad \begin{array}{cccccc} \binom{1}{3} & \binom{3}{2} & \binom{3}{1} & \binom{1}{1} \\
(n = 4) \quad \begin{array}{cccccc} \binom{1}{4} & \binom{4}{3} & \binom{6}{4} & \binom{4}{1} & \binom{1}{1} \\
(n = 5) \quad \begin{array}{cccccc} 1 & \binom{5}{4} & \binom{10}{5} & \binom{10}{5} & \binom{5}{1} & \binom{1}{1} \\
(n = 6) \quad \begin{array}{cccccc} 1 & \binom{6}{4} & \binom{15}{5} & \binom{20}{6} & \binom{15}{5} & \binom{6}{1} & \binom{1}{1}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\Rightarrow (a+b)^0
\Rightarrow (a+b)^1
\Rightarrow (a+b)^2
\Rightarrow (a+b)^3
\Rightarrow (a+b)^4
\Rightarrow (a+b)^5
\Rightarrow (a+b)^6
\]

.............................................
Chapter 1  Numerical, Algebraic, and Analytical Results for Series and Calculus

The entries in the $n$th row are the binomial coefficients $\binom{n}{k}$ ($k = 0, 1, \ldots, n$). Each entry inside the triangle is obtained by summing the entries to its immediate left and right in the row above, as indicated by the arrows.

1.2.1.3 Relationships Between Binomial Coefficients

1. \[
\binom{n}{k} = \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!} = \frac{n(n-1)(n-2) \cdots (n-k+1)}{k!} = \frac{n+1-k}{k} \binom{n}{k-1}
\]

2. \[
\binom{n}{0} = 1, \quad \binom{n}{1} = n, \quad \binom{n}{k} = \binom{n}{n-k}, \quad \binom{n}{n} = 1
\]

3. \[
\binom{n}{k+1} = \frac{n-k}{k+1} \binom{n}{k}, \quad \binom{n}{k} = \binom{n}{k} + \binom{n}{k-1}, \quad \binom{n+1}{k+1} = \binom{n}{k} + \binom{n+1}{k+1}
\]

4. \[
\binom{2n}{n} = \frac{(2n)!}{(n!)^2}, \quad \binom{2n-1}{n} = \frac{n(2n-1)!}{(n!)^2}
\]

5. \[
\frac{(-n)(-n-1)(-n-2) \cdots (-n-k+1)}{k!} = (-1)^k \binom{n+k-1}{k}
\]

1.2.1.4 Sums of Binomial Coefficients  \( n \) is an integer

1. \[
\binom{n}{0} - \binom{n}{1} + \binom{n}{2} - \cdots + (-1)^m \binom{n}{m} = (-1)^m \binom{n-1}{m}
\]
\[n \geq 1, \; m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, n-1\]

2. \[
\binom{n}{0} - \binom{n}{1} + \binom{n}{2} - \cdots + (-1)^n \binom{n}{n} = 0
\]
\[\text{from 1.2.1.4.1 with } m = n - 1, \text{ because } \binom{n-1}{n-1} = 1\]

3. \[
\binom{n}{k} + \binom{n-1}{k} + \binom{n-2}{k} + \cdots + \binom{k}{k} = \binom{n+1}{k+1}
\]

4. \[
\binom{n}{0} + \binom{n}{1} + \binom{n}{2} + \cdots + \binom{n}{n} = 2^n
\]

5. \[
\binom{n}{0} + \binom{n}{2} + \binom{n}{4} + \cdots + \binom{n}{m} = 2^{n-1} \quad [m = n \text{ (even } n), \; m = n-1 \text{ (odd } n)]
\]

6. \[
\binom{n}{1} + \binom{n}{3} + \binom{n}{5} + \cdots + \binom{n}{m} = 2^{n-1} \quad [m = n \text{ (even } n), \; m = n-1 \text{ (odd } n)]
\]
7. \[ \binom{n}{0} + \binom{n}{3} + \binom{n}{6} + \cdots + \binom{n}{m} = \frac{1}{3} \left( 2^n + 2 \cos \frac{n\pi}{3} \right) \] \[ m = n \text{ (even)}, \quad m = n - 1 \text{ (odd)} \]

8. \[ \binom{n}{1} + \binom{n}{4} + \binom{n}{7} + \cdots + \binom{n}{m} = \frac{1}{3} \left( 2^n + 2 \cos \frac{(n-2)\pi}{3} \right) \] \[ m = n \text{ (even)}, \quad m = n - 1 \text{ (odd)} \]

9. \[ \binom{n}{2} + \binom{n}{5} + \binom{n}{8} + \cdots + \binom{n}{m} = \frac{1}{3} \left( 2^n + 2 \cos \frac{(n-4)\pi}{3} \right) \] \[ m = n \text{ (even)}, \quad m = n - 1 \text{ (odd)} \]

10. \[ \binom{n}{0} + \binom{n}{4} + \binom{n}{8} + \cdots + \binom{n}{m} = \frac{2}{3} \left( 2^{n-1} + 2^{n/2} \cos \frac{n\pi}{4} \right) \] \[ m = n \text{ (even)}, \quad m = n - 1 \text{ (odd)} \]

11. \[ \binom{n}{1} + \binom{n}{5} + \binom{n}{9} + \cdots + \binom{n}{m} = \frac{2}{3} \left( 2^{n-1} + 2^{n/2} \sin \frac{n\pi}{4} \right) \] \[ m = n \text{ (even)}, \quad m = n - 1 \text{ (odd)} \]

12. \[ \binom{n}{2} + \binom{n}{6} + \binom{n}{10} + \cdots + \binom{n}{m} = \frac{2}{3} \left( 2^{n-1} - 2^{n/2} \cos \frac{n\pi}{4} \right) \] \[ m = n \text{ (even)}, \quad m = n - 1 \text{ (odd)} \]

13. \[ \binom{n}{3} + \binom{n}{7} + \binom{n}{11} + \cdots + \binom{n}{n} = \frac{2}{3} \left( 2^{n-1} - 2^{n/2} \sin \frac{n\pi}{4} \right) \]

14. \[ \binom{n}{0} + 2 \binom{n}{1} + 3 \binom{n}{2} + \cdots + (n+1) \binom{n}{n} = 2^n - 2^{n+1} (n+2) \quad [n \geq 0] \]

15. \[ \binom{n}{1} - 2 \binom{n}{2} + 3 \binom{n}{3} - \cdots + (-1)^{n+1} n \binom{n}{n} = 0 \quad [n \geq 2] \]

16. \[ \binom{N}{1} - 2^{n-1} \binom{N}{2} + 3^{n-1} \binom{N}{3} - \cdots + (-1)^{N-n} N^{n-1} \binom{N}{N} = 0 \quad [N \geq n; \quad 0^n = 1] \]

17. \[ \binom{n}{1} - 2^n \binom{n}{2} + 3^n \binom{n}{3} - \cdots + (-1)^{n+1} n^n \binom{n}{n} = (-1)^{n+1} n! \]

18. \[ \binom{n}{0} + \frac{1}{2} \binom{n}{1} + \frac{1}{3} \binom{n}{2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n+1} \binom{n}{n} = \frac{2^{n+1} - 1}{n+1} \]
19. \( (n)^2 + (n-1)^2 + (n-2)^2 + \cdots + (1)^2 = \frac{(2n)^2}{n} \)

20. \( \frac{n}{1} - \frac{1}{2} \frac{n}{2} + \frac{1}{3} \frac{n}{3} - \cdots + \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{n} \frac{n}{n} = 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n} \)

1.2.2 Arithmetic, Geometric, and Arithmetic–Geometric Series

1.2.2.1 Arithmetic Series

\[
\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} (a + kd) = a + (a + d) + (a + 2d) + \cdots + [a + (n-1)d] \\
= \frac{n}{2} [2a + (n-1)d] = \frac{n}{2} (a + l) \quad [l = \text{the last term}]
\]

1.2.2.2 Geometric Series

\[
\sum_{k=1}^{n} ar^{k-1} = a + ar + ar^2 + \cdots + ar^{n-1} \\
= \frac{a(1 - r^n)}{1 - r} \quad [r \neq 1]
\]

1.2.2.3 Arithmetic–Geometric Series

\[
\sum_{k=1}^{n-1} (a + kd)r^k = a + (a + d)r + (a + 2d)r^2 + \cdots + [a + (n-1)d]r^{n-1} \\
= \frac{r^n \{ a(r - 1) + [n(r - 1) - r]d \}}{(r - 1)^2} + \frac{[(d - a)r + a]}{(r - 1)^2} \quad [r \neq 1, n > 1]
\]

1.2.3 Sums of Powers of Integers

1.2.3.1

1. \( \sum_{k=1}^{n} k = 1 + 2 + 3 + \cdots + n = \frac{n}{2} (n + 1) \)

2. \( \sum_{k=1}^{n} k^2 = 1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \cdots + n^2 = \frac{n}{6} (n + 1)(2n + 1) \)

3. \( \sum_{k=1}^{n} k^3 = 1^3 + 2^3 + 3^3 + \cdots + n^3 = \frac{n^2}{4} (n + 1)^2 \)

4. \( \sum_{k=1}^{n} k^4 = 1^4 + 2^4 + 3^4 + \cdots + n^4 = \frac{n}{30} (n + 1)(2n + 1)(3n^2 + 3n - 1) \)
5. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{n} k^q = \frac{n^{q+1}}{q+1} + \frac{n^q}{2} + \frac{1}{3} \left( \frac{q}{1} \right) B_2 n^{q-1} + \frac{1}{4} \left( \frac{q}{3} \right) B_4 n^{q-3} + \frac{1}{6} \left( \frac{q}{5} \right) B_6 n^{q-5} + \frac{1}{8} \left( \frac{q}{7} \right) B_8 n^{q-7} + \cdots, \]

where \( B_2 = \frac{1}{6}, B_4 = -\frac{1}{30}, B_6 = \frac{1}{42}, \ldots \), are the Bernoulli numbers (see 1.3.1) and the expansion terminates with the last term containing either \( n \) or \( n^2 \).

These results are useful when summing finite series with terms involving linear combinations of powers of integers. For example, using 1.2.3.1.1 and 1.2.3.1.2 leads to the result

\[ \sum_{k=1}^{n} (3k - 1)(k + 2) = \sum_{k=1}^{n} (3k^2 + 5k - 2) = 3 \sum_{k=1}^{n} k^2 + 5 \sum_{k=1}^{n} k - 2 \sum_{k=1}^{n} 1 \]

\[ = 3 \cdot \frac{n}{6}(n+1)(2n+1) + 5 \cdot \frac{n}{2}(n+1) - 2n \]

\[ = n \left( n^2 + 4n + 1 \right). \]

1.2.3.2

1. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{n} (km - 1) = (m - 1) + (2m - 1) + (3m - 1) + \cdots + (nm - 1) \]

\[ = \frac{1}{2} mn(n + 1) - n \]

2. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{n} (km - 1)^2 = (m - 1)^2 + (2m - 1)^2 + (3m - 1)^2 + \cdots + (nm - 1)^2 \]

\[ = \frac{1}{6} n \left[ m^2(n+1)(2n+1) - 6m(n+1) + 6 \right] \]

3. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{n} (km - 1)^3 = (m - 1)^3 + (2m - 1)^3 + (3m - 1)^3 + \cdots + (nm - 1)^3 \]

\[ = \frac{1}{4} n \left[ m^3n(n+1)^2 - 2m^2(n+1)(2n+1) + 6m(n+1) - 4 \right] \]

4. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{n} (-1)^{k+1}(km - 1) = (m - 1) - (2m - 1) + (3m - 1) - \cdots + (-1)^{n+1}(nm - 1) \]

\[ = \frac{(-1)^n}{4} \left[ 2 - (2n+1)m \right] + \frac{(m-2)}{4} \]

5. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{n} (-1)^{k+1}(km - 1)^2 = (m - 1)^2 - (2m - 1)^2 + (3m - 1)^2 - \cdots + (-1)^{n+1}(nm - 1)^2 \]

\[ = \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{2} \left[ n(n+1)m^2 - (2n+1)m + 1 \right] + \frac{(1-m)}{2} \]
6. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{n} (-1)^{k+1} (km - 1)^3 = (m - 1)^3 - (2m - 1)^3 + (3m - 1)^3 - \cdots + (-1)^{n+1} (nm - 1)^3 \]
\[ = \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{8} \left[ (4n^3 + 6n^2 - 1)m^3 - 12n(n + 1)m^2 + 6(2n + 1)m - 4 \right] - \frac{1}{8} (m^3 - 6m + 4) \]

7. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{n} (-1)^{k+1} (2k - 1)^2 = 1^2 - 3^2 + 5^2 - \cdots + (-1)^{n+1} (2n - 1)^2 \]
\[ = \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{2} (4n^2 - 1) - \frac{1}{2} \]

8. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{n} (-1)^{k+1} (2k - 1)^3 = 1^3 - 3^3 + 5^3 - \cdots + (-1)^{n+1} (2n - 1)^3 \]
\[ = (-1)^{n+1} n(4n^2 - 3) \]

9. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{n} (-1)^{k+1} (3k - 1) = 2 - 5 + 8 - \cdots + (-1)^{n+1} (3n - 1) \]
\[ = \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{4} (6n + 1) + \frac{1}{4} \]

10. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{n} (-1)^{k+1} (3k - 1)^2 = 2^2 - 5^2 + 8^2 - \cdots + (-1)^{n+1} (3n - 1)^2 \]
\[ = \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{2} (9n^2 + 3n - 2) - 1 \]

11. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{n} (-1)^{k+1} (3k - 1)^3 = 2^3 - 5^3 + 8^3 - \cdots + (-1)^{n+1} (3n - 1)^3 \]
\[ = \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{8} (108n^3 + 54n^2 - 72n - 13) - \frac{13}{8} \]

1.2.4 Proof by Mathematical Induction

Many mathematical propositions that depend on an integer \( n \) that are true in general can be proved by means of mathematical induction. Let \( P(n) \) be a proposition that depends on an integer \( n \) that is believed to be true for all \( n > n_0 \). To establish the validity of \( P(n) \) for \( n > n_0 \) the following steps are involved.

1. Show, if possible, that \( P(n) \) is true for some \( n = n_0 \).
2. Show, if possible, that when \( P(n) \) is true for \( n > n_0 \), then \( P(n) \) implies \( P(n+1) \).
3. If steps 1 and 2 are found to be true, then by mathematical induction $P(n)$ is true for all $n > n_0$.

4. If either of steps 1 or 2 are found to be false then the proposition $P(n)$ is also false.

**Examples**

1. Prove by mathematical induction that entry 1.2.3.1 (1) is true. Let $P(n)$ be the proposition that

$$
\sum_{k=1}^{n} k = 1 + 2 + 3 + \cdots + n = \frac{1}{2} n(n + 1),
$$

then clearly $P(1)$ is true so we set $n_0 = 1$. If $P(n)$ is true, adding $(n + 1)$ to both sides of the expression gives

$$
1 + 2 + \cdots + n + (n + 1) = \frac{1}{2} n(n + 1) + (n + 1)
= \frac{1}{2} (n + 1) (n + 2),
$$

but this is simply $P(n)$ with $n$ replaced by $n + 1$ so that $P(n)$ implies $P(n + 1)$. As $P(n)$ is true for $n = 1$ it follows that $P(n)$ is true for $n = 1, 2, \ldots$, and so

$$
\sum_{k=1}^{n} k = 1 + 2 + 3 + \cdots + n = \frac{1}{2} n(n + 1) \quad \text{for all } n \geq 1.
$$

2. Prove by mathematical induction that

$$
\frac{d^n}{dx^n} [\sin ax] = a^n \sin \left(ax + \frac{1}{2} n\pi\right) \quad \text{for } n = 1, 2, \ldots.
$$

Taking the above result to be the proposition $P(n)$ and setting $n = 1$ we find that

$$
\frac{d}{dx} [\sin ax] = a \cos ax,
$$

showing that $P(1)$ is true, so we set $n_0 = 1$.

Assuming $P(k)$ to be true for $k > 1$, differentiation gives

$$
\frac{d}{dx} \left\{ \frac{d^k}{dx^k} [\sin ax] \right\} = \frac{d}{dx} \left\{ a^k \sin \left(ax + \frac{1}{2} k\pi\right) \right\},
$$

so

$$
\frac{d^{k+1}}{dx^{k+1}} [\sin ax] = a^{k+1} \cos \left(ax + \frac{1}{2} k\pi\right).
$$
Replacing $k$ by $k + 1$ in $P(k)$ gives

\[
\frac{d^{k+1}}{dx^{k+1}}[\sin ax] = a^{k+1} \sin \left[ ax + \frac{1}{2} (k + 1) \pi \right] \\
= a^{k+1} \sin \left[ \left( ax + \frac{1}{2} k \pi \right) + \frac{1}{2} \pi \right] \\
= a^{k+1} \cos \left( ax + \frac{1}{2} k \pi \right),
\]

showing that $P(k)$ implies $P(k + 1)$, so as $P(k)$ is true for $k = 1$ it follows that $P(n)$ is true for $n = 1, 2, \ldots$.

1.3 BERNOULLI AND EULER NUMBERS AND POLYNOMIALS

1.3.1 Bernoulli and Euler Numbers

1.3.1.1 Definitions and Tables of Bernoulli and Euler Numbers

The Bernoulli numbers, usually denoted by $B_n$, are rational numbers defined by the requirement that $B_n$ is the coefficient of the term $t^n/n!$ on the right-hand side of the generating function

1. \( \frac{t}{e^t - 1} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^n}{n!} B_n. \)

The $B_n$ are determined by multiplying the above identity in $t$ by the Maclaurin series representation of $e^t - 1$, expanding the right-hand side, and then equating corresponding coefficients of powers of $t$ on either side of the identity. This yields the result

\[
t = B_0 t + \left( B_1 + \frac{1}{2} B_0 \right) t^2 + \left( \frac{1}{2} B_2 + \frac{1}{2} B_1 + \frac{1}{6} B_0 \right) t^3 \\
+ \left( \frac{1}{6} B_3 + \frac{1}{4} B_2 + \frac{1}{6} B_1 + \frac{1}{24} B_0 \right) t^4 + \cdots.
\]

Equating corresponding powers of $t$ leads to the system of equations

\[
B_0 = 1 \quad \text{(coefficients of $t$)} \\
B_1 + \frac{1}{2} B_0 = 0 \quad \text{(coefficients of $t^2$)} \\
\frac{1}{2} B_2 + \frac{1}{2} B_1 + \frac{1}{6} B_0 = 0 \quad \text{(coefficients of $t^3$)} \\
\frac{1}{6} B_3 + \frac{1}{4} B_2 + \frac{1}{6} B_1 + \frac{1}{24} B_0 = 0 \quad \text{(coefficients of $t^4$)} \\
\vdots
\]
Solving these equations recursively generates $B_0, B_1, B_2, B_3, \ldots$, in this order, where
\[ B_0 = 1, \quad B_1 = -\frac{1}{2}, \quad B_2 = \frac{1}{6}, \quad B_3 = 0, \quad B_4 = -\frac{1}{30}, \ldots \]

Apart from $B_1 = \frac{1}{2}$, all Bernoulli numbers with an odd index are zero, so $B_{2n-1} = 0, n = 2, 3, \ldots$. The Bernoulli numbers with an even index $B_{2n}$ follow by solving recursively these equations:

2. $B_0 = 1; \quad \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \binom{n}{k} B_{2k} = 0, \quad k = 1, 2, \ldots,$

which are equivalent to the system given above.

The Bernoulli number $B_{2n}$ is expressible in terms of Bernoulli numbers of lower index by

3. $B_{2n} = -\frac{1}{2n+1} + \frac{1}{2} - \sum_{k=2}^{2n-2} \frac{2n(2n-1) \cdots (2n-k+2)}{k!} B_k \quad [n \geq 1].$

**Short list of Bernoulli numbers.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$B_0$</th>
<th>$B_1$</th>
<th>$B_2$</th>
<th>$B_3$</th>
<th>$B_4$</th>
<th>$B_6$</th>
<th>$B_8$</th>
<th>$B_{10}$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>$-\frac{1}{2}$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{6}$</td>
<td>$-\frac{1}{30}$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{42}$</td>
<td>$-\frac{1}{30}$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{30}$</td>
<td>$\frac{5}{66}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$B_{12}$</td>
<td>$B_{14}$</td>
<td>$B_{16}$</td>
<td>$B_{18}$</td>
<td>$B_{20}$</td>
<td>$B_{22}$</td>
<td>$B_{24}$</td>
<td>$B_{26}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$-\frac{691}{2730}$</td>
<td>$\frac{7}{6}$</td>
<td>$-\frac{3617}{510}$</td>
<td>$\frac{43867}{798}$</td>
<td>$-\frac{174611}{330}$</td>
<td>$\frac{854513}{138}$</td>
<td>$-\frac{236364091}{2730}$</td>
<td>$\frac{8553103}{6}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$B_{28}$</td>
<td>$B_{30}$</td>
<td>$B_{32}$</td>
<td>$B_{34}$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$-\frac{23749461029}{870}$</td>
<td>$\frac{8615841276005}{14322}$</td>
<td>$-\frac{7709321041217}{510}$</td>
<td>$\frac{2577687858367}{6}$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. $B_{2n-1} = 0 \quad [n = 2, 3, \ldots].$

The **Euler numbers** $E_n$, all of which are integers, are defined as the coefficients of $t^n/n!$ on the right-hand side of the generating function

5. $\frac{2e^t}{e^t + 1} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} E_n \frac{t^n}{n!}.$

As $2e^t/(e^t + 1) = 1/\cosh t$, it follows that $1/\cosh t$ is the generating function for Euler numbers. A procedure similar to the one described above for the determination of the Bernoulli numbers leads to the Euler numbers. Each Euler number with an odd index is zero.
Chapter 1  Numerical, Algebraic, and Analytical Results for Series and Calculus

Short list of Euler numbers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>n</th>
<th>E_0 = 1</th>
<th>E_{12} = 2,702,765</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>E_2 = -1</td>
<td>E_{14} = -199,360,981</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>E_4 = 5</td>
<td>E_{16} = 19,391,512,145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>E_6 = -61</td>
<td>E_{18} = -2,404,879,675,441</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>E_8 = 1385</td>
<td>E_{20} = 370,371,188,237,525</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>E_{10} = 50,521</td>
<td>E_{22} = -69,348,874,393,137,901</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. \( E_{2n-1} = 0 \) \( [n = 1, 2, \ldots] \).

Alternative definitions of Bernoulli and Euler numbers are in use, in which the indexing and choice of sign of the numbers differ from the conventions adopted here. Thus when reference is made to other sources using Bernoulli and Euler numbers it is essential to determine which definition is in use.

The most commonly used alternative definitions lead to the following sequences of Bernoulli numbers \( B_n^* \) and Euler numbers \( E_n^* \), where an asterisk has been added to distinguish them from the numbers used throughout this book.

\[
\begin{align*}
B_1^* &= \frac{1}{6} \\
B_2^* &= \frac{1}{30} \\
B_3^* &= \frac{1}{42} \\
B_4^* &= \frac{1}{30} \\
B_5^* &= \frac{5}{66} \\
&\vdots
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
E_1^* &= 1 \\
E_2^* &= 5 \\
E_3^* &= 61 \\
E_4^* &= 1385 \\
E_5^* &= 50521 \\
&\vdots
\end{align*}
\]

The relationships between these corresponding systems of Bernoulli and Euler numbers are as follows:

7. \( B_{2n} = (-1)^{n+1} B_n^* \), \( E_{2n} = (-1)^n E_n^* \), \( [n = 1, 2, \ldots] \).

The generating function for the \( B_n^* \) is

8. \( 2 - \frac{t}{2} \cot \frac{t}{2} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} B_k^* \frac{t^{2k}}{(2k)!} \) with \( B_0^* = 1 \), while the generating function for the \( E_n^* \) is

9. \( \sec t = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} E_k^* \frac{t^{2k}}{(2k)!} \) with \( E_0^* = 1 \).
1.3 Bernoulli and Euler Numbers and Polynomials

1.3.1.2 Series Representations for $B_n$ and $E_n$

1. $B_{2n} = \frac{(-1)^{n+1} (2n)!}{\pi^{2n} 2^{2n-1}} \left[ 1 + \frac{1}{2^{2n}} + \frac{1}{3^{2n}} + \frac{1}{4^{2n}} + \cdots \right]$  

2. $B_{2n} = \frac{(-1)^{n+1} (2n)!}{\pi^{2n} (2^{2n-1} - 1)} \left[ 1 - \frac{1}{2^{2n}} + \frac{1}{3^{2n}} - \frac{1}{4^{2n}} + \cdots \right]$  

3. $E_{2n} = \frac{(-1)^n 2^{2n+2} (2n)!}{\pi^{2n+1}} \left[ 1 - \frac{1}{3^{2n+1}} + \frac{1}{5^{2n+1}} - \frac{1}{7^{2n+1}} + \cdots \right]$  

1.3.1.3 Relationships Between $B_n$ and $E_n$

1. $E_{2n} = - \left[ \frac{(2n)!}{(2n - 2)!2!} E_{2n-2} + \frac{(2n)!}{(2n - 4)!4!} E_{2n-4} + \frac{(2n)!}{(2n - 6)!6!} E_{2n-6} + \cdots + E_0 \right]$  

$E_0 = 1 \ [n = 1, 2, \ldots]$.  

2. $B_{2n} = \frac{2^{2n}}{2^{2n} (2^{2n-1} - 1)} \left[ \frac{(2n - 1)!}{(2n - 2)!1!} E_{2n-2} + \frac{(2n - 1)!}{(2n - 4)!3!} E_{2n-4} + \frac{(2n - 1)!}{(2n - 6)!5!} E_{2n-6} + \cdots + E_0 \right]$  

$B_0 = 1, \ B_1 = \frac{1}{2}, \ E_0 = 1 \ [n = 1, 2, \ldots]$.  

1.3.1.4 The Occurrence of Bernoulli Numbers in Series

Bernoulli numbers enter into many summations, and their use can often lead to the form of the general term in a series expansion of a function that may be unobtainable by other means. For example, in terms of the Bernoulli numbers $B_n$, the generating function in 1.3.1.1 becomes

\[ \frac{t}{e^t - 1} = 1 - \frac{1}{2} t + \frac{B_2}{2!} t^2 + \frac{B_4}{4!} t^4 + \frac{B_6}{6!} t^6 + \cdots. \]

However,

\[ \frac{t}{e^t - 1} + \frac{t}{e^t} = \frac{t}{2} \coth \frac{t}{2}, \]

so setting $t = 2x$ in the expansion gives

\[ x \coth x = 1 + 2^2 B_2 \frac{x^2}{2!} + 2^4 B_4 \frac{x^4}{4!} + 2^6 B_6 \frac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots \]

\[ = 1 + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} 2^{2k} B_{2k} \frac{x^{2k}}{(2k)!} \]
or

1. \( \coth x = \frac{1}{x} + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} 2^{2k} B_{2k} \frac{x^{2k-1}}{(2k)!} \quad |x| < \pi \).

Replacing \( x \) by \( ix \) this becomes

2. \( \cot x = \frac{1}{x} + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^k 2^{2k} B_{2k} \frac{x^{2k-1}}{(2k)!} \quad |x| < \pi \).

The following series for \( \tan x \) is obtained by combining the previous result with the identity \( \tan x = \cot x - 2 \cot 2x \) (see 2.4.1.5.7):

3. \( \tan x = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} 2^{2k} (2^{2k} - 1) B_{2k} \frac{x^{2k-1}}{(2k)!} \quad |x| < \pi/2 \).

1.3.1.5 Sums of Powers of Integers with Even or Odd Negative Exponents

1. \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^2} = \frac{1}{1^2} + \frac{1}{2^2} + \frac{1}{3^2} + \cdots = \frac{\pi^2}{6} \)

2. \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^4} = \frac{1}{1^4} + \frac{1}{2^4} + \frac{1}{3^4} + \cdots = \frac{\pi^4}{90} \)

3. \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^6} = \frac{1}{1^6} + \frac{1}{2^6} + \frac{1}{3^6} + \cdots = \frac{\pi^6}{945} \)

4. \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^8} = \frac{1}{1^8} + \frac{1}{2^8} + \frac{1}{3^8} + \cdots = \frac{\pi^8}{9450} \)

5. \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^{2n}} = (-1)^{n+1} \frac{(2\pi)^{2n} B_{2n}}{2 \cdot (2n)!} \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots] \)

6. \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} \frac{1}{k^2} = \frac{1}{1^2} - \frac{1}{2^2} + \frac{1}{3^2} - \cdots = \frac{\pi^2}{12} \)

7. \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} \frac{1}{k^4} = \frac{1}{1^4} - \frac{1}{2^4} + \frac{1}{3^4} - \cdots = \frac{7\pi^4}{720} \)

8. \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} \frac{1}{k^6} = \frac{1}{1^6} - \frac{1}{2^6} + \frac{1}{3^6} - \cdots = \frac{31\pi^6}{30240} \)

9. \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} \frac{1}{k^8} = \frac{1}{1^8} - \frac{1}{2^8} + \frac{1}{3^8} - \cdots = \frac{127\pi^8}{1209600} \)

10. \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} \frac{1}{k^{2n}} = (-1)^{n+1} \frac{\pi^{2n} (2^{2n-1} - 1)}{(2n)!} B_{2n} \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots] \)
1.3 Bernoulli and Euler Numbers and Polynomials

1. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2k-1)^2} = \frac{1}{1^2} + \frac{1}{3^2} + \frac{1}{5^2} + \cdots = \frac{\pi^2}{8} \]

2. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2k-1)^4} = \frac{1}{1^4} + \frac{1}{3^4} + \frac{1}{5^4} + \cdots = \frac{\pi^4}{96} \]

3. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2k-1)^6} = \frac{1}{1^6} + \frac{1}{3^6} + \frac{1}{5^6} + \cdots = \frac{\pi^6}{960} \]

4. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2k-1)^8} = \frac{1}{1^8} + \frac{1}{3^8} + \frac{1}{5^8} + \cdots = \frac{17\pi^8}{161280} \]

5. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2k-1)^{2n}} = (-1)^{n+1} \frac{\pi^{2n} (2^{2n} - 1)}{2 (2n)!} B_{2n} \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots] \]

6. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} \frac{1}{(2k-1)^3} = 1 - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5} - \cdots = \frac{\pi^2}{12} \]

7. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} \frac{1}{(2k-1)^5} = 1 - \frac{1}{3^5} + \frac{1}{5^5} - \cdots = \frac{5\pi^5}{1536} \]

8. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} \frac{1}{(2k-1)^7} = 1 - \frac{1}{3^7} + \frac{1}{5^7} - \cdots = \frac{61\pi^7}{184320} \]

9. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} \frac{1}{(2k-1)^{2n+1}} = (-1)^n \frac{\pi^{2n+1}}{2^{2n+2} (2n)!} E_{2n} \quad [n = 0, 1, \ldots] \]

1.3.1.6 Asymptotic Representations for \( B_{2n} \)

1. \( B_{2n} \sim (-1)^{n+1} \frac{2 (2n)!}{(2\pi)^{2n}} \)

2. \( B_{2n} \sim (-1)^{n+1} 4 (\pi n)^{1/2} \left( \frac{n}{\pi e} \right)^{2n} \)

3. \[ \frac{B_{2n}}{B_{2n+2}} \sim -4\pi^2 \frac{1}{(2n+1)(2n+2)} \]

4. \[ \frac{B_{2n}}{B_{2n+2}} \sim -\left( \frac{\pi e}{n+1} \right)^2 \left( \frac{n}{n+1} \right)^{2n} \]
1.3.2 Bernoulli and Euler Polynomials

1.3.2.1 The Bernoulli Polynomials

The Bernoulli polynomials $B_n(x)$ are defined by

$$B_n(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} B_k x^{n-k},$$

and they have as their generating function

$$\frac{e^{xt}}{e^t - 1} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} B_n(x) \frac{t^{n-1}}{n!}.$$

The first eight Bernoulli polynomials are

3. $B_0(x) = 1$
4. $B_1(x) = x - \frac{1}{2}$
5. $B_2(x) = x^2 - x + \frac{1}{6}$
6. $B_3(x) = x^3 - \frac{3}{2} x^2 + \frac{1}{2} x$
7. $B_4(x) = x^4 - 2x^3 + x^2 - \frac{1}{30}$
8. $B_5(x) = x^5 - \frac{5}{2} x^4 + \frac{5}{3} x^3 - \frac{1}{6} x$
9. $B_6(x) = x^6 - 3x^5 + \frac{5}{2} x^4 - \frac{1}{2} x^2 + \frac{1}{42}$
10. $B_7(x) = x^7 - \frac{7}{2} x^6 + \frac{7}{2} x^5 - \frac{7}{6} x^3 + \frac{1}{6} x$

The Bernoulli numbers $B_n$ are related to the Bernoulli polynomials $B_n(x)$ by

11. $B_n = B_n(0) \quad [n = 0, 1, \ldots]$.

1.3.2.2 Functional Relations and Properties of Bernoulli Polynomials

1. $B_{m+1}(n) = B_{m+1} + (m + 1) \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} k^m$ \quad $[m, n$ natural numbers$]$  
2. $B_n(x + 1) - B_n(x) = nx^{n-1} \quad [n = 0, 1, \ldots]$  
3. $B_n(1 - x) = (-1)^n B_n(x) \quad [n = 0, 1, \ldots]$  
4. $(-1)^n B_n(-x) = B_n(x) + nx^{n-1} \quad [n = 0, 1, \ldots]$  
5. $B_n(mx) = m^{n-1} \sum_{k=0}^{m-1} B_n \left( x + \frac{k}{m} \right) \quad [m = 1, 2, \ldots, n = 0, 1, \ldots]$
6. \( B'_n(x) = nB_{n-1}(x) \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots] \)

7. \( \sum_{k=1}^{m} k^n = \frac{B_{n+1}(m+1) - B_{n+1}}{n+1} \quad [m, n = 1, 2, \ldots] \)

8. \( B_n(x+h) = \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} B_k(x) h^{n-k} \quad [n = 0, 1, \ldots] \)

1.3.2.3 The Euler Polynomials

The Euler polynomials \( E_n(x) \) are defined by

1. \( E_n(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} \frac{E_k}{2^k} \left( x - \frac{1}{2} \right)^{n-k} \),

and they have as their generating function

2. \( \frac{2e^{xt}}{e^t + 1} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} E_n(x) \frac{t^n}{n!} \).

The first eight Euler polynomials are

3. \( E_0(x) = 1 \)
4. \( E_1(x) = x - \frac{1}{2} \)
5. \( E_2(x) = x^2 - x \)
6. \( E_3(x) = x^3 - \frac{3}{2}x^2 + \frac{1}{4} \)
7. \( E_4(x) = x^4 - 2x^3 + x \)
8. \( E_5(x) = x^5 - \frac{5}{2}x^4 + \frac{5}{2}x^2 - \frac{1}{2} \)
9. \( E_6(x) = x^6 - 3x^5 + 5x^3 - 3x \)
10. \( E_7(x) = x^7 - \frac{7}{2}x^6 + \frac{35}{4}x^4 - \frac{11}{2}x^2 + \frac{17}{8} \)

The Euler numbers \( E_n \) are related to the Euler polynomials \( E_n(x) \) by

11. \( E_n = 2^n E_n \left( \frac{1}{2} \right) \quad \text{(an integer)} \quad [n = 0, 1, \ldots] \)

1.3.2.4 Functional Relations and Properties of Euler Polynomials

1. \( E_m(n+1) = 2 \sum_{k=1}^{n} (-1)^{n-k} k^m + (-1)^{n+1} E_m(0) \quad [m, n \text{ natural numbers}] \)
2. \( E_n(x+1) + E_n(x) = 2x^n \quad [n = 0, 1, \ldots] \)
3. \(E_n(1-x) = (-1)^n E_n(x) \quad [n = 0, 1, \ldots]\)

4. \((-1)^{n+1} E_n(-x) = E_n(x) - 2x^n \quad [n = 0, 1, \ldots]\)

5. \(E_n(mx) = m^n \sum_{k=0}^{m-1} (-1)^k E_n\left(x + \frac{k}{m}\right) \quad [n = 0, 1, \ldots, m = 1, 3, \ldots]\)

6. \(E_n'(x) = nE_{n-1}(x) \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots]\)

7. \(\sum_{k=1}^{m} (-1)^{m-k} k^n = \frac{E_n(m+1) + (-1)^m E_n(0)}{2} \quad [m, n = 1, 2, \ldots]\)

8. \(E_n(x + h) = \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} E_k(x) h^{n-k} \quad [n = 0, 1, \ldots]\)

### 1.3.3 The Euler–Maclaurin Summation Formula

Let \(f(x)\) have continuous derivatives of all orders up to and including \(2m + 2\) for \(0 \leq x \leq n\). Then if \(a_k = f(k)\), the sum \(\sum_{k=0}^{n} f(k) = \sum_{k=0}^{n} a_k\) determined by the Euler–Maclaurin summation formula is given by

\[
\sum_{k=0}^{n} a_k = \int_{0}^{n} f(t) \, dt + \frac{1}{2} [f(0) + f(n)] + \sum_{k=1}^{m} \frac{B_{2k}}{(2k)!} \left[ f^{(2k-1)}(n) - f^{(2k-1)}(0) \right] + R_m,
\]

where the remainder term is

\[
R_m = \frac{nB_{2m+2}}{(2m+2)!} f^{(2m+2)}(\theta n) \quad \text{with} \quad 0 < \theta < 1 \quad [m, n = 1, 2, \ldots].
\]

In special cases this formula yields an exact closed-form solution for the required sum, whereas in others it provides an asymptotic result. For example, if \(f(x) = x^2\), the summation formula yields an exact result for \(\sum_{k=1}^{n} k^2\), because every term after the one in \(B_2\) is identically zero, including the remainder term \(R_1\). The details of the calculations are as follows:

\[
\sum_{k=0}^{n} k^2 = \sum_{k=1}^{n} k^2 = \int_{0}^{n} t^2 \, dt + \frac{1}{2} n^2 + \frac{B_2}{2!} \cdot 2n
\]

\[
= \frac{1}{3} n^3 + \frac{1}{2} n^2 + \frac{1}{6} n = \frac{1}{6} (n+1)(2n+1).
\]

(see 1.2.3.1.2)

However, no closed-form expression exists for \(\sum_{k=1}^{n} 1/k^2\), so when applied to this case the formula can only yield an approximate sum. Setting \(f(x) = 1/(x+1)^2\) in the summation formula gives

\[
\sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{1}{(k+1)^2} = \frac{1}{1^2} + \frac{1}{2^2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{(n+1)^2} \approx \int_{0}^{n} \frac{dt}{(t+1)^2}
\]
Thus, a more accurate result is obtained by summing, say, the first 9 terms numerically to obtain
\[ \sum_{k=1}^{150} \frac{1}{k^2} = 1.539767731, \]
and then using the summation formula to estimate \( \sum_{k=10}^{150} \frac{1}{k^2} \). This is accomplished by setting
\[ f(x) = \frac{1}{(x+10)^2}, \]
in the summation formula, because
\[ \sum_{k=0}^{149} \frac{1}{k^2} = \sum_{k=10}^{150} \frac{1}{k^2} = \frac{1}{10^2} + \frac{1}{11^2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{150^2}. \]

This time, again setting \( m = 1 \) and neglecting \( R_1 \) gives
\[ \sum_{k=0}^{150} \frac{1}{k^2} \approx \left( \frac{1}{10} - \frac{1}{150} \right) + \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{10^2} + \frac{1}{150^2} \right) + \frac{1}{6} \left( \frac{1}{10^3} - \frac{1}{150^3} \right) = 0.098522173. \]

Thus \( \sum_{k=1}^{150} \frac{1}{k^2} \approx 1.539767731 + 0.098522173 = 1.638289904 \), which is now accurate to six decimal places.

### 1.3.4 Accelerating the Convergence of Alternating Series

An alternating series has the form \( \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} (-1)^r a_r \) with the \( a_r > 0 \), and it converges when \( a_{r+1} < a_r \) and \( \lim_{r \to \infty} a_r = 0 \). Let the alternating series \( \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} (-1)^r a_r \) be convergent to the sum \( S \). If \( s_n = \sum_{r=0}^{n} (-1)^r a_r \) is the \( n \)th partial sum of the series and \( R_n \) is the remainder so that \( S = s_n + R_n \), then \( 0 < |R_n| < a_{n+1} \). This estimate of the error caused by neglecting the remainder \( R_n \) implies that \( \frac{1}{2} (s_n + s_{n+1}) \) is a better approximation to the sum \( S \) than either or \( s_n \) or \( s_{n+1} \). If for some choice of \( N \) a sequence of \( M+1 \) values of \( s_n \) is computed for \( n = N, N+1, N+2, \ldots, N+M \), the above approach can be applied to successive pairs of values of \( s_n \) to generate a new set of \( M \) improved approximations to \( S \) denoted collectively by \( S_1 \). A repetition of this process using the approximations in \( S_1 \) will generate another set of \( M-1 \) better approximations to \( S \) denoted collectively by \( S_2 \). Proceeding in this manner,
sets of increasingly accurate approximations are generated until at the $M$th stage only one approximation remains in the set $S_M$, and this is the required improved approximation to $S$.

The approach is illustrated in the following tabulation where it is applied to the following alternating series with a known sum

$$ \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^r}{(r+1)^2} = \frac{\pi^2}{12}. $$

Setting $s_n = \sum_{r=0}^{n} \frac{(-1)^2}{(r+1)^2}$ and applying the averaging method to $s_5, s_6, s_7, s_8, \text{ and } s_9$ gives the following results, where each entry in column $S_m$ is obtained by averaging the entries that lie immediately above and below it in the previous column $S_{m-1}$.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$n$</th>
<th>$s_n$</th>
<th>$S_1$</th>
<th>$S_2$</th>
<th>$S_3$</th>
<th>$S_4$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.810833</td>
<td>0.821037</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.831241</td>
<td>0.822233</td>
<td>0.823429</td>
<td>0.82421</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>0.815616</td>
<td>0.822609</td>
<td>0.822457</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.82493</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.827962</td>
<td>0.822376</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.822962</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>0.817962</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.822962</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The final approximation 0.822457 in column $S_4$ should be compared with the correct value that to six decimal places is 0.822467. To obtain this accuracy by direct summation would necessitate summing approximately 190 terms. The convergence of the approximation can be seen by examining the number of decimal places that remain unchanged in each column $S_m$. Improved accuracy can be achieved either by using a larger set of values $s_n$, or by starting with a large value of $n$.

1.4 DETERMINANTS

1.4.1 Expansion of Second- and Third-Order Determinants

1.4.1.1

The determinant associated with the $2 \times 2$ matrix

$$ A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{bmatrix}, $$

with elements $a_{ij}$ comprising real or complex numbers, or functions, denoted either by $|A|$ or by det $A$, is defined by

2. $|A| = a_{11}a_{22} - a_{12}a_{21}$.

This is called a second-order determinant.
The determinant associated with the $3 \times 3$ matrix

$$
\mathbf{A} = \begin{bmatrix}
a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\
a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\
a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33}
\end{bmatrix},
$$

with elements $a_{ij}$ comprising real or complex numbers, or functions, is defined by

3. $|\mathbf{A}| = a_{11}a_{22}a_{33} - a_{11}a_{23}a_{32} + a_{12}a_{23}a_{31} - a_{12}a_{21}a_{33} + a_{13}a_{21}a_{32} - a_{13}a_{22}a_{31}$.

This is called a **third-order** determinant.

### 1.4.2 Minors, Cofactors, and the Laplace Expansion

#### 1.4.2.1

The $n \times n$ matrix

1. $\mathbf{A} = \begin{bmatrix}
a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\
a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{nn}
\end{bmatrix}$

has associated with it the determinant

2. $|\mathbf{A}| = \begin{vmatrix}
a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\
a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{nn}
\end{vmatrix}$

The **order** of a determinant is the number of elements in its leading diagonal (the diagonal from top left to bottom right), so an $n$'th-order determinant is associated with an $n \times n$ matrix. The Laplace expansion of a determinant of arbitrary order is given later.

The **minor** $M_{ij}$ associated with the element $a_{ij}$ in 1.4.2.1 is the $(n-1)$th-order determinant derived from 1.4.2.1 by deletion of its $i$'th row and $j$'th column. The **cofactor** $C_{ij}$ associated with the element $a_{ij}$ is defined as

3. $C_{ij} = (-1)^{i+j} M_{ij}$.

The **Laplace expansion** of determinant 1.4.2.1 may be either by elements of a row or of a column of $|\mathbf{A}|$.

**Laplace expansion of $|\mathbf{A}|$ by elements of the $i$'th row.**

4. $|\mathbf{A}| = \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{ij} C_{ij} \quad [i = 1, 2, \ldots, n]$.

**Laplace expansion of $|\mathbf{A}|$ by elements of the $j$'th column.**

5. $|\mathbf{A}| = \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_{ij} C_{ij} \quad [j = 1, 2, \ldots, n]$. 
A related property of determinants is that the sum of the products of the elements in any row and the cofactors of the corresponding elements in any other row is zero. Similarly, the sum of the products of the elements in any column and the cofactors of the corresponding elements in any other column is zero. Thus for a determinant of any order

6. \[ \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{ij} C_{kj} = 0 \quad [j \neq k, i = 1, 2, \ldots, n] \]

and

7. \[ \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_{ij} C_{ik} = 0 \quad [j \neq k, j = 1, 2, \ldots, n]. \]

If the Kronecker delta symbol \( \delta_{ij} \) is introduced, where

8. \[ \delta_{ij} = \begin{cases} 1, & i = j \\ 0, & i \neq j \end{cases} \]

results 1.4.2.1.4–7 may be combined to give

9. \[ \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{ij} C_{kj} = \delta_{ik} |A| \quad \text{and} \quad \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_{ij} C_{ik} = \delta_{jk} |A|. \]

These results may be illustrated by considering the matrix

\[
A = \begin{bmatrix}
1 & 2 & 1 \\
-2 & 4 & -1 \\
2 & 1 & 3
\end{bmatrix}
\]

and its associated determinant \( |A| \). Expanding \( |A| \) by elements of its second row gives

\[ |A| = -2C_{21} + 4C_{22} - C_{23}, \]

but

\[ C_{21} = (-1)^{2+1} \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 \end{vmatrix} = -5, \quad C_{22} = (-1)^{2+2} \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 3 \end{vmatrix} = 1, \]

\[ C_{23} = (-1)^{2+3} \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 3, \]

so

\[ |A| = (-2) \cdot (-5) + 4 \cdot (1) - 3 = 11. \]

Alternatively, expanding \( |A| \) by elements of its first column gives

\[ |A| = C_{11} - 2C_{21} + 2C_{31}, \]
but

\[
C_{11} = (-1)^{1+1} \begin{vmatrix} 4 & -1 \\ 1 & 3 \end{vmatrix} = 13, \quad C_{21} = (-1)^{2+1} \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 \end{vmatrix} = -5, \\
C_{31} = (-1)^{3+1} \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 4 & -1 \end{vmatrix} = -6,
\]

so

\[
|A| = 13 - 2 \cdot (-5) + 2 \cdot (-6) = 11.
\]

To verify 1.4.2.1.6 we sum the products of elements in the first row of \(|A|\) \((i = 1)\) and the cofactors of the corresponding elements in the second row of \(|A|\) \((k = 2)\) to obtain

\[
\sum_{j=1}^{3} a_{ij} C_{2j} = a_{11} C_{21} + a_{12} C_{22} + a_{13} C_{23} \\
= 1 \cdot (-5) + 2 \cdot 1 + 1 \cdot 3 = 0.
\]

1.4.3 Basic Properties of Determinants

1.4.3.1

Let \(A = [a_{ij}]\), \(B = [b_{ij}]\) be \(n \times n\) matrices, when the following results are true.

1. If any two adjacent rows (or columns) of \(|A|\) are interchanged, the sign of the resulting determinant is changed.
2. If any two rows (or columns) of \(|A|\) are identical, then \(|A| = 0\).
3. The value of a determinant is not changed if any multiple of a row (or column) is added to any other row (or column).
4. \(|kA| = k^n|A|\) for any scalar \(k\).
5. \(|A^T| = |A|\), where \(A^T\) is the transpose of \(A\). \hspace{1cm} \text{(see 1.5.1.1.7)}
6. \(|A||B| = |AB|\). \hspace{1cm} \text{(see 1.5.1.1.27)}
7. \(|A^{-1}| = 1/|A|\), where \(A^{-1}\) is the matrix inverse to \(A\). \hspace{1cm} \text{(see 1.5.1.1.9)}
8. If the elements \(a_{ij}\) of \(A\) are functions of \(x\), then

\[
\frac{d |A|}{dx} = \sum_{i,j=1}^{n} \frac{da_{ij}}{dx} C_{ij}, \quad \text{where } C_{ij} \text{ is the cofactor of the element } a_{ij}.
\]

1.4.4 Jacobi’s Theorem

1.4.4.1

Let \(M_r\) be an \(r\)-rowed minor of the \(n\)th-order determinant \(|A|\), associated with the \(n \times n\) matrix \(A = [a_{ij}]\), in which the rows \(i_1, i_2, \ldots, i_r\) are represented together with the columns \(k_1, k_2, \ldots, k_r\).
Define the complementary minor to $M_r$ to be the $(n - k)$-rowed minor obtained from $|A|$ by deleting all the rows and columns associated with $M_r$, and the signed complementary minor $M^{(r)}$ to $M_r$ to be

1. $M^{(r)} = (-1)^{i_1 + i_2 + \cdots + i_r + k_1 + \cdots + k_r} \times \text{(complementary minor to } M_r\text{)}$.

Then, if $\Delta$ is the matrix of cofactors given by

\[ \Delta = \begin{vmatrix} C_{11} & C_{12} & \cdots & C_{1n} \\ C_{21} & C_{22} & \cdots & C_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ C_{n1} & C_{n2} & \cdots & C_{nn} \end{vmatrix}, \]

and $M_r$ and $M'_r$ are corresponding $r$-rowed minors of $|A|$ and $\Delta$, it follows that

3. $M'_r = |A|^{r-1} M^{(r)}$.

It follows that if $|A| = 0$, then

4. $C_{rk} C_{kq} = C_{nk} C_{pq}$.

### 1.4.5 Hadamard’s Theorem

#### 1.4.5.1

If $|A|$ is an $n \times n$ determinant with elements $a_{ij}$ that may be complex, then $|A| \neq 0$ if

1. $|a_{ii}| > \sum_{j=1, j \neq i}^n |a_{ij}|$.

### 1.4.6 Hadamard’s Inequality

#### 1.4.6.1

Let $A = [a_{ij}]$ be an arbitrary $n \times n$ nonsingular matrix with real elements and determinant $|A|$. Then

1. $|A|^2 \leq \prod_{i=1}^n \left( \sum_{k=1}^n a_{ik}^2 \right)$.

This result remains true if $A$ has complex elements but is such that $A = \overline{A}^T$ ($A$ is hermitian), where $\overline{A}$ denotes the matrix obtained from $A$ by replacing each element by its complex conjugate and $T$ denotes the transpose operation (see 1.5.1.1.7).

### Deductions

1. If $M = \max |a_{ij}|$, then

   $|A| \leq M^n n^{n/2}$.

2. If the $n \times n$ matrix $A = [a_{ij}]$ is positive definite (see 1.5.1.1.21), then

   $|A| \leq a_{11} a_{22} \cdots a_{nn}$. 

3. If the real $n \times n$ matrix $A$ is **diagonally dominant**, that is if

$$\sum_{j \neq 1}^{n} |a_{ij}| < |a_{ii}| \quad \text{for } i = 1, 2, \ldots, n,$$

then $|A| \neq 0$.

### 1.4.7 Cramer's Rule

#### 1.4.7.1

If $n$ linear equations

1. $a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \cdots + a_{1n}x_n = b_1,$
2. $a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + \cdots + a_{2n}x_n = b_2,$
   
   $$\vdots \quad \vdots \quad \vdots \quad \vdots \quad \vdots$
3. $a_{n1}x_1 + a_{n2}x_2 + \cdots + a_{nn}x_n = b_n,$

have a **nonsingular** coefficient matrix $A = [a_{ij}]$, so that $|A| \neq 0$, then there is a unique solution

$$x_j = \frac{C_{1j}b_1 + C_{2j}b_2 + \cdots + C_{nj}b_j}{|A|}$$

for $j = 1, 2, \ldots, n$, where $C_{ij}$ is the cofactor of element $a_{ij}$ in the coefficient matrix $A$ (Cramer's rule).

### 1.4.8 Some Special Determinants

#### 1.4.8.1 Vandermonde’s Determinant (Alternant)

1. **Third order**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ x_1 & x_2 & x_3 \\ x_1^2 & x_2^2 & x_3^2 \end{vmatrix} = (x_3 - x_2)(x_3 - x_1)(x_2 - x_1).$$

2. **$n$'th order**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & \cdots & 1 \\ x_1 & x_2 & \cdots & x_n \\ x_1^2 & x_2^2 & \cdots & x_n^2 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \cdots & \vdots \\ x_1^{n-1} & x_2^{n-1} & \cdots & x_n^{n-1} \end{vmatrix} = \prod_{1 \leq i < j \leq n} (x_j - x_i),$$

where the right-hand side is the continued product of all the differences that can be formed from the $\frac{1}{2}n(n - 1)$ pairs of numbers taken from $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n$, with the order of the differences taken in the reverse order of the suffixes that are involved.
1.4.8.2 Circulants

3. Second order
\[
\begin{vmatrix}
x_1 & x_2 \\
x_2 & x_1 \\
\end{vmatrix} = (x_1 + x_2)(x_1 - x_2).
\]

4. Third order
\[
\begin{vmatrix}
x_1 & x_2 & x_3 \\
x_3 & x_1 & x_2 \\
x_2 & x_3 & x_1 \\
\end{vmatrix} = (x_1 + x_2 + x_3)(x_1 + \omega x_2 + \omega^2 x_3)(x_1 + \omega^2 x_2 + \omega x_3),
\]

where \(\omega\) and \(\omega^2\) are the two complex cube roots of 1.

5. \(n\)th order
\[
\begin{vmatrix}
x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & \cdots & x_n \\
x_n & x_1 & x_2 & \cdots & x_{n-1} \\
x_{n-1} & x_n & x_1 & \cdots & x_{n-2} \\
\vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
x_2 & x_3 & x_4 & \cdots & x_1 \\
\end{vmatrix} = \prod_{j=1}^{n} \left( x_1 + x_2 \omega_j + x_3 \omega_j^2 + \cdots + x_n \omega_j^{n-1} \right),
\]

where \(\omega_j\) is an \(n\)th root of 1.

The eigenvalues \(\lambda\) (see 1.5.11.18) of an \(n \times n\) circulant matrix are
\[
\lambda_j = x_1 + x_2 \omega_j + x_3 \omega_j^2 + \cdots + x_n \omega_j^{n-1},
\]

where \(\omega_j\) is again an \(n\)’th root of 1.

1.4.8.3 Jacobian Determinants

If \(f_1, f_2, \ldots, f_n\) are \(n\) real-valued functions that are differentiable with respect to \(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n\), then the Jacobian \(J_f(x)\) of the \(f_i\) with respect to the \(x_j\) is the determinant
\[
J_f(x) = \begin{vmatrix}
\frac{\partial f_1}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial f_1}{\partial x_2} & \cdots & \frac{\partial f_1}{\partial x_n} \\
\frac{\partial f_2}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial f_2}{\partial x_2} & \cdots & \frac{\partial f_2}{\partial x_n} \\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
\frac{\partial f_n}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial f_n}{\partial x_2} & \cdots & \frac{\partial f_n}{\partial x_n} \\
\end{vmatrix}.
\]

The notation
\[
\frac{\partial (f_1, f_2, \ldots, f_n)}{\partial (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n)}
\]

is also used to denote the Jacobian \(J_f(x)\).
1.4.8.4 Hessian Determinants
The Jacobian of the derivatives \( \partial \phi / \partial x_1, \partial \phi / \partial x_2, \ldots, \partial \phi / \partial x_n \) of a function \( \phi(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n) \) with respect to \( x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n \) is called the Hessian \( H \) of \( \phi \), so that

\[
H = \begin{vmatrix}
\frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x_1^2} & \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x_1 \partial x_2} & \cdots & \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x_1 \partial x_n} \\
\frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x_2 \partial x_1} & \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x_2^2} & \cdots & \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x_2 \partial x_n} \\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
\frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x_n \partial x_1} & \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x_n \partial x_2} & \cdots & \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x_n^2}
\end{vmatrix}.
\]

1.4.8.5 Wronskian Determinants
Let \( f_1, f_2, \ldots, f_n \) be \( n \) functions, each \( n \) times differentiable with respect to \( x \) in some open interval \((a, b)\). Then the Wronskian \( W(x) \) of \( f_1, f_2, \ldots, f_n \) is defined by

\[
W(x) = \begin{vmatrix}
f_1 & f_2 & \cdots & f_n \\
f_1^{(1)} & f_2^{(1)} & \cdots & f_n^{(1)} \\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
f_1^{(n-1)} & f_2^{(n-1)} & \cdots & f_n^{(n-1)}
\end{vmatrix},
\]

where \( f_i^{(r)} = d^r f_i / dx^r \).

Properties of Wronskian determinants.
2. \( dW/dx \) follows from \( W(x) \) by replacing the last row of the determinant defining \( W(x) \) by the \( n \)'th derivatives \( f_1^{(n)}, f_2^{(n)}, \ldots, f_n^{(n)} \).
3. If constants \( k_1, k_2, \ldots, k_n \) exist, not all zero, such that

\[
k_1 f_1 + k_2 f_2 + \cdots + k_n f_n = 0
\]

for all \( x \) in \((a, b)\), then \( W(x) = 0 \) for all \( x \) in \((a, b)\).
4. The vanishing of the Wronskian throughout \((a, b)\) is necessary, but not sufficient, for the linear dependence of \( f_1, f_2, \ldots, f_n \).

1.4.9 Routh–Hurwitz Theorem
1.4.9.1
Let \( P(\lambda) \) be the \( n \)th degree polynomial

1. \( P(\lambda) \equiv \lambda^n + a_1 \lambda^{n-1} + a_2 \lambda^{n-2} + \cdots + a_n \).

Form the \( n \) numbers:
2. \( \Delta_1 = a_1, \quad \Delta_2 = \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & 1 \\ a_3 & a_2 \end{vmatrix}, \quad \Delta_3 = \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & 1 & 0 \\ a_3 & a_2 & a_1 \\ a_5 & a_4 & a_3 \end{vmatrix}, \ldots, \)

\[
\Delta_n = \begin{vmatrix}
    a_1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\
    a_3 & a_2 & a_1 & 1 & \cdots & 0 \\
    a_5 & a_4 & a_3 & a_2 & \cdots & 0 \\
    \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
    a_{2n-1} & a_{2n-2} & a_{2n-3} & a_{2n-4} & \cdots & a_n
\end{vmatrix},
\]

and set \( a_r = 0 \) for \( r > n \).

3. Then the necessary and sufficient conditions for the zeros of \( P(\lambda) \) all to have negative real parts (the Routh–Hurwitz conditions) are

\[
\Delta_i > 0 \quad [i = 1, 2, \ldots, n].
\]

### 1.5 Matrices

#### 1.5.1 Special Matrices

##### 1.5.1.1 Basic Definitions

1. An \( m \times n \) matrix is a rectangular array of elements (numbers or functions) with \( m \) rows and \( n \) columns. If a matrix is denoted by \( A \), the element (entry) in its \( i \)'th row and \( j \)'th column is denoted by \( a_{ij} \), and we write \( A = [a_{ij}] \). A matrix with as many rows as columns is called a **square matrix**.

2. A square matrix \( A \) of the form

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
    \lambda_1 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\
    0 & \lambda_2 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\
    0 & 0 & \lambda_3 & \cdots & 0 \\
    \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
    0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & \lambda_n
\end{bmatrix}
\]

in which all entries away from the leading diagonal (the diagonal from top left to bottom right) are zero is called a **diagonal matrix**. This diagonal matrix is often abbreviated as \( A = \text{diag}\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_n\} \), where the order in which the elements \( \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_n \) appear in this notation is the order in which they appear on the leading diagonal of \( A \).

3. The **identity matrix**, or **unit matrix**, is a diagonal matrix \( I \) in which all entries in the leading diagonal are unity.

4. A **null matrix** is a matrix of any shape in which every entry is zero.
5. The $n \times n$ matrix $A = [a_{ij}]$ is said to be **reducible** if the indices $1, 2, \ldots, n$ can be divided into two disjoint nonempty sets $\{i_1, i_2, \ldots, i_\mu\}$; $\{j_1, j_2, \ldots, j_\nu\}$ ($\mu + \nu = n$), such that

$$a_{i_\alpha j_\beta} = 0 \quad (\alpha = 1, 2, \ldots, \mu; \beta = 1, 2, \ldots, \nu).$$

Otherwise $A$ will be said to be **irreducible**.

6. An $m \times n$ matrix $A$ is **equivalent** to an $m \times n$ matrix $B$ if, and only if, $B = PAQ$ for suitable **nonsingular** $m \times m$ and $n \times n$ matrices $P$ and $Q$, respectively. A matrix $D$ is said to be **nonsingular** if $|D| \neq 0$.

7. If $A = [a_{ij}]$ is an $n \times n$ matrix with element $a_{ij}$ in its $i$'th row and the $j$'th column, then the **transpose** $A^T$ of $A$ is $n \times m$ matrix $A^T = [b_{ij}]$ with $b_{ij} = a_{ji}$; that is, the transpose $A^T$ of $A$ is the matrix derived from $A$ by interchanging rows and columns, so the $i$'th row of $A$ becomes the $i$'th column of $A^T$ for $i = 1, 2, \ldots, m$.

8. If $A$ is an $n \times n$ matrix, its **adjoint**, denoted by $\text{adj} A$, is the transpose of the matrix of cofactors $C_{ij}$ of $A$, so that

$$\text{adj} A = [C_{ij}]^T.$$ (see 1.4.2.1.3)

9. If $A = [a_{ij}]$ is an $n \times n$ matrix with a nonsingular determinant $|A|$, then its **inverse** $A^{-1}$, also called its **multiplicative inverse**, is given by

$$A^{-1} = \frac{\text{adj} A}{|A|}; \quad A^{-1}A = AA^{-1} = I.$$

10. The **trace** of an $n \times n$ matrix $A = [a_{ij}]$, written $\text{tr} A$, is defined to be the sum of the terms on the leading diagonal, so that

$$\text{tr} A = a_{11} + a_{22} + \cdots + a_{nn}.$$ 

11. The $n \times n$ matrix $A = [a_{ij}]$ is **symmetric** if $a_{ij} = a_{ji}$ for $i, j = 1, 2, \ldots, n$.

12. The $n \times n$ matrix $A = [a_{ij}]$ is **skew-symmetric** if $a_{ij} = -a_{ji}$ for $i, j = 1, 2, \ldots, n$; so in a skew-symmetric matrix each element on the leading diagonal is zero.

13. An $n \times n$ matrix $A = [a_{ij}]$ is of **upper triangular type** if $a_{ij} = 0$ for $i > j$ and of **lower triangular type** if $a_{ij} = 0$ for $j > i$.

14. A real $n \times n$ matrix $A$ is orthogonal if, and only if, $AA^T = I$.

15. If $A = [a_{ij}]$ is an $n \times n$ matrix with complex elements, then its **Hermitian transpose** $A^\dagger$ is defined to be

$$A^\dagger = [\bar{a}_{ji}],$$

with the bar denoting the complex conjugate operation. The Hermitian transpose operation is also denoted by a superscript $H$, so that $A^\dagger = A^H = (\bar{A})^T$. 


A Hermitian matrix $A$ is said to be normal if $A$ and $A^\dagger$ commute, so that $AA^\dagger = A^\dagger A$ or, in the equivalent notation, $AA^H = A^H A$.

16. An $n \times n$ matrix $A$ is Hermitian if $A = A^\dagger$, or equivalently, if $A = \overline{A^T}$, with the overbar denoting the complex conjugate operation.

17. An $n \times n$ matrix $A$ is unitary if $AA^\dagger = A^\dagger A = I$.

18. If $A$ is an $n \times n$ matrix, the eigenvectors $X$ satisfy the equation

$$AX = \lambda X,$$

while the eigenvalues $\lambda$ satisfy the characteristic equation

$$|A - \lambda I| = 0.$$

19. An $n \times n$ matrix $A$ is nilpotent with index $k$, if $k$ is the smallest integer such that $A^{k-1} \neq 0$ but $A^k = 0$. For example, if

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad A^2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 6 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad A^3 = 0,$$

so $A$ is nilpotent with index 3.

20. An $n \times n$ matrix $A$ is idempotent if $A^2 = A$.

21. An $n \times n$ matrix $A$ is positive definite if $x^T Ax > 0$, for $x \neq 0$ an $n$ element column vector.

22. An $n \times n$ matrix $A$ is nonnegative definite if $x^T Ax \geq 0$, for $x \neq 0$ an $n$ element column vector.

23. An $n \times n$ matrix $A$ is diagonally dominant if $|a_{ii}| > \sum_{j \neq i} |a_{ij}|$ for all $i$.

24. Two matrices $A$ and $B$ are equal if, and only if, they are both of the same shape and corresponding elements are equal.

25. Two matrices $A$ and $B$ can be added (or subtracted) if, and only if, they have the same shape. If $A = [a_{ij}]$, $B = [b_{ij}]$, and $C = A + B$, with $C = [c_{ij}]$, then

$$c_{ij} = a_{ij} + b_{ij}.$$

Similarly, if $D = A - B$, with $D = [d_{ij}]$, then

$$d_{ij} = a_{ij} - b_{ij}.$$

26. If $k$ is a scalar and $A = [a_{ij}]$ is a matrix, then

$$kA = [ka_{ij}].$$

27. If $A$ is an $m \times n$ matrix and $B$ is a $p \times q$ matrix, the matrix product $C = AB$, in this order, is only defined if $n = p$, and then $C$ is an $m \times q$ matrix. When the matrix product
1.5 Matrices

The matrix product \( C = AB \) is defined, the entry \( c_{ij} \) in the \( i \)'th row and \( j \)'th column of \( C \) is \( a_i b_j \), where \( a_i \) is the \( i \)'th row of \( A \), \( C_j \) is the \( j \)'th column of \( B \), and if

\[
a_i = [a_{i1}, a_{i2}, \ldots, a_{in}], \quad b_j = \begin{bmatrix} b_{1j} \\ b_{2j} \\ \vdots \\ b_{nj} \end{bmatrix},
\]

then

\[
a_i b_j = a_{i1} b_{1j} + a_{i2} b_{2j} + \cdots + a_{in} b_{nj}.
\]

Thus if

\[
A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -1 & 4 \\ 1 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}, \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 0 & -3 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad C = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 4 & -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix},
\]

\[
AB = \begin{bmatrix} 11 & 13 \\ 5 & 4 \end{bmatrix}, \quad BA = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & -1 & 8 \\ -3 & 0 & -6 \\ 2 & -2 & 10 \end{bmatrix}, \quad AC = \begin{bmatrix} 19 & 1 & 5 \\ 9 & 0 & 3 \end{bmatrix}
\]

but \( BC \) is not defined.

28. Let the characteristic equation of the \( n \times n \) matrix \( A \) determined by \( |A - \lambda I| = 0 \) have the form

\[
\lambda^n + c_1 \lambda^{n-1} + c_2 \lambda^{n-2} + \cdots + c_n = 0.
\]

Then \( A \) satisfies its characteristic equation, so

\[
A^n + c_1 A^{n-1} + c_2 A^{n-2} + \cdots + c_n I = 0.
\]

(Cayley–Hamilton theorem.)

29. If the matrix product \( AB \) is defined, then

\[
(AB)^T = B^T A^T.
\]

30. If the matrix product \( AB \) is defined, then

\[
(AB)^{-1} = B^{-1} A^{-1}.
\]

31. The matrix \( A \) is orthogonal if \( AA^T = I \).

32. An \( n \times n \) matrix \( A \) with distinct eigenvalues \( \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_n \), and a corresponding set of linearly independent eigenvectors \( x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n \), satisfying \( Ax_i = \lambda_i x_i \) for \( i = 1, 2, \ldots, n \), may always be transformed into the diagonal matrix \( D = \text{diag}(\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_n) \). This
is accomplished by setting $D = P^{-1}AP$, where $P$ is the matrix with its columns the eigenvectors $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n$ of $A$ arranged in the same order as that of the corresponding eigenvalues in $D$. This result also applies if an eigenvalue $\lambda_j$ is repeated $r$ times $\lambda_j^{(1)}, \lambda_j^{(2)}, \ldots, \lambda_j^{(r)}$, provided it has associated with it $r$ linearly independent eigenvectors $x_j^{(1)}, x_j^{(2)}, \ldots, x_j^{(r)}$. This process is called the diagonalization of matrix $A$. Diagonalization of a matrix is not possible if an eigenvalue that is repeated $r$ times has fewer than $r$ linearly independent eigenvectors.

**Example** The following is an example of diagonalization. If matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$, then $\lambda_1 = 1, \lambda_2 = 2, \lambda_3 = 3$, and

$$x_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, x_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, x_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$ 

Then

$$P = [x_1, x_2, x_3] = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

and $P^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ so, as expected,

$$D = P^{-1}AP = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 \end{bmatrix} = \text{diag}\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3\}.$$ 

Had the second and third columns of $P$ been interchanged, the result would become $D = P^{-1}AP = \text{diag}\{\lambda_1, \lambda_3, \lambda_2\}$, where now $\lambda_2$ and $\lambda_3$ are interchanged.

### 1.5.2 Quadratic Forms

#### 1.5.2.1 Definitions

A **quadratic form** involving the $n$ real variables $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n$ that are associated with the real $n \times n$ matrix $A = [a_{ij}]$ is the scalar expression

1. $Q(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{ij}x_i x_j.$

In matrix notation, if $x$ is the $n \times 1$ column vector with real elements $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n$, and $x^T$ is the transpose of $x$, then

2. $Q(x) = x^T Ax.$

Employing the **inner product** notation, this same quadratic form may also be written
3.  \( Q(\mathbf{x}) \equiv (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}). \)

If the \( n \times n \) matrix \( \mathbf{A} \) is Hermitian, so that \( \overline{\mathbf{A}^T} = \mathbf{A} \), where the bar denotes the complex conjugate operation, the quadratic form associated with the Hermitian matrix \( \mathbf{A} \) and the vector \( \mathbf{x} \), which may have complex elements, is the real quadratic form

4.  \( Q(\mathbf{x}) = (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}). \)

It is always possible to express an arbitrary quadratic form

5.  \( Q(x) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{ij} x_i x_j \)

in the form

6.  \( Q(\mathbf{x}) = (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}), \)

in which \( \mathbf{A} = [a_{ij}] \) is a symmetric matrix, by defining

7.  \( a_{ii} = \alpha_{ii} \) for \( i = 1, 2, \ldots, n \)

and

8.  \( a_{ij} = \frac{1}{2} (\alpha_{ij} + \alpha_{ji}) \) for \( i, j = 1, 2, \ldots, n \) and \( i \neq j \).

9.  When a quadratic form \( Q \) in \( n \) variables is reduced by a nonsingular linear transformation to the form

   \[ Q = y_1^2 + y_2^2 + \cdots + y_p^2 - y_{p+1}^2 - y_{p+2}^2 - \cdots - y_r^2, \]

   the number \( p \) of positive squares appearing in the reduction is an invariant of the quadratic form \( Q \), and does not depend on the method of reduction itself (Sylvester’s law of inertia).

10. The rank of the quadratic form \( Q \) in the above canonical form is the total number \( r \) of squared terms (both positive and negative) appearing in its reduced form \( (r \leq n) \).

11. The signature of the quadratic form \( Q \) above is the number \( s \) of positive squared terms appearing in its reduced form. It is sometimes also defined to be \( 2s - r \).

12. The quadratic form \( Q(\mathbf{x}) = (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}) \) is said to be positive definite when \( Q(\mathbf{x}) > 0 \) for \( \mathbf{x} \neq 0 \). It is said to be positive semidefinite if \( Q(\mathbf{x}) \geq 0 \) for \( \mathbf{x} \neq 0 \). 

1.5.2.2 Basic Theorems on Quadratic Forms

1. Two real quadratic forms are equivalent under the group of linear transformations if, and only if, they have the same rank and the same signature.

2. A real quadratic form in \( n \) variables is positive definite if, and only if, its canonical form is

   \[ Q = z_1^2 + z_2^2 + \cdots + z_n^2. \]

3. A real symmetric matrix \( \mathbf{A} \) is positive definite if, and only if, there exists a real nonsingular matrix \( \mathbf{M} \) such that \( \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{MM}^T \).

4. Any real quadratic form in \( n \) variables may be reduced to the diagonal form

   \[ Q = \lambda_1 z_1^2 + \lambda_2 z_2^2 + \cdots + \lambda_n z_n^2, \quad \lambda_1 \geq \lambda_2 \geq \cdots \geq \lambda_n \]
by a suitable orthogonal point-transformation. See 32 in Section 1.5.1 for the diagonalization of a matrix.

5. The quadratic form \( Q = (x, Ax) \) is positive definite if, and only if, every eigenvalue of \( A \) is positive; it is positive semidefinite if, and only if, all the eigenvalues of \( A \) are nonnegative; and it is indefinite if the eigenvalues of \( A \) are of both signs.

6. The necessary conditions for a Hermitian matrix \( A \) to be positive definite are
   (i) \( a_{ii} > 0 \) for all \( i \),
   (ii) \( a_{ii} a_{ij} > |a_{ij}|^2 \) for \( i \neq j \),
   (iii) the element of largest modulus must lie on the leading diagonal,
   (iv) \( |A| > 0 \).

7. The quadratic form \( Q = (x, Ax) \) with \( A \) Hermitian will be positive definite if all the principal minors in the top left-hand corner of \( A \) are positive, so that
   \[
   a_{11} > 0, \quad \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{vmatrix} > 0, \quad \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \end{vmatrix} > 0, \quad \cdots .
   \]

8. Let \( \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_n \) be the eigenvalues (they are real) of the \( n \times n \) real symmetric matrix \( A \) associated with a real quadratic form \( Q(x) \), and let \( x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n \) be the corresponding normalized eigenvectors. Then if \( P = [x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n] \) is the \( n \times n \) orthogonal matrix with \( x_i \) as its \( i \)th column, the matrix \( D = P^{-1}AP \) is a diagonal matrix with \( \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_n \) as the elements on its leading diagonal.
   The change of variable \( x = Py \), with \( y = [y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n]^T \) transforms \( Q(x) \) into the standard form
   \[
   Q(x) = \lambda_1 y_1^2 + \lambda_2 y_2^2 + \cdots + \lambda_n y_n^2 .
   \]
   Setting \( \lambda_{\min} = \min\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_n\} \) and \( \lambda_{\max} = \max\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_n\} \) it follows directly that
   \[
   \lambda_{\min} y^T y \leq Q(x) \leq \lambda_{\max} y^T y .
   \]

1.5.3 Differentiation and Integration of Matrices

1.5.3.1
If the \( n \times n \) matrices \( A(t) \) and \( B(t) \) have elements that are differentiable function of \( t \), so that
   \[
   A(t) = [a_{ij}(t)], \quad B(t) = [b_{ij}(t)],
   \]
then
1. \( \frac{d}{dt} A(t) = \left[ \frac{d}{dt} a_{ij}(t) \right] \)
2. \( \frac{d}{dt} [A(t) \pm B(t)] = \left[ \frac{d}{dt} a_{ij}(t) \pm \frac{d}{dt} b_{ij}(t) \right] = \frac{d}{dt} A(t) \pm \frac{d}{dt} B(t). \)
3. If the matrix product $A(t)B(t)$ is defined, then
\[ \frac{d}{dt} [A(t)B(t)] = \left[ \frac{d}{dt} A(t) \right] B(t) + A(t) \frac{d}{dt} B(t). \]

4. If the matrix product $A(t)B(t)$ is defined, then
\[ \frac{d}{dt} [A(t)B(t)]^T = \left[ \frac{d}{dt} B(t) \right]^T A^T(t) + B^T(t) \left( \frac{d}{dt} A(t) \right)^T. \]

5. If the square matrix $A$ is nonsingular, so that $|A| \neq 0$, then
\[ \frac{d}{dt} [A]^{-1} = -A^{-1}(t) \left[ \frac{d}{dt} A(t) \right] A^{-1}(t). \]

6. $\int_{t_0}^{t} A(\tau) d\tau = \left[ \int_{t_0}^{t} a_{ij} (\tau)d\tau \right].$

### 1.5.4 The Matrix Exponential

#### 1.5.4.1 Definition

If $A$ is a square matrix, and $z$ is any complex number, then the matrix exponential $e^{Az}$ is defined to be
\[ e^{Az} = I + Az + \cdots + \frac{A^n z^n}{n!} + \cdots = \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{r!} A^r z^r. \]

#### 1.5.4.2 Basic Properties of the Matrix Exponential

1. $e^0 = I$, $e^{iz} = I e^z$, $e^{A(z_1 + z_2)} = e^{Az_1} e^{Az_2}$, $e^{-Az} = (e^{Az})^{-1}$, $e^{Az} \cdot e^{Bz} = e^{(A+B)z}$

   when $A + B$ is defined and $AB = BA$.

2. $\frac{d^r}{dz^r} (e^{Az}) = A^r e^{Az} = e^{Az} A^r.$

3. If the square matrix $A$ can be expressed in the form
\[ A = \begin{bmatrix} B & 0 \\ 0 & C \end{bmatrix}, \]

   with $B$ and $C$ square matrices, then
\[ e^{Az} = \begin{bmatrix} e^{Bz} & 0 \\ 0 & e^{Cz} \end{bmatrix}. \]
1.5.4.3 Computation of the Matrix Exponential

When \( A \) is an \( n \times n \) matrix with the \( n \) distinct eigenvalues \( \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_n \), the computation of \( e^{Ax} \) is only straightforward if \( A = \text{diag}\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_n\} \) or \( A \) is nilpotent with index \( k \) (see 1.5.1.1, 19). In the first case, the definition of \( e^{Ax} \) in 1.5.4.1 shows that \( e^{Ax} = \text{diag}\{e^{\lambda_1 x}, e^{\lambda_2 x}, \ldots, e^{\lambda_n x}\} \). In the second case, the sum of matrices in the definition of \( e^{Ax} \) in 1.5.4.1 is finite because its last non-zero term is \( A^{k-1} z^{k-1}/(k-1)! \).

If neither of the above methods is applicable, but an \( n \times n \) matrix \( A \) can be diagonalized to give \( D = P^{-1} A P \) (see 1.5.1.1, 32), \( e^{Ax} \) follows from the result \( e^{Ax} = P e^{P^{-1} A P} P^{-1} = P e^{D} P^{-1} \).

**Example** The matrix \( A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -3 & -3 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \) can be diagonalized because its eigenvalues are \( \lambda_1 = -1, \lambda_2 = 0, \lambda_3 = 2 \), and the corresponding eigenvectors are

\[
x_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad x_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad x_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{so } P = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}
\]

and

\[
P^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}.
\]

The matrix \( D \) can be written down immediately because the eigenvalues of \( A \) are known, so that

\[
D = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{and } Dz = \begin{bmatrix} -z & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & z & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2z \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{hence } e^{Dz} = \begin{bmatrix} e^{-z} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & e^{z} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & e^{2z} \end{bmatrix}.
\]

As \( Dz = P^{-1} A P z = \begin{bmatrix} -z & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & z & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2z \end{bmatrix} \), it follows that \( e^{Dz} = \begin{bmatrix} e^{-z} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & e^{z} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & e^{2z} \end{bmatrix} \), and so \( e^{Ax} = P e^{Dz} P^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} e^{2z} & e^{-z} - e^{2z} & e^{-z} - e^{2z} \\ 0 & e^{z} & 0 \\ 0 & e^{-z} - e^{z} & e^{-z} \end{bmatrix} \).

The matrix exponential \( e^{Ax} \) can also be found from the result \( e^{Ax} = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{[sI - A]^{-1}\} \), irrespective of whether or not \( A \) is diagonalizable. Here \( \mathcal{L}^{-1} \) denotes the inverse Laplace transform, \( z \) is the original untransformed variable, and \( s \) is the Laplace transform variable. When \( n \) is large, this method is computationally intensive, so it is only useful when \( n \) is small.

**Example** The matrix \( A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 0 & 3 \end{bmatrix} \) is not diagonalizable, and \( n = 2 \), so it is appropriate to use the inverse Laplace transform method to find \( e^{Ax} \). We have \( [sI - A] = \begin{bmatrix} s - 3 & 1 \\ 0 & s - 3 \end{bmatrix} \), so \( [sI - A]^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 1/(s - 3) & 1/(s - 3)^2 \\ 0 & 1/(s - 3) \end{bmatrix} \).
Taking the inverse Laplace transform of each element of the matrix to transform back from the Laplace transform variable \( s \) to the original variable \( z \) gives

\[
e^{Az} = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{(sI - A)^{-1}\} = \begin{bmatrix} e^{3z} & z e^{3z} \\ 0 & e^{3z} \end{bmatrix}.
\]

### 1.5.5 The Gerschgorin Circle Theorem

#### 1.5.5.1 The Gerschgorin Circle Theorem

Each eigenvalue of an arbitrary \( n \times n \) matrix \( A = [a_{ij}] \) lies in at least one of the circles \( C_1, C_2, \ldots, C_n \) in the complex plane, where the circle \( C_r \) with radius \( \rho_r \) has its center at \( a_{rr} \), where \( a_{rr} \) is the \( r \)'th element of the leading diagonal of \( A \), and

\[
\rho_r = \sum_{j=1 \atop j \neq r}^n |a_{rj}| = |a_{r1}| + |a_{r2}| + \cdots + |a_{r,r-1}| + |a_{r,r+1}| + \cdots + |a_{rn}|.
\]

### 1.6 PERMUTATIONS AND COMBINATIONS

#### 1.6.1 Permutations

1. A permutation of \( n \) mutually distinguishable elements is an arrangement or sequence of occurrence of the elements in which their order of appearance counts.

2. The number of possible mutually distinguishable permutations of \( n \) distinct elements is denoted either by \( nP_n \) or by \( n! \), where

\[
\ nP_n = n(n-1)(n-2)\cdots3.2.1 = n!
\]

3. The number of possible mutually distinguishable permutations of \( n \) distinct elements \( m \) at a time is denoted either by \( nP_m \) or by \( n! \), where

\[
\ nP_m = \frac{n!}{(n-m)!} \quad [0! \equiv 1].
\]

4. The number of possible identifiably different permutations of \( n \) elements of two different types, of which \( m \) are of type 1 and \( n-m \) are of type 2 is

\[
\frac{n!}{m!(n-m)!} = \binom{n}{m}.
\]

This gives the relationship between binomial coefficients and the number of \( m \) element subsets of an \( n \) set. Expressed differently, this says that the coefficient of \( x^m \) in \( (1 + x)^n \) is the number of ways \( x \)'s can be selected from precisely \( m \) of the \( n \) factors of the \( n \)-fold product being expanded.
5. The number of possible identifiably different permutations of \( n \) elements of \( m \) different types, in which \( m_r \) are of type \( r \), with \( m_1 + m_2 + \cdots + m_r = n \), is

\[
\frac{n!}{m_1!m_2! \cdots m_r!},
\]

(multinomial coefficient)

1.6.2 Combinations

1.6.2.1

1. A combination of \( n \) mutually distinguishable elements \( m \) at a time is a selection of \( m \) elements from the \( n \) without regard to their order of arrangement. The number of such combinations is denoted either by \( ^nC_m \) or by \( _nC_m \), where

\[
^nC_m = \binom{n}{m}.
\]

2. The number of combinations of \( n \) mutually distinguishable elements in which each element may occur 0, 1, 2, \ldots, \( m \) times in any combination is

\[
\binom{n + m - 1}{m} = \binom{n + n - 1}{n - 1}.
\]

3. The number of combinations of \( n \) mutually distinguishable elements in which each element must occur at least once in each combination is

\[
\binom{m - 1}{n - 1}.
\]

4. The number of distinguishable samples of \( m \) elements taken from \( n \) different elements, when each element may occur at most once in a sample, is

\[n (n - 1) (n - 2) \cdots (n - m + 1).\]

5. The number of distinguishable samples of \( m \) elements taken from \( n \) different elements, when each element may occur 0, 1, 2, \ldots, \( m \) times in a sample is \( n^m \).

1.7 PARTIAL FRACTION DECOMPOSITION

1.7.1 Rational Functions

1.7.1.1

A function \( R(x) \) of the from

\[R(x) = \frac{N(x)}{D(x)},\]

1. \( R(x) = \frac{N(x)}{D(x)}, \)
1.7 Partial Fraction Decomposition

where \( N(x) \) and \( D(x) \) are polynomials in \( x \), is called a **rational function** of \( x \). The replacement of \( R(x) \) by an equivalent expression involving a sum of simpler rational functions is called a decomposition of \( R(x) \) into **partial fractions**. This technique is of use in the integration of arbitrary rational functions. Thus in the identity

\[
\frac{3x^2 + 2x + 1}{x^3 + x^2 + x} = \frac{1}{x} + \frac{2x + 1}{x^2 + x + 1},
\]

the expression on the right-hand side is a partial fraction expansion of the rational function \( (3x^2 + 2x + 1)/(x^3 + x^2 + x) \).

### 1.7.2 Method of Undetermined Coefficients

1.7.2.1

1. The general form of the simplest possible partial fraction expansion of \( R(x) \) in 1.7.1.1 depends on the respective degrees of \( N(x) \) and \( D(x) \), and on the decomposition of \( D(x) \) into real factors. The form of the partial fraction decomposition to be adopted is determined as follows.

2. **Case 1.** (Degree of \( N(x) \) less than the degree of \( D(x) \)).

   (i) Let the degree of \( N(x) \) be less than the degree of \( D(x) \), and factor \( D(x) \) into the simplest possible set of real factors. There may be linear factors with multiplicity 1, such as \((ax + b)\); linear factors with multiplicity \( r \), such as \((ax + b)^r\); quadratic factors with multiplicity 1, such as \((ax^2 + bx + c)\); or quadratic factors with multiplicity \( m \) such as \((ax^2 + bx + c)^m\), where \( a, b, \ldots \), are real numbers, and the quadratic factors cannot be expressed as the product of real linear factors.

   (ii) To each linear factor with multiplicity 1, such as \((ax + b)\), include in the partial fraction decomposition a term such as

   \[
   \frac{A}{ax + b},
   \]

   where \( A \) is an undetermined constant.

   (iii) To each linear factor with multiplicity \( r \), such as \((ax + b)^r\), include in the partial fraction decomposition terms such as

   \[
   \frac{B_1}{ax + b} + \frac{B_2}{(ax + b)^2} + \cdots + \frac{B_r}{(ax + b)^r},
   \]

   where \( B_1, B_2, \ldots, B_r \) are undetermined constants.

   (iv) To each quadratic factor with multiplicity 1, such as \((ax^2 + bx + c)\), include in the partial fraction decomposition a term such as

   \[
   \frac{C_1x + D_1}{ax^2 + bx + c},
   \]

   where \( C_1, D_1 \) are undetermined constants.
(v) To each quadratic factor with multiplicity \( m \), such as \( (ax^2 + bx + c)^m \), include in the partial fraction decomposition terms such as

\[
\frac{E_1 x + F_1}{ax^2 + bx + c} + \frac{E_2 x + F_2}{(ax^2 + bx + c)^2} + \cdots + \frac{E_m x + F_m}{(ax^2 + bx + c)^m},
\]

where \( E_1, D_1, \ldots, E_m, F_m \) are undetermined constants.

(vi) The final general form of the partial fraction decomposition of \( R(x) \) in 1.7.1.1.1 is then the sum of all the terms generated in (ii) to (vi) containing the undetermined coefficients \( A, B_1, B_2, \ldots, E_m, F_m \).

(vii) The specific values of the undetermined coefficients \( A, B_1, \ldots, E_m, F_m \) are determined by equating \( \frac{N(x)}{D(x)} \) to the sum of terms obtained in (vi), multiplying this identity by the factored form of \( D(x) \), and equating the coefficients of corresponding powers of \( x \) on each side of the identity. If, say, there are \( N \) undetermined coefficients, an alternative to deriving \( N \) equations satisfied by them by equating coefficients of corresponding powers of \( x \) is to obtain \( N \) equations by substituting \( N \) convenient different values for \( x \).

3. Case 2. (Degree of \( N(x) \) greater than or equal to degree of \( D(x) \)).
   (i) If the degree \( m \) of \( N(x) \) is greater than or equal to the degree \( n \) of \( D(x) \), first use long division to divide \( D(x) \) into \( N(x) \) to obtain an expression of the form

\[
\frac{N(x)}{D(x)} = \frac{P(x)}{D(x)} + \frac{M(x)}{D(x)},
\]

where \( P(x) \) is a known polynomial of degree \( m - n \), the degree of \( M(x) \) is less than the degree of \( D(x) \).

   (ii) Decompose \( \frac{M(x)}{D(x)} \) into partial fractions as in Case 1.

   (iii) The required partial fraction decomposition is then the sum of \( P(x) \) and the terms obtained in (ii) above.

An example of Case 1 is provided by considering the following rational function and applying the above rules to the factors \( x \) and \( (x^2 + x + 1) \) of the denominator to obtain

\[
\frac{3x^2 + 2x + 1}{x^3 + x^2 + x} = \frac{3x^2 + 2x + 1}{x(x^2 + x + 1)} = \frac{A}{x} + \frac{Bx + C}{x^2 + x + 1}.
\]

Multiplication by \( x(x^2 + x + 1) \) yields

\[
3x^2 + 2x + 1 = A(x^2 + x + 1) + x(Bx + C).
\]

Equating coefficients of corresponding powers of \( x \) gives

- \( 1 = A \) \hspace{1cm} (coefficients of \( x^0 \))
- \( 2 = A + C \) \hspace{1cm} (coefficients of \( x \))
- \( 3 = A + B \) \hspace{1cm} (coefficients of \( x^2 \))
so $A = 1$, $B = 2$, $C = 1$, and the required partial fraction decomposition becomes

$$\frac{3x^2 + 2x + 1}{x^3 + x^2 + x} = \frac{1}{x} + \frac{2x + 1}{x^2 + x + 1}.$$  

An example of Case 2 is provided by considering $(2x^3 + 5x^2 + 7x + 5)/(x + 1)^2$. The degree of the numerator exceeds that of the denominator, so division by $(x + 1)^2$ is necessary. We have

$$\frac{2x + 1}{x^2 + 2x + 1} = \frac{2x^3 + 5x^2 + 7x + 5}{2x^3 + 4x^2 + 2x} = \frac{x^2 + 5x + 5}{x^2 + 2x + 1} = \frac{3x + 4}{3x + 4},$$

and so

$$\frac{2x^3 + 5x^2 + 7x + 5}{(x + 1)^2} = 1 + 2x + \frac{3x + 4}{(x + 1)^2}.$$  

An application of the rules of Case 1 to the rational function $(3x + 4)/(x + 1)^2$ gives

$$\frac{3x + 4}{(x + 1)^2} = \frac{A}{x + 1} + \frac{B}{(x + 1)^2},$$

or

$$3x + 4 = A(x + 1) + B.$$  

Equating coefficients of corresponding powers of $x$ gives

$$4 = A + B \quad \text{(coefficients of $x^0$)}$$

$$3 = A \quad \text{(coefficients of $x$)}$$

so $A = 3, B = 1$ and the required partial fraction decomposition becomes

$$\frac{2x^3 + 5x^2 + 7x + 5}{(x + 1)^2} = 1 + 2x + \frac{3}{x + 1} + \frac{1}{(x + 1)^2}.$$
1.8 CONVERGENCE OF SERIES

1.8.1 Types of Convergence of Numerical Series

1.8.1.1

Let \( \{u_k\} \) with \( k = 1, 2, \ldots \), be an infinite sequence of numbers, then the infinite numerical series

\[
\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} u_k = u_1 + u_2 + u_3 + \cdots
\]

is said to converge to the sum \( S \) if the sequence \( \{S_n\} \) of partial sums

\[
S_n = \sum_{k=1}^{n} u_k = u_1 + u_2 + \cdots + u_n
\]

has a finite limit \( S \), so that

\[
S = \lim_{n \to \infty} S_n.
\]

If \( S \) is infinite, or the sequence \( \{S_n\} \) has no limit, the series 1.8.1.1.1 is said to diverge.

The series 1.8.1.1 is convergent if for each \( \varepsilon > 0 \) there is a number \( N(\varepsilon) \) such that

\[
|S_m - S_n| < \varepsilon \quad \text{for all } m > n > N.
\]

(Cauchy criterion for convergence)

The series 1.8.1.1 is said to be absolutely convergent if the series of absolute values

\[
\sum_{k=1}^{n} |u_k| = |u_1| + |u_2| + |u_3| + \cdots
\]

converges. Every absolutely convergent series is convergent. If series 1.8.1.1 is such that it is convergent, but it is not absolutely convergent, it is said to be conditionally convergent.

1.8.2 Convergence Tests

1.8.2.1

Let the series 1.8.1.1 be such that \( u_k \neq 0 \) for any \( k \) and

\[
\lim_{k \to \infty} \left| \frac{u_{k+1}}{u_k} \right| = r.
\]

Then series 1.8.1.1 is absolutely convergent if \( r < 1 \) and it diverges if \( r > 1 \). The test fails to provide information about convergence or divergence if \( r = 1 \).

(d’Alembert’s ratio test)

1.8.2.2

Let the series 1.8.1.1 be such that \( u_k \neq 0 \) for any \( k \) and

\[
\lim_{k \to \infty} |u_k|^{1/k} = r.
\]
The series 1.8.1.1.1 is absolutely convergent if \( r < 1 \) and it diverges if \( r > 1 \). The test fails to provide information about convergence or divergence if \( r = 1 \).

(Cauchy’s \( n \)’th root test)

1.8.2.3
Let the series \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} u_k \) be such that

\[
\lim_{k \to \infty} k \left( \frac{u_k}{u_{k+1}} - 1 \right) = r.
\]

Then the series is absolutely convergent if \( r > 1 \) and it is divergent if \( r < 1 \). The test fails to provide information about convergence or divergence if \( r = 1 \). (Raabe’s test: This test is a more delicate form of ratio test and it is often useful when the ratio test fails because \( r = 1 \).)

1.8.2.4
Let the series in 1.8.1.1.1 be such that \( u_k \geq 0 \) for \( k = 1, 2, \ldots \), and let \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k \) be a convergent series of positive terms such that \( u_k \leq a_k \) for all \( k \). Then

1. \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} u_k \) is convergent and

\[
\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} u_k \leq \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k \quad \text{(comparison test for convergence)}
\]

2. If \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k \) is a divergent series of nonnegative terms and \( u_k \geq a_k \) for all \( k \), then \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} u_k \) is divergent. \hspace{1cm} \text{(comparison test for divergence)}

1.8.2.5
Let \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} u_k \) be a series of positive terms whose convergence is to be determined, and let \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k \) be a comparison series of positive terms known to be either convergent or divergent. Let

1. \( \lim_{k \to \infty} \frac{u_k}{a_k} = L \),

where \( L \) is either a nonnegative number or infinity.

2. If \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k \) converges and \( 0 \leq L < \infty \), \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} u_k \) converges.

3. If \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k \) diverges and \( 0 < L \leq \infty \), \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} u_k \) diverges. \hspace{1cm} \text{(limit comparison test)}

1.8.2.6
Let \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} u_k \) be a series of positive nonincreasing terms, and let \( f(x) \) be a nonincreasing function defined for \( k \geq N \) such that
1. $f(k) = u_k$.  
   Then the series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} u_k$ converges or diverges according as the improper integral

2. $\int_{N}^{\infty} f(x) \, dx$ 
   converges or diverges.  \hspace{1cm} (Cauchy integral test)

1.8.2.7
Let the sequence $\{a_k\}$ with $a_k > a_{k+1} > 0$, for $n = 1, 2, \ldots$, be such that

1. $\lim_{k \to \infty} a_k = 0$.
   Then the alternating series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} a_k$ converges, and

2. $|S - S_N| \leq a_{N+1}$,
   where
   
   \[ S_N = a_1 - a_2 + a_3 - \cdots + (-1)^{N+1} a_N. \]

1.8.2.8
If the series

1. $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} v_k = v_1 + v_2 + \cdots$
   converges and the sequence of numbers $\{u_k\}$ forms a monotonic bounded sequence, that is, if $|u_k| < M$ for some number $M$ and all $k$, the series

2. $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} u_k v_k = u_1 v_1 + u_2 v_2 + \cdots$
   converges.  \hspace{1cm} (Abel’s test)

1.8.2.9
If the partial sums of the series 1.8.2.8.1 are bounded and if the numbers $u_k$ constitute a monotonic decreasing sequence with limit zero, that is if

\[ \left| \sum_{k=1}^{n} u_k \right| < M \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots] \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{k \to \infty} u_k = 0, \]

then the series 1.8.2.8.1 converges.  \hspace{1cm} (Dirichlet’s test)

1.8.3 Examples of Infinite Numerical Series
1.8.3.1 Geometric and Arithmetic–Geometric Series

1. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} ar^k = \frac{a}{1 - r}$  \hspace{1cm} [\(|r| < 1\)].  \hspace{1cm} (see 1.2.2.2)


2. \[ \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (a + kd)r^k = \frac{a}{1 - r} + \frac{rd}{(1 - r)^2} \quad [|r| < 1]. \] (see 1.2.2.3)

### 1.8.3.2 Binomial Expansion

1. \( (1 + a)^q = 1 + qa + \frac{q(q - 1)}{2!} a^2 + \frac{q(q - 1)(q - 2)}{3!} a^3 + \ldots \)
   \[ + \frac{q(q - 1)(q - 2)\cdots(q - r + 1)}{r!} a^r + \cdots \quad [\text{any real } q, |a| < 1]. \]
2. \( (a + b)^q = a^q \left( 1 + \frac{b}{a} \right)^q \)
   \[ = a^q \left[ 1 + q \left( \frac{b}{a} \right) + \frac{q(q - 1)}{2!} \left( \frac{b}{a} \right)^2 + \frac{q(q - 1)(q - 2)}{3!} \left( \frac{b}{a} \right)^3 + \ldots \right] \left[ \text{any real } q, \left| \frac{b}{a} \right| < 1 \right]. \) (see 0.7.5)

### 1.8.3.3 Series with Rational Sums

1. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k(k + 1)} = 1 \]
2. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k(k + 2)} = \frac{3}{4} \]
3. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2k - 1)(2k + 1)} = \frac{1}{2} \]
4. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{k}{(4k^2 - 1)^2} = \frac{1}{8} \]
5. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{k}{(k + 1)!} = 1 \]

### 1.8.3.4 Series Involving \( \pi \)

1. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{(2k - 1)} \frac{1}{(2k - 1)} = \frac{\pi}{4} \]
2. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^2} = \frac{\pi^2}{6} \]
3. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{k^2} = \frac{\pi^2}{12} \]
Chapter 1  Numerical, Algebraic, and Analytical Results for Series and Calculus

4. \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{(2k-1)^3} = \frac{\pi^3}{32} \)

5. \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2k-1)^4} = \frac{\pi^4}{96} \)

6. \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(4k-1)(4k+1)} = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{\pi}{8} \)

1.8.3.5 Series Involving \( e \)

1. \( \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k!} = e = 2.71828 \ldots \)

2. \( \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{k!} = \frac{1}{e} = 0.36787 \ldots \)

3. \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{2k}{(2k+1)!} = \frac{1}{e} = 0.36787 \ldots \)

4. \( \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2k)!} = \frac{1}{2} \left( e + \frac{1}{e} \right) = 1.54308 \ldots \)

5. \( \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2k+1)!} = \frac{1}{2} \left( e - \frac{1}{e} \right) = 1.17520 \ldots \)

1.8.3.6 Series Involving a Logarithm

1. \( \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} \frac{1}{k} = \ln 2 \)

2. \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} \frac{1}{k \cdot m^k} = \ln \left( \frac{1 + m}{m} \right) \quad [m = 1, 2, \ldots] \)

3. \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k (4k^2 - 1)} = 2 \ln 2 - 1 \)

4. \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k (9k^2 - 1)} = \frac{3}{2} (\ln 3 - 1) \)

5. \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k (4k^2 - 1)^2} = \frac{3}{2} - 2 \ln 2 \)

6. \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{12k^2 - 1}{k (4k^2 - 1)^2} = 2 \ln 2 \)
7. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2k-1)k(2k+1)} = 2 \ln 2 - 1 \]

8. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{(2k-1)k(2k+1)} = (1 - \ln 2) \]

9. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^k k} = \ln 2 \]

1.9 Infinite Products

1.9.1 Convergence of Infinite Products

1.9.1.1

Let \( \{u_k\} \) be an infinite sequence of numbers and denote the product of the first \( n \) elements of the sequence by \( \prod_{k=1}^{n} u_k \), so that

\[ \prod_{k=1}^{n} u_k = u_1 u_2 \cdots u_n. \]

Then if the limit \( \lim_{n \to \infty} \prod_{k=1}^{n} u_k \) exists, whether finite or infinite, but of definite sign, this limit is called the value of the infinite product \( \prod_{k=1}^{\infty} u_k \), and we write

\[ \lim_{n \to \infty} \prod_{k=1}^{n} u_k = \prod_{k=1}^{\infty} u_k. \]

If an infinite product has a finite nonzero value it is said to converge. An infinite product that does not converge is said to diverge.

1.9.1.2

If \( \{a_k\} \) is an infinite sequence of numbers, in order that the infinite product

\[ \prod_{k=1}^{\infty} (1 + a_k) \]

should converge it is necessary that \( \lim_{n \to \infty} a_k = 0. \)

1.8.3.7 Series and Identities Involving the Gamma Function

1. \[ \sqrt{\pi} \ln 4 = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\Gamma(n + \frac{1}{2})}{n^2 \Gamma(n)} \]

2. \[ \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (2m-1)}{2^m \sqrt{\pi}} = \Gamma(m + \frac{1}{2}), \quad m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \]

3. \[ \frac{(-1)^m 2^m}{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (2m-1) \sqrt{\pi}} = \Gamma(-m + \frac{1}{2}), \quad m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \]
1.9.1.3
If $a_k > 0$ or $a_k < 0$ for all $k$ starting with some particular value, then for the infinite product 1.9.1.2.1 to converge, it is necessary and sufficient for $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k$ to converge.

1.9.1.4
The infinite product $\prod_{k=1}^{\infty} (1 + a_k)$ is said to converge absolutely if the infinite product $\prod_{k=1}^{\infty} (1 + |a_k|)$ converges.

1.9.1.5
Absolute convergence of an infinite product implies its convergence.

1.9.1.6
The infinite product $\prod_{k=1}^{\infty} (1 + a_k)$ converges absolutely if, and only if, the series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k$ converges absolutely.

1.9.1.7
The infinite product $\prod_{k=1}^{\infty} |a_k| < \infty$ if, and only if, $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \ln|a_k| < \infty$.

1.9.2 Examples of Infinite Products

1. $\prod_{k=1}^{\infty} \left(1 + \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{2k - 1}\right) = \sqrt{2}$

2. $\prod_{k=2}^{\infty} \left(1 - \frac{1}{k^2}\right) = \frac{1}{2}$

3. $\prod_{k=1}^{\infty} \left(1 - \frac{1}{(2k + 1)^2}\right) = \frac{\pi}{4}$

4. $\prod_{k=2}^{\infty} \left(1 - \frac{2}{k(k + 1)}\right) = \frac{1}{3}$

5. $\prod_{k=2}^{\infty} \left(1 - \frac{1}{k^3 + 1}\right) = \frac{2}{3}$

6. $\prod_{k=2}^{\infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{2^k - 2}\right) = 2$

7. $\prod_{k=2}^{\infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{k^2 - 1}\right) = 2$

8. $\prod_{k=1}^{\infty} \left(1 - \frac{1}{4k^2}\right) = \frac{2}{\pi}$
1.10 FUNCTIONAL SERIES

1.10.1 Uniform Convergence

1.10.1.1

Let \( \{ f_k(x) \} \), \( k = 1, 2, \ldots \), be an infinite sequence of functions. Then a series of the form

\[
\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} f_k(x),
\]

is called a functional series. The set of values of the independent variable \( x \) for which the series converges is called the region of convergence of the series.
1.10.1.2
Let $D$ be a region in which the functional series 1.10.1.1 converges for each value of $x$. Then the series is said to **converge uniformly** in $D$ if, for every $\varepsilon > 0$, there exists a number $N(\varepsilon)$ such that, for $n > N$, it follows that

1. $\left| \sum_{k=n+1}^{\infty} f_k(x) \right| < \varepsilon,$

for all $x$ in $D$.

The **Cauchy criterion** for the uniform convergence of series 1.10.1.1 requires that

2. $|f_m(x) + f_{m+1}(x) + \cdots + f_n(x)| < \varepsilon,$

for every $\varepsilon > 0$, all $x$ in $D$ and all $n > m > N$.

1.10.1.3
Let $\{f_k(x)\}, k = 1, 2, \ldots,$ be an infinite sequence of functions, and let $\{M_k\}, k = 1, 2, \ldots,$ be a sequence of positive numbers such that $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} M_k$ is convergent. Then, if

1. $|f_k(x)| \leq M_k,$

for all $x$ in a region $D$ and all $k = 1, 2, \ldots$, the functional series in 1.10.1.1 converges uniformly for all $x$ in $D$.

(Weierstrass’s $M$ test)

1.10.1.4
Let the series 1.10.1.1 converge for all $x$ in some region $D$, in which it defines a function

1. $f(x) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} f_k(x).$

Then the series is said to **converge uniformly** to $f(x)$ in $D$ if, for every $\varepsilon > 0$, there exists a number $N(\varepsilon)$ such that, for $n > N$, it follows that

2. $\left| f(x) - \sum_{k=0}^{n} f_k(x) \right| < \varepsilon$

for all $x$ in $D$.

1.10.1.5
Let the infinite sequence of functions $\{f_k(x)\}, k = 1, 2, \ldots,$ be continuous for all $x$ in some region $D$. Then if the functional series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} f_k(x)$ is uniformly convergent to the function $f(x)$ for all $x$ in $D$, the function $f(x)$ is continuous in $D$. 
1.10.1.6
Suppose the series \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} f_k(x) \) converges uniformly in a region \( D \), and that for each \( x \) in \( D \) the sequence of functions \( \{g_k(x)\}, k = 1, 2, \ldots \) is monotonic and uniformly bounded, so that for some number \( L > 0 \)

1. \( |g_k(x)| \leq L \)

for each \( k = 1, 2, \ldots \), and all \( x \) in \( D \). Then the series

2. \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} f_k(x) g_k(x) \)

converges uniformly in \( D \). \hspace{1cm} (Abel's theorem)

1.10.1.7
Suppose the partial sums \( S_n(x) = \sum_{k=1}^{n} f_k(x) \) of 1.10.1.1 are uniformly bounded, so that

1. \( \left| \sum_{k=1}^{n} f_k(x) \right| < L \)

for some \( L \), all \( n = 1, 2, \ldots \), and all \( x \) in the region of convergence \( D \). Then, if \( \{g_k(x)\}, k = 1, 2, \ldots \), is a monotonic decreasing sequence of functions that approaches zero uniformly for all \( x \) in \( D \), the series

2. \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} f_k(x) g_k(x) \)

converges uniformly in \( D \). \hspace{1cm} (Dirichlet’s theorem)

1.10.1.8
If each function in the infinite sequence of functions \( \{f_k(x)\}, k = 1, 2, \ldots \), is integrable on the interval \([a, b]\), and if the series 1.10.1.1 converges uniformly on this interval, the series may be \textbf{integrated term by term (termwise)}, so that

1. \( \int_a^b \left[ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} f_k(x) \right] \, dx = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \int_a^b f_k(x) \, dx \quad [a \leq x \leq b] \).

1.10.1.9
Let each function in the infinite sequence of functions \( \{f_k(x)\}, k = 1, 2, \ldots \), have a continuous derivative \( f'_k(x) \) on the interval \([a, b]\). Then if series 1.10.1.1 converges on this interval, and if the series \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} f'_k(x) \) converges uniformly on the same interval, the series 1.10.1.1 may be \textbf{differentiated term by term (termwise)}, so that

\[ \frac{d}{dx} \left[ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} f_k(x) \right] \, dx = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} f'_k(x) \].
1.11 POWER SERIES

1.11.1 Definition

1.11.1.1

A functional series of the form

\[ \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k (x - x_0)^k = a_0 + a_1 (x - x_0) + a_2 (x - x_0)^2 + \cdots \]

is called a power series in \( x \) expanded about the point \( x_0 \) with coefficients \( a_k \). The following is true of any power series: If it is not everywhere convergent, the region of convergence (in the complex plane) is a circle of radius \( R \) with its center at the point \( x_0 \); at every interior point of this circle the power series 1.11.1.1 converges absolutely, and outside this circle it diverges. The circle is called the circle of convergence and its radius \( R \) is called the radius of convergence. A series that converges at all points of the complex plane is said to have an infinite radius of convergence \( (R = +\infty) \).

1.11.1.2

The radius of convergence \( R \) of the power series in 1.11.1.1 may be determined by

1. \( R = \lim_{k \to \infty} \left| \frac{a_k}{a_{k+1}} \right| \),

when the limit exists; by

2. \( R = \frac{1}{\lim_{k \to \infty} |a_k|^{1/k}} \),

when the limit exists; or by the Cauchy–Hadamard formula

3. \( R = \frac{1}{\limsup |a_k|^{1/k}} \),

which is always defined (though the result is difficult to apply).

The circle of convergence of the power series in 1.11.1.1 is \( |x - x_0| = R \), so the series is absolutely convergent in the open disk

\[ |x - x_0| < R \]

and divergent outside it where \( x \) and \( x_0 \) are points in the complex plane.

1.11.1.3

The power series 1.11.1.1 may be integrated and differentiated term by term inside its circle of convergence; thus
1. \[ \int_{x_0}^{x} \left[ \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k (x-x_0)^k \right] \, dx = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{a_k}{k+1} (x-x_0)^{k+1}, \]

2. \[ \frac{d}{dx} \left[ \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k (x-x_0)^k \right] = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} k a_k (x-x_0)^{k-1}. \]

The radii of convergence of the series 1.11.1.3.1 and 1.11.1.3.2 just given are both the same as that of the original series 1.11.1.1.

**Operations on power series.**

1.11.1.4

Let \( \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k (x-x_0)^k \) and \( \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} b_k (x-x_0)^k \) be two power series expanded about \( x_0 \). Then the quotient of these series

1. \[ \frac{\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} b_k (x-x_0)^k}{\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k (x-x_0)^k} = \frac{1}{a_0} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} c_k (x-x_0)^k, \]

where the \( c_k \) follow from the equations

2. \[ b_0 = c_0 \]
   \[ a_0 b_1 = a_0 c_1 + a_1 c_0 \]
   \[ a_0 b_2 = a_0 c_2 + a_1 c_1 + a_2 c_0 \]
   \[ a_0 b_3 = a_0 c_3 + a_1 c_2 + a_2 c_1 + a_3 c_0 \]
   \[ \vdots \]
   \[ a_0 c_n + \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k c_{n-k} - a_0 b_n = 0 \]

or from

3. \[ c_n = \frac{(-1)^n}{a_0^n} \left| \begin{array}{cccc}
    a_1 b_0 - a_0 b_1 & a_0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\
    a_2 b_0 - a_0 b_2 & a_1 & a_0 & \cdots & 0 \\
    a_3 b_0 - a_0 b_3 & a_2 & a_1 & \cdots & 0 \\
    \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
    a_{n-1} b_0 - a_0 b_{n-1} & a_{n-2} & a_{n-3} & \cdots & a_0 \\
    a_n b_0 - a_0 b_n & a_{n-1} & a_{n-2} & \cdots & a_1 
\end{array} \right|, \quad c_0 = b_0/a_0. \]

For example, if \( a_k = 1/k! \), \( b_k = 2^k/k! \), \( x_0 = 0 \), it follows that \( \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k (x-x_0)^k = e^x \) and \( \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} b_k (x-x_0)^k = e^{2x} \), so in this case

\[ \frac{\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} b_k (x-x_0)^k}{\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k (x-x_0)^k} = \frac{e^{2x}}{e^x} = e^x. \]
This is confirmed by the above method, because from 1.11.1.4.2, \( c_0 = 1, c_1 = 1, c_2 = \frac{1}{2}, \) \( c_3 = \frac{1}{6}, \ldots, \) so, as expected,

\[
\left( \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^k}{k!} \right) / \left[ \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(2x)^k}{k!} \right] = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{6} + \cdots = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \cdots = e^x.
\]

1.11.1.5
Let \( \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k (x - x_0)^k \) be a power series expanded about \( x_0, \) and let \( n \) be a natural number. Then, when this power series is raised to the power \( n, \) we have

1. \( \left[ \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k (x - x_0)^k \right]^n = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} c_k (x - x_0)^k, \)

where

\[
c_0 = a_0^n, \quad c_m = \frac{1}{m! a_0} \sum_{k=1}^{m} (kn - m + k) a_k c_{m-k} \quad [m \geq 1].
\]

For example, if \( a_k = 1/k!, \ x_0 = 0, \ n = 3, \) it follows that

\[
\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k (x - x_0)^k = e^x, \quad \text{so} \quad \left[ \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k (x - x_0)^k \right]^n = e^{3x}.
\]

This is confirmed by the above method, because from 1.11.1.5.2, \( c_0 = 1, c_1 = 3, c_2 = 9/2, \) \( c_3 = 9/2, \ldots, \) so, as expected,

\[
\left( \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^k}{k!} \right)^3 = 1 + 3x + \frac{9}{2} x^2 + \frac{9}{2} x^3 + \cdots = 1 + 3x + \frac{(3x)^2}{2!} + \frac{(3x)^3}{3!} + \cdots = e^{3x}.
\]

1.11.1.6
Let \( y = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k (x - x_0)^k \) and \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} b_k y^k \) be two power series. Then substituting for \( y \) in the second power series gives

1. \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} b_k y^k = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} c_k (x - x_0)^k, \) where
2. \( c_1 = a_1 b_1, \quad c_2 = a_2 b_1 + a_1^2 b_2, \quad c_3 = a_3 b_1 + 2a_1 a_2 b_2 + a_1^3 b_3, \)
\( c_4 = a_4 b_1 + a_2^2 b_2 + 2a_1 a_3 b_2 + 3a_1^2 a_2 b_3 + a_1^4 b_4, \ldots \)

For example, if \( a_k = (-1)^k / (k+1), b_k = 1/k!, \) \( x_0 = 0, \) it follows that \( y = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k (x - x_0)^k = \ln (1 + x), \) and \( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} b_k y^k = e^y - 1, \) so the result of substituting for \( y \) is to give
\( \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} b_k y^k = \exp\{\ln (1 + x)\} - 1 = x. \) This is confirmed by the above method, because from 1.11.1.6.2, \( c_1 = 1, \) \( c_2 = c_3 = c_4 = \cdots = 0 \) so, as expected.

\[ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} b_k y^k = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} c_k (x - x_0)^k = x. \]

1.11.1.7

Let \( \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k (x - x_0)^k \) and \( \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} b_k (x - x_0)^k \) be two power series expanded about \( x_0. \) Then the \textbf{product} of these series is given by

1. \[ \left[ \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k (x - x_0)^k \right] \left[ \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} b_k (x - x_0)^k \right] = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} c_k (x - x_0)^k, \]

where

2. \( c_n = \sum_{k=0}^{n} a_k b_{n-k}, \quad c_0 = a_0 b_0. \)

For example, if \( a_k = 1/k!, \) \( b_k = 1/k!, \) \( x_0 = 0, \) it follows that
\[ \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k (x - x_0)^k = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} b_k (x - x_0)^k = e^x, \]
so in this case
\[ \left[ \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k (x - x_0)^k \right] \left[ \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} b_k (x - x_0)^k \right] = e^x \cdot e^x = e^{2x}. \]

This is confirmed by the above method, because from 1.11.1.7.2 \( c_0 = 1, \) \( c_1 = 2, \) \( c_2 = 2, \)
\( c_3 = 4/3, \ldots, \) so, as expected,
\[ \left( \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} x^k / k! \right) \left( \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} x^k / k! \right) = 1 + 2x + 2x^2 + \frac{4}{3} x^3 + \cdots \]
\( = 1 + 2x + \frac{(2x)^2}{2!} + \frac{(2x)^3}{3!} + \cdots = e^{2x}. \)
1.11.1.8
Let
\[ y - y_0 = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k (x - x_0)^k \]
be a power series expanded about \( x_0 \). Then the **reversion** of this power series corresponds to finding a power series in \( y - y_0 \), expanded about \( y_0 \), that represents the function inverse to the one defined by the power series in 1.11.1.8.1. Thus, if the original series is written concisely as \( y = f(x) \), reversion of the series corresponds to finding the power series for the inverse function \( x = f^{-1}(y) \). The reversion of the series in 1.11.1.8.1 is given by

\[ x - x_0 = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} A_k (y - y_0)^k, \]
where

1. \( A_1 = \frac{1}{a_1}, \)
2. \( A_2 = -\frac{a_2}{a_1^3}, \)
3. \( A_3 = \frac{2a_2^2 - a_1a_3}{a_1^4}, \)
4. \( A_4 = \frac{5a_1a_2a_3 - a_1^2a_4 - 5a_2^3}{a_1^6}, \)
5. \( A_5 = \frac{6a_1^2a_2a_4 + 3a_1^3a_3^2 + 14a_2^4 - a_1^3a_5 - 21a_1a_2^2a_3}{a_1^9}, \)
6. \( A_6 = \frac{7a_1^3a_2a_5 + 7a_1a_3a_4 + 8a_1a_3^2a_3 - a_1^4a_6 - 28a_1^2a_2a_3^2 - 42a_2 - 28a_1a_2^2a_4}{a_1^{11}}. \)

For example, give the power series
\[ y = \text{arc sinh } x = x - \frac{1}{6} x^3 + \frac{3}{40} x^5 - \frac{15}{336} x^7 + \cdots, \]
setting \( x_0 = 0, \ y_0 = 0, \ a_1 = 1, \ a_2 = 0, \ a_3 = -1/6, \ a_4 = 0, \ a_5 = 3/40, \ldots \), it follows from 1.11.1.8.3 that \( A_1 = 1, \ A_2 = 0, \ A_3 = 1/6, \ A_4 = 0, \ A_5 = 1/120, \ldots \), so, as would be expected,

\[ x = \text{sinh } y = y + \frac{y^3}{6} + \frac{y^5}{120} + \cdots = y + \frac{y^3}{3!} + \frac{y^5}{5!} + \cdots. \]

1.12 **TAYLOR SERIES**
1.12.1 Definition and Forms of Remainder Term
If a function \( f(x) \) has derivatives of all orders in some interval containing the point \( x_0 \), the power series in \( x - x_0 \) of the form

\[ f(x_0) + (x - x_0) f'(x_0) + \frac{(x - x_0)^2}{2!} f''(x_0) + \frac{(x - x_0)^3}{3!} f'''(x_0) + \cdots, \]

where \( f^{(n)}(x_0) = (d^n f/dx^n)_{x=x_0} \), is called the **Taylor series** expansion of \( f(x) \) about \( x_0 \).
The Taylor series expansion converges to the function \( f(x) \) if the remainder \( R_n(x) \) approaches zero as \( n \to \infty \).

The remainder term \( R_n(x) \) can be expressed in a number of different forms, including the following:

3. \[
R_n(x) = \frac{(x - x_0)^{n+1}}{(n+1)!} \left(f^{(n+1)}(x_0 + \theta (x - x_0))\right) \quad [0 \leq \theta < 1].
\] (Lagrange form)

4. \[
R_n(x) = \frac{(x - x_0)^{n+1}}{n!} \left(1 - \theta\right)^n f^{(n+1)}(x_0 + \theta (x - x_0)) \quad [0 \leq \theta < 1].
\] (Cauchy form)

5. \[
R_n(x) = \frac{\psi(x - x_0) - \psi(x_0)}{\psi'(x_0)(1 - \theta)} \left( (x - x_0)^n (1 - \theta)^n f^{(n+1)}(x_0 + \theta (x - x_0))\right) \quad [0 \leq \theta < 1],
\] (Schlömilch form)

where \( \psi(x) \) is an arbitrary function with the properties that (i) it and its derivative \( \psi'(x) \) are continuous in the interval \((0, x - x_0)\) and (ii) the derivative \( \psi'(x) \) does not change sign in that interval.

6. \[
R_n(x) = \frac{(x - x_0)^{n-1} (1 - \theta)^{n-p-1}}{(p+1) n!} f^{(n+1)}(x_0 + \theta (x - x_0)) \quad [0 \leq p \leq n; 0 \leq \theta < 1].
\] [Rouché form obtained from 1.12.1.5 with \( \psi(x) = x^{p+1}\)].

7. \[
R_n(x) = \frac{1}{n!} \int_{x_0}^{x} f^{(n+1)}(t) (x - t)^n \, dt.
\] (integral form)

1.12.2

The Taylor series expansion of \( f(x) \) is also written as:

1. \[
f(a + x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^k}{k!} f^{(k)}(a) = f(a) + \frac{x}{1!} f^{(1)}(a) + \frac{x^2}{2!} f^{(2)}(a) + \cdots
\]

2. \[
f(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^k}{k!} f^{(k)}(0) = f(0) + \frac{x}{1!} f^{(1)}(0) + \frac{x^2}{2!} f^{(2)}(0) + \cdots
\] (Maclaurin series: a Taylor series expansion about the origin).

1.12.3

The Taylor series expansion of a function \( f(x, y) \) of the two variables that possesses partial derivatives of all orders in some region \( D \) containing the point \((x_0, y_0)\) is:

1. \[
f(x, y) = f(x_0, y_0) + (x - x_0) \left( \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} \right)_{(x_0, y_0)} + (y - y_0) \left( \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} \right)_{(x_0, y_0)}
\]
\[ + \frac{1}{2!} \left[ (x - x_0)^2 \left( \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} \right)_{(x_0, y_0)} + 2(x - x_0)(y - y_0) \left( \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y} \right)_{(x_0, y_0)} \right. \\
+ (y - y_0)^2 \left( \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} \right)_{(x_0, y_0)} \left. \right] + \cdots. \]

In its simplest form the remainder term \( R_n(x, y) \) satisfies a condition analogous to 1.12.1.3, so that

2. \( R_n(x, y) = \frac{1}{(n + 1)!} (D_{n+1}f)(x_0 + \theta_1(x - x_0), y_0 + \theta_2(y - y_0)) \quad [0 < \theta_1 < 1, 0 < \theta_2 < 1] \)

where

3. \( D_n \equiv \left( (x - x_0) \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + (y - y_0) \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \right)^n. \)

### 1.12.4 Order Notation (Big \( O \) and Little \( o \))

When working with a function \( f(x) \) it is useful to have a simple notation that indicates its order of magnitude, either for all \( x \), or in a neighborhood of a point \( x_0 \).

This is provided by the so-called ‘big oh’ and ‘little oh’ notation.

1. We write

\[ f(x) = O[\varphi(x)], \]

and say \( f(x) \) is of order \( \varphi(x) \), or is ‘big oh’ \( \varphi(x) \), if there exists a real constant \( K \) such that

\[ |f(x)| \leq K |\varphi(x)| \quad \text{for all } x. \]

The function \( f(x) \) is said to be of the order of \( \varphi(x) \), or to be ‘big oh’ \( \varphi(x) \) in a neighborhood of \( x_0 \), written \( f(x) = O(\varphi(x)) \) as \( x \to x_0 \) if

\[ |f(x)| \leq K |\varphi(x)| \quad \text{as } x \to x_0. \]

2. If in a neighborhood of a point \( x_0 \) two functions \( f(x) \) and \( g(x) \) are such that

\[ \lim_{x \to x_0} \left[ \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} \right] = 0 \]

the function \( f(x) \) is said to be of smaller order than \( g(x) \), or to be ‘little oh’ \( g(x) \), written

\[ f(x) = o \left( g(x) \right) \quad \text{as } x \to x_0. \]

In particular, these notations are useful when representing the error term in Taylor series expansions and when working with asymptotic expansions.
Examples

1. \( f(x) = O(1) \) means \( f(x) \) is bounded for all \( x \).
2. \( f(x) = o(1) \) as \( x \to x_0 \) means \( f(x) \to 0 \) as \( x \to x_0 \).
3. \( \sinh x - \left(x + \frac{1}{3!}x^3\right) = O(x^5) \) as \( x \to 0 \).
4. \( \frac{x^2}{1 + x^3} = o(1 + x^3) \) as \( x \to \infty \).

1.13 FOURIER SERIES

1.13.1 Definitions

1.13.1.1 Let \( f(x) \) be a function that is defined over the interval \([-l, l] \), and by periodic extension outside it; that is,

\[
 f(x - 2l) = f(x), \quad \text{for all } x.
\]

Suppose also that \( f(x) \) is absolutely integrable (possibly improperly) over the interval \((l, -l)\); that is \( \int_{-l}^{l} |f(x)| \, dx \) is finite. Then the Fourier series of \( f(x) \) is the trigonometric series

\[
 \frac{1}{2}a_0 + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \left( a_k \cos \frac{k\pi x}{l} + b_k \sin \frac{k\pi x}{l} \right),
\]

where the Fourier coefficients \( a_k, b_k \) are given by the formulas:

3. \( a_k = \frac{1}{l} \int_{-l}^{l} f(t) \cos \frac{k\pi t}{l} \, dt = \frac{1}{l} \int_{a}^{a+2l} f(t) \cos \frac{k\pi t}{l} \, dt \quad \text{[any real } \alpha, k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \],}

4. \( b_k = \frac{1}{l} \int_{-l}^{l} f(t) \sin \frac{k\pi t}{l} \, dt = \frac{1}{l} \int_{a}^{a+2l} f(t) \sin \frac{k\pi t}{l} \, dt \quad \text{[any real } \alpha, k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \].}

Convergence of Fourier series.

1.13.1.2 It is important to know in what sense the Fourier series of \( f(x) \) represents the function \( f(x) \) itself. This is the question of the convergence of Fourier series, which is discussed next. The Fourier series of a function \( f(x) \) at a point \( x_0 \) converges to the number

\[
 \frac{f(x_0 + 0) + f(x_0 - 0)}{2},
\]

if, for some \( h > 0 \), the integral
2. \( \int_0^h \frac{|f(x_0 + t) + f(x_0 - t) - f(x_0 + 0) - f(x_0 - 0)|}{t} dt \)

exists, where it is assumed that \( f(x) \) is either continuous at \( x_0 \) or it has a finite jump discontinuity at \( x_0 \) (a saltus) at which both the one-sided limits \( f(x_0 - 0) \) and \( f(x_0 + 0) \) exist. Thus, if \( f(x) \) is continuous at \( x_0 \), the Fourier series of \( f(x) \) converges to the value \( f(x_0) \) at the point \( x_0 \), while if a finite jump discontinuity occurs at \( x_0 \) the Fourier series converges to the average of the values \( f(x_0 + 0) \) and \( f(x_0 - 0) \) of \( f(x) \) to the immediate left and right of \( x_0 \). 

\( \text{(Dini’s condition)} \)

1.13.1.3

A function \( f(x) \) is said to satisfy Dirichlet conditions on the interval \([a, b] \) if it is bounded on the interval, and the interval \([a, b] \) can be partitioned into a finite number of subintervals inside each of which the function \( f(x) \) is continuous and monotonic (either increasing or decreasing).

The Fourier series of a periodic function \( f(x) \) that satisfies Dirichlet conditions on the interval \([a, b] \) converges at every point \( x_0 \) of \([a, b] \) to the value \( \frac{1}{2} \{ f(x_0 + 0) + f(x_0 - 0) \} \). 

\( \text{(Dirichlet’s result)} \)

1.13.1.4

Let the function \( f(x) \) be defined on the interval \([a, b] \), where \( a < b \), and let the interval be partitioned into subintervals in an arbitrary manner with the ends of the intervals at

1. \( a = x_0 < x_1 < x_2 < \cdots < x_{n-1} < x_n = b \).

Form the sum

2. \( \sum_{k=1}^{n} |f(x_k) - f(x_{k-1})| \).

Then different partitions of the interval \([a, b] \) that is, different choices of the points \( x_k \), will give rise to different sums of the form in 1.13.1.4.2. If the set of these sums is bounded above, the function \( f(x) \) is said to be of bounded variation on the interval \([a, b] \). The least upper bound of these sums is called the total variation of the function \( f(x) \) on the interval \([a, b] \).

1.13.1.5

Let the function \( f(x) \) be piecewise-continuous on the interval \([a, b] \), and let it have a piecewise-continuous derivative within each such interval in which it is continuous. Then, at every point \( x_0 \) of the interval \([a, b] \), the Fourier series of the function \( f(x) \) converges to the value \( \frac{1}{2} \{ f(x_0 + 0) + f(x_0 - 0) \} \).

1.13.1.6

A function \( f(x) \) defined in the interval \([0, l] \), can be expanded in a cosine series (half-range Fourier cosine series) of the form
1.13 Fourier Series

1. \[ \frac{1}{2} a_0 + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k \cos \frac{k\pi x}{l}, \]

where

2. \[ a_k = \frac{2}{l} \int_{0}^{l} f(t) \cos \frac{k\pi t}{l} \, dt \quad [k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots]. \]

1.13.1.7

A function \( f(x) \) defined in the interval \([0, l]\) can be expanded in a sine series (half-range Fourier sine series):

1. \[ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} b_k \sin \frac{k\pi x}{l}, \]

where

2. \[ b_k = \frac{2}{l} \int_{0}^{l} f(t) \sin \frac{k\pi t}{l} \, dt \quad [k = 1, 2, \ldots]. \]

The convergence tests for these half-range Fourier series are analogous to those given in 1.13.1.2 to 1.13.1.5.

1.13.1.8

The Fourier coefficients \( a_k, b_k \) defined in 1.13.1.1 for a function \( f(x) \) that is absolutely integrable over \([-l, l]\) are such that

\[ \lim_{k \to \infty} a_k = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{k \to \infty} b_k = 0. \]  
(Riemann–Lebesgue lemma)

1.13.1.9

Let \( f(x) \) be a piecewise-smooth or piecewise-continuous function defined on the interval \([-l, l]\), and by periodic extension outside it. Then for all real \( x \) the complex Fourier series for \( f(x) \) is

1. \[ \lim_{m \to \infty} \sum_{k=-m}^{m} c_k \exp[i k \pi x/l], \]

where

2. \[ c_k = \frac{1}{2l} \int_{-l}^{l} f(x) e^{-i k \pi x/l} \, dx \quad [k = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots]. \]

The convergence properties and conditions for convergence of complex Fourier series are analogous to those already given for Fourier series.
1.13.1.10
The n’th partial sum $s_n(x)$ of a Fourier series for $f(x)$ on the interval $(-\pi, \pi)$, defined by

1. $s_n(x) = \frac{1}{2}a_0 + \sum_{k=1}^{n}(a_k \cos kx + b_k \sin kx)$ is given by the Dirichlet integral representation:

2. $s_n(x) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(\tau) \frac{\sin \left[ \left( n + \frac{1}{2} \right)(x - \tau) \right]}{2 \sin \frac{1}{2}(x - \tau)} d\tau,$

where

3. $D_n(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \frac{\sin \left[ \left( n + \frac{1}{2} \right)(x - \tau) \right]}{\sin \frac{1}{2}(x - \tau)}$

is called the Dirichlet kernel.

4. $\frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} D_n(x) \, dx = 1.$

1.13.1.11
Let $f(x)$ be continuous and piecewise-smooth on the interval $(-l, l)$, with $f(-l) = f(l)$. Then the Fourier series of $f(x)$ converges uniformly to $f(x)$ for $x$ in the interval $(-l, l)$.

1.13.1.12
Let $f(x)$ be piecewise-continuous on $[-l, l]$ with the Fourier series given in 1.13.1.1.2. Then term-by-term integration of the Fourier series for $f(x)$ yields a series representation of the function

$$F(x) = \int_{\alpha}^{x} f(t) \, dt, \quad [-l \leq \alpha < x < l].$$

When expressed differently, this result is equivalent to

$$\int_{-l}^{x} f(t) \, dt = \int_{-l}^{x} a_0 \, dt + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \int_{-l}^{x} \left( a_k \cos \frac{k \pi t}{l} + b_k \sin \frac{k \pi t}{l} \right) dt.$$

(integration of Fourier series)

1.13.1.13
Let $f(x)$ be a continuous function over the interval $[-l, l]$ and such that $f(-l) = f(l)$. Suppose also that the derivative $f'(x)$ is piecewise-continuous over this interval. Then at every point at
1.14 Asymptotic Expansions

which \( f''(x) \) exists, the Fourier series for \( f(x) \) may be differentiated term by term to yield a Fourier series that converges to \( f'(x) \). Thus, if \( f(x) \) has the Fourier series given in 1.13.1.1.2,

\[
f'(x) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{d}{dx} \left( a_k \cos \frac{k\pi x}{l} + b_k \sin \frac{k\pi x}{l} \right) \quad [-l \leq x \leq l].
\]

(differentiation of Fourier series)

1.13.1.14
Let \( f(x) \) be a piecewise-continuous over \([-l, l]\) with the Fourier series given in 1.13.1.1.2. Then

\[
\frac{1}{2} a_0^2 + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \left( a_k^2 + b_k^2 \right) \leq \frac{1}{l} \int_{-l}^{l} |f(x)|^2 \, dx. \tag{Bessel's inequality}
\]

1.13.1.15
Let \( f(x) \) be continuous over \([-l, l]\), and periodic with period \( 2l \), with the Fourier series given in 1.13.1.2. Then

\[
\frac{1}{2} a_0^2 + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \left( a_k^2 + b_k^2 \right) = \frac{1}{l} \int_{-l}^{l} |f(x)|^2 \, dx. \tag{Parseval's identity}
\]

1.13.1.16
Let \( f(x) \) and \( g(x) \) be two functions defined over the interval \([-l, l]\) with respective Fourier coefficients \( a_k, b_k \) and \( \alpha_k, \beta_k \), and such that the integrals \( \int_{-l}^{l} |f(x)|^2 \, dx \) and \( \int_{-l}^{l} |g(x)|^2 \, dx \) are both finite [\( f(x) \) and \( g(x) \) are square integrable]. Then the Parseval identity for the product function \( f(x)g(x) \) becomes

\[
\frac{a_0^2}{2} + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \left( a_k \alpha_k + b_k \beta_k \right) = \frac{1}{l} \int_{-l}^{l} f(x) \, g(x) \, dx.
\]

(generalized Parseval identity)

1.14 ASYMPTOTIC EXPANSIONS

1.14.1 Introduction

1.14.1.1
Among the set of all divergent series is a special class known as the asymptotic series. These are series which, although divergent, have the property that the sum of a suitable number of terms provides a good approximation to the functions they represent. In the case of an alternating asymptotic series, the greatest accuracy is obtained by truncating the series at the term of smallest absolute value. When working with an alternating asymptotic series representing a function \( f(x) \), the magnitude of the error involved when \( f(x) \) is approximated by summing only the first \( n \) terms of the series does not exceed the magnitude of the \((n+1)\)’th term (the first term to be discarded).
Chapter 1 Numerical, Algebraic, and Analytical Results for Series and Calculus

An example of this type is provided by the asymptotic series for the function

\[ f(x) = \int_x^\infty \frac{e^{-t}}{t} \, dt. \]

Integrating by parts \( n \) times gives

\[ f(x) = \frac{1}{x} - \frac{1}{x^2} + \frac{2!}{x^3} - \cdots + (-1)^{n-1} \frac{(n-1)!}{x^n} + (-1)^n n! \int_x^\infty \frac{e^{-t}}{t^{n+1}} \, dt. \]

It is easily established that the infinite series

\[ \frac{1}{x} - \frac{1}{x^2} + \frac{2!}{x^3} - \cdots + (-1)^{n-1} \frac{(n-1)!}{x^n} + \ldots \]

is divergent for all \( x \), so if \( f(x) \) is expanded as an infinite series, the series diverges for all \( x \).

The remainder after the \( n \)'th term can be estimated by using the fact that

\[ n! \int_x^\infty \frac{e^{-t}}{t^{n+1}} \, dt < \frac{n!}{x^{n+1}} \int_x^\infty e^{-t} \, dt = \frac{n!}{x^{n+1}}, \]

from which it can be seen that when \( f(x) \) is approximated by the first \( n \) terms of this divergent series, the magnitude of the error involved is less than the magnitude of the \((n+1)\)'th term (see 1.8.2.7.2).

For any fixed value of \( x \), the terms in the divergent series decrease in magnitude until the \( N \)'th term, where \( N \) is the integral part of \( x \), after which they increase again. Thus, for any fixed \( x \), truncating the series after the \( N \)'th term will yield the best approximation to \( f(x) \) for that value of \( x \).

In general, even when \( x \) is only moderately large, truncating the series after only a few terms will provide an excellent approximation to \( f(x) \). In the above case, if \( x = 30 \) and the series is truncated after only two terms, the magnitude of the error involved when evaluating \( f(30) \) is less than \( 2!/30^3 = 7.4 \times 10^{-5} \).

1.14.2 Definition and Properties of Asymptotic Series

1. Let \( S_n(z) \) be the sum of the first \( (n+1) \) terms of the series

\[ S(z) = A_0 + \frac{A_1}{z} + \frac{A_2}{z^2} + \cdots + \frac{A_n}{z^n} + \ldots, \]

where, in general, \( z \) is a complex number. Let \( R_n(z) = S(z) - S_n(z) \). Then the series \( S(z) \) is said to be an asymptotic expansion of \( f(z) \) if for \( \arg z \) in some interval \( \alpha \leq \arg z \leq \beta \), and for each fixed \( n \),

\[ \lim_{|z| \to \infty} z^n R_n(z) = 0. \]
The relationship between $f(z)$ and its asymptotic expansion $S(z)$ is indicated by writing $f(z) \sim S(z)$.

2. The operations of addition, subtraction, multiplication, and raising to a power can be performed on asymptotic series just as on absolutely convergent series. The series obtained as a result of these operations will also be an asymptotic series.

3. Division of asymptotic series is permissible and yields another asymptotic series provided the first term $A_0$ of the divisor is not equal to zero.

4. Term-by-term integration of an asymptotic series is permissible and yields another asymptotic series.

5. Term-by-term differentiation of an asymptotic series is not, in general, permissible.

6. For $\arg z$ in some interval $\alpha \leq \arg z \leq \beta$, the asymptotic expansion of a function $f(x)$ is unique.

7. A series can be the asymptotic expansion of more than one function.

1.15 BASIC RESULTS FROM THE CALCULUS

1.15.1 Rules for Differentiation

1.15.1.1

Let $u, v$ be differentiable functions of their arguments and let $k$ be a constant.

1. $\frac{dk}{dx} = 0$

2. $\frac{d(ku)}{dx} = k \frac{du}{dx}$

3. $\frac{d(u + v)}{dx} = \frac{du}{dx} + \frac{dv}{dx}$ \hspace{1cm} \text{(differentiation of a sum)}

4. $\frac{d(uv)}{dx} = u \frac{dv}{dx} + v \frac{du}{dx}$ \hspace{1cm} \text{(differentiation of a product)}

5. $\frac{d}{dx} \left( \frac{u}{v} \right) = \frac{v \frac{du}{dx} - u \frac{dv}{dx}}{v^2} \hspace{1cm} [v \neq 0] \hspace{1cm} \text{(differentiation of a quotient)}$

6. Let $v$ be differentiable at some point $x$, and $u$ be differentiable at the point $v(x)$; then the composite function $(u \circ v)(x)$ is differentiable at the point $x$. In particular, if $z = u(y)$ and $y = v(x)$, so that $z = u(v(x)) = (u \circ v)(x)$, then

$$\frac{dz}{dx} = \frac{dz}{dy} \cdot \frac{dy}{dx}$$

or, equivalently,

$$\frac{dz}{dx} = u'(y) v'(x) = u'(v(x)) v'(x).$$ \hspace{1cm} \text{(chain rule)}
7. If the \( n \)'th derivatives \( u^{(n)}(x) \) and \( v^{(n)}(x) \) exist, so also does \( d^n (uv)/dx^n \) and

\[
\frac{d^n (uv)}{dx^n} = \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} u^{(n-k)} (x) v^{(k)} (x). \tag{Leibnitz’s formula}
\]

In particular (for \( n = 1 \); see 1.15.1.1.3),

\[
\frac{d^2 (uv)}{dx^2} = \frac{d^2 u}{dx^2} v + 2 \frac{du}{dx} \frac{dv}{dx} + u \frac{d^2 v}{dx^2} \quad [n = 2],
\]

\[
\frac{d^3 (uv)}{dx^3} = \frac{d^3 u}{dx^3} v + 3 \frac{d^2 u}{dx^2} \frac{dv}{dx} + 3 \frac{du}{dx} \frac{d^2 v}{dx^2} + u \frac{d^3 v}{dx^3} \quad [n = 3].
\]

8. Let the function \( f(x) \) be continuous at each point of the closed interval \([a, b]\) and differentiable at each point of the open interval \([a, b)\). Then there exists a number \( \xi \), with \( a < \xi < b \), such that

\[
f(b) - f(a) = (b - a) f'(\xi). \tag{mean-value theorem for derivatives}
\]

9. Let \( f(x) \), \( g(x) \) be functions such that \( f(x_0) = g(x_0) = 0 \), but \( f'(x_0) \) and \( g'(x_0) \) are not both zero. Then

\[
\lim_{x \to x_0} \left[ \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} \right] = \frac{f'(x_0)}{g'(x_0)}. \tag{L'Hôpital’s rule}
\]

Let \( f(x), g(x) \) be functions such that \( f(x_0) = g(x_0) = 0 \), and let their first \( n \) derivatives all vanish at \( x_0 \), so that \( f^{(r)}(x_0) = g^{(r)}(x_0) = 0 \), for \( r = 1, 2, \ldots, n \). Then, provided that not both of the \( (n + 1)'\)th derivatives \( f^{(n+1)}(x) \) and \( g^{(n+1)}(x) \) vanish at \( x_0 \)

\[
\lim_{x \to x_0} \left[ \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} \right] = \frac{f^{(n+1)}(x_0)}{g^{(n+1)}(x_0)}. \tag{generalized L'Hôpital’s rule}
\]

1.15.2 Integration

1.15.2.1

A function \( f(x) \) is called an antiderivative of a function \( f(x) \) if

1. \( \frac{d}{dx} [F(x)] = f(x) \).

The operation of determining an antiderivative is called integration. Functions of the form

2. \( F(x) + C \)

are antiderivatives of \( f(x) \) in 1.15.2.1.1 and this is indicated by writing
3. \[ \int f(x) \, dx = F(x) + C, \]

where \( C \) is an arbitrary constant.

The expression on the right-hand side of 1.15.2.1.3 is called an **indefinite integral**. The term *indefinite* is used because of the arbitrariness introduced by the arbitrary additive **constant of integration** \( C \).

4. \[ \int u \left( \frac{dv}{dx} \right) \, dx = uv - \int v \left( \frac{du}{dx} \right) \, dx. \]

(formula for integration by parts)

This is often abbreviated to

\[ \int u \, dv = uv - \int v \, du. \]

5. A **definite integral** involves the integration of \( f(x) \) from a lower limit \( x = a \) to an upper limit \( x = b \), and it is written

\[ \int_a^b f(x) \, dx. \]

The **first fundamental theorem of calculus** asserts that if \( f(x) \) is an antiderivative of \( f(x) \), then

\[ \int_a^b f(x) \, dx = F(b) - F(a). \]

Since the variable of integration in a definite integral does not enter into the final result it is called a **dummy variable**, and it may be replaced by any other symbol. Thus

\[ \int_a^b f(x) \, dx = \int_a^b f(t) \, dt = \cdots = \int_a^b f(s) \, ds = F(b) - F(a). \]

6. If

\[ F(x) = \int_a^x f(t) \, dt, \]

then \( dF/dx = f(x) \) or, equivalently,

\[ \frac{d}{dx} \int_a^x f(t) \, dt = f(x). \]

(second fundamental theorem of calculus)

7. \[ \int_a^b f(x) \, dx = -\int_b^a f(x) \, dx. \]

(reversal of limits changes the sign)

8. Let \( f(x) \) and \( g(x) \) be continuous in the interval \([a, b]\), and let \( g'(x) \) exist and be continuous in this same interval. Then, with the substitution \( u = g(x) \),
(i) $\int f(g(x)) g'(x) \, dx = \int f(u) \, du,$  
(integration of indefinite integral by substitution)

(ii) $\int_a^b f(g(x)) g'(x) \, dx = \int_{g(a)}^{g(b)} f(u) \, du.$  
(integration of a definite integral by substitution)

9. Let $f(x)$ be finite and integrable over the interval $[a, b]$ and let $\xi$ be such that $a < \xi < b$, then

$$\int_{\xi-0}^{\xi+0} f(x) \, dx = 0.$$  
(integral over an interval of zero length)

10. If $\xi$ is a point in the closed interval $[a, b]$, then

$$\int_a^b f(x) \, dx = \int_a^\xi f(x) \, dx + \int_\xi^b f(x) \, dx.$$  
(integration over contiguous intervals)

This result, in conjunction with 1.15.2.1.9, is necessary when integrating a piecewise-continuous function $f(x)$ over the interval $[a, b].$ Let

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \varphi(x), & a \leq x \leq \xi \\ \psi(x), & \xi < x \leq b, \end{cases}$$

with $\varphi(\xi-0) \neq \psi(\xi+0),$ so that $f(x)$ has a finite discontinuity (saltus) at $x = \xi.$ Then

$$\int_a^b f(x) \, dx = \int_a^{\xi-0} f(x) \, dx + \int_\xi^{\xi+0} f(x) \, dx.$$  
(integration of a discontinuous function)

11. $\int_a^b u \left( \frac{dv}{dx} \right) \, dx = u(b) v(b) - u(a) v(a) - \int_a^b v \left( \frac{du}{dx} \right) \, dx.$  
(formula for integration by parts of a definite integral)

Using the notation $(uv)|_a^b = u(b)v(b) - u(a)v(a)$ this last result is often contracted to

$$\int_a^b u \, dv = (uv)|_a^b - \int_a^b v \, du.$$  

12. $\frac{d}{d\alpha} \int_{\psi(\alpha)}^{\varphi(\alpha)} f(x, \alpha) \, dx = f[\varphi(\alpha), \alpha] \frac{d\varphi(\alpha)}{d\alpha} - f[\psi(\alpha), \alpha] \frac{d\psi(\alpha)}{d\alpha}$
1.15 Basic Results from the Calculus

\[ + \int_{\psi(a)}^{\psi(a)} \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha} [f(x, \alpha)] \, dx. \]

(differentiation of a definite integral with respect to a parameter)

13. If \( f(x) \) is integrable over the interval \([a, b]\), then

\[ \left| \int_{a}^{b} f(x) \, dx \right| \leq \int_{a}^{b} |f(x)| \, dx. \]  

(absolute value integral inequality)

14. If \( f(x) \) and \( g(x) \) are integrable over the interval \([a, b]\) and \( f(x) \leq g(x) \), then

\[ \int_{a}^{b} f(x) \, dx \leq \int_{a}^{b} g(x) \, dx. \]  

(comparison integral inequality)

15. The following are mean-value theorems for integrals.

(i) If \( f(x) \) is continuous on the closed interval \([a, b]\), there is a number \( \xi \), with \( a < \xi < b \), such that

\[ \int_{a}^{b} f(x) \, dx = (b - a) f(\xi). \]

(ii) If \( f(x) \) and \( g(x) \) are continuous on the closed interval \([a, b]\) and \( g(x) \) is monotonic (either decreasing on increasing) on the open interval \([a, b]\), there is a number \( \xi \), with \( a < \xi < b \), such that

\[ \int_{a}^{b} f(x) \, g(x) \, dx = g(a) \int_{a}^{\xi} f(x) \, dx + g(b) \int_{\xi}^{b} f(x) \, dx. \]

(iii) If in (ii), \( g(x) > 0 \) on the open interval \([a, b]\), there is a number \( \xi \), with \( a < \xi < b \), such that when \( g(x) \) is monotonic decreasing

\[ \int_{a}^{b} f(x) \, g(x) \, dx = g(a) \int_{a}^{\xi} f(x) \, dx, \]

and when \( g(x) \) is monotonic increasing

\[ \int_{a}^{b} f(x) \, g(x) \, dx = g(b) \int_{\xi}^{b} f(x) \, dx. \]

1.15.3 Reduction Formulas

1.15.3.1

When, after integration by parts, an integral containing one or more parameters can be expressed in terms of an integral of similar form involving parameters with reduced values, the result is called a reduction formula (recursion relation). Its importance derives from the
fact that it can be used in reverse, because after the simplest form of the integral has been evaluated, the formula can be used to determine more complicated integrals of similar form.

Typical examples of reduction formulas together with an indication of their use follow.

(a) Given $I_n = \int (1 - x^3)^n \, dx$, $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, integration by parts shows the reduction formula satisfied by $I_n$ to be

$$(3n + 1) I_n = x (1 - x^3)^n + 3n I_{n-1}.$$  

Setting $n = 0$ in $I_n$ and omitting the arbitrary constant of integration gives $I_0 = x$. Next, setting $n = 1$ in the reduction formula determines $I_1$ from $4I_1 = x (1 - x^3) + 3I_0 = 4x - x^4$, so

$$I_1 = x - \frac{1}{4} x^4.$$  

$I_2$ follows by using $I_1$ in the reduction formula with $n = 2$, while $I_3, I_4, \ldots$ are obtained in similar fashion. Because an indefinite integral is involved, an arbitrary constant must be added to each $I_n$ so obtained to arrive at the most general result.

(b) Given $I_{m,n} = \int \sin^m x \cos^n x \, dx$, repeated integration by parts shows the reduction formula satisfied by $I_{m,n}$ to be

$$(m + n) I_{m,n} = \sin^{m+1} x \cos^{n-1} x + (n - 1) I_{m,n-2}.$$  

Given $I_n = \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^n x \, dx$, repeated integration by parts shows the reduction formula satisfied by $I_n$ to be

$$I_n = \left( \frac{n - 1}{n} \right) I_{n-2}.$$  

Since $I_0 = \pi/2$ and $I_1 = 1$, this result implies

$$I_{2n} = \left( \frac{2n - 1}{2n} \right) \left( \frac{2n - 3}{2n - 2} \right) \cdots \frac{1}{2} I_0 = \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \ldots (2n - 1)}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \ldots 2n} \frac{\pi}{2},$$

$$I_{2n+1} = \left( \frac{2n}{2n + 1} \right) \left( \frac{2n - 2}{2n - 1} \right) \cdots \frac{2}{3} I_1 = \frac{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \ldots 2n}{3 \cdot 5 \cdot 7 \ldots (2n + 1)}.$$  

Combining these results gives

$$\frac{\pi}{2} = \left[ \frac{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \ldots 2n}{3 \cdot 5 \cdot 7 \ldots (2n - 1)} \right]^2 \left( \frac{1}{2n + 1} \right) \frac{I_{2n}}{I_{2n+1}},$$

but

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \frac{I_{2n}}{I_{2n+1}} = 1,$$
so we arrive at the Wallis infinite product (see 1.9.2.15)

$$\frac{\pi}{2} = \prod_{k=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{2k}{2k - 1} \right) \left( \frac{2k}{2k + 1} \right).$$

**1.15.4 Improper Integrals**

An improper integral is a definite integral that possesses one or more of the following properties:

(i) the interval of integration is either semi-infinite or infinite in length;
(ii) the integrand becomes infinite at an interior point of the interval of integration;
(iii) the integrand becomes infinite at an end point of the interval of integration.

An integral of type (i) is called an improper integral of the first kind, while integrals of types (ii) and (iii) are called improper integrals of the second kind.

**The evaluation of improper integrals.**

I. Let \( f(x) \) be defined and finite on the semi-infinite interval \([a, \infty)\). Then the improper integral \( \int_{a}^{\infty} f(x) \, dx \) is defined as

$$\int_{a}^{\infty} f(x) \, dx = \lim_{R \to \infty} \int_{a}^{R} f(x) \, dx.$$ 

The improper integral is said to converge to the value of this limit when it exists and is finite. If the limit does not exist, or is infinite, the integral is said to diverge.

Corresponding definitions exist for the improper integrals

$$\int_{-\infty}^{a} f(x) \, dx = \lim_{R \to \infty} \int_{-R}^{a} f(x) \, dx,$$

and

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) \, dx = \lim_{R_{1} \to \infty} \int_{-R_{1}}^{a} f(x) \, dx + \lim_{R_{2} \to \infty} \int_{a}^{R_{2}} f(x) \, dx, \quad [\text{arbitrary} \, a],$$

where \( R_{1} \) and \( R_{2} \) tend to infinity independently of each other.

II. Let \( f(x) \) be defined and finite on the interval \([a, b]\) except at a point \( \xi \) interior to \([a, b]\) at which point it becomes infinite. The improper integral \( \int_{a}^{b} f(x) \, dx \) is then defined as

$$\int_{a}^{b} f(x) \, dx = \lim_{\epsilon \to 0} \int_{a}^{\xi-\epsilon} f(x) \, dx + \lim_{\delta \to 0} \int_{\xi+\delta}^{b} f(x) \, dx,$$

where \( \epsilon > 0, \delta > 0 \) tend to zero independently of each other. The improper integral is said to converge when both limits exist and are finite, and its value is then the sum of
the values of the two limits. The integral is said to diverge if at least one of the limits is undefined, or is infinite.

III. Let \( f(x) \) be defined and finite on the interval \([a, b]\) except at an end point, say, at \( x = a \), where it is infinite. The improper integral \( \int_a^b f(x) \, dx \) is then defined as

\[
\int_a^b f(x) \, dx = \lim_{\varepsilon \to 0} \int_{a+\varepsilon}^b f(x) \, dx,
\]

where \( \varepsilon > 0 \). The improper integral is said to converge to the value of this limit when it exists and is finite. If the limit does not exist, or is infinite, the integral is said to diverge. A corresponding definition applies when \( f(x) \) is infinite at \( x = b \).

IV. It may happen that although an improper integral of type (i) is divergent, modifying the limits in I by setting \( R_1 = R_2 = R \) gives rise to a finite result. This is said to define the Cauchy principal value of the integral, and it is indicated by inserting the letters PV before the integral sign. Thus, when the limit is finite,

\[
\text{PV} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) \, dx = \lim_{R \to \infty} \int_{-R}^{R} f(x) \, dx.
\]

Similarly, it may happen that although an improper integral of type (ii) is divergent, modifying the limits in II by setting \( \varepsilon = \delta \), so the limits are evaluated symmetrically about \( x = \xi \), gives rise to a finite result. This also defines a Cauchy principal value, and when the limits exist and are finite, we have

\[
\text{PV} \int_a^b f(x) \, dx = \lim_{\varepsilon \to 0} \left\{ \int_a^{\xi-\varepsilon} f(x) \, dx + \int_{\xi+\varepsilon}^b f(x) \, dx \right\}.
\]

When an improper integral converges, its value and the Cauchy principal value coincide. Typical examples of improper integrals are:

\[
\int_0^\infty xe^{-x} \, dx = 1, \quad \int_0^\infty \frac{dx}{1 + x^2} = \frac{\pi}{4},
\]
\[
\int_0^2 \frac{dx}{(x - 1)^{2/3}} = 6, \quad \int_0^1 \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1 - x^2}} = \frac{\pi}{2},
\]
\[
\int_0^\infty \sin x \, dx \text{ diverges,} \quad \text{PV} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\cos x}{a^2 - x^2} \, dx = \frac{\pi}{a} \sin a.
\]

**Convergence tests for improper integrals.**

1. Let \( f(x) \) and \( g(x) \) be continuous on the semi-infinite interval \([a, \infty)\), and let \( g'(x) \) be continuous and monotonic decreasing on this same interval. Suppose

(i) \( \lim_{x \to \infty} g(x) = 0 \),
(ii) \( F(x) = \int_a^x F(t) \, dt \) is bounded on \([a, \infty)\), so that for some \( M > 0 \),
\[
|F(x)| < M \quad \text{for} \quad a \leq x < \infty,
\]
then the improper integral
\[
\int_a^\infty f(x) \, g(x) \, dx
\]
converges. (Abel's test)

2. Let \( f(x) \) and \( g(x) \) be continuous in the semi-infinite interval \([a, \infty)\), and let \( g'(x) \) be continuous in this same interval. Suppose also that

(i) \( \lim_{x \to \infty} g(x) = 0 \),

(ii) \( \int_a^\infty |g'(x)| \, dx \) converges,

(iii) \( F(k) = \int_a^k f(x) \, dx \) is bounded on \([a, k]\) such that for some \( M > 0 \),
\[
|F(k)| < M \quad \text{for all} \quad k > a,
\]
then
\[
\int_a^\infty f(x) \, g(x) \, dx
\]
converges. (Dirichlet's test)

### 1.15.5 Integration of Rational Functions

A partial fraction decomposition of a rational function \( N(x)/D(x) \) (see 1.72) reduces it to a sum of terms of the type:

(a) a polynomial \( P(x) \) when the degree of \( N(x) \) equals or exceeds the degree of \( D(x) \);

(b) \( A \) \( \frac{1}{a + bx} \),

(c) \( B \) \( \frac{1}{(a + bx)^m} \) \( \{m > 1 \text{ an integer}\} \),

(d) \( Cx + D \) \( \frac{1}{(a + bx + cx^2)^n} \) \( \{n \geq 1 \text{ an integer}\} \).

Integration of these simple rational functions gives:

(a') If \( P(x) = a_0 + a_1x + \cdots + a_rx^r \), then
\[
\int P(x) \, dx = a_0x + 1/2a_1x^2 + \cdots + \frac{1}{(r + 1)}a_rx^{r+1} + \text{const.},
\]

(b') \( \int \frac{A}{a + bx} \, dx = \left( \frac{A}{b} \right) \ln |a + bx| + \text{const.} \),

(c') \( \int \frac{B}{(a + bx)^m} \, dx = \left( \frac{B}{b} \right) \left( \frac{1}{1 - m} \right) (a + bx)^{1-m} + \text{const.} \quad \{m > 1\} \),
(d') \[ \int \frac{Cx + D}{(a + bx + cx^2)^n} \, dx \] should be reexpressed as

\[
\int \frac{Cx + D}{(a + bx + cx^2)^n} \, dx = \left( \frac{C}{2c} \right) \int \frac{b + 2cx}{(a + bx + cx^2)^n} \, dx + \left( D - \frac{Cb}{2c} \right) \int \frac{dx}{(a + bx + cx^2)^n}.
\]

Then,

(i) \[ \int \frac{b + 2cx}{a + bx + cx^2} \, dx = \ln |a + bx + cx^2| + \text{const.} \quad [n = 1], \]

(ii) \[ \int \frac{b + 2cx}{(a + bx + cx^2)^n} \, dx = -\frac{1}{n-1} \frac{1}{(a + bx + cx^2)^{n-1}} + \text{const.} \quad [n > 1], \]

(iii) \[ \int \frac{dx}{(a + bx + cx^2)^n} = \frac{1}{c} \int \frac{dx}{[x + b/(2c)]^2 + [a/c - b^2/(4c^2)]} \quad [n = 1], \]

where the integral on the right is a standard integral. When evaluated, the result depends on the sign of \( \Delta = 4ac - b^2 \). If \( \Delta > 0 \) integration yields an inverse tangent function (see 4.2.5.1.1), and if \( \Delta < 0 \) it yields a logarithmic function or, equivalently, an inverse hyperbolic tangent function (see 4.2.5.1.1). If \( \Delta = 0 \), integration of the right-hand side gives \(-2/(b + 2cx) + \text{const.}\)

(iv) \[ \int \frac{dx}{(a + bx + cx^2)^n} \quad [n > 1 \text{ an integer}]. \]

This integral may be evaluated by using result (iii) above in conjunction with the reduction formula

\[ I_n = \frac{b + 2cx}{(n - 1) (4ac - b^2) D^{n-1}} + \frac{2(2n - 3)c}{(n - 1) (4ac - b^2)} I_{n-1}, \]

where

\[ D = a + bx + cx^2 \quad \text{and} \quad I_n = \int \frac{dx}{(a + bx + cx^2)^n}. \]

1.15.6 Elementary Applications of Definite Integrals

1.15.6.1

The elementary applications that follow outline the use of definite integrals for the determination of areas, arc lengths, volumes, centers of mass, and moments of inertia.
1.15 Basic Results from the Calculus

**Area under a curve.** The definite integral

\[
A = \int_{a}^{b} f(x) \, dx
\]

may be interpreted as the algebraic sum of areas above and below the \(x\)-axis that are bounded by the curve \(y = f(x)\) and the lines \(x = a\) and \(x = b\), with areas above the \(x\)-axis assigned positive values and those below it negative values.

**Volume of revolution.**

(i) Let \(f(x)\) be a continuous and nonnegative function defined on the interval \(a \leq x \leq b\), and \(A\) be the area between the curve \(y = f(x)\), the \(x\)-axis, and the lines \(x = a\) and \(x = b\). Then the volume of the solid generated by rotating \(A\) about the \(x\)-axis is

\[
V = \pi \int_{a}^{b} [f(x)]^2 \, dx.
\]

(ii) Let \(g(y)\) be a continuous and nonnegative function defined on the interval \(c \leq y \leq d\), and \(A\) be the area between the curve \(x = g(y)\), the \(y\)-axis, and the lines \(y = c\) and \(y = d\). Then the volume of the solid generated by rotating \(A\) about the \(y\)-axis is

\[
V = \pi \int_{c}^{d} [g(y)]^2 \, dy.
\]
(iii) Let \( g(y) \) be a continuous and nonnegative function defined on the interval \( c \leq y \leq d \) with \( c \geq 0 \), and \( A \) be the area between the curve \( x = g(y) \), the \( y \)-axis, and the lines \( y = c \) and \( y = d \). Then the volume of the solid generated by rotating \( A \) about the \( x \)-axis is

\[
4. \quad V = 2\pi \int_c^d yg(y) \, dy.
\]

(iv) Let \( f(x) \) be a continuous and nonnegative function defined on the interval \( a \leq x \leq b \) with \( a \geq 0 \), and \( A \) be the area between the curve \( y = f(x) \), the \( x \)-axis, and the lines \( x = a \) and \( x = b \). Then the volume of the solid generated by rotating \( A \) about the \( y \)-axis is

\[
5. \quad V = 2\pi \int_a^b xf(x) \, dx.
\]

(v) **Theorem of Pappus**

Let a closed curve \( C \) in the \((x, y)\)-plane that does not intersect the \( x \)-axis have a circumference \( L \) and area \( A \), and let its centroid be at a perpendicular distance \( \bar{y} \) from the \( x \)-axis. Then the surface area \( S \) and volume \( V \) of the solid generated by rotating the area within the curve \( C \) about the \( x \)-axis are given by

\[
6. \quad S = 2\pi \bar{y}L \quad \text{and} \quad V = 2\pi \bar{y}A.
\]

**Length of an arc.**

(i) Let \( f(x) \) be a function with a continuous derivative that is defined on the interval \( a \leq x \leq b \). Then the length of the arc along \( y = f(x) \) from \( x = a \) to \( x = b \) is
7. \[ s = \int_a^b \sqrt{1 + [f'(x)]^2} \, dx, \]

\[
\delta s^2 = \delta x^2 + \delta y^2; \text{ in the limit } \left( \frac{\delta x}{\delta y} \right)^2 = 1 + \left( \frac{dy}{dx} \right)^2 = 1 + [f'(x)]^2
\]

(ii) Let \( g(y) \) be a function with a continuous derivative that is defined on the interval \( c \leq y \leq d \). Then the length of the arc along \( x = g(y) \) from \( y = c \) to \( y = d \) is

\[ s = \int_c^d \sqrt{1 + [g'(y)]^2} \, dy. \]

\[
\delta s^2 = \delta y^2 + \delta x^2; \text{ in the limit } \left( \frac{\delta s}{\delta y} \right)^2 = 1 + \left( \frac{dx}{dy} \right)^2 = 1 + [g'(y)]^2
\]

**Area of surface of revolution.**

(i) Let \( f(x) \) be a nonnegative function with a continuous derivative that is defined on the interval \( a \leq x \leq b \). Then the area of the surface of revolution generated by rotating the curve \( y = f(x) \) about the \( x \)-axis between the planes \( x = a \) and \( x = b \) is

\[ S = 2\pi \int_a^b f(x) \sqrt{1 + [f'(x)]^2} \, dx. \]  

(see also Pappus's theorem 1.15.6.1.5)

(ii) Let \( g(y) \) be a nonnegative function with a continuous derivative that is defined on the interval \( c \leq y \leq d \). Then the area of the surface generated by rotating the curve \( x = g(y) \) about the \( y \)-axis between the planes \( y = c \) and \( y = d \) is

\[ S = 2\pi \int_c^d g(y) \sqrt{1 + [g'(y)]^2} \, dy. \]

**Center of mass and moment of inertia.**

(i) Let a plane lamina in a region \( R \) of the \((x, y)\)-plane within a closed plane curve \( C \) have the continuous mass density distribution \( \rho(x, y) \). Then the **center of mass** (gravity) of the lamina is located at the point \( G \) with coordinates \((\bar{x}, \bar{y})\), where
11. \[ \bar{x} = \frac{\iint_{R} x \rho(x, y) \, dA}{M}, \quad \bar{y} = \frac{\iint_{R} y \rho(x, y) \, dA}{M}, \]

with \( dA \) the element of area in \( R \) and \( M \) the mass of lamina.

12. \[ M = \iint_{R} \rho(x, y) \, dA. \] (mass of lamina)

When this result is applied to the area \( R \) within the plane curve \( C \) in the \((x, y)\)-plane, which may be regarded as a lamina with a uniform mass density that may be taken to be \( \rho(x, y) \equiv 1 \), the center of mass is then called the **centroid**.

(ii) The **moments of inertia** of the lamina in (i) about the \( x \)-, \( y \)-, and \( z \)-axes are given, respectively, by

13. \[ I_x = \iint_{R} y^2 \rho(x, y) \, dA, \]

\[ I_y = \iint_{R} x^2 \rho(x, y) \, dA \]

\[ I_z = \iint_{R} (x^2 + y^2) \rho(x, y) \, dA. \]

The **radius of gyration** of a body about an axis \( L \) denoted by \( k_L \) is defined as

14. \[ k_L^2 = \frac{I_L}{M}, \]

where \( I_L \) is the moment of inertia of the body about the axis \( L \) and \( M \) is the mass of the body.
2.1 COMPLEX NUMBERS AND TRIGONOMETRIC AND HYPERBOLIC FUNCTIONS

2.1.1 Basic Results

2.1.1.1 Modulus-Argument Representation

In the modulus-argument \((r, \theta)\) representation of the complex number \(z = x + iy\), located at a point \(P\) in the complex plane, \(r\) is the radial distance of \(P\) from the origin and \(\theta\) is the angle measured from the positive real axis to the line \(OP\). The number \(r\) is called the modulus of \(z\) (see 1.1.1.1), and \(\theta\) is called the argument of \(z\), written \(\text{arg } z\), and it is chosen to lie in the interval

1. \(-\pi < \theta \leq \pi\).

   By convention, \(\theta = \text{arg } z\) is measured \textit{positively} in the counterclockwise sense from the positive real axis, so that \(0 \leq \theta \leq \pi\), and \textit{negatively} in the clockwise sense from the positive real axis, so that \(-\pi < \theta \leq 0\). Thus,

2. \(z = x + iy = r \cos \theta + ir \sin \theta\)

   or

3. \(z = r (\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)\).

   The connection between the \textbf{Cartesian representation} \(z = x + iy\) and the modulus-argument form is given by

4. \(x = r \cos \theta, \quad y = r \sin \theta\)

5. \(r = (x^2 + y^2)^{1/2}\).

The periodicity of the sine and cosine functions with period \(2\pi\) means that for given \(r\) and \(\theta\), the complex number \(z\) in 2.1.1.1.3 will be unchanged if \(\theta = \text{arg } z\) is replaced by
This ambiguity in \( \arg z \), which is, in fact, a set of values, is removed by constraining \( \theta \) to satisfy 2.1.1.1. When \( \arg z \) is chosen in this manner, and \( z \) is given by 2.1.1.3, \( \theta \) is called the principal value of the argument of \( z \).

Examples of modulus and argument representation follow:

(i) \( z = 1 + i \), \( r = 2^{1/2} \), \( \theta = \arg z = \pi/4 \)
(ii) \( z = 1 - i\sqrt{3} \), \( r = 2 \), \( \theta = \arg z = -\pi/3 \)
(iii) \( z = -2 - 2i \), \( r = 2^{3/2} \), \( \theta = \arg z = -3\pi/4 \)
(iv) \( z = -2\sqrt{3} + 2i \), \( r = 4 \), \( \theta = \arg z = 5\pi/6 \)

2.1.1.2 Euler’s Formula and de Moivre’s Theorem

1. \( e^{i\theta} = \cos \theta + i \sin \theta \), \hspace{1cm} \text{ (Euler’s formula)}
   
   so an arbitrary complex number can always be written in the form

2. \( z = re^{i\theta} \)

3. \( (\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)^n = \cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta \). \hspace{1cm} \text{ (de Moivre’s theorem)}

Some special complex numbers in modulus-argument form:

\[ 1 = e^{2k\pi i} \quad [k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots], \quad -1 = e^{(2k+1)\pi i} \quad [k = 0, 1, \ldots] \]
\[ i = e^{\pi i/2}, \quad -i = e^{3\pi i/2}. \]

Euler’s formula and de Moivre’s theorem may be used to establish trigonometric identities. For example, from the Euler formula, 2.1.1.2.1,

\[ \cos \theta = \frac{1}{2} \left( e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta} \right), \]

so

\[ \cos^5 \theta = \left( \frac{e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta}}{2} \right)^5 \]
\[ = \frac{1}{32} \left( e^{5i\theta} + 5e^{3i\theta} + 10e^{i\theta} + 10e^{-i\theta} + 5e^{-3i\theta} + e^{-5i\theta} \right) \]
\[ = \frac{1}{16} \left( \frac{e^{5i\theta} + e^{-5i\theta}}{2} \right) + 5 \left( \frac{e^{3i\theta} + e^{-3i\theta}}{2} \right) + 10 \left( \frac{e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta}}{2} \right) \]
\[ = \frac{1}{16} \left( \cos 5\theta + 5 \cos 3\theta + 10 \cos \theta \right), \]

which expresses \( \cos^5 \theta \) in terms of multiple angles.

A similar argument using

\[ \sin \theta = \frac{e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta}}{2i} \]
shows that, for example,
\[ \sin^4 \theta = \frac{1}{8} (\cos 4\theta - 4 \cos 2\theta + 3), \]
which expresses \( \sin^4 \theta \) in terms of multiple angles (see 2.4.1.7.3).

Sines and cosines of multiple angles may be expressed in terms of powers of sines and cosines by means of de Moivre’s theorem, 2.1.1.2.3. For example, setting \( n = 5 \) in the theorem gives
\[ (\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)^5 = \cos 5\theta + i \sin 5\theta \]
or
\[ (\cos^5 \theta - 10 \sin^2 \theta \cos^3 \theta + 5 \sin^4 \theta \cos \theta) + i (5 \sin \theta \cos^4 \theta - 10 \sin^3 \theta \cos^2 \theta + \sin^5 \theta) = \cos 5\theta + i \sin 5\theta. \]
Equating the respective real and imaginary parts of this identity gives
\[ \cos 5\theta = \cos^5 \theta - 10 \sin^2 \theta \cos^3 \theta + 5 \sin^4 \theta \cos \theta, \]
\[ \sin 5\theta = 5 \sin \theta \cos^4 \theta - 10 \sin^3 \theta \cos^2 \theta + \sin^5 \theta. \]
These identities may be further simplified by using \( \cos^2 \theta + \sin^2 \theta = 1 \) to obtain
\[ \cos 5\theta = 16 \cos^5 \theta - 20 \cos^3 \theta + 5 \cos \theta \]
and
\[ \sin 5\theta = 5 \sin \theta - 20 \sin^3 \theta + 16 \sin^5 \theta. \]

2.1.1.3 Roots of a Complex Number
Let \( w^n = z \), with \( n \) an integer, so that \( w = z^{1/n} \). Then, if \( w = r e^{i\phi} \) and \( z = r e^{i\theta} \),

1. \( \rho = r^{1/n}, \quad \phi_k = \frac{\theta + 2k\pi}{n}, \quad [k = 0, 1, \ldots, n-1], \)

so the \( n \) roots of \( z \) are

2. \( w_k = r^{1/n} \left[ \cos \left( \frac{\theta + 2k\pi}{n} \right) + i \sin \left( \frac{\theta + 2k\pi}{n} \right) \right], \quad [k = 0, 1, \ldots, n-1]. \)

When \( z = 1 \), the \( n \) roots of \( z^{1/n} \) are called the \textbf{n’th roots of unity}, and are usually denoted by \( \omega_0, \omega_1, \ldots, \omega^{n-1} \), where

3. \( \omega_k = e^{2k\pi i/n} \quad [k = 0, 1, \ldots, n-1]. \)

Example of roots of a complex number. If \( w^4 = -2\sqrt{3} + 2i \), so \( w = (-2\sqrt{3} + 2i)^{1/4} \), if we set \( z = -2\sqrt{3} + 2i \) it follows that \( r = |z| = 4 \) and \( \theta = \arg z = 5\pi/6. \) So, from 2.1.1.3.2, the required fourth roots of \( z \) are
\[ w_k = 2^{1/2} \left[ \cos \left( \frac{5 + 12k}{24} \right) \pi + i \sin \left( \frac{5 + 12k}{24} \right) \pi \right], \quad [k = 0, 1, 2, 3]. \]
Some special roots:

\[ w^2 = i, \text{ or } w = \sqrt{i}, \text{ has the two complex roots } \left(-1 + i\right)/\sqrt{2} \text{ and } \left(-1 + i\right)/\sqrt{2}, \]

\[ w^2 = -i, \text{ or } w = \sqrt{-i}, \text{ has the two complex roots } \left(1 - i\right)/\sqrt{2} \text{ and } \left(-1 + i\right)/\sqrt{2}, \]

\[ w^3 = i, \text{ or } w = i^{1/3} \text{ has the three complex roots } -i, -\left(\sqrt{3} + i\right)/2 \text{ and } \left(\sqrt{3} + i\right)/2, \]

\[ w^3 = -i, \text{ or } w = (-i)^{1/3} \text{ has the three complex roots } i, -\left(\sqrt{3} + i\right)/2 \text{ and } \left(\sqrt{3} - i\right)/2. \]

### The Quadratic Formula

Consider the quadratic function \( ax^2 + bx + c \) with real coefficients. Completing the square, this becomes

\[ ax^2 + bx + c = a \left( x + \frac{b}{2a} \right)^2 + c - \frac{b^2}{4a}, \]

so the quadratic equation \( ax^2 + bx + c = 0 \) can be rewritten as

1. \( a \left( x + \frac{b}{2a} \right)^2 = \frac{b^2}{4a} - c. \)

In this form the equation can be solved for \( x \), but two cases must be considered.

**Case 1:** When \( b^2 - 4ac \geq 0 \), the two roots are real and given by the familiar **quadratic formula**

2. \( x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}, \)

where the positive square root of a real number \( p > 0 \) is denoted by \( \sqrt{p} \).

**Case 2:** When \( b^2 - 4ac < 0 \), we must replace \( \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac} \) by \( i\sqrt{4ac - b^2} \), from which it then follows that the two roots are complex conjugates given by

3. \( x = \frac{-b \pm i\sqrt{4ac - b^2}}{2a}. \)

In the more general case, finding the two roots when the coefficients \( a, b, \) and \( c \) are complex is accomplished by first writing the equation as in 1 and then using 2.1.1.3 to find the two roots \( w_1 \) and \( w_2 \) of \( \left( \frac{b^2 - 4ac}{4a^2} \right)^{1/2} \). The required roots then follow by solving for \( x \) the equations \( x + b/(2a) = w_1 \) and \( x + b/(2a) = w_2 \).

**Example:** Find the roots of \( (1 + i)x^2 + x + 1 = 0. \)

Here \( a = 1 + i, b = 1, c = 1 \), so \( (b^2 - 4ac)/4a^2 = -\frac{1}{2} + \frac{3}{2}i \), and the two square roots of \( -\frac{1}{2} + \frac{3}{2}i \) are \( w_1 = \frac{1}{4} (1 + 3i) \) and \( w_2 = -\frac{1}{4} (1 + 3i) \). So the required roots \( x_1 \) and \( x_2 \) of the quadratic equation are \( x_1 = w_1 - b/(2a) = i \) and \( x_2 = w_2 - b/(2a) = -\frac{1}{2} (1 + i) \).


2.1 Complex Numbers and Trigonometric and Hyperbolic Functions

Cardano Formula for the Roots of a Cubic

Given the cubic

\[ x^3 + Ax^2 + Bx + C = 0, \]

the substitution \( x = y - \frac{1}{3}A \) reduces it to a cubic of the form

\[ y^3 + ay + b = 0. \]

Setting

\[ p = \left( -\frac{1}{2}b + d \right)^{1/3} \quad \text{and} \quad q = \left( -\frac{1}{2}b - d \right)^{1/3}, \]

where \( d \) is the positive square root

\[ d = \sqrt{\left( \frac{1}{3}a \right)^3 + \left( \frac{1}{2}b \right)^2}, \]

the Cardano formulas for the roots \( x_1, x_2, \text{ and } x_3 \) are

\[
x_1 = p + q - \frac{1}{3}A, \quad x_2 = -\frac{1}{2} (p + q) - \frac{1}{3}A + \frac{1}{2} (p - q) i\sqrt{3},
\]

\[
x_3 = -\frac{1}{2} (p + q) - \frac{1}{3}A - \frac{1}{2} (p - q) i\sqrt{3}
\]

2.1.1.4 Relationship Between Roots

Once a root \( w \) of \( w^n = z \) has been found for a given \( z \) and integer \( n \), so that \( w = z^{1/n} \) is one of the \( n \)'th roots of \( z \), the other \( n-1 \) roots are given by \( w, w^2, \ldots, w^{n-1} \), where the \( w_k \) are the \( n \)'th roots of unity defined in 2.1.1.3.3.

2.1.1.5 Roots of Functions, Polynomials, and Nested Multiplication

If \( f(x) \) is an arbitrary function of \( x \), a number \( x_0 \) such that \( f(x_0) = 0 \) is said to be a root of the function or, equivalently, a zero of \( f(x) \). The need to determine a root of a function \( f(x) \) arises frequently in mathematics, and when it cannot be found analytically it becomes necessary to make use of numerical methods.

In the special case in which the function is the polynomial of degree \( n \)

1. \( P_n(x) \equiv a_0 x^n + a_1 x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_n, \)

with the coefficients \( a_0, a_1, \ldots, a_n \), it follows from the fundamental theorem of algebra that \( P_n(x) = 0 \) has \( n \) roots \( x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n \), although these are not necessarily all real or distinct. If \( x_i \) is a root of \( P_n(x) = 0 \) then \( (x - x_i) \) is a factor of the polynomial and it can be expressed as

2. \( P_n(x) \equiv a_0 (x - x_1) (x - x_2) \cdots (x - x_n). \)

If a root is repeated \( m \) times it is said to have multiplicity \( m \).
The important **division algorithm** for polynomials asserts that if \( P(x) \) and \( Q(x) \) are polynomials with the respective degrees \( n \) and \( m \), where \( 1 \leq m \leq n \), then a polynomial \( R(x) \) of degree \( n - m \) and a polynomial \( S(x) \) of degrees \( m - 1 \) or less, both of which are unique, can be found such that

\[
P(x) = Q(x) R(x) + S(x).
\]

Polynomials in which the coefficients \( a_0, a_1, \ldots, a_n \) are real numbers have the following special properties, which are often of use:

(i) If the degree \( n \) of \( P_n(x) \) is odd it has at least one real root.

(ii) If a root \( z \) of \( P_n(x) \) is complex, then its complex conjugate \( \bar{z} \) is also a root. The quadratic expression \((x - z)(x - \bar{z})\) has real coefficients, and is a factor of \( P_n(x) \).

(iii) \( P_n(x) \) may always be expressed as a product of real linear and quadratic factors with real coefficients, although they may occur with a multiplicity greater than unity.

The following numerical methods for the determination of the roots of a function \( f(x) \) are arranged in order of increasing speed or convergence.

**The bisection method.** The **bisection method**, which is the most elementary method for the location of a root of \( f(x) = 0 \), is based on the intermediate value theorem. The theorem asserts that if \( f(x) \) is continuous on the interval \( a \leq x \leq b \), with \( f(a) \) and \( f(b) \) of opposite signs, then there will be at least one value \( x = c \), strictly intermediate between \( a \) and \( b \), such that \( f(c) = 0 \). The method, which is iterative, proceeds by repeated bisection of intervals containing the required root, which after each bisection the subinterval that contains the root forms the interval to be used in the next bisection. Thus the root is bracketed in a nested set of intervals \( I_0, I_1, I_2, \ldots \), where \( I_0 = [a, b] \), and after the \( n \)’th bisection the interval \( I_n \) is of length \( (b - a) / 2^n \). The method is illustrated in Figure 2.1.

![Figure 2.1](image-url)
The bisection algorithm

Step 1. Find the numbers $a_0$, $b_0$ such that $f(a_0)$ and $f(b_0)$ are of opposite sign, so that $f(x)$ has at least one root in the interval $I_0 = [a_0, b_0]$.

Step 2. Starting from Step 1, construct a new interval $I_{n+1} = [a_{n+1}, b_{n+1}]$ from interval $I_n = [a_n, b_n]$ by setting

3. $k_{n+1} = a_n + \frac{1}{2} (b_n - a_n)$
   and choosing
4. $a_{n+1} = a_n$, $b_{n+1} = k_{n+1}$ if $f(a_n)f(k_{n+1}) < 0$
   and
5. $a_{n+1} = k_{n+1}$, $b_{n+1} = b_n$ if $f(a_n)f(k_{n+1}) > 0$.

Step 3. Terminate the iteration when one of the following conditions is satisfied:

(i) For some $n = N$, the number $k_N$ is an exact root of $f(x)$, so $f(k_N) = 0$.
(ii) Take $k_N$ as the approximation to the required root if, for some $n = N$ and some preassigned error bound $\varepsilon > 0$, it follows that $|k_N - k_{N-1}| < \varepsilon$.

To avoid excessive iteration caused by round-off error interfering with a small error bound $\varepsilon$ it is necessary to place an upper bound $M$ on the total number of iterations to be performed. In the bisection method the number $M$ can be estimated by using $M > \log_2 \left( \frac{b-a}{\varepsilon} \right)$.

The convergence of the bisection method is slow relative to other methods, but it has the advantage that it is unconditionally convergent. The bisection method is often used to determine a starting approximation for a more sophisticated and rapidly convergent method, such as Newton’s method, which can diverge if a poor approximation is used.

The method of false position (regula falsi). The method of false position, also known as the regula falsi method, is a bracketing technique similar to the bisection method, although the nesting of the intervals $I_n$ within which the root of $f(x) = 0$ lies is performed differently. The method starts as in the bisection method with two numbers $a_0$, $b_0$ and the interval $I_0 = [a_0, b_0]$ such that $f(a_0)$ and $f(b_0)$ are of opposite signs. The starting approximation to the required root in $I_0$ is taken to be the point $k_0$ at which the chord joining the points $(a_0, f(a_0))$ and $(b_0, f(b_0))$ cuts the $x$-axis. The interval $I_0$ is then divided into the two subintervals $[a_0, k_0]$ and $[k_0, b_0]$, and the interval $I_1$ is chosen to be the subinterval at the ends of which $f(x)$ has opposite signs.

Thereafter, the process continues iteratively until, for some $n = N$, $|k_N - k_{N-1}| < \varepsilon$, where $\varepsilon > 0$ is a preassigned error bound. The approximation to the required root is taken to be $k_N$. The method is illustrated in Figure 2.2.

The false position algorithm

Step 1. Find two numbers $a_0, b_0$ such that $f(a_0)$ and $f(b_0)$ are of opposite signs, so that $f(x)$ has at least one root in the interval $I_0 = [a_0, b_0]$. 
Step 2. Starting from Step 1, construct a new interval $I_{n+1} = [a_{n+1}, b_{n+1}]$ from the interval $I_n = [a_n, b_n]$ by setting

6. $k_{n+1} = a_n - \frac{f(a_n)(b_n - a_n)}{f(b_n) - f(a_n)}$

and choosing

7. $a_{n+1} = a_n$, $b_{n+1} = k_{n+1}$ if $f(a_n)f(k_{n+1}) < 0$

or

8. $a_{n+1} = k_{n+1}$, $b_{n+1} = b_n$ if $f(a_n)f(k_{n+1}) > 0$.

Step 3. Terminate the iterations if either, for some $n = N$, $k_{N}$ is an exact root so that $f(k_{N}) = 0$, or for some preassigned error bound $\varepsilon > 0$, $|k_{N} - k_{N-1}| < \varepsilon$, in which case $k_{N}$ is taken to be the required approximation to the root. It is necessary to place an upper bound $M$ on the total number of iterations $N$ to prevent excessive iteration that may be caused by round-off errors interfering with a small error bound $\varepsilon$.

The secant method. Unlike the previous methods, the secant method does not involve bracketing a root of $f(x) = 0$ in a sequence of nested intervals. Thus the convergence of the secant method cannot be guaranteed, although when it does converge the process is usually faster than either of the two previous methods.

The secant method is started by finding two approximations $k_0$ and $k_1$ to the required root of $f(x) = 0$. The next approximation $k_2$ is taken to be the point at which the secant drawn...
through the points \((k_0, f(k_0))\) and \((k_1, f(k_1))\) cuts the \(x\)-axis. Thereafter, iteration takes place with secants drawn as shown in Figure 2.3.

**The secant algorithm.** Starting from the approximation \(k_0, k_1\) to the required root of \(f(x) = 0\), the approximation \(k_{n+1}\) is determined from the approximations \(k_n\) and \(k_{n-1}\) by using

9. \[ k_{n+1} = k_n - \frac{f(k_n) (k_n - k_{n-1})}{f(k_n) - f(k_{n-1})}. \]

The iteration is terminated when, for some \(n = N\) and a preassigned error bound \(\varepsilon > 0, |k_N - k_{N-1}| < \varepsilon\). An upper bound \(M\) must be placed on the number of iterations \(N\) in case the method diverges, which occurs when \(|k_N|\) increases without bound.

**Newton’s method.** Newton’s method, often called the Newton–Raphson method, is based on a tangent line approximation to the curve \(y = f(x)\) at an approximate root \(x_0\) of \(f(x) = 0\). The method may be deduced from a Taylor series approximation to \(f(x)\) about the point \(x_0\) as follows. Provided \(f(x)\) is differentiable, then if \(x_0 + h\) is an exact root,

\[ 0 = f(x_0 + h) = f(x_0) + hf'(x_0) + \frac{h^2}{2!} f''(x_0) + \cdots. \]

Thus, if \(h\) is sufficiently small that higher powers of \(h\) may be neglected, an approximate value \(h_0\) to \(h\) is given by

\[ h_0 = -\frac{f(x_0)}{f'(x_0)}, \]

and so a better approximation to \(x_0\) is \(x_1 = x_0 + h_0\). This process is iterated until the required accuracy is attained. However, a poor choice of the starting value \(x_0\) may cause the method to diverge. The method is illustrated in Figure 2.4.
The Newton algorithm. Starting from an approximation $x_0$ to the required root of $f(x) = 0$, the approximation $x_{n+1}$ is determined from the approximation $x_n$ by using

10. $x_{n+1} = x_n - \frac{f(x)}{f'(x_n)}$.

The iteration is terminated when, for some $n = N$ and a preassigned error bound $\varepsilon > 0$, $|x_N - x_{N-1}| < \varepsilon$. An upper bound $M$ must be placed on the number of iterations $N$ in case the method diverges.

Notice that the secant method is an approximation to Newton’s method, as can be seen by replacing the derivative $f'(x_n)$ in the above algorithm with a difference quotient.

Newton’s algorithm—two equations and two unknowns
The previous method extends immediately to the case of two simultaneous equations in two unknowns $x$ and $y$

$$f(x, y) = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad g(x, y) = 0,$$

for which $x^*$ and $y^*$ are required, such that $f(x^*, y^*) = 0$ and $g(x^*, y^*) = 0$. In this case the iterative process starts with an approximation $(x_0, y_0)$ close to the required solution, and the $(n+1)$th iterates $(x_{n+1}, y_{n+1})$ are found from the $n$th iterates $(x_n, y_n)$ by means of the formulas

11. $x_{n+1} = x_n - \left[ \frac{f \partial g/\partial y - g \partial f/\partial y}{\partial f/\partial x \partial g/\partial y - \partial f/\partial y \partial g/\partial x} \right]_{(x_n, y_n)}$

$y_{n+1} = y_n - \left[ \frac{g \partial f/\partial x - f \partial g/\partial x}{\partial f/\partial x \partial g/\partial y - \partial f/\partial y \partial g/\partial x} \right]_{(x_n, y_n)}$.

The iterations are terminated when, for some $n = N$ and a preassigned error bound $\varepsilon > 0$, $|x_N - x_{N+1}| < \varepsilon$ and $|y_N - y_{N+1}| < \varepsilon$. As in the one variable case, an upper bound $M$ must be placed on the number of iterations $N$ to terminate the algorithm if it diverges, in which case a better starting approximation $(x_0, y_0)$ must be used.
2.1 Complex Numbers and Trigonometric and Hyperbolic Functions

**Nested multiplication.** When working with polynomials in general, or when using them in conjunction with one of the previous root-finding methods, it is desirable to have an efficient method for their evaluation for specific arguments. Such a method is provided by the technique of **nested multiplication**.

Consider, for example, the quartic

\[ P_4(x) \equiv 3x^4 + 2x^3 - 4x^2 + 5x - 7. \]

Then, instead of evaluating each term of \( P_4(x) \) separately for some \( x = c \), say, and summing them to find \( P_4(c) \), fewer multiplications are required if \( P_4(x) \) is rewritten in the **nested form**:

\[ P_4(x) \equiv x \{ x [ (3x + 2) - 4] + 5 \} - 7. \]

When repeated evaluation of polynomials is required, as with root-finding methods, this economy of multiplication becomes significant.

Nested multiplication is implemented on a computer by means of the simple algorithm given below, which is based on the division algorithm for polynomials, and for this reason the method is sometimes called **synthetic division**.

**The nested multiplication algorithm for evaluating** \( P_n(c) \). Suppose we want to evaluate the polynomial

12. \( P_n(x) = a_0x^n + a_1x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_n \)
   
   for some \( x = c \). Set \( b_0 = a_0 \), and generate the sequence \( b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_n \) by means of the algorithm

13. \( b_i = cb_{i-1} + a_i \),  \quad \text{for } 1 \leq i \leq n;

   then

14. \( P_n(c) = b_n \).

The argument that led to the nested multiplication algorithm for the evaluation of \( P_n(c) \) also leads to the following algorithm for the evaluation of \( P'_n(c) = [dP_n(x)/dx]_{x=c} \). These algorithms are useful when applying Newton’s method to polynomials because all we have to store is the sequence \( b_0, b_1, \ldots, b_n \).

**Algorithm for evaluating** \( P'_n(c) \). Suppose we want to evaluate \( P'_n(x) \) when \( x = c \), where \( P_n(x) \) is the polynomial in the nested multiplication algorithm, and \( b_0, b_1, \ldots, b_n \) is the sequence generated by that algorithm. Set \( d_0 = b_0 \) and generate the sequence \( d_1, d_2, \ldots, d_{n-1} \) by the means of the algorithm

15. \( d_i = cd_{i-1} + b_i \),  \quad \text{for } 1 \leq i \leq n-1;

   then

16. \( P'_n(c) = d_{n-1} \).
Example: Find $P_4(1.4)$ and $P'_4(1.4)$ when

$$P_4(x) = 2.1x^4 - 3.7x^3 + 5.4x^2 - 1.1x - 7.2.$$ 

Use the result to perform three iterations of Newton’s method to find the root approximated by $x = 1.4$.

Setting $c = 1.4$, $a_0 = 2.1$, $a_1 = -3.7$, $a_2 = 5.4$, $a_3 = -1.1$, and $a_4 = -7.2$ in the nested multiplication algorithm gives

$$b_0 = 2.1, \quad b_1 = -0.76000, \quad b_2 = 4.33600,$$

$$b_3 = 4.97040, \quad b_4 = -0.24144,$$

so

$$P_4(1.4) = b_4 = -0.24144.$$ 

Using these results in the algorithm for $P'_4(1.4)$ with $d_0 = b_0 = 2.1$ gives

$$d_1 = 2.18000, \quad d_2 = 7.38800, \quad d_3 = 15.31360,$$

so

$$P'_4(1.4) = d_3 = 15.31360.$$ 

Because $P_4(1.3) = -1.63508$ and $P_4(1.5) = 1.44375$, a root of $P_4(x)$ must lie in the interval $1.3 < x < 1.5$, so we take as our initial approximation $x_0 = 1.4$. A first application of the Newton algorithm gives

$$x_1 = x_0 - \frac{P_4(1.4)}{P'_4(1.4)}$$

$$= 1.4 - \frac{(-0.24144)}{15.31360} = 1.41576.$$ 

Repetition of the process gives

$$x_2 = 1.41576 - \frac{P_4(1.41576)}{P'_4(1.41576)}$$

$$= 1.41576 - \frac{0.00355}{15.7784} = 1.41553$$

and

$$x_3 = 1.41553 - \frac{P_4(1.41553)}{P'_4(1.41553)}$$

$$= 1.41553 - \frac{(-0.00008)}{15.7715} = 1.41553.$$ 

Thus, Newton’s method has converged to five decimal places after only three iterations, showing that the required root is $x = 1.41553$. 
### 2.1.1.6 Connection between Trigonometric and Hyperbolic Functions

1. \( \sin x = \frac{e^{ix} - e^{-ix}}{2i} \)
2. \( \cos x = \frac{e^{ix} + e^{-ix}}{2} \)
3. \( \tan x = \frac{\sin x}{\cos x} \)
4. \( \sin(ix) = i \sinh x \)
5. \( \cos(ix) = \cosh x \)
6. \( \tan(ix) = i \tanh x \)
7. \( \sinh x = \frac{e^x - e^{-x}}{2} \)
8. \( \cosh x = \frac{e^x + e^{-x}}{2} \)
9. \( \tanh x = \frac{\sinh x}{\cosh x} \)
10. \( \sinh(ix) = i \sin x \)
11. \( \cosh(ix) = \cos x \)
12. \( \tanh(ix) = i \tan x \)

The corresponding results for \( \sec x, \csc x, \cot x \) and \( \text{sech} x, \text{csch} x, \text{coth} x \) follow from the above results and the definitions:

13. \( \sec x = \frac{1}{\cos x} \)
14. \( \csc x = \frac{1}{\sin x} \)
15. \( \cot x = \frac{\cos x}{\sin x} \)
16. \( \text{sech} x = \frac{1}{\cosh x} \)
17. \( \text{csch} x = \frac{1}{\sinh x} \)
18. \( \tanh x = \frac{\sinh x}{\cosh x} \)

### 2.2 Logarithms and Exponentials

#### 2.2.1 Basic Functional Relationships

##### 2.2.1.1 The Logarithmic Function

Let \( a > 0 \), with \( a \neq 1 \). Then, if \( y \) is the logarithm of \( x \) to the base \( a \),

1. \( y = \log_a x \) if and only if \( a^y = x \)
2. \( \log_a 1 = 0 \)
3. \( \log_a a = 1 \)

For all positive numbers \( x, y \) and all real numbers \( z \):

4. \( \log_a(xy) = \log_a x + \log_a y \)
5. \( \log_a(x/y) = \log_a x - \log_a y \)
6. \( \log_a(x^z) = z \log_a x \)
7. \( a^{\log_a x} = x \)
8. \( b^x = a^{x \log_a b} \)
9. \( y = \ln x \) if and only if \( e^y = x \) [\( e \approx 2.71828 \)]
   (natural logarithm, or logarithm to the base \( e \), or Naperian logarithm)
10. \( \ln 1 = 0 \)
11. \( \ln e = 1 \)
12. \( \ln(xy) = \ln x + \ln y \)
13. \( \ln(x/y) = \ln x - \ln y \)
14. \( \ln(x^z) = z \ln x \)
15. \( e^{\ln x} = x \)
16. \( a^x = e^{x \ln a} \)
17. \( \log_a x = \log_b x / \log_b a \) (change from base \( a \) to base \( b \))
18. \( \log_{10} x = \ln x / \log_{10} e \) or \( \ln x = 2.30258509 \log_{10} x \)

Graphs of \( e^x \) and \( \ln x \) are shown in Figure 2.5. The fact that each function is the inverse of the other can be seen by observing that each graph is the reflection of the other in the line \( y = x \).
2.2.2 The Number $e$

2.2.2.1 Definitions

1. $e = \lim_{n \to \infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^n$
2. $e = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k!} = 1 + \frac{1}{1!} + \frac{1}{2!} + \frac{1}{3!} + \cdots$

To fifteen decimal places $e = 2.718281828459045$. A direct consequence of 2.2.2.1.1 and 2.2.2.1.2 is that for real $a$:

3. $e^a = \lim_{n \to \infty} \left(1 + \frac{a}{n}\right)^n$
4. $e^a = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{a^k}{k!} = 1 + \frac{a}{1!} + \frac{a^2}{2!} + \frac{a^3}{3!} + \cdots$

2.3 The Exponential Function

2.3.1 Series Representations

2.3.1.1

1. $e^x = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^k}{k!} = 1 + \frac{x}{1!} + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \cdots$
2. $e^{-x} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \frac{x^k}{k!} = 1 - \frac{x}{1!} + \frac{x^2}{2!} - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \cdots$
3. $e^{-x^2} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \frac{x^{2k}}{k!} = 1 - \frac{x^2}{1!} + \frac{x^4}{2!} - \frac{x^6}{3!} + \cdots$

4. $\frac{x}{e^x - 1} = 1 - \frac{x}{2} + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{B_{2k} x^{2k}}{(2k)!} \quad |x < 2\pi|$ (see 1.3.1.1.1)

2.3.1.2

1. $e^{\sin x} = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{x^4}{8} - \frac{x^5}{15} - \frac{x^6}{24} + \frac{x^7}{90} + \cdots$
2. $e^{\cos x} = e \left(1 - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^4}{6} - \frac{31x^6}{720} + \frac{379x^8}{40320} - \cdots\right)$
3. $e^{\tan x} = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{2} + \frac{3x^4}{8} + \frac{37x^5}{120} + \frac{59x^6}{240} + \cdots$
4. $e^{\sec x} = e \left(1 + \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^4}{3} + \frac{151x^6}{720} + \frac{5123x^8}{40320} + \cdots\right)$
5. $e^{x\sec x} = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{2x^3}{3} + \frac{13x^4}{24} + \frac{7x^5}{15} + \cdots$
2.3.1.3

1. \( \arcsin x = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{5x^4}{24} + \frac{x^5}{6} + \cdots \)

2. \( \arccos x = e^{\pi/2} \left( 1 - x + \frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{5x^4}{24} - \frac{x^5}{6} + \cdots \right) \)

3. \( \arctan x = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{x^3}{6} - \frac{7x^4}{24} + \frac{x^5}{24} + \cdots \)

4. \( \sinh x = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{5x^4}{24} + \frac{x^5}{10} + \frac{37x^6}{720} + \cdots \)

5. \( \cosh x = e \left( 1 + \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^4}{6} + \frac{31x^6}{720} + \frac{379x^8}{40320} + \cdots \right) \)

6. \( \tanh x = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{x^3}{6} - \frac{7x^4}{24} - \frac{x^5}{40} - \cdots \)

7. \( \arcsinh x = x + \sqrt{x^2 + 1} = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{x^4}{8} + \frac{x^6}{16} - \frac{5x^8}{128} + \cdots \)

8. \( \arctanh x = \left( \frac{1 + x}{1 - x} \right)^{1/2} = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{2} + \frac{3x^4}{8} + \frac{3x^5}{8} + \cdots \)

2.4 TRIGONOMETRIC IDENTITIES

2.4.1 Trigonometric Functions

2.4.1.1 Basic Definitions

1. \( \sin x = \frac{1}{2i} \left( e^{ix} - e^{-ix} \right) \)
2. \( \cos x = \frac{1}{2} \left( e^{ix} + e^{-ix} \right) \)

3. \( \tan x = \frac{\sin x}{\cos x} \)
4. \( \csc x = \frac{1}{\sin x} \)
5. \( \sec x = \frac{1}{\cos x} \)
6. \( \cot x = \frac{1}{\tan x} \) (also \( \cotn x \))

Graphs of these functions are shown in Figure 2.6.

2.4.1.2 Even, Odd, and Periodic Functions

A function \( f(x) \) is said to be an even function if it is such that \( f(-x) = f(x) \) and to be an odd function if it is such that \( f(-x) = -f(x) \). In general, an arbitrary function \( g(x) \) defined for all \( x \) is neither even nor odd, although it can always be represented as the sum of an even function \( h(x) \) and an odd function \( k(x) \) by writing

\[
g(x) = h(x) + k(x),
\]
2.4 Trigonometric Identities

Even function \( f(-x) = f(x) \)

Odd function \( f(-x) = -f(x) \)

where

\[
h(x) = \frac{1}{2} (g(x) + g(-x)), \quad k(x) = \frac{1}{2} (g(x) - g(-x)).
\]

The product of two even or two odd functions is an even function, whereas the product of an even and an odd function is an odd function.

A function \( f(x) \) is said to be periodic with period \( X \) if

\[
f(x + X) = f(x),
\]

and \( X \) is the smallest number for which this is true.

2.4.1.3 Basic Relationships

1. \( \sin(-x) = -\sin x \) (odd function)
2. \( \cos(-x) = \cos x \) (even function)
3. \( \tan(-x) = -\tan x \) (odd function)
4. \( \csc(-x) = -\csc x \) (odd function)
5. \( \sec(-x) = \sec x \) (even function)
6. \( \cot(-x) = -\cot x \) (odd function)
Figure 2.6. Graphs of trigonometric functions.
7. \( \sin(x + 2\pi) = \sin x \)  
8. \( \cos(x + 2\pi) = \cos x \)  
9. \( \tan(x + \pi) = \tan x \)  
10. \( \sin(x + \pi) = -\sin x \)  
11. \( \cos(x + \pi) = -\cos x \)  
12. \( \cot\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right) = \tan x \)  
13. \( \csc\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right) = \sec x \)  
14. \( \sec\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right) = \csc x \)  
15. \( \sin^2 x + \cos^2 x = 1 \)  
16. \( \sec^2 x = 1 + \tan^2 x \)  
17. \( \csc^2 x = 1 + \cot^2 x \)  
18. \( \sin x = \pm \sqrt{1 - \cos^2 x} \)  
19. \( \cos x = \pm \sqrt{1 - \sin^2 x} \)  
20. \( \tan x = \pm \sqrt{\sec^2 x - 1} \)  

The choice of sign in entries 2.4.1.3.18 to 20 is determined by the quadrant in which the argument \( x \) is located. For \( x \) in the first quadrant the sine, cosine, and tangent functions are all positive, whereas for \( x \) in the second, third, and fourth quadrants only the sine, tangent, and cosine functions, respectively, are positive.

### 2.4.1.4 Sines and Cosines of Sums and Differences

1. \( \sin(x + y) = \sin x \cos y + \cos x \sin y \)  
2. \( \sin(x - y) = \sin x \cos y - \cos x \sin y \)  
3. \( \cos(x + y) = \cos x \cos y - \sin x \sin y \)  
4. \( \cos(x - y) = \cos x \cos y + \sin x \sin y \)  
5. \( \sin x \cos y = \frac{1}{2} \{\sin(x + y) + \sin(x - y)\} \)  
6. \( \cos x \cos y = \frac{1}{2} \{\cos(x + y) + \cos(x - y)\} \)  
7. \( \sin x \sin y = \frac{1}{2} \{\cos(x - y) - \cos(x + y)\} \)  
8. \( \sin^2 x - \sin^2 y = \sin(x + y) \sin(x - y) \)  
9. \( \cos^2 x - \cos^2 y = \sin(x + y) \sin(y - x) \)  
10. \( \cos^2 x - \sin^2 y = \cos(x + y) \cos(x - y) \)
Chapter 2 Functions and Identities

11. \( \sin x + \sin y = 2 \sin \frac{1}{2} (x + y) \cos \frac{1}{2} (x - y) \)
12. \( \sin x - \sin y = 2 \sin \frac{1}{2} (x - y) \cos \frac{1}{2} (x + y) \)
13. \( \cos x + \cos y = 2 \cos \frac{1}{2} (x + y) \cos \frac{1}{2} (x - y) \)
14. \( \cos x - \cos y = 2 \sin \frac{1}{2} (x + y) \sin \frac{1}{2} (y - x) \)
15. \( \sin(x + iy) = \sin x \cosh y + i \cos x \sinh y \)
16. \( \sin(x - iy) = \sin x \cosh y - i \cos x \sinh y \)
17. \( \cos(x + iy) = \cos x \cosh y - i \sin x \sinh y \)
18. \( \cos(x - iy) = \cos x \cosh y + i \sin x \sinh y \)

2.4.1.5 Tangents and Cotangents of Sums and Differences

1. \( \tan(x + y) = \frac{\tan x + \tan y}{1 - \tan x \tan y} \)
2. \( \tan(x - y) = \frac{\tan x - \tan y}{1 + \tan x \tan y} \)
3. \( \cot(x + y) = \frac{\cot x \cot y - 1}{\cot x + \cot y} \)
4. \( \cot(x - y) = \frac{\cot x \cot y + 1}{\cot y - \cot x} \)
5. \( \tan x + \tan y = \frac{\sin(x + y)}{\cos x \cos y} \)
6. \( \tan x - \tan y = \frac{\sin(x - y)}{\cos x \cos y} \)
7. \( \tan x = \cot x - 2 \cot 2x \) (from 2.4.1.5.3 with \( y = x \))
8. \( \tan(x + iy) = \frac{\sin 2x + i \sinh 2y}{\cos 2x + \cosh 2y} \)
9. \( \tan(x - iy) = \frac{\sin 2x - i \sinh 2y}{\cos 2x + \cosh 2y} \)
10. \( \cot(x + iy) = \frac{1 + i \coth y \cot x}{\cot x - i \coth y} \)
11. \( \cot(x + iy) = \frac{1 - i \coth y \cot x}{\cot x + i \coth y} \)

2.4.1.6 Sines, Cosines, and Tangents of Multiple Angles

1. \( \sin 2x = 2 \sin x \cos x \)
2. \( \sin 3x = 3 \sin x - 4 \sin^3 x \)
3. \( \sin 4x = \cos x (4 \sin x - 8 \sin^3 x) \)
4. \( \sin nx = n \cos^{n-1} x \sin x - \left( \frac{n}{3} \right) \cos^{n-3} x \sin^3 x + \left( \frac{n}{5} \right) \cos^{n-5} x \sin^5 x + \cdots \)
   \[= \sin x \left[ 2^{n-1} \cos^{n-1} x - \left( \frac{n-2}{1} \right) 2^{n-3} \cos^{n-3} x + \left( \frac{n-3}{2} \right) 2^{n-5} \cos^{n-5} x \right. \]
   \[ - \left( \frac{n-4}{3} \right) 2^{n-7} \cos^{n-7} x \cdots \] \( [n = 2, 3, \ldots, \text{and } \binom{m}{k} = 0, k > m] \)
5. \( \cos 2x = 2 \cos^2 x - 1 \)
6. \( \cos 3x = 4 \cos^3 x - 3 \cos x \)
7. \( \cos 4x = 8 \cos^4 x - 8 \cos^2 x + 1 \)
8. \( \cos nx = \cos^n x - \left( \frac{n}{2} \right) \cos^{n-2} x \sin^2 x + \left( \frac{n}{4} \right) \cos^{n-4} x \sin^4 x - \cdots \)
   \[= 2^{n-1} \cos^n x - \frac{n}{1} 2^{n-3} \cos^{n-2} x + \frac{n}{2} \left( \frac{n-3}{1} \right) 2^{n-5} \cos^{n-4} x \]
   \[ - \frac{n}{3} \left( \frac{n-4}{2} \right) 2^{n-7} \cos^{n-6} x \cdots \] \( [n = 2, 3, \ldots, \text{and } \binom{m}{k} = 0, k > m] \)
9. \( \tan 2x = \frac{2 \tan x}{1 - \tan^2 x} \)
10. \( \tan 3x = \frac{3 \tan x - \tan^3 x}{1 - 3 \tan^2 x} \)
11. \( \tan 4x = \frac{4 \tan x - 4 \tan^3 x}{1 - 6 \tan^2 x + \tan^4 x} \)
12. \( \tan 5x = \frac{5 \tan x - 10 \tan^3 x + \tan^5 x}{1 - 10 \tan^2 x + 5 \tan^4 x} \)
13. \( \sum_{k=1}^{n} \sin kx = \frac{1}{2} \cot x - \frac{\cos \left[ \left( \frac{n+1}{2} \right) x \right]}{2 \sin \left( \frac{1}{2} x \right)} \)
14. \( \sum_{k=1}^{n} \cos kx = \frac{\sin \left[ \left( \frac{n+1}{2} \right) x \right]}{2 \sin \left( \frac{1}{2} x \right)} - \frac{1}{2} \)
15. \( \sum_{k=1}^{n} \sin kx = \frac{\sin \left[ \frac{1}{2} (n + 1) x \right] \sin \left( \frac{1}{2} nx \right)}{\sin \left( \frac{1}{2} x \right)} \)
16. \( \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \sin (x + ky) = \sin x + \sin (x + y) + \sin (x + 2y) + \cdots + \sin [x + (n-1)y] \)
   \[= \frac{\sin \left[ x + \frac{1}{2} (n-1)y \right \] \sin \left( \frac{1}{2} ny \right)}{\sin \left( \frac{1}{2} y \right)} \)
17. \( \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \cos (x + ky) = \cos x + \cos (x + y) + \cos (x + 2y) + \cdots + \cos [x + (n-1)y] \)
   \[= \frac{\cos \left[ x + \frac{1}{2} (n-1)y \right \] \sin \left( \frac{1}{2} ny \right)}{\sin \left( \frac{1}{2} y \right)} \)
Results 13 and 14 are called the **Lagrange trigonometric identities**. Result 15 follows from result 13 after using 2.4.1.7.

### 2.4.1.7 Powers of Sines, Cosines, and Tangents in Terms of Multiple Angles

1. \( \sin^2 x = \frac{1}{2} (1 - \cos 2x) \)
2. \( \sin^3 x = \frac{1}{3} (3 \sin x - \sin 3x) \)
3. \( \sin^4 x = \frac{1}{8} (3 - 4 \cos 2x + \cos 4x) \)
4. \( \sin^{2n-1} x = \frac{1}{2^{2n-2}} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} (-1)^{n+k-1} \binom{2n-1}{k} \sin (2n - 2k - 1) x \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots] \)
5. \( \sin^{2n} x = \frac{1}{2^{2n}} \left\{ \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} (-1)^{n-k} 2 \binom{2n}{k} \cos (n-k) x + \binom{2n}{n} \right\} \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots] \)
6. \( \cos^2 x = \frac{1}{2} (1 + \cos 2x) \)
7. \( \cos^3 x = \frac{1}{4} (3 \cos x + \cos 3x) \)
8. \( \cos^4 x = \frac{1}{8} (3 + 4 \cos 2x + \cos 4x) \)
9. \( \cos^{2n-1} x = \frac{1}{2^{2n-2}} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \binom{2n-1}{k} \cos (2n - 2k - 1) x \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots] \)
10. \( \cos^{2n} x = \frac{1}{2^{2n}} \left\{ \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} 2 \binom{2n}{k} \cos (n-k) x + \binom{2n}{n} \right\} \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots] \)
11. \( \tan^2 x = \frac{1 - \cos 2x}{1 + \cos 2x} \)
12. \( \tan^3 x = \frac{3 \sin x - \sin 3x}{3 \cos x + \cos 3x} \)
13. \( \tan^4 x = \frac{3 - 4 \cos 2x + \cos 4x}{3 + 4 \cos 2x + \cos 4x} \)
14. For \( \tan^n x \) use \( \tan^n x = \sin^n x/\cos^n x \) with 2.4.1.7.4 and 2.4.1.7.9 or 2.4.1.7.5 and 2.4.1.7.10.

### 2.4.1.8 Half Angle Representations of Trigonometric Functions

1. \( \sin \frac{x}{2} = \pm \left( \frac{1 - \cos x}{2} \right)^{1/2} \quad [\text{+ sign if } 0 < x < 2\pi \text{ and } -\text{sign if } 2\pi < x < 4\pi] \)
2. \( \cos \frac{x}{2} = \pm \left( \frac{1 + \cos x}{2} \right)^{1/2} \quad [\text{+ sign if } -\pi < x < \pi \text{ and } -\text{sign if } \pi < x < 3\pi] \)
2.4 Trigonometric Identities

3. \( \tan \frac{x}{2} = \frac{\sin x}{1 + \cos x} = \frac{1 - \cos x}{\sin x} \)

4. \( \cot \frac{x}{2} = \frac{1 + \cos x}{\sin x} = \frac{\sin x}{1 - \cos x} \)

5. \( \sin x = 2 \sin \frac{x}{2} \cos \frac{x}{2} \)

6. \( \cos x = \cos^2 \frac{x}{2} - \sin^2 \frac{x}{2} \)

7. \( \tan x = \frac{2 \tan \frac{x}{2}}{1 - \tan^2 \frac{x}{2}} = \frac{2 \cot \frac{x}{2}}{\csc^2 \frac{x}{2} - 2} \)

2.4.1.9 Sum of Multiples of \( \sin x \) and \( \cos x \)

1. \( A \sin x + B \cos x = R \sin (x + \theta) \), where \( R = (A^2 + B^2)^{1/2} \) with \( \theta = \arctan B/A \)
   when \( A > 0 \) and \( \theta = \pi + \arctan B/A \) when \( A < 0 \).

2. \( A \cos x + B \sin x = R \cos (x - \theta) \), where \( R = (A^2 + B^2)^{1/2} \) with \( \theta = \arctan B/A \)
   when \( A > 0 \) and \( \theta = \pi + \arctan B/A \) when \( A < 0 \).

Here \( R \) is the amplitude of the resulting sinusoid and \( \theta \) is the phase angle.

2.4.1.10 Quotients of \( \sin (nx) \) and \( \cos (nx) \) Divided by \( \sin^n x \) and \( \cos^n x \)

1. \( \frac{\cos 2x}{\cos^2 x} = 1 - \tan^2 x \)

2. \( \frac{\cos 3x}{\cos^3 x} = 1 - 3 \tan^2 x \)

3. \( \frac{\cos 4x}{\cos^4 x} = 1 - 6 \tan^2 x + \tan^4 x \)

4. \( \frac{\cos 5x}{\cos^5 x} = 1 - 10 \tan^2 x + 5 \tan^4 x \)

5. \( \frac{\cos 6x}{\cos^6 x} = 1 - 15 \tan^2 x + 15 \tan^4 x - \tan^6 x \)

6. \( \frac{\sin 2x}{\cos^2 x} = 2 \tan x \)

7. \( \frac{\sin 3x}{\cos^3 x} = 3 \tan x - \tan^3 x \)

8. \( \frac{\sin 4x}{\cos^4 x} = 4 \tan x - 4 \tan^3 x \)

9. \( \frac{\sin 5x}{\cos^5 x} = 5 \tan x - 10 \tan^3 x + \tan^5 x \)

10. \( \frac{\sin 6x}{\cos^6 x} = 6 \tan x - 20 \tan^3 x + 6 \tan^5 x \)

11. \( \frac{\cos 2x}{\sin^2 x} = \cot^2 x - 1 \)

12. \( \frac{\cos 3x}{\sin^3 x} = \cot^3 x - 3 \cot x \)

13. \( \frac{\cos 4x}{\sin^4 x} = \cot^4 x - 6 \cot^2 x + 1 \)

14. \( \frac{\cos 5x}{\sin^5 x} = \cot^5 x - 10 \cot^3 x + 5 \cot x \)

15. \( \frac{\cos 6x}{\sin^6 x} = \cot^6 x - 15 \cot^4 x + 15 \cot^2 x - 1 \)

16. \( \frac{\sin 2x}{\sin^2 x} = 2 \cot x \)
17. \(\frac{\sin 3x}{\sin^3 x} = 3 \cot^2 x - 1\)  
18. \(\frac{\sin 4x}{\sin^4 x} = 4 \cot^3 x - 4 \cot x\)  
19. \(\frac{\sin 5x}{\sin^5 x} = 5 \cot^4 x - 10 \cot^2 x + 1\)  
20. \(\frac{\sin 6x}{\sin^6 x} = 6 \cot^5 x - 20 \cot^3 x + 6 \cot x\)

2.5 HYPERBOLIC IDENTITIES

2.5.1 Hyperbolic Functions

2.5.1.1 Basic Definitions

1. \(\sinh x = \frac{1}{2} (e^x - e^{-x})\)  
2. \(\cosh x = \frac{1}{2} (e^x + e^{-x})\)

3. \(\tanh x = \frac{\sinh x}{\cosh x}\)  
4. \(\operatorname{csch} x = \frac{1}{\sinh x}\)

5. \(\operatorname{sech} x = \frac{1}{\cosh x}\)  
6. \(\coth x = \frac{1}{\tanh x}\)

Other notations are also in use for these same hyperbolic functions. Equivalent notations are \(\sinh, \sh; \cosh, \ch; \tanh, \th; \csch, \csh; \sech, \sch; \coth, \ctnh, \cth\). Graphs of these functions are shown in Figure 2.7.

2.5.1.2 Basic Relationships

1. \(\sinh(-x) = -\sinh x\) \hspace{1cm} \text{(odd function)}  
2. \(\cosh(-x) = \cosh x\) \hspace{1cm} \text{(even function)}  
3. \(\tanh(-x) = -\tanh x\) \hspace{1cm} \text{(odd function)}  
4. \(\operatorname{csch}(-x) = -\operatorname{csch} x\) \hspace{1cm} \text{(odd function)}  
5. \(\operatorname{sech}(-x) = \operatorname{sech} x\) \hspace{1cm} \text{(even function)}  
6. \(\coth(-x) = -\coth x\) \hspace{1cm} \text{(odd function)}  
7. \(\cosh^2 x - \sinh^2 x = 1\)

8. \(\operatorname{sech}^2 x = 1 - \tanh^2 x\)

9. \(\operatorname{csch}^2 x = \coth^2 x - 1\)

10. \(\sinh x = \begin{cases} \sqrt{\cosh^2 x - 1}, & [x > 0] \\ -\sqrt{\cosh^2 x - 1}, & [x < 0] \end{cases}\)

11. \(\cosh x = \sqrt{1 + \sinh^2 x}\)

12. \(\tanh x = \begin{cases} \sqrt{1 - \operatorname{sech}^2 x}, & [x > 0] \\ -\sqrt{1 - \operatorname{sech}^2 x}, & [x < 0] \end{cases}\)
2.5 Hyperbolic Identities

Figure 2.7. Graphs of hyperbolic functions.

- $y = \tanh x$
  - Domain: $(-\infty, \infty)$
  - Range: $(-1, 1)$

- $y = \coth x$
  - Domain: $(-\infty, 0)$ and $(0, \infty)$
  - Range: $(-\infty, -1) \cup (1, \infty)$

- $y = \sech x$
  - Domain: $(-\infty, \infty)$
  - Range: $(0, 1)$

- $y = \sinh x$
  - Domain: $(-\infty, \infty)$
  - Range: $(-\infty, \infty)$

- $y = \cosh x$
  - Domain: $(-\infty, \infty)$
  - Range: $[1, \infty)$
2.5.1.3 Hyperbolic Sines and Cosines of Sums and Differences

1. \( \sinh(x + y) = \sinh x \cosh y + \cosh x \sinh y \)
2. \( \sinh(x - y) = \sinh x \cosh y - \cosh x \sinh y \)
3. \( \cosh(x + y) = \cosh x \cosh y + \sinh x \sinh y \)
4. \( \cosh(x - y) = \cosh x \cosh y - \sinh x \sinh y \)
5. \( \sinh x \cosh y = \frac{1}{2} \{ \sinh (x + y) + \sinh (x - y) \} \)
6. \( \cosh x \cosh y = \frac{1}{2} \{ \cosh (x + y) + \cosh(x - y) \} \)
7. \( \sinh x \sinh y = \frac{1}{2} \{ \cosh (x + y) - \cosh(x - y) \} \)
8. \( \sinh^2 x - \sinh^2 y = \sinh(x + y) \sinh(x - y) \)
9. \( \sinh^2 x + \cosh^2 y = \cosh(x + y) \cosh(x - y) \)
10. \( \sinh x + \sinh y = 2 \sinh \frac{1}{2} (x + y) \cosh \frac{1}{2} (x - y) \)
11. \( \sinh x - \sinh y = 2 \sinh \frac{1}{2} (x - y) \cosh \frac{1}{2} (x + y) \)
12. \( \cosh x + \cosh y = 2 \cosh \frac{1}{2} (x + y) \cosh \frac{1}{2} (x - y) \)
13. \( \cosh x - \cosh y = 2 \sinh \frac{1}{2} (x + y) \sinh \frac{1}{2} (x - y) \)
14. \( \cosh x - \sinh x = \frac{1}{\sinh x + \cosh x} \)
15. \( (\sinh x + \cosh x)^n = \sinh nx + \cosh nx \)
16. \( (\sinh x - \cosh x)^n = \sinh nx - \cosh nx \)
17. \( \sinh (x + iy) = \sinh x \cos y + i \cosh x \sin y \)
18. \( \sinh (x - iy) = \sinh x \cos y - i \cosh x \sin y \)
19. \( \cosh (x + iy) = \cosh x \cos y + i \sinh x \sin y \)
20. \( \cosh (x - iy) = \cosh x \cos y - i \sinh x \sin y \)

2.5.1.4 Hyperbolic Tangents and Cotangents of Sums and Differences

1. \( \tanh(x + y) = \frac{\tanh x + \tanh y}{1 + \tanh x \tanh y} \)
2. \( \tanh(x - y) = \frac{\tanh x - \tanh y}{1 - \tanh x \tanh y} \)
3. \( \coth(x + y) = \frac{\coth x \coth y + 1}{\coth y + \coth x} \)
4. $\coth(x - y) = \frac{\coth x \coth y - 1}{\coth y - \coth x}$

5. $\tanh x + \tanh y = \frac{\sinh (x + y)}{\cosh x \cosh y}$

6. $\tanh x - \tanh y = \frac{\sinh (x - y)}{\cosh x \cosh y}$

7. $\tanh x = 2 \coth 2x - \coth x$  \hspace{1cm} (from 2.5.1.4.3 with $y = x$)

8. $\tanh(x + iy) = \frac{\sinh 2x + i \sin 2y}{\cosh 2 + \cos 2y}$

9. $\tanh(x - iy) = \frac{\sinh 2x - \sin 2y}{\cosh 2x + \cos 2y}$

10. $\coth(x + iy) = \frac{\cosh x \cos y + i \sinh x \sin y}{\sinh x \cos y + i \cosh x \sin y}$

11. $\coth(x + iy) = \frac{\cosh x \cos y - i \sinh x \sin y}{\sinh x \cos y - i \cosh x \sin y}$

### 2.5.1.5 Hyperbolic Sines, Cosines, and Tangents of Multiple Arguments

1. $\sinh 2x = 2 \sinh x \cosh x$

2. $\sinh 3x = 3 \sinh x + 4 \sinh^3 x$

3. $\sinh 4x = \cosh x \left(4 \sinh x + 8 \sinh^3 x\right)$

4. $\sinh nx = \sum_{k=1}^{\left\lfloor (n+1)/2 \right\rfloor} \left(\begin{array}{c} n \\ 2k-1 \end{array}\right) \sinh^{2k-1} x \cosh^{n-2k+1} x$

   \[n = 2, 3, \ldots, \text{with } \left\lfloor (n+1)/2 \right\rfloor \text{ denoting the integral part of } (n+1)/2\]

5. $\cosh 2x = 2 \cosh^2 x - 1$

6. $\cosh 3x = 4 \cosh^3 x - 3 \cosh x$

7. $\cosh 4x = 8 \cosh^4 x - 8 \cosh^2 x + 1$

8. $\cosh nx = 2^{n-1} \cosh^n x + \sum_{k=1}^{\left\lfloor n/2 \right\rfloor} \left(-1\right)^k \frac{1}{k} \left(\begin{array}{c} n-k-1 \\ k-1 \end{array}\right) 2^{n-2k-1} \cosh^{n-2k} x$

   \[n = 2, 3, \ldots, \text{with } \left\lfloor n/2 \right\rfloor \text{ denoting the integral part of } n/2\]
9. \( \tanh 2x = \frac{2 \tanh x}{1 + \tanh^2 x} \)

10. \( \tanh 3x = \frac{\tanh^3 x + 3 \tanh x}{1 + 3 \tanh^2 x} \)

11. \( \tanh 4x = \frac{4 \tanh^3 x + 4 \tanh x}{1 + 6 \tanh^2 x + \tanh^4 x} \)

**2.5.1.6 Powers of Hyperbolic Sines, Cosines, and Tangents in Terms of Multiple Arguments**

1. \( \sinh^2 x = \frac{1}{2} (\cosh 2x - 1) \)

2. \( \sinh^3 x = \frac{1}{4} (\sinh 3x - 3 \sinh x) \)

3. \( \sinh^4 x = \frac{1}{8} (3 - 4 \cosh 2x + \cosh 4x) \)

4. \( \sinh^{2n-1} x = \frac{(-1)^{n-1}}{2^{n-2}} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} (-1)^{n+k-1} \binom{2n-1}{k} \sinh (2n - 2k - 1) x \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots] \)

5. \( \sinh^{2n} x = \frac{(-1)^n}{2^n} \left\{ \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} (-1)^{n-k} 2 \binom{2n}{k} \cosh 2(n - k) x + \binom{2n}{n} \right\} \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots] \)

6. \( \cosh^2 x = \frac{1}{2} (1 + \cosh 2x) \)

7. \( \cosh^3 x = \frac{1}{4} (3 \cosh x + \cosh 3x) \)

8. \( \cosh^4 x = \frac{1}{8} (3 + 4 \cosh 2x + \cosh 4x) \)

9. \( \cosh^{2n-1} x = \frac{1}{2^{n-2}} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \binom{2n-1}{k} \cosh (2n - 2k - 1) x \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots] \)

10. \( \cosh^{2n} x = \frac{1}{2^n} \left\{ \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} 2 \binom{2n}{k} \cosh 2(n - k) x + \binom{2n}{n} \right\} \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots] \)

11. \( \tanh^2 x = \frac{\cosh 2x - 1}{1 + \cosh 2x} \)

12. \( \tanh^3 x = \frac{\sinh 3x - 3 \sinh x}{3 \cosh x + \cosh 3x} \)

13. \( \tanh^4 x = \frac{3 - 4 \cosh 2x + \cosh 4x}{3 + 4 \cosh 2x + \cosh 4x} \)

14. For \( \tanh^n x \) use \( \tanh^n x = \sinh^n x / \cosh^n x \) with 2.5.1.6.4 and 2.5.1.6.9, or 2.5.1.6.5 and 2.5.1.6.10.
2.6 The Logarithm

2.6.1 Series Representations

2.6.1.1

1. \( \ln(1 + x) = x - \frac{1}{2} x^2 + \frac{1}{3} x^3 - \frac{1}{4} x^4 + \cdots = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} \frac{x^k}{k} \quad [-1 < x \leq 1] \)

2. \( \ln(1 - x) = - \left[ x + \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{x^4}{4} + \cdots \right] = - \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{x^k}{k} \quad [-1 \leq x < 1] \)

3. \( \ln 2 = 1 - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{5} - \cdots \)

2.6.1.2

1. \( \ln x = (x - 1) - \frac{1}{2} (x - 1)^2 + \frac{1}{3} (x - 1)^3 - \cdots = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} \frac{(x - 1)^k}{k} \quad [0 < x \leq 2] \)

2. \( \ln x = 2 \left[ \frac{x - 1}{x + 1} + \frac{1}{3} \left( \frac{x - 1}{x + 1} \right)^3 + \frac{1}{5} \left( \frac{x - 1}{x + 1} \right)^5 + \cdots \right] \\
= 2 \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2k-1} \left( \frac{x - 1}{x + 1} \right)^{2k-1} \quad [0 < x] \)
3. \( \ln x = \frac{x - 1}{x} + \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{x - 1}{x} \right)^2 + \frac{1}{3} \left( \frac{x - 1}{x} \right)^3 + \cdots = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k} \left( \frac{x - 1}{x} \right)^k \quad \left[ x \geq \frac{1}{2} \right] \)

2.6.1.3

1. \( \ln \left( \frac{1 + x}{1 - x} \right) = 2 \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2k-1} x^{2k-1} = 2 \arctanh x \quad \left[ x^2 < 1 \right] \)
2. \( \ln \left( \frac{x + 1}{x - 1} \right) = 2 \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2k - 1)x^{2k-1}} = 2 \arccoth x \quad \left[ x^2 > 1 \right] \)
3. \( \ln \left( \frac{x}{x - 1} \right) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k} x^k \quad \left[ x \leq -1 \text{ or } x > 1 \right] \)
4. \( \ln \left( \frac{1}{1 - x} \right) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{x^k}{k} \quad \left[ -1 \leq x < 1 \right] \)
5. \( \frac{1 - x}{x} \ln \left( \frac{1}{1 - x} \right) = 1 - \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{x^k}{k(k+1)} \quad \left[ -1 \leq x < 1 \right] \)
6. \( \frac{1 - x}{x} \ln \left( \frac{1}{1 - x} \right) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \left\{ x^k \sum_{n=1}^{k} \frac{1}{n} \right\} \quad \left[ x^2 < 1 \right] \)

2.6.1.4

1. \( \ln(1 + \sqrt{1 + x^2}) = \ln 2 + \frac{1 \cdot 1}{2 \cdot 2} x^2 + \frac{1 \cdot 1 \cdot 3}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 4} x^4 + \frac{1 \cdot 1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \cdot 6} x^6 + \cdots \)
   \[ = \ln 2 - \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^k \frac{(2k - 1)!}{2^{2k} (k!)^2} x^{2k} \quad \left[ x^2 \leq 1 \right] \)
2. \( \ln(1 + \sqrt{1 + x^2}) = \ln x + \frac{1}{x} - \frac{1}{2} \cdot 3x^3 + \frac{1 \cdot 3}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 5} x^5 - \cdots \)
   \[ = \ln x + \frac{1}{x} + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^k \frac{(2k - 1)!}{2^{2k-1} \cdot k! (k - 1)! (2k + 1)} x^{2k+1} \quad \left[ x^2 \geq 1 \right] \)

2.6.1.5

1. \( \ln \sin x = \ln x - \frac{x^2}{6} - \frac{x^4}{180} - \frac{x^6}{2835} - \cdots \)
   \[ = \ln x + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^k \frac{2^{2k-1} \cdot B_{2k} x^{2k}}{k (2k)!} \quad \left[ 0 < x < \pi \right] \)
2. \( \ln \cos x = -\frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^4}{12} \cdot 64 \cdot 26520 - \cdots \)
2.7 Inverse Trigonometric and Hyperbolic Functions

2.7.1 Domains of Definition and Principal Values

Other notations are also in use for the same inverse trigonometric and hyperbolic functions. Equivalent notations are arcsin, sin\(^{-1}\); arccos, cos\(^{-1}\); arctan, tan\(^{-1}\), arctg; arccot, cot\(^{-1}\); arcsinh, sinh\(^{-1}\), arsh; arccosh, cosh\(^{-1}\), arch; arctanh, tanh\(^{-1}\), arth; arccoth, coth\(^{-1}\), arcth.

Graphs of these functions are shown in Figures 2.8 and 2.9.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Inverse function</th>
<th>Principal value</th>
<th>Domain</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(x = \sin y)</td>
<td>(y = \arcsin x)</td>
<td>(-\frac{\pi}{2} \leq \arcsin x \leq \frac{\pi}{2})</td>
<td>(-1 \leq x \leq 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(x = \cos y)</td>
<td>(y = \arccos x)</td>
<td>(0 \leq \arccos x \leq \pi)</td>
<td>(-1 \leq x \leq 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(x = \tan y)</td>
<td>(y = \arctan x)</td>
<td>(-\frac{\pi}{2} &lt; \arctan x &lt; \frac{\pi}{2})</td>
<td>(-\infty &lt; x &lt; \infty)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(x = \cot y)</td>
<td>(y = \arccot x)</td>
<td>(0 &lt; \arccot x &lt; \pi)</td>
<td>(-\infty &lt; x &lt; \infty)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(x = \sinh y)</td>
<td>(y = \operatorname{arsinh} x)</td>
<td>(-\infty &lt; \operatorname{arsinh} x &lt; \infty)</td>
<td>(-\infty &lt; x &lt; \infty)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(x = \cosh y)</td>
<td>(y = \operatorname{arcosh} x)</td>
<td>(0 \leq \operatorname{arcosh} x &lt; \infty)</td>
<td>(1 \leq x &lt; \infty)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(x = \tanh y)</td>
<td>(y = \operatorname{artanh} x)</td>
<td>(-\infty &lt; \operatorname{artanh} x &lt; \infty)</td>
<td>(-1 &lt; x &lt; 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(x = \coth y)</td>
<td>(y = \operatorname{arcoth} x)</td>
<td>(-\infty &lt; \operatorname{arcoth} x \leq 0)</td>
<td>(-\infty &lt; x &lt; -1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(0 \leq \operatorname{arcoth} x &lt; \infty)</td>
<td>(1 &lt; x &lt; \infty)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.7.2 Functional Relations

2.7.2.1 Relationship Between Trigonometric and Inverse Trigonometric Functions

1. \(\arcsin(\sin x) = x - 2n\pi \quad \left[\frac{2n\pi}{2} - x \leq 2n\pi + \frac{\pi}{2}\right]\)
   \[= -x + (2n + 1)\pi \quad \left[(2n + 1)\pi - \frac{x}{2} \leq (2n + 1)\pi + \frac{\pi}{2}\right]\]

2. \(\arccos(\cos x) = x - 2n\pi \quad [2n\pi \leq x \leq (2n + 1)\pi]\)
   \[= -x + 2(n + 1)\pi \quad [(2n + 1)\pi \leq x \leq 2(n + 1)\pi]\]
Chapter 2 Functions and Identities

Domain: \((-\infty, -1] \text{ and } [1, \infty)\)
Range: \([0, \pi/2) \text{ and } (\pi/2, \pi]\)

\[ y = \arcsin x \]
Domain: \([-1, 1]\)
Range: \([-\pi/2, \pi/2]\)

\[ y = \arccos x \]
Domain: \([-1, 1]\)
Range: \((0, \pi)\)

\[ y = \arctan x \]
Domain: \((-\infty, \infty)\)
Range: \((-\pi/2, \pi/2)\)

\[ y = \arccsc x \]
Domain: \((-\infty, -1] \text{ and } [1, \infty)\)
Range: \([2\pi/2, 0) \text{ and } (0, \pi/2]\)

\[ y = \text{arcsec} x \]
Domain: \((-\infty, -1] \text{ and } [1, \infty)\)
Range: \([0/\pi/2) \text{ and } (\pi/2, \pi]\)

\[ y = \arccot x \]
Domain: \((-\infty, \infty)\)
Range: \((0, \pi)\)

**Figure 2.8.** Graphs of inverse trigonometric functions.
2.7 Inverse Trigonometric and Hyperbolic Functions

Figure 2.9. Graphs of inverse hyperbolic functions.
3. \( \arctan(\tan x) = x - n\pi \quad \left[ n\pi - \frac{1}{2}\pi < x < n\pi + \frac{1}{2}\pi \right] \)

4. \( \arccot(\cot x) = x - n\pi \quad \left[ n\pi < x < (n + 1)\pi \right] \)

### 2.7.2.2 Relationships Between Inverse Trigonometric Functions, Inverse Hyperbolic Functions, and the Logarithm

1. \( \arcsin z = \frac{1}{i} \ln(iz + \sqrt{1 - z^2}) = \frac{1}{i} \arcsinh(iz) \)

2. \( \arccos z = \frac{1}{i} \ln(z + \sqrt{z^2 - 1}) = \frac{1}{i} \arccosh z \)

3. \( \arctan z = \frac{1}{2i} \ln \left( \frac{1 + iz}{1 - iz} \right) = \frac{1}{i} \text{arctanh}(iz) \)

4. \( \arccot z = \frac{1}{2i} \ln \left( \frac{iz - 1}{iz + 1} \right) = i \arccoth(iz) \)

5. \( \arcsinh z = \ln(z + \sqrt{z^2 + 1}) = \frac{1}{i} \arcsin(iz) \)

6. \( \arccosh z = \ln(z + \sqrt{z^2 - 1}) = i \arccos z \)

7. \( \text{arctanh} z = \frac{1}{2} \ln \left( \frac{1 + z}{1 - z} \right) = \frac{1}{i} \arctan(iz) \)

8. \( \arccoth z = \frac{1}{2} \ln \left( \frac{z + 1}{z - 1} \right) = \frac{1}{i} \arccot(-iz) \)

### 2.7.2.3 Relationships Between Different Inverse Trigonometric Functions

1. \( \arcsin x + \arccos x = \frac{\pi}{2} \)

2. \( \arctg x + \arccot x = \frac{\pi}{2} \)

### 2.7.2.4

1. \( \arcsin x = \arccos \sqrt{1 - x^2} \quad [0 \leq x \leq 1] \)
   \[
   = -\arccos \sqrt{1 - x^2} \quad [-1 \leq x \leq 0]
   \]

2. \( \arcsin x = \arctan \frac{x}{\sqrt{1 - x^2}} \quad [x^2 < 1] \)
3. \[ \arcsin x = \arccot \frac{\sqrt{1 - x^2}}{x} \quad [0 < x \leq 1] \]
\[ = \arccot \frac{\sqrt{1 - x^2}}{x} - \pi \quad [-1 \leq x < 0] \]

4. \[ \arccos x = \arcsin \sqrt{1 - x^2} \quad [0 \leq x \leq 1] \]
\[ = \pi - \arcsin \sqrt{1 - x^2} \quad [-1 \leq x \leq 0] \]

5. \[ \arccos x = \arctan \frac{\sqrt{1 - x^2}}{x} \quad [0 < x \leq 1] \]
\[ = \pi + \arccot \frac{\sqrt{1 - x^2}}{x} \quad [-1 \leq x < 0] \]

6. \[ \arccos x = \arccot \frac{x}{\sqrt{1 - x^2}} \quad [-1 \leq x < 1] \]

7. \[ \arctan x = \arcsin \frac{x}{\sqrt{1 + x^2}} \quad [-\infty < x < \infty] \]

8. \[ \arctan x = \arccos \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + x^2}} \quad [x \geq 0] \]
\[ = - \arccos \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + x^2}} \quad [x \leq 0] \]

9. \[ \arctan x = \arccot \frac{1}{x} \quad [x > 0] \]
\[ = - \arccot \frac{1}{x} - \pi \quad [x < 0] \]

10. \[ \arctan x = \arcsin \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + x^2}} \quad [x > 0] \]
\[ = \pi - \arcsin \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + x^2}} \quad [x < 0] \]

11. \[ \arccot x = \arccos \frac{x}{\sqrt{1 + x^2}} \]

12. \[ \arccot x = \arctan \frac{1}{x} \quad [x > 0] \]
\[ = \pi + \arctan \frac{1}{x} \quad [x < 0] \]

### 2.7.2.5 Relationships Between the Inverse Hyperbolic Functions

1. \[ \text{arcsinh } x = \text{arccosh } \sqrt{x^2 + 1} = \text{arctanh } \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 + 1}} \]
2. \( \text{arccosh } x = \text{arcsinh } \sqrt{x^2 - 1} = \text{arctanh } \frac{\sqrt{x^2 - 1}}{x} \)

3. \( \text{arctanh } x = \text{arcsinh } \frac{x}{\sqrt{1 - x^2}} = \text{arccosh } \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - x^2}} = \text{arccoth } \frac{1}{x} \)

4. \( \text{arcsinh } x \pm \text{arcsinh } y = \text{arcsinh } \left( x \sqrt{1 + y^2} \pm y \sqrt{1 + x^2} \right) \)

5. \( \text{arccosh } x \pm \text{arccosh } y = \text{arccosh } \left( xy \pm \sqrt{(x^2 - 1)(y^2 - 1)} \right) \)

6. \( \text{arctanh } x \pm \text{arctanh } y = \text{arctanh } \frac{x \pm y}{1 \pm xy} \)

2.8 SERIES REPRESENTATIONS OF TRIGONOMETRIC AND HYPERBOLIC FUNCTIONS

2.8.1 Trigonometric Functions

2.8.1.1

1. \( \sin x = x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \frac{x^7}{7!} + \cdots = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \frac{x^{2k+1}}{(2k+1)!} \)

2. \( \cos x = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \frac{x^{2k}}{(2k)!} \)

3. \( \tan x = x + \frac{2}{15} x^5 + \frac{17}{315} x^7 + \cdots = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} \frac{2^{2k} (2^{2k} - 1) B_{2k}}{(2k)!} x^{2k-1} \quad \left[ |x| < \frac{\pi}{2}; \text{ see 1.3.1.4.3 } \right] \)

4. \( \csc x = \frac{1}{x} + \frac{x}{6} + \frac{7}{360} x^3 + \frac{31}{51120} x^5 + \cdots = \frac{1}{x} + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{2 (2^{2k-1} - 1) |B_{2k}|}{(2k)!} x^{2k-1} \quad \left[ |x| < \pi \right] \)

5. \( \sec x = 1 + \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{5}{24} x^4 + \frac{61}{720} x^6 + \cdots = 1 + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{E_{2k}}{(2k)!} x^{2k} \quad \left[ |x| < \frac{\pi}{2}; \text{ see 1.3.1.1.5 } \right] \)

6. \( \cot x = \frac{1}{x} - \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{2x^5}{45} - \cdots = \frac{1}{x} - \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{2^{2k} |B_{2k}|}{(2k)!} x^{2k-1} \quad \left[ |x| < \pi \right] \)
7. $\sin^2 x = x^2 - \frac{x^4}{3} + \frac{2x^6}{45} - \frac{x^8}{315} + \cdots = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} \frac{2^{2k-1}x^{2k}}{(2k)!}$

8. $\cos^2 x = 1 - x^2 + \frac{x^4}{3} - \frac{2x^6}{45} + \frac{x^8}{315} - \cdots = 1 - \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} \frac{2^{2k-1}x^{2k}}{(2k)!}$

9. $\tan^2 x = x^2 + \frac{2x^4}{3} + \frac{17}{45}x^6 + \frac{62}{315}x^8 + \cdots \quad \left( |x| < \frac{\pi}{2} \right)$

2.8.2 Hyperbolic Functions

2.8.2.1

1. $\sinh x = x + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} + \frac{x^7}{7!} + \cdots = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^{2k+1}}{(2k+1)!}$

2. $\cosh x = 1 + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} + \frac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^{2k}}{(2k)!}$

3. $\tanh x = x - \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{2}{15}x^5 - \frac{17}{315}x^7 + \cdots = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{2^{2k-1} (2^{2k-1} - 1)}{2^{2k} (2k)!} B_{2k} x^{2k-1} \quad \left( |x| < \frac{\pi}{2} \right)$

4. $\csc h x = \frac{1}{x} - \frac{x}{6} + \frac{7}{360} x^3 - \frac{31}{15120} x^5 + \cdots = \frac{1}{x} - \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{2 (2^{2k-1} - 1) B_{2k}}{(2k)!} x^{2k-1} \quad \left( |x| < \pi \right)$

5. $\text{sech} x = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{5}{4!} x^4 - \frac{61}{6!} x^6 + \cdots = 1 + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{E_{2k}}{(2k)!} x^{2k} \quad \left( |x| < \frac{\pi}{2} \right)$

6. $\coth x = \frac{1}{x} + \frac{x}{3} - \frac{x^3}{45} + \frac{2}{945} x^5 - \cdots = \frac{1}{x} + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{2^{2k} B_{2k}}{(2k)!} x^{2k-1} \quad \left( |x| < \pi \right)$

7. $\sinh^2 x = x^2 + \frac{x^4}{3} + \frac{2x^6}{45} + \frac{x^8}{315} + \cdots = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{2^{2k-1}x^{2k}}{(2k)!}$

8. $\cosh^2 x = 1 + x^2 + \frac{x^4}{3} + \frac{2x^6}{45} + \frac{x^8}{315} + \cdots = 1 + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{2^{2k-1}x^{2k}}{(2k)!}$

9. $\tanh^2 x = x^2 - \frac{2x^4}{3} + \frac{17}{45}x^6 - \frac{62}{315}x^8 + \cdots$
2.8.3 Inverse Trigonometric Functions

2.8.3.1

1. \( \arcsin x = x + \frac{1}{2 \cdot 3} x^3 + \frac{1 \cdot 3}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 5} x^5 + \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \cdot 7} x^7 + \cdots \)

\[ = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(2k)!}{2^{2k} (k!)^2} \frac{x^{2k+1}}{(2k+1)} \quad \text{[} |x| < 1 \text{]} \]

2. \( \arccos x = \frac{\pi}{2} - \left( x + \frac{x^3}{2 \cdot 3} + \frac{1 \cdot 3}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 5} x^5 + \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \cdot 7} x^7 + \cdots \right) \)

\[ = \frac{\pi}{2} - \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(2k)!}{2^{2k} (k!)^2} \frac{x^{2k+1}}{(2k+1)} \quad \text{[} |x| < 1 \text{]} \]

3. \( \arctan x = x - \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{x^5}{5} - \frac{x^7}{7} + \cdots = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{2k+1} x^{2k+1} \quad \text{[} |x| < 1 \text{]} \)

[obtained by integrating \( 1/(1+x^2) \); see 0.7.3]

4. \( \arctan x = \frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{3x^3} - \frac{1}{5x^5} + \frac{1}{7x^7} - \cdots = \frac{\pi}{2} - \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{(2k+1)x^{2k+1}} \quad \text{[} x^2 \geq 1 \text{]} \]

5. \( \arctan x = \frac{x}{\sqrt{1+x^2}} \left\{ 1 + \frac{1}{6} \left( \frac{x^2}{1+x^2} \right) + \frac{3}{40} \left( \frac{x^2}{1+x^2} \right)^2 + \cdots \right\} \)

\[ = \frac{x}{\sqrt{1+x^2}} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(2k)!}{2^{2k} (k!)^2} \frac{x^{2k}}{(2k+1)} \quad \text{[} x^2 < \infty \text{]} \]

6. \( \arccsc x = \frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{1}{x} - \frac{1}{2 \cdot 3x^3} - \frac{1 \cdot 3}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 5x^5} - \cdots = \frac{\pi}{2} - \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(2k)!}{(k!)^2} \frac{x^{-(2k+1)}}{2^{2k} (2k+1)} \quad \text{[} x^2 > 1 \text{]} \]

7. \( \arccsc x = \frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{2 \cdot 3x^3} + \frac{1 \cdot 3}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 5x^5} + \cdots = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(2k)!}{(k!)^2} \frac{x^{-(2k+1)}}{2^{2k} (2k+1)} \quad \text{[} x^2 > 1 \text{]} \)

2.8.4 Inverse Hyperbolic Functions

2.8.4.1

1. \( \operatorname{arcsinh} x = x - \frac{1}{2 \cdot 3} x^3 + \frac{1 \cdot 3}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 5} x^5 - \cdots = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{(2k)!} \frac{x^{2k+1}}{2^{2k} (k!)^2} \quad \text{[} |x| \leq 1 \text{]} \)

\[ = \ln \left[ x + \sqrt{x^2 + 1} \right] \]
2.9 Useful Limiting Values and Inequalities Involving Elementary Functions

2.9.1 Logarithmic Functions

1. \( \frac{x}{1 + x} < \ln(1 + x) < x \quad [x \neq 0, -1 < x] \)

2. \( x < -\ln(1 - x) < \frac{x}{1 - x} \quad [x \neq 0, x < 1] \)

3. \( \lim_{x \to \infty} x^{-\alpha} \ln x = 0 \quad [\alpha > 0] \)

4. \( \lim_{x \to 0} x^\alpha \ln x = 0 \quad [\alpha > 0] \)

2.9.2 Exponential Functions

1. \( 1 + x \leq e^x \)

2. \( e^x < \frac{1}{1 - x} \quad [x < 1] \)
3. \( \left( 1 + \frac{x}{n} \right)^n < e^x \quad [n > 0] \)

4. \( \frac{x}{1+x} < 1 - e^{-x} < x \quad [-1 < x] \)

5. \( x < e^x - 1 < \frac{x}{1-x} \quad [x < 1] \)

6. \( \lim_{x \to \infty} (x^a e^{-x}) = 0 \)

7. \( \lim_{n \to \infty} \left( 1 + \frac{x}{n} \right)^n = e^x \)

2.9.3 Trigonometric and Hyperbolic Functions

1. \( \frac{\sin x}{x} > \frac{2}{\pi} \quad ||x| < \pi/2] \)

2. \( \sin x \leq x \leq \tan x \quad [0 \leq x < \pi/2] \)

3. \( \cos x \leq \frac{\sin x}{x} \leq 1 \quad [0 \leq x \leq \pi] \)

4. \( \cot x \leq \frac{1}{x} \leq \csc x \quad [0 \leq x \leq \pi/2] \)

If \( z = x + iy \), then:

5. \( |\sinh y| \leq |\sin z| \leq \cosh y \)

6. \( |\sinh y| \leq |\cos z| \leq \cosh y \)

7. \( |\sin z| \leq \sinh |z| \)

8. \( |\cos z| \leq \cosh |z| \)

9. \( |\sin x| \leq |\cosh x| \leq \cosh x \)

10. \( \sinh |x| \leq |\sinh z| \leq \cosh x \)

11. \( \lim_{x \to 0} \left( \frac{\sin kx}{x} \right) = k \)

12. \( \lim_{x \to 0} \left( \frac{\tan kx}{x} \right) = k \)

13. \( \lim_{n \to \infty} \left( n \sin \frac{x}{n} \right) = x \)

14. \( \lim_{n \to \infty} \left( n \tan \frac{x}{n} \right) = x \)
Chapter 3
Derivatives of Elementary Functions

3.1 DERIVATIVES OF ALGEBRAIC, LOGARITHMIC, AND EXPONENTIAL FUNCTIONS

3.1.1
Let \( u(x) \) be a differentiable function with respect to \( x \), and \( \alpha, a \) and \( k \) be constants.

1. \( \frac{d}{dx}[x^\alpha] = \alpha x^{\alpha-1} \)
2. \( \frac{d}{dx}[u^\alpha] = \alpha u^{\alpha-1} \frac{du}{dx} \)

3. \( \frac{d}{dx}[x^{1/2}] = \frac{1}{2x^{1/2}} \)
4. \( \frac{d}{dx}[u^{1/2}] = \frac{1}{2u^{1/2}} \frac{du}{dx} \)

5. \( \frac{d}{dx}[x^{-\alpha}] = -\frac{\alpha}{x^{\alpha+1}} \)
6. \( \frac{d}{dx}[u^{-\alpha}] = -\frac{\alpha}{u^{\alpha+1}} \frac{du}{dx} \)

7. \( \frac{d}{dx}[\ln x] = \frac{1}{x} \)
8. \( \frac{d}{dx}[\ln u] = \frac{1}{u} \frac{du}{dx} \)

9. \( \frac{d^n}{dx^n}[\ln x] = \frac{(-1)^{n-1} (n - 1)!}{x^n} \)
10. \( \frac{d^2}{dx^2}[\ln u] = -\frac{1}{u^2} \left( \frac{du}{dx} \right)^2 + \frac{1}{u} \frac{d^2 u}{dx^2} \)

11. \( \frac{d}{dx}[x \ln x] = \ln x + 1 \)
12. \( \frac{d}{dx}[x \ln u] = \ln u + \frac{x}{u} \frac{du}{dx} \)

13. \( \frac{d}{dx}[x^n \ln x] = (n \ln x + 1)x^{n-1} \)
14. \( \frac{d}{dx}[u \ln u] = (\ln u + 1) \frac{du}{dx} \)
15. \( \frac{d}{dx}[e^x] = e^x \)
16. \( \frac{d}{dx}[e^{kx}] = ke^{kx} \)
17. \( \frac{d}{dx}[e^u] = e^u \frac{du}{dx} \)
18. \( \frac{d}{dx}[a^x] = a^x \ln a \)
19. \( \frac{d}{dx}[a^u] = a^u (\ln a) \frac{du}{dx} \)
20. \( \frac{d}{dx}[x^x] = (1 + \ln x)x^x \)

3.2 DERIVATIVES OF TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS
3.2.1
Let \( u(x) \) be a differentiable function with respect to \( x \).

1. \( \frac{d}{dx}[\sin x] = \cos x \)
2. \( \frac{d}{dx}[\sin u] = \cos u \frac{du}{dx} \)
3. \( \frac{d}{dx}[\cos x] = -\sin x \)
4. \( \frac{d}{dx}[\cos u] = -\sin u \frac{du}{dx} \)
5. \( \frac{d}{dx}[\tan x] = \sec^2 x \)
6. \( \frac{d}{dx}[\tan u] = \sec^2 u \frac{du}{dx} \)
7. \( \frac{d}{dx}[\csc x] = -\csc x \cot x \)
8. \( \frac{d}{dx}[\csc u] = -\csc u \cot u \frac{du}{dx} \)
9. \( \frac{d}{dx}[\sec x] = \sec x \tan x \)
10. \( \frac{d}{dx}[\sec u] = \sec u \tan u \frac{du}{dx} \)
11. \( \frac{d}{dx}[\cot x] = -\csc^2 x \)
12. \( \frac{d}{dx}[\cot u] = -\csc^2 u \frac{du}{dx} \)
13. \( \frac{d^n}{dx^n}[\sin x] = \sin \left( x + \frac{1}{2}n\pi \right) \)
14. \( \frac{d^n}{dx^n}[\cos x] = \cos \left( x + \frac{1}{2}n\pi \right) \)

3.3 DERIVATIVES OF INVERSE TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS
3.3.1
Let \( u(x) \) be a differentiable function with respect to \( x \).

1. \( \frac{d}{dx} \left[ \arcsin \frac{x}{a} \right] = \frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} \left[ \left. \begin{array}{l} -\frac{\pi}{2} < x/a < \frac{\pi}{2} \\ \end{array} \right\} \right] \)
2. \( \frac{d}{dx} \left[ \arcsin \frac{u}{a} \right] = \frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2 - u^2}} \frac{du}{dx} \left[ \left. \begin{array}{l} -\frac{\pi}{2} < u/a < \frac{\pi}{2} \\ \end{array} \right\} \right] \)
3. \( \frac{d}{dx} \left[ \arccos \frac{x}{a} \right] = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} \left[ \left. \begin{array}{l} 0 < x/a < \pi \\ \end{array} \right\} \right] \)
4. \( \frac{d}{dx} \left[ \arccos \frac{u}{a} \right] = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2 - u^2}} \frac{du}{dx} \left[ \left. \begin{array}{l} 0 < u/a < \pi \\ \end{array} \right\} \right] \)
3.4 Derivatives of Hyperbolic Functions

3.4.1

Let \( u(x) \) be a differentiable function with respect to \( x \).

1. \( \frac{d}{dx} \sinh x = \cosh x \)
2. \( \frac{d}{dx} \sinh u = \cosh u \frac{du}{dx} \)
3. \( \frac{d}{dx} \cosh x = \sinh x \)
4. \( \frac{d}{dx} \cosh u = \sinh u \frac{du}{dx} \)
5. \( \frac{d}{dx} \tanh x = \text{sech}^2 x \)
6. \( \frac{d}{dx} \tanh u = \text{sech}^2 u \frac{du}{dx} \)
7. \( \frac{d}{dx} \text{csch} x = -\text{csch} x \coth x \)
8. \( \frac{d}{dx} \text{csch} u = -\text{csch} u \coth u \frac{du}{dx} \)
9. \( \frac{d}{dx} \text{sech} x = -\text{sech} x \tanh x \)
10. \( \frac{d}{dx} \text{sech} u = -\text{sech} u \tanh u \frac{du}{dx} \)
11. \( \frac{d}{dx} \text{coth} x = -\text{csch}^2 x + 2\delta(x) \)
12. \( \frac{d}{dx} \text{coth} u = -[\text{csch}^2 u + 2\delta(u)] \frac{du}{dx} \)

The delta function occurs because of the discontinuity in the \( \text{coth} \) function at the origin.
3.5 DERIVATIVES OF INVERSE HYPERBOLIC FUNCTIONS

3.5.1
Let \( u(x) \) be a differentiable function with respect to \( x \)

1. \( \frac{d}{dx} \left[ \text{arcsinh} \frac{x}{a} \right] = \frac{1}{(x^2 + a^2)^{1/2}} \)

2. \( \frac{d}{dx} \left[ \text{arcsinh} \frac{u}{a} \right] = \frac{1}{(u^2 + a^2)^{1/2}} \frac{du}{dx} \)

3. \( \frac{d}{dx} \left[ \text{arccosh} \frac{x}{a} \right] = \frac{1}{(x^2 - a^2)^{1/2}} \left[ \frac{x}{a} > 1, \text{arccosh} \frac{x}{a} > 0 \right] \)

4. \( \frac{d}{dx} \left[ \text{arccosh} \frac{u}{a} \right] = \frac{-1}{(u^2 - a^2)^{1/2}} \frac{du}{dx} \left[ \frac{u}{a} > 1, \text{arccosh} \frac{u}{a} < 0 \right] \)

5. \( \frac{d}{dx} \left[ \text{arccsch} \frac{x}{a} \right] = -\frac{a}{|x|(x^2 + a^2)^{1/2}} \left[ x \neq 0 \right] \)

6. \( \frac{d}{dx} \left[ \text{arccsch} \frac{u}{a} \right] = -\frac{a}{|u|(u^2 + a^2)^{1/2}} \frac{du}{dx} \left[ u \neq 0 \right] \)

7. \( \frac{d}{dx} \left[ \text{arctanh} \frac{x}{a} \right] = \frac{a}{a^2 - x^2} \left[ x^2 < a^2 \right] \)

8. \( \frac{d}{dx} \left[ \text{arctanh} \frac{u}{a} \right] = \frac{a}{a^2 - u^2} \frac{du}{dx} \left[ u^2 < a^2 \right] \)

9. \( \frac{d}{dx} \left[ \text{arcsech} \frac{x}{a} \right] = -\frac{a}{x(a^2 - x^2)^{1/2}} \left[ 0 < \frac{x}{a} < 1, \text{arcsech} \frac{x}{a} > 0 \right] \)

10. \( \frac{d}{dx} \left[ \text{arcsech} \frac{u}{a} \right] = \frac{a}{x(a^2 - x^2)^{1/2}} \frac{du}{dx} \left[ 0 < \frac{x}{a} < 1, \text{arcsech} \frac{u}{a} < 0 \right] \)

11. \( \frac{d}{dx} \left[ \text{arccoth} \frac{x}{a} \right] = \frac{a}{x^2 - a^2} \left[ x^2 > a^2 \right] \)

12. \( \frac{d}{dx} \left[ \text{arccoth} \frac{u}{a} \right] = \frac{a}{u(a^2 - u^2)^{1/2}} \frac{du}{dx} \left[ 0 < \frac{u}{a} < 1, \text{arccoth} \frac{u}{a} > 0 \right] \)

13. \( \frac{d}{dx} \left[ \text{arccoth} \frac{u}{a} \right] = \frac{a}{u(a^2 - u^2)^{1/2}} \frac{du}{dx} \left[ 0 < \frac{u}{a} < 1, \text{arccoth} \frac{u}{a} < 0 \right] \)
4.1 ALGEBRAIC AND TRANSCENDENTAL FUNCTIONS

4.1.1 Definitions

4.1.1.1
A function $f(x)$ is said to be algebraic if a polynomial $P(x, y)$ in the two variables $x$, $y$ can be found with the property that $P(x, f(x)) = 0$ for all $x$ for which $f(x)$ is defined. Thus, the function

$$f(x) = x^2 - (1 - x^4)^{1/2}$$

is an algebraic function, because the polynomial

$$P(x, y) = y^2 - 2x^2y + 2x^4 - 1$$

has the necessary property.

Functions that are not algebraic are called transcendental functions. Examples of transcendental functions are

$$f(x) = \sin x, \quad f(x) = e^x + \ln x, \quad \text{and} \quad f(x) = \tan x + (1 - x^2)^{1/2}.$$

A fundamental difference between algebraic and transcendental functions is that whereas algebraic functions can only have a finite number of zeros, a transcendental function can have an infinite number. Thus, for example, $\sin x$ has zeros at $x = \pm n\pi$, $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$. 

153
Chapter 4  Indefinite Integrals of Algebraic Functions

Transcendental functions arise in many different ways, one of which is as a result of integrating algebraic functions in, for example, the following cases:

\[
\int \frac{dx}{x} = \ln x, \quad \int \frac{dx}{(x^2 - a^2)^{1/2}} = \ln \left| x + (x^2 - a^2)^{1/2} \right|, \quad \text{and}
\]

\[
\int \frac{dx}{x^2 + a^2} = \frac{1}{a} \arctan \left( \frac{x}{a} \right).
\]

Within the class of algebraic functions there is an important and much simpler subclass called rational functions. A function \( f(x) \) is said to be a rational function if

\[ f(x) = \frac{P(x)}{Q(x)}, \]

where \( P(x) \) and \( Q(x) \) are both polynomials (see 1.7.1.1). These simple algebraic functions can be integrated by first expressing their integrands in terms of partial fractions (see 1.7), and then integrating the result term by term. Hereafter, for convenience of reference, indefinite integrals will be classified according to their integrands as rational functions, nonrational (irrational) algebraic functions, or transcendental functions.

### 4.2 INDEFINITE INTEGRALS OF RATIONAL FUNCTIONS

#### 4.2.1 Integrands Involving \( x^n \)

##### 4.2.1.1

1. \( \int dx = x \)
2. \( \int x \, dx = \frac{1}{2} x^2 \)
3. \( \int x^2 \, dx = \frac{1}{3} x^3 \)
4. \( \int x^n \, dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \quad [n \neq -1] \)
5. \( \int \frac{dx}{x} = \ln |x| \)
6. \( \int \frac{dx}{x^2} = -\frac{1}{x} \)
7. \( \int \frac{dx}{x^3} = -\frac{1}{2x^2} \)
8. \( \int \frac{dx}{x^n} = -\frac{1}{(n-1) x^{n-1}} \quad [n \neq 1] \)

#### 4.2.2 Integrands Involving \( a + bx \)

##### 4.2.2.1

1. \( \int (a + bx)^n \, dx = \frac{(a + bx)^{n+1}}{b(n+1)} \quad [n \neq -1] \)
2. \( \int \frac{dx}{a + bx} = \frac{1}{b} \ln |a + bx| \)
4.2 Indefinite Integrals of Rational Functions

3. \[ \int \frac{dx}{(a+bx)^2} = - \frac{1}{b(a+bx)} \]

4. \[ \int \frac{dx}{(a+bx)^3} = - \frac{1}{2b(a+bx)^2} \]

5. \[ \int \frac{dx}{(a+bx)^n} = - \frac{1}{b(n-1)(a+bx)^{n-1}} \quad [n \neq 1] \]

4.2.2.2

1. \[ \int \frac{x \, dx}{a+bx} = \frac{x}{b} - \frac{a}{b^2} \ln|a+bx| \quad \text{(see 4.2.6.1)} \]

2. \[ \int \frac{x \, dx}{(a+bx)^2} = - \frac{x}{b(a+bx)} + \frac{1}{b^2} \ln|a+bx| \quad \text{(see 4.2.6.2)} \]

3. \[ \int \frac{x \, dx}{(a+bx)^3} = - \left( \frac{x}{b} + \frac{a}{2b^2} \right) \frac{1}{(a+bx)^2} \]

4. \[ \int \frac{x \, dx}{(a+bx)^n} = \frac{x}{b(2-n)(a+bx)^{n-1}} - \frac{a}{b(2-n)} \int \frac{dx}{(a+bx)^n} \]

[reduction formula for \( n \neq 2 \)]

4.2.2.3

1. \[ \int \frac{x^2 \, dx}{a+bx} = \frac{x^2}{2b} - \frac{ax}{b^2} + \frac{a^2}{b^3} \ln|a+bx| \quad \text{(see 4.2.6.1)} \]

2. \[ \int \frac{x^2 \, dx}{(a+bx)^2} = \frac{x}{b^2} - \frac{a^2}{b^3(a+bx)} - \frac{2a}{b^3} \ln|a+bx| \quad \text{(see 4.2.6.2)} \]

3. \[ \int \frac{x^2 \, dx}{(a+bx)^3} = \left( \frac{2ax}{b^2} + \frac{3a^2}{2b^3} \right) \frac{1}{(a+bx)^2} + \frac{1}{b^3} \ln|a+bx| \]

4. \[ \int \frac{x^2 \, dx}{(a+bx)^n} = \frac{x^2}{b(3-n)(a+bx)^{n-1}} - \frac{2a}{b(3-n)} \int \frac{x \, dx}{(a+bx)^n} \]

[reduction formula for \( n \neq 3 \)]

4.2.2.4

1. \[ \int \frac{x^3 \, dx}{(a+bx)} = \frac{x^3}{3b} - \frac{ax^2}{2b^2} + \frac{a^2x}{b^3} - \frac{a^3}{b^4} \ln|a+bx| \quad \text{(see 4.2.6.1)} \]
2. \[ \int \frac{x^3}{(a+bx)^2} \, dx = \frac{x^2}{2b^2} - \frac{2ax}{b^3} \left( a + bx \right) + \frac{a^3}{b^4} \ln |a + bx| \] (see 4.2.6.2)

3. \[ \int \frac{x^3}{(a+bx)^3} \, dx = \left( \frac{x^3}{b} + \frac{2ax^2}{b^2} - \frac{2a^2x}{b^3} - \frac{5a^3}{2b^4} \right) \frac{1}{(a+bx)^2} - \frac{3a}{b^4} \ln |a + bx| \]

4. \[ \int \frac{x^3}{(a+bx)^n} \, dx = \frac{x^3}{b(4-n)(a+bx)^{n-1}} - \frac{3a}{b(4-n)} \int \frac{x^2 \, dx}{(a+bx)^n} \] [reduction formula for \( n \neq 4 \)]

### 4.2.2.5
For arbitrary positive integers \( m, n \) the following reduction formula applies:

1. \[ \int \frac{x^m \, dx}{(a+bx)^n} = -\frac{x^m}{b(m+1-n)(a+bx)^{n-1}} - \frac{ma}{b(m+1-n)} \int \frac{x^{m-1} \, dx}{(a+bx)^n}. \]

For \( m = n – 1 \) the above reduction formula can be replaced with

2. \[ \int \frac{x^{n-1} \, dx}{(a+bx)^n} = \frac{x^{n-1}}{b(n-1)(a+bx)^{n-1}} + \frac{1}{b} \int \frac{x^{n-2} \, dx}{(a+bx)^{n-1}}. \]

### 4.2.2.6

1. \[ \int \frac{x^n \, dx}{a+bx} = \frac{x^n}{nb} - \frac{ax^{n-1}}{(n-1)b^2} + \frac{a^2x^{n-2}}{(n-2)b^3} - \cdots + (-1)^{n-1} \frac{a^{n-1}x}{(n-1)!b^n} \]
   \[ + (-1)^n \frac{a^n}{b^{n+1}} \ln |a + bx| \]

2. \[ \int \frac{x^n \, dx}{(a+bx)^2} = \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} (-1)^{k-1} \frac{ka^{k-1}x^{n-k}}{(n-k)b^{k+1}} + (-1)^{n-1} \frac{a^n}{b^{n+1}(a+bx)} \]
   \[ + (-1)^{n+1} \frac{na^{n-1}}{b^{n+1}} \ln |a + bx| \]

### 4.2.2.7

1. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x(a+bx)} = -\frac{1}{a} \ln \left| \frac{a + bx}{x} \right| \]

2. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x(a+bx)^2} = \frac{1}{a(a+bx)} - \frac{1}{a^2} \ln \left| a + bx \right| \]

3. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x(a+bx)^3} = \left( \frac{3}{2a} + \frac{bx}{a^2} \right) \frac{1}{(a+bx)^2} - \frac{1}{a^3} \ln \left| a + bx \right| \]
4.2 Indefinite Integrals of Rational Functions

4. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x(a+bx)^n} = \frac{1}{a(n-1)(a+bx)^{n-1}} + \frac{1}{a} \int \frac{dx}{x(a+bx)^{n-1}} \]

[reduction formula for \( n \neq 1 \)]

4.2.2.8

1. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^2(a+bx)^2} = -\left( \frac{1}{ax} + \frac{2b}{a^2} \right) \frac{1}{(a+bx)^2} + \frac{2b}{a^3} \ln \frac{a+bx}{x} \]

2. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^2(a+bx)^3} = -\left( \frac{1}{ax} + \frac{3b^2x}{2a^2} + \frac{3b^2}{a^3} \right) \frac{1}{(a+bx)^3} + \frac{3b}{a^4} \ln \frac{a+bx}{x} \]

3. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^2(a+bx)^n} = -\frac{1}{ax(a+bx)^{n-1}} - \frac{nb}{a} \int \frac{dx}{x(a+bx)^n} \]

[reduction formula]

4.2.3 Integrands Involving Linear Factors

4.2.3.1

Integrals of the form

\[ \int \frac{x^m \, dx}{(x-a)^n (x-b)^r \cdots (x-q)^s} \]

can be integrated by first expressing the integrand in terms of partial fractions (see 1.7), and then integrating the result term by term.

4.2.3.2

1. \[ \int \frac{(a+bx)}{(c+dx)} \, dx = \frac{bx}{d} + \left( \frac{ad-bc}{d^2} \right) \ln |c+dx| \]

2. \[ \int \frac{dx}{(x-a)(x-b)} = \frac{1}{(a-b)} \ln \left| \frac{x-a}{x-b} \right| \quad [a \neq b] \]

3. \[ \int \frac{x \, dx}{(x-a)(x-b)} = \frac{a}{(a-b)} \ln |x-a| - \frac{b}{(a-b)} \ln |x-b| \quad [a \neq b] \]

4. \[ \int \frac{dx}{(x-a)^2(x-b)} = -\frac{1}{(x-a)(a-b)} - \frac{1}{(a-b)^2} \ln \left| \frac{x-a}{x-b} \right| \quad [a \neq b] \]

5. \[ \int \frac{dx}{(x-a)^2(x-b)^2} = \frac{a+b-2x}{(x-a)(x-b)(a-b)^2} - \frac{2}{(a-b)^3} \ln \left| \frac{x-a}{x-b} \right| \quad [a \neq b] \]
6. \[
\int \frac{x \, dx}{(x-a)^2(x-b)} = \frac{-a}{(x-a)(a-b)} + \frac{b}{(a-b)^2} \ln \left| \frac{x-b}{x-a} \right| \quad [a \neq b]
\]

7. \[
\int \frac{x \, dx}{(x-a)^2(x-b)^2} = \frac{2ab(a+b)x}{(x-a)(x-b)(a-b)^2} + \frac{(a+b)}{(a-b)^3} \ln \left| \frac{x-b}{x-a} \right| \quad [a \neq b]
\]

8. \[
\int \frac{x^2 \, dx}{(x-a)^2(x-b)^2} = \frac{ab(a+b)-(a^2+b^2)x}{(x-a)(x-b)(a-b)^2} + \frac{2ab}{(a-b)^3} \ln \left| \frac{x-b}{x-a} \right| \quad [a \neq b]
\]

**4.2.4 Integrands Involving \( a^2 \pm b^2x^2 \)**

**4.2.4.1**

1. \[
\int \frac{dx}{a^2 + b^2x^2} = \frac{1}{ab} \arctan \left( \frac{bx}{a} \right) \quad \left[ -\frac{\pi}{2} < \arctan \left( \frac{bx}{a} \right) < \frac{\pi}{2} \right]
\]

2. \[
\int \frac{dx}{(a^2 + b^2x^2)^2} = \frac{x}{2a^2(a^2 + b^2x^2)} + \frac{1}{2a^3b} \arctan \left( \frac{bx}{a} \right) \quad \left[ -\frac{\pi}{2} < \arctan \left( \frac{bx}{a} \right) < \frac{\pi}{2} \right]
\]

3. \[
\int \frac{dx}{(a^2 + b^2x^2)^3} = \frac{x(5a^2 + 3b^2x^2)}{8a^4(a^2 + b^2x^2)^2} + \frac{3}{8a^5b} \arctan \left( \frac{bx}{a} \right) \quad \left[ -\frac{\pi}{2} < \arctan \left( \frac{bx}{a} \right) < \frac{\pi}{2} \right]
\]

4. \[
\int \frac{dx}{(a^2 + b^2x^2)^n} = \frac{x}{2(n-1)a^2(a^2 + b^2x^2)^{n-1}} + \frac{(2n-3)}{2(n-1)a^2} \times \int \frac{dx}{(a^2 + b^2x^2)^{n-1}} \quad \text{[reduction formula \( n > 1 \)]}
\]

**4.2.4.2**

1. \[
\int \frac{x \, dx}{a^2 + b^2x^2} = \frac{1}{2b^2} \ln(a^2 + b^2x^2)
\]

2. \[
\int \frac{x \, dx}{(a^2 + b^2x^2)^2} = \frac{-1}{2b^2(a^2 + b^2x^2)}
\]

3. \[
\int \frac{x \, dx}{(a^2 + b^2x^2)^3} = \frac{-1}{4b^2(a^2 + b^2x^2)^2}
\]

4. \[
\int \frac{x \, dx}{(a^2 + b^2x^2)^n} = \frac{-1}{2(n-1)b^2(a^2 + b^2x^2)^{n-1}} \quad [n \neq 1]
\]

**4.2.4.3**

1. \[
\int \frac{x^2 \, dx}{a^2 + b^2x^2} = \frac{x}{b^2} - \frac{a}{b^3} \arctan \left( \frac{bx}{a} \right) \quad \left[ -\frac{\pi}{2} < \arctan \left( \frac{bx}{a} \right) < \frac{\pi}{2} \right]
\]
4.2 Indefinite Integrals of Rational Functions

2. \[ \int \frac{x^2}{(a^2 + b^2 x^2)^2} \, dx = \frac{-x}{2b^2 (a^2 + b^2 x^2)} + \frac{1}{2ab^2} \arctan \left( \frac{bx}{a} \right) \left[ -\frac{\pi}{2} < \arctan \left( \frac{bx}{a} \right) < \frac{\pi}{2} \right] \]

3. \[ \int \frac{x^2}{(a^2 + b^2 x^2)^3} \, dx = \frac{x (b^2 x^2 - a^2)}{8a^2 b^2 (a^2 + b^2 x^2)^2} + \frac{1}{8a^2 b^3} \arctan \left( \frac{bx}{a} \right) \left[ -\frac{\pi}{2} < \arctan \left( \frac{bx}{a} \right) < \frac{\pi}{2} \right] \]

4.2.4.4

1. \[ \int \frac{x^3}{a^2 + b^2 x^2} \, dx = \frac{x^2}{2b^2} - \frac{a^2}{2b^4} \ln(a^2 + b^2 x^2) \]

2. \[ \int \frac{x^3}{(a^2 + b^2 x^2)^2} \, dx = \frac{a^2}{2b^4 (a^2 + b^2 x^2)} + \frac{1}{2b^4} \ln(a^2 + b^2 x^2) \]

3. \[ \int \frac{x^3}{(a^2 + b^2 x^2)^3} \, dx = \frac{-(a^2 + 3b^2 x^2)}{4b^3 (a^2 + b^2 x^2)^2} \]

4. \[ \int \frac{x^3}{(a^2 + b^2 x^2)^n} \, dx = \frac{-[a^2 + (n - 1) b^2 x^2]}{2 (n - 1) (n - 2) b^4 (a^2 + b^2 x^2)^{n-1}} \quad [n > 2] \]

4.2.4.5

1. \[ \int \frac{dx}{a^2 - b^2 x^2} = -\frac{1}{2ab} \ln \left| \frac{bx - a}{bx + a} \right| \]

2. \[ \int \frac{dx}{(a^2 - b^2 x^2)^2} = \frac{x}{2a^2 (a^2 - b^2 x^2)} - \frac{1}{4a^2 b} \ln \left| \frac{bx - a}{bx + a} \right| \]

3. \[ \int \frac{dx}{(a^2 - b^2 x^2)^3} = \frac{x (5a^2 - 3b^2 x^2)}{8a^4 (a^2 - b^2 x^2)^2} - \frac{3}{16a^5 b} \ln \left| \frac{bx - a}{bx + a} \right| \]

4. \[ \int \frac{dx}{(a^2 - b^2 x^2)^n} = \frac{x}{2 (n - 1) a^2 (a^2 - b^2 x^2)^{n-1}} + \frac{(2n - 3)}{2 (n - 1) a^2} \]
\[ \times \int \frac{dx}{(a^2 - b^2 x^2)^{n-1}} \quad \text{[reduction formula for } n > 1 \text{]} \]

4.2.4.6

1. \[ \int \frac{x \, dx}{a^2 - b^2 x^2} = -\frac{1}{2b^2} \ln \left| a^2 - b^2 x^2 \right| \]

2. \[ \int \frac{x \, dx}{(a^2 - b^2 x^2)^2} = \frac{1}{2b^2 (a^2 - b^2 x^2)} \]
3. \[ \int \frac{x}{(a^2 - b^2x^2)^3} \, dx = \frac{1}{4b^2(a^2 - b^2x^2)^2} \]

4. \[ \int \frac{x}{(a^2 - b^2x^2)^n} \, dx = \frac{1}{2(n-1)b^2(a^2 - b^2x^2)^{n-1}} \]

### 4.2.4.7

1. \[ \int \frac{x^2}{a^2 - b^2x^2} \, dx = -\frac{x^2}{b^2} - \frac{a}{2b^3} \ln \left| \frac{bx-a}{bx+a} \right| \]

2. \[ \int \frac{x^2}{(a^2 - b^2x^2)^2} \, dx = \frac{x}{2b^2(a^2 - b^2x^2)} + \frac{1}{4ab^4} \ln \left| \frac{bx-a}{bx+a} \right| \]

3. \[ \int \frac{x^2}{(a^2 - b^2x^2)^3} \, dx = \frac{x(a^2 + b^2x^2)}{8a^2b^5(a^2 - b^2x^2)^2} + \frac{1}{16a^3b^5} \ln \left| \frac{bx-a}{bx+a} \right| \]

### 4.2.4.8

1. \[ \int \frac{x^3}{a^2 - b^2x^2} \, dx = -\frac{x^3}{2b^2} - \frac{a^2}{2b^4} \ln |a^2 - b^2x^2| \]

2. \[ \int \frac{x^3}{(a^2 - b^2x^2)^2} \, dx = \frac{a^2}{2b^4(a^2 - b^2x^2)} + \frac{1}{4b^4} \ln |a^2 - b^2x^2| \]

3. \[ \int \frac{x^3}{(a^2 - b^2x^2)^3} \, dx = \frac{2b^2x^2 - a^2}{4b^4(a^2 - b^2x^2)^2} \]

### 4.2.4.9

1. \[ \int \frac{dx}{a^2 + x^2} = \frac{1}{a} \arctan \frac{x}{a} \]

2. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x(a^2 + x^2)} = \frac{1}{2a^2} \ln \left( \frac{x^2}{a^2 + x^2} \right) \]

3. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^2(a^2 + x^2)} = -\frac{1}{a^2x} - \frac{1}{a^3} \arctan \frac{x}{a} \]

4. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^3(a^2 + x^2)} = -\frac{1}{2a^2x^2} - \frac{1}{2a^4} \ln \left( \frac{x^2}{a^2 + x^2} \right) \]

5. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^4(a^2 + x^2)} = -\frac{1}{3a^2x^2} + \frac{1}{4a^4x} + \frac{1}{a^5} \arctan \frac{x}{a} \]
4.2 Indefinite Integrals of Rational Functions

6. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x(a^2 + x^2)^2} = \frac{1}{2a^2} \left( \frac{x^2}{a^2 + x^2} \right) + \frac{1}{2a^4} \ln \left( \frac{x^2}{a^2 + x^2} \right) \]

7. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^2(a^2 + x^2)^2} = -\frac{1}{a^4 x} - \frac{x}{2a^4 (a^2 + x^2)} - \frac{3}{2a^5} \arctan \frac{x}{a} \]

8. \[ \int \frac{dx}{(a^2 - x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} = \frac{1}{2a^2} \ln \left| \frac{a + x}{a - x} \right| \]

9. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x(a^2 - x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} = \frac{1}{2a^2} \ln \left| \frac{x^2}{a^2 - x^2} \right| \]

10. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^2(a^2 - x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} = -\frac{1}{a^2 x} + \frac{1}{2a^3} \ln \left| \frac{a + x}{a - x} \right| \]

11. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^3(a^2 - x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} = -\frac{1}{2a^2 x^2} + \frac{1}{2a^4} \ln \left| \frac{x^2}{a^2 - x^2} \right| \]

12. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^4(a^2 - x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} = -\frac{1}{3a^2 x^3} - \frac{1}{a^4 x} + \frac{1}{2a^5} \ln \left| \frac{a + x}{a - x} \right| \]

13. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x(a^2 - x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} = \frac{1}{2a^2 (a^2 - x^2)} + \frac{1}{2a^4} \ln \left| \frac{x^2}{a^2 - x^2} \right| \]

14. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^2(a^2 - x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} = -\frac{1}{a^4 x} + \frac{x}{2a^4 (a^2 - x^2)} + \frac{3}{4a^5} \ln \left| \frac{a + x}{a - x} \right| \]

4.2.4.10

The change of variable \( x^2 = u \) reduces integrals of the form

\[ \int \frac{x^{2m+1} \, dx}{(a^2 \pm b^2 x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} \]

to the simple form

\[ \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{u^m \, du}{(a^2 \pm b^2 u)^{\frac{3}{2}}} , \]

as listed in 4.2.2.

4.2.4.11

The change of variable \( x^2 = u \) reduces integrals of the form

\[ \int \frac{x^{2m+1} \, dx}{(a^4 \pm b^4 x^4)^{\frac{3}{2}}} \]
to the simpler form
\[
\frac{1}{2} \int \frac{u^m \, du}{(a^4 \pm b^4 u^2)^n},
\]
as listed in 4.2.4.1–4.2.4.8.

## 4.2.5 Integrands Involving \( a + bx + cx^2 \)

Notation: \( R = a + bx + cx^2 \), \( \Delta = 4ac - b^2 \)

4.2.5.1

1. \[
\int \frac{dx}{R} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{-\Delta}} \ln \left| \frac{\sqrt{-\Delta} - (b + 2cx)}{(b + 2cx) + \sqrt{-\Delta}} \right|
\]
   \[
   = -\frac{2}{\sqrt{-\Delta}} \arctanh \left( \frac{b + 2cx}{\sqrt{-\Delta}} \right) \quad [\Delta < 0]
\]
   \[
   = -\frac{2}{b + 2cx} \quad [\Delta = 0]
\]
   \[
   = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\Delta}} \arctan \left( \frac{b + 2cx}{\sqrt{\Delta}} \right) \quad [\Delta > 0]
\]

2. \[
\int \frac{dx}{R^2} = \frac{b + 2cx}{\Delta R} + \frac{2c}{\Delta} \int \frac{dx}{R}
\]

3. \[
\int \frac{dx}{R^3} = \left( \frac{b + 2cx}{\Delta} \right) \left( \frac{1}{2R^2} + \frac{3c}{\Delta R} \right) + \frac{6c^2}{\Delta^2} \int \frac{dx}{R}
\]

4. \[
\int \frac{dx}{R^{n+1}} = \frac{b + 2cx}{n\Delta R^n} + \frac{(4n - 2)c}{n\Delta} \int \frac{dx}{R^n}
\]
   \[
   = \frac{(b + 2cx)}{2n + 1} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \frac{2k (2n + 1) (2n - 1) \cdots (2n - 2k + 1) c^k}{n (n - 1) \cdots (n - k) \Delta^{k+1} R^{n-k}}
\]
   \[
   + \frac{2^n (2n - 1)! c^n}{n! \Delta^n} \int \frac{dx}{R}
\]
   [general reduction formula: double factorial \( (2n - 1)!! = 1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (2n - 1) \)]

4.2.5.2

1. \[
\int \frac{x \, dx}{R} = \frac{1}{2c} \ln R - \frac{b}{2c} \int \frac{dx}{R}
\]
2. \[ \int \frac{x\,dx}{R^2} = -\left(\frac{2a + bx}{\Delta R}\right) - \frac{b}{\Delta} \int \frac{dx}{R} \]

3. \[ \int \frac{x\,dx}{R^3} = -\left(\frac{2a + bx}{2\Delta R^2}\right) - \frac{3b(b + 2cx)}{2\Delta^2 R} - \frac{3bc}{\Delta^2} \int \frac{dx}{R} \]

4. \[ \int \frac{x^2\,dx}{R^2} = \frac{x}{c} - \frac{b}{2c^2} \ln R + \left(\frac{b^2 - 2ac}{2c^2}\right) \int \frac{dx}{R} \]

5. \[ \int \frac{x^2\,dx}{cR} = \frac{ab + (b^2 - 2ac)x}{c\Delta R} + \frac{2a}{\Delta} \int \frac{dx}{R} \]

6. \[ \int \frac{x^2\,dx}{R^3} = \frac{ab + (b^2 - 2ac)x}{2c\Delta R^2} + \frac{(2ac + b^2)(b + 2cx)}{2c\Delta^2 R} + \frac{(2ac + b^2)}{\Delta^2} \int \frac{dx}{R} \]

7. \[ \int \frac{x^m\,dx}{R^n} = \frac{-x^{m-1}}{(2n - m - 1)cR^{n-1}} - \frac{(n-m)b}{(2n-m-1)c} \int \frac{x^{m-1}\,dx}{R^n} + \frac{(m-1)a}{(2n-m-1)c} \int \frac{x^{m-2}\,dx}{R^n} \]

\[ \text{[general reduction formula: } m \neq 2n - 1 \text{]} \]

8. \[ \int \frac{x^{2n-1}\,dx}{R^n} = \frac{1}{c} \int \frac{x^{2n-3}\,dx}{R^{n-1}} - \frac{a}{c} \int \frac{x^{2n-3}\,dx}{R^n} - \frac{b}{c} \int \frac{x^{2n-2}\,dx}{R^n} \]

\[ \text{[general reduction formula: case } m = 2n - 1 \text{ in 4.2.5.2.7]} \]

4.2.5.3

1. \[ \int \frac{dx}{xR} = \frac{1}{2a} \ln \frac{x^2}{R} - \frac{b}{2a} \int \frac{dx}{R} \]

2. \[ \int \frac{dx}{xR^2} = \frac{1}{2a^2} \ln \frac{x^2}{R} + \frac{1}{2aR} \left[ 1 - \frac{b(b + 2cx)}{\Delta} \right] - \frac{b}{2a^2} \left( 1 + \frac{2ac}{\Delta} \right) \int \frac{dx}{R} \]

3. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^2R} = -\frac{b}{2a^2} \ln \frac{x^2}{R} - \frac{1}{ax} + \frac{(b^2 - 2ac)}{2a^2} \int \frac{dx}{R} \]

4. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^mR^n} = \frac{-1}{(m-1)ax^{m-1}R^{n-1}} - \frac{b(m + n - 2)}{a(m-1)} \int \frac{dx}{x^{m-1}R^n} - \frac{c(m + 2n - 3)}{a(m-1)} \int \frac{dx}{x^{m-2}R^n} \]

\[ \text{[general reduction formula]} \]
4.2.6 Integrands Involving $a + bx^3$

Notation: $\alpha = (a/b)^{1/3}$

4.2.6.1

1. $\int \frac{dx}{a+bx^3} = \frac{\alpha}{3a} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \ln \left| \frac{(x+\alpha)^2}{x^2-ax+\alpha^2} \right| + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \text{arctan} \left( \frac{x\sqrt{3}}{2a-x} \right) \right\}$

2. $\int \frac{x \, dx}{a+bx^3} = -\frac{1}{3b\alpha} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \ln \left| \frac{(x+\alpha)^2}{x^2-ax+\alpha^2} \right| - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \text{arctan} \left( \frac{x\sqrt{3}}{2a-x} \right) \right\}$

3. $\int \frac{x^2 \, dx}{a+bx^3} = \frac{1}{3b} \ln |1+((x/\alpha)^3)| = \frac{1}{3b} \ln |a+bx^3|$

4. $\int \frac{x^3 \, dx}{a+bx^3} = \frac{x}{b} - \frac{a}{b} \int \frac{dx}{a+bx^3}$

5. $\int \frac{dx}{(a+bx^3)^2} = \frac{x}{3a(a+bx^3)} + \frac{2}{3a} \int \frac{dx}{a+bx^3}$

6. $\int \frac{x \, dx}{(a+bx^3)^2} = \frac{x^2}{3a(a+bx^3)} + \frac{1}{3a} \int \frac{x \, dx}{a+bx^3}$

7. $\int \frac{x^n \, dx}{(a+bx^3)^m} = \frac{x^{n-2}}{b(n+1-3m)} - \frac{a(n-2)}{b(n+1-3m)} \int \frac{x^{n-3} \, dx}{(a+bx^3)^m}$

   $= \frac{x^{n+1}}{3a(m-1)(a+bx^3)^{m-1}} - \frac{(n+4-3m)}{3a(m-1)} \int \frac{x^n \, dx}{(a+bx^3)^{m-1}}$ [general reduction formula]

8. $\int \frac{dx}{x^n(a+bx^3)^m} = -\frac{1}{(n-1)a x^{n-1}(a+bx^3)^{m-1}}$

   $- \frac{b(3m+n-4)}{a(n-1)} \int \frac{dx}{x^{n-3}(a+bx^3)^m}$

   $= \frac{1}{3a(m-1)x^{n-1}(a+bx^3)^{m-1}} + \frac{(n+3m-4)}{3a(m-1)}$

   $\times \int \frac{dx}{x^n(a+bx^3)^{m-1}}$ [general reduction formula]
4.2 Indefinite Integrals of Rational Functions

4.2.7 Integrands Involving $a + bx^4$

Notation: $\alpha = (a/b)^{1/4}$, $\alpha' = (-a/b)^{1/4}$

4.2.7.1

1. \[ \int \frac{dx}{a + bx^4} = \frac{\alpha}{4a\sqrt{2}} \left\{ \ln \left| \frac{x^2 + \alpha \sqrt{2} + \alpha^2}{x^2 - \alpha \sqrt{2} + \alpha^2} \right| + 2 \arctan \left( \frac{\alpha \sqrt{2}}{\alpha^2 - x^2} \right) \right\} \quad [ab > 0] \]
   \[ = \frac{\alpha'}{4a} \left\{ \ln \left| \frac{x + \alpha'}{x - \alpha'} \right| + 2 \arctan \left( \frac{x}{\alpha'} \right) \right\} \quad [ab < 0] \]
   [see 4.2.7.1.3]

2. \[ \int \frac{xdx}{a + bx^4} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{ab}} \arctan \left( \frac{x^2 \sqrt{b}}{a} \right) \quad [ab > 0] \]
   \[ = \frac{1}{4i\sqrt{ab}} \ln \left| \frac{a + x^2i\sqrt{ab}}{a - x^2i\sqrt{ab}} \right| \quad [ab < 0] \]
   [see 4.2.7.1.5]

3. \[ \int \frac{dx}{a^4 + x^4} = \frac{1}{4a^3\sqrt{2}} \ln \left| \frac{x^2 + ax \sqrt{2} + a^2}{x^2 - ax \sqrt{2} + a^2} \right| + \frac{1}{2a^3\sqrt{2}} \arctan \left( \frac{ax \sqrt{2}}{a^2 - x^2} \right) \]
   [special case of 4.2.7.1.1]

4. \[ \int \frac{dx}{a^4 - x^4} = -\frac{1}{4a^3} \ln \left| \frac{a + x}{a - x} \right| - \frac{1}{2a^3} \arctan \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \]
   [special case of 4.2.7.1.1]

5. \[ \int \frac{xdx}{a^4 + x^4} = \frac{1}{2a^2} \arctan \left( \frac{x^2}{a^2} \right) \]
   [special case of 4.2.7.1.2]

6. \[ \int \frac{xdx}{a^4 - x^4} = \frac{1}{4a^2} \ln \left| \frac{a^2 + x^2}{a^2 - x^2} \right| \]
   [special case of 4.2.7.1.2]

7. \[ \int \frac{x^2dx}{a + bx^4} = \frac{1}{4b\alpha \sqrt{2}} \left\{ \ln \left| \frac{x^2 - \alpha x \sqrt{2} + \alpha^2}{x^2 + \alpha x \sqrt{2} + \alpha^2} \right| + 2 \arctan \left( \frac{\alpha x \sqrt{2}}{\alpha^2 - x^2} \right) \right\} \quad [ab > 0] \]
   \[ = -\frac{1}{4b\alpha'} \left\{ \ln \left| \frac{(x + \alpha')}{x - \alpha'} \right| - 2 \arctan \left( \frac{x}{\alpha'} \right) \right\} \quad [ab < 0] \]
   [see 4.2.7.1.4]

8. \[ \int \frac{x^2dx}{a^4 + x^4} = -\frac{1}{4a\sqrt{2}} \ln \left| \frac{x^2 + ax \sqrt{2} + a^2}{x^2 - ax \sqrt{2} + a^2} \right| + \frac{1}{2a\sqrt{2}} \arctan \left( \frac{ax \sqrt{2}}{a^2 - x^2} \right) \]
   [special case of 4.2.7.1.7]

9. \[ \int \frac{x^2dx}{a^4 - x^4} = \frac{1}{4a} \ln \left| \frac{a + x}{a - x} \right| - \frac{1}{2a} \arctan \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \]
   [special case of 4.2.7.1.7]
Chapter 4  Indefinite Integrals of Algebraic Functions

10. \( \int \frac{dx}{x (a + bx^4)} = \frac{1}{a} \ln|x| - \frac{1}{4a} \ln|a + bx^4| \)

11. \( \int \frac{dx}{x^2 (a + bx^4)} = -\frac{1}{ax} - \frac{b}{a} \int \frac{x^2 \, dx}{a + bx^4} \)

12. \( \int \frac{x^n \, dx}{(a + bx^4)^m} = \frac{x^{n+1}}{4a(m-1)(a + bx^4)^{m-1}} + \frac{(4m-n-5)}{4a(m-1)} \int \frac{x^n \, dx}{(a + bx^4)^{m-1}} \)

\[= \frac{x^{n-3}}{(n + 1 - 4m) b (a + bx^4)^{m-1}} - \frac{(n-3) a}{b (n + 1 - 4m)} \int \frac{x^{n-4} \, dx}{(a + bx^4)^m} \]

[general reduction formula]

13. \( \int \frac{dx}{x^n (a + bx^4)^m} = -\frac{1}{(n-1) ax^{n-1} (a + bx^4)^{m-1}} - \frac{b(4m+n-5)}{(n-1) a} \int \frac{dx}{x^{n-4} (a + bx^4)^m} \)

[general reduction formula: \( n \neq 1 \)]

14. \( \int \frac{dx}{x (a + bx^4)^m} = \frac{1}{a} \int \frac{dx}{x (a + bx^4)^{m-1}} - \frac{b}{a} \int \frac{x^3 \, dx}{(a + bx^4)^m} \)

[general reduction formula: case \( n = 1 \) in 4.2.7.1.12]

4.3 NONRATIONAL ALGEBRAIC FUNCTIONS

4.3.1 Integrands Containing \( a + bx^k \) and \( \sqrt{x} \)

4.3.1.1

1. \( \int x^{n/2} \, dx = \frac{2}{n+2} x^{(n+2)/2} \quad [n = 0, 1, \ldots] \)

2. \( \int \frac{dx}{x^{n/2}} = -\frac{2}{(n-2) x^{(n-2)/2}} \quad [n = 0, 1, \ldots] \)

4.3.1.2

1. \( \int \frac{dx}{x^{1/2} (a + bx)} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{ab}} \arctan \left( \left( \frac{bx}{a} \right)^{1/2} \right) \quad [ab > 0] \)

\[= \frac{1}{i \sqrt{ab}} \ln \left| a - bx + 2i \sqrt{ab} x \right| \quad , \quad [ab < 0] \]

2. \( \int \frac{dx}{x^{1/2} (a + bx)^2} = \frac{x^{1/2}}{a (a + bx)} + \frac{1}{2a} \int \frac{dx}{x^{1/2} (a + bx)} \)
3. \[\int \frac{dx}{x^{1/2} (a + bx)^3} = x^{1/2} \left\{ \frac{1}{2a (a + bx)^2} + \frac{3}{4a^2 (a + bx)} \right\} + \frac{3}{8a^2} \int \frac{dx}{x^{1/2} (a + bx)}\]

4. \[\int \frac{x^{1/2} dx}{a + bx} = \frac{2x^{1/2}}{b} - \frac{a}{b} \int \frac{dx}{x^{1/2} (a + bx)}\]

5. \[\int \frac{x^{1/2} dx}{(a + bx)^2} = - \frac{x^{1/2}}{b(a + bx)} + \frac{1}{2b} \int \frac{dx}{x^{1/2} (a + bx)}\]

6. \[\int \frac{x^{1/2} dx}{(a + bx)^3} = x^{1/2} \left\{ \frac{1}{2b(a + bx)^2} + \frac{1}{4ab(a + bx)} \right\} + \frac{1}{8ab} \int \frac{dx}{x^{1/2} (a + bx)}\]

7. \[\int \frac{x^{3/2} dx}{a + bx} = 2x^{1/2} \left\{ \frac{x}{3b} - \frac{a}{b^2} \right\} + \frac{a^2}{b^2} \int \frac{dx}{x^{1/2} (a + bx)}\]

8. \[\int \frac{x^{(2m+1)/2} dx}{(a + bx)} = 2x^{1/2} \sum_{k=0}^{m} (-1)^k \frac{a^k x^{m-k}}{(2m - 2k + 1) b^{k+1}} + (-1)^{m+1} \frac{a^{m+1}}{b^{m+1}} \int \frac{dx}{x^{1/2} (a + bx)}\]

9. \[\int \frac{x^{3/2} dx}{(a + bx)^2} = \frac{2x^{3/2}}{b(a + bx)} - \frac{3a}{b} \int \frac{x^{1/2} dx}{(a + bx)^2}\]

10. \[\int \frac{x^{3/2} dx}{(a + bx)^3} = - \frac{2x^{3/2}}{b(a + bx)^2} + \frac{3a}{b} \int \frac{x^{1/2} dx}{(a + bx)^3}\]

11. \[\int \frac{x^{5/2} dx}{a + bx} = 2x^{1/2} \left( \frac{x^2}{5b} - \frac{ax}{3b^2} + \frac{a^2}{b^3} \right) - \frac{a^3}{b^3} \int \frac{dx}{x^{1/2} (a + bx)}\]

12. \[\int \frac{x^{5/2} dx}{(a + bx)^2} = \frac{2x^{1/2}}{(a + bx)} \left( \frac{x^2}{3b} - \frac{5ax}{3b^2} \right) + \frac{5a^2}{b^2} \int \frac{x^{1/2} dx}{(a + bx)^2}\]

13. \[\int \frac{x^{5/2} dx}{(a + bx)^3} = \frac{2x^{1/2}}{b} \left( \frac{x^2}{b} + \frac{5ax}{b^2} \right) - \frac{15a^2}{b^2} \int \frac{x^{1/2} dx}{(a + bx)^3}\]

14. \[\int \frac{dx}{x^{1/2} (a + bx)^2} = \frac{x^{1/2}}{a(a + bx)} + \frac{1}{2a} \int \frac{dx}{x^{1/2} (a + bx)}\]

15. \[\int \frac{dx}{x^{1/2} (a + bx)^3} = x^{1/2} \left\{ \frac{1}{2a(a + bx)^2} + \frac{3}{4a^2 (a + bx)} \right\} + \frac{3}{8a^2} \int \frac{dx}{x^{1/2} (a + bx)}\]

16. \[\int \frac{dx}{x^{3/2} (a + bx)} = - \frac{2}{ax^{1/2}} - \frac{2}{a^{1/2}} \left( \frac{b}{a} \right)^{1/2} \arctan \left[ \left( \frac{bx}{a} \right)^{1/2} \right]\]
17. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^{3/2}(a + bx)^3} = - \frac{(2a + 3bx)}{a^2x^{1/2}(a + bx)} - \frac{3}{a^2} \left( \frac{b}{a} \right)^{1/2} \arctan \left( \frac{bx}{a} \right)^{1/2} \]

18. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^{3/2}(a + bx)^3} = - \frac{(8a^2 + 25abx + 15b^2x^2)}{4a^3x^{1/2}(a + bx)^2} - \frac{15}{4a^3} \left( \frac{b}{a} \right)^{1/2} \arctan \left( \frac{bx}{a} \right)^{1/2} \]

### 4.3.1.3

Notation: \( \alpha = (a/b)^{1/4} \), \( \alpha' = (-a/b)^{1/4} \)

1. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^{1/2}(a + bx^2)} = \frac{1}{b\alpha^2\sqrt{2}} \left\{ \ln \left| \frac{x + \alpha\sqrt{2x} + \alpha^2}{(a + bx^2)^{1/2}} \right| + \arctan \left( \frac{\alpha\sqrt{2x}}{\alpha^2 - x} \right) \right\} \quad \left[ \frac{a}{b} > x^2 > 0 \right] \]

\[ = \frac{1}{2b\alpha^3} \left\{ \ln \left| \alpha' - x^{1/2} \right| - 2 \arctan \left( \frac{x^{1/2}}{\alpha'} \right) \right\} \quad \left[ -\frac{a}{b} > x^2 < 0 \right] \]

2. \[ \int \frac{x^{1/2}dx}{a + bx^2} = \frac{1}{b\alpha\sqrt{2}} \left\{ -\ln \left| \frac{x + \alpha\sqrt{2x} + \alpha^2}{(a + bx^2)^{1/2}} \right| + \arctan \left( \frac{\alpha\sqrt{2x}}{\alpha^2 - x} \right) \right\} \quad \left[ \frac{a}{b} > x^2 > 0 \right] \]

\[ = \frac{1}{2b\alpha'} \left\{ \ln \left| \alpha' - x^{1/2} \right| + 2 \arctan \left( \frac{x^{1/2}}{\alpha'} \right) \right\} \quad \left[ -\frac{a}{b} > x^2 < 0 \right] \]

3. \[ \int \frac{x^{3/2}dx}{a + bx^2} = \frac{2x^{1/2}}{b} - \frac{a}{b} \int \frac{dx}{x^{1/2}(a + bx^2)} \]

4. \[ \int \frac{x^{5/2}dx}{a + bx^2} = \frac{2x^{3/2}}{3b} - \frac{a}{b} \int \frac{x^{1/2}dx}{a + bx^2} \]

5. \[ \int \frac{x^{1/2}dx}{(a + bx^2)^{3/2}} = \frac{x^{3/2}}{2a(a + bx^2)} + \frac{1}{4a} \int \frac{x^{1/2}dx}{(a + bx^2)} \]

6. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^{1/2}(a + bx^2)^{3/2}} = \frac{x^{1/2}}{2a(a + bx^2)} + \frac{3}{4a} \int \frac{dx}{x^{1/2}(a + bx^2)} \]

7. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^{1/2}(a + bx^2)^3} = \frac{1}{4a(a + bx^2)^2} + \frac{7}{16a^2(a + bx^2)} + \frac{21}{32a^3} \int \frac{dx}{x^{1/2}(a + bx^2)} \]

### 4.3.2 Integrands Containing \((a + bx)^{1/2}\)

#### 4.3.2.1

1. \[ \int \frac{dx}{(a + bx)^{1/2}} = \frac{2}{b} (a + bx)^{1/2} \]
2. \[ \int \frac{x}{(a + bx)^{1/2}} \, dx = \frac{2}{b^2} (a + bx)^{1/2} \left\{ \frac{1}{3} (a + bx) - a \right\} \]

3. \[ \int \frac{x^2}{(a + bx)^{1/2}} \, dx = \frac{2}{b^3} (a + bx)^{3/2} \left\{ \frac{1}{5} (a + bx)^2 - \frac{2}{3} a (a + bx) + a^2 \right\} \]

4. \[ \int \frac{dx}{(a + bx)^{3/2}} = -\frac{2}{b(a + bx)^{1/2}} \]

5. \[ \int \frac{x \, dx}{(a + bx)^{3/2}} = \frac{2(2a + bx)}{b^2 (a + bx)^{1/2}} \]

6. \[ \int \frac{x^2 \, dx}{(a + bx)^{3/2}} = \frac{2}{b^3 (a + bx)^{1/2}} \left( \frac{1}{3} (a + bx)^2 - 2a (a + bx) - a^2 \right) \]

7. \[ \int \frac{x^3 \, dx}{(a + bx)^{3/2}} = \frac{2(b^3 x^3 - 2ab^2 x^2 + 8a^2 bx + 16a^3)}{5b^4 (a + bx)^{1/2}} \]

8. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x(a + bx)^{1/2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{a}} \ln \left| \frac{(a + bx)^{1/2} - \sqrt{a}}{(a + bx)^{1/2} + \sqrt{a}} \right| \quad [a > 0] \]

\[ = \frac{2}{\sqrt{-a}} \arctan \left( \frac{(a + bx)^{1/2}}{\sqrt{-a}} \right) \quad [a < 0] \]

9. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x(a + bx)^{3/2}} = \frac{2}{a(a + bx)^{1/2}} + \frac{1}{a} \int \frac{dx}{x(a + bx)^{1/2}} \]

10. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x(a + bx)^{3/2}} = \frac{2}{a(a + bx)^{1/2}} + \frac{1}{a^2} \int \frac{dx}{x(a + bx)^{1/2}} \]

11. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^n (a + bx)^{1/2}} = -\frac{(a + bx)^{1/2}}{(n - 1) ax^{n-1} - \frac{(2n - 3)}{(2n - 2)} \left( \frac{b}{a} \right)} \int \frac{dx}{x^{n-1} (a + bx)^{1/2}} \]

12. \[ (a + bx)^{1/2} \, dx = \frac{2}{3b} (a + bx)^{3/2} \]

13. \[ (a + bx)^{3/2} \, dx = \frac{2}{5b} (a + bx)^{5/2} \]

14. \[ (a + bx)^{n/2} \, dx = \frac{2(a + bx)^{(n+2)/2}}{b (n + 2)} \]

15. \[ x (a + bx)^{1/2} \, dx = \frac{2}{b^2} \left\{ \frac{1}{5} (a + bx)^{5/2} - \frac{a}{3} (a + bx)^{3/2} \right\} \]
16. \[ \int x (a + bx)^{3/2} \, dx = \frac{2}{b^2} \left\{ \frac{1}{7} (a + bx)^{7/2} - \frac{a}{5} (a + bx)^{5/2} \right\} \]

17. \[ \int \frac{(a + bx)^{1/2}}{x} \, dx = 2 (a + bx)^{1/2} + a \int \frac{dx}{x (a + bx)^{1/2}} \]

18. \[ \int \frac{(a + bx)^{3/2}}{x} \, dx = \frac{2}{3} (a + bx)^{3/2} + 2a (a + bx)^{3/2} + a^2 \int \frac{dx}{x (a + bx)^{1/2}} \]

19. \[ \int \frac{(a + bx)^{1/2}}{x^2} \, dx = -\frac{(a + bx)^{1/2}}{x} + \frac{b}{2} \int \frac{dx}{x (a + bx)^{1/2}} \]

20. \[ \int \frac{(a + bx)^{1/2}}{x^3} \, dx = -\frac{(2a + bx)(a + bx)^{1/2}}{4ax^2} - \frac{b^2}{8a} \int \frac{dx}{x (a + bx)^{1/2}} \]

21. \[ \int \frac{(a + bx)^{(2m-1)/2}}{x^n} \, dx = -\frac{(a + bx)^{(2m+1)/2}}{(n-1)ax^{n-1}} + \frac{(2m - 2n + 3)}{2(n-1)} \left( \frac{b}{a} \right) \]
\[ \times \int \frac{(a + bx)^{(2m-1)/2}}{x^{n-1}} \, dx \quad [n \neq 1] \]

4.3.3 Integrands Containing \((a + cx^2)^{1/2}\)

\[ I_1 = \int \frac{dx}{(a + cx^2)^{1/2}}, \]

where

\[ I_1 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{c}} \ln \left| x \sqrt{c} + (a + cx^2)^{1/2} \right| \quad [c > 0] \]
\[ = \frac{1}{\sqrt{-c}} \arcsin \left( x \sqrt{\frac{-c}{a}} \right) \quad [c < 0, a > 0] \]

\[ I_2 = \int \frac{dx}{x (a + cx^2)^{1/2}}, \]

where

\[ I_2 = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{a}} \ln \left| \frac{(a + cx^2)^{1/2} - \sqrt{a}}{(a + cx^2)^{1/2} + \sqrt{a}} \right| \quad [a > 0, c > 0] \]
\[ = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{a}} \ln \left| \frac{\sqrt{a} - (a + cx^2)^{1/2}}{\sqrt{a} + (a + cx^2)^{1/2}} \right| \quad [a > 0, c < 0] \]
\[ = \frac{1}{\sqrt{-a}} \arccsc \left( x \sqrt{\frac{-c}{a}} \right) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{-a}} \arccos \left( \frac{1}{x} \sqrt{\frac{-a}{c}} \right) \quad [a < 0, c > 0] \]
4.3 Nonrational Algebraic Functions

4.3.3.1

1. \( \int (a + cx^2)^{3/2} \, dx = \frac{1}{4}x (a + cx^2)^{3/2} + \frac{3}{8}ax (a + cx^2)^{1/2} + \frac{3}{8}a^2I_1 \)

2. \( \int (a + cx^2)^{1/2} \, dx = \frac{1}{2}x (a + cx^2)^{1/2} + \frac{1}{2}aI_1 \)

3. \( \int \frac{dx}{(a + cx^2)^{1/2}} = I_1 \)

4. \( \int \frac{dx}{(a + cx^2)^{3/2}} = \frac{x}{a(a + cx^2)^{1/2}} \)

5. \( \int \frac{dx}{(a + cx^2)^{(2n+1)/2}} = \frac{1}{a^n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \frac{(-1)^k}{2k+1} \left( \begin{array}{c} n \\ 1 \end{array} \right) \frac{c^k x^{2k+1}}{(a + cx^2)^{(2k+1)/2}} \)

6. \( \int \frac{x \, dx}{(a + cx^2)^{(2n+1)/2}} = -\frac{1}{(2n-1) c(a + cx^2)^{(2n-1)/2}} \)

7. \( \int \frac{x^2 \, dx}{(a + cx^2)^{(2n+1)/2}} = \frac{1}{a^{n-1}} \sum_{k=0}^{n-2} \frac{(-1)^k}{2k+3} \left( \begin{array}{c} n \\ 2 \end{array} \right) \frac{c^k x^{2k+3}}{(a + cx^2)^{(2k+3)/2}} \)

8. \( \int \frac{x^3 \, dx}{(a + cx^2)^{(2n+1)/2}} = -\frac{1}{(2n-3) c^2(a + cx^2)^{(2n-3)/2}} + \frac{a}{(2n-1) c^2(a + cx^2)^{(2n-1)/2}} \)

9. \( \int x^2 (a + cx^2)^{1/2} \, dx = \frac{1}{4c}x (a + cx^2)^{3/2} - \frac{1}{8c}ax (a + cx^2)^{1/2} - \frac{1}{8c}a^2I_1 \)

10. \( \int \frac{x^2}{(a + cx^2)^{1/2}} \, dx = \frac{1}{2c}x (a + cx^2)^{1/2} - \frac{1}{2c}aI_1 \)

11. \( \int \frac{x^2}{(a + cx^2)^{3/2}} \, dx = \frac{-x}{c(a + cx^2)^{1/2}} + \frac{1}{c}I_1 \)

12. \( \int \frac{x^2}{(a + cx^2)^{5/2}} \, dx = \frac{x^3}{3a(a + cx^2)^{3/2}} \)

13. \( \int \frac{(a + cx^2)^{3/2}}{x} \, dx = \frac{1}{3} (a + cx^2)^{3/2} + a (a + cx^2)^{1/2} + a^2I_2 \)

14. \( \int \frac{(a + cx^2)^{1/2}}{x} \, dx = (a + cx^2)^{1/2} + aI_2 \)
15. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x (a + cx^2)^{1/2}} = I_2 \]

16. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x (a + cx^2)^{(2n+1)/2}} = \frac{1}{a^n I_2} + \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \frac{1}{(2k + 1) a^{n-k} (a + cx^2)^{(2k+1)/2}} \]

17. \[ \int \frac{(a + cx^2)^{1/2}}{x^2} \, dx = - \frac{(a + cx^2)^{1/2}}{x} + cI_1 \]

18. \[ \int \frac{(a + cx^2)^{3/2}}{x} \, dx = - \frac{(a + cx^2)^{3/2}}{x} + \frac{3}{2} cx (a + cx^2)^{1/2} + \frac{3}{2} aI_1 \]

19. \[ \int \frac{(a + cx^2)^{1/2}}{x^3} \, dx = - \frac{(a + cx^2)^{1/2}}{2x^2} + \frac{c}{2} I_2 \]

20. \[ \int \frac{(a + cx^2)^{3/2}}{x^3} \, dx = - \frac{(a + cx^2)^{3/2}}{2x^2} + \frac{3}{2} c (a + cx^2)^{1/2} + \frac{3}{2} acI_2 \]

21. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^3 (a + cx^2)^{1/2}} = - \frac{(a + cx^2)^{1/2}}{2ax^2} - \frac{c}{2a} I_2 \]

22. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^3 (a + cx^2)^{3/2}} = - \frac{1}{2ax^2 (a + cx^2)^{1/2}} - \frac{3c}{2a^2 (a + cx^2)^{1/2}} - \frac{3c}{2a^2} I_2 \]

4.3.4 Integrands Containing \((a + bx + cx^2)^{1/2}\)
Notation: \(R = a + bx + cx^2, \Delta = 4ac - b^2\)

4.3.4.1

1. \[ \int \frac{dx}{R^{1/2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{c}} \ln \left| 2 (cR)^{1/2} + 2cx + b \right| \quad [c > 0] \]

2. \[ \int \frac{x \, dx}{R^{1/2}} = \frac{R^{1/2}}{c} - \frac{b}{2c} \int \frac{dx}{R^{1/2}} \]
3. \[ \int \frac{x^2}{R^{1/2}} \, dx = \left( \frac{x}{2c} - \frac{3b}{4c^2} \right) R^{1/2} + \left( \frac{3b^2}{8c^2} - \frac{a}{2c} \right) \int \frac{dx}{R^{1/2}} \]

4. \[ \int \frac{x^3}{R^{1/2}} = \left( \frac{x^2}{3c} - \frac{5bx}{12c^2} + \frac{5b^2}{8c^3} - \frac{2a}{3c^2} \right) R^{1/2} - \left( \frac{5b^3}{16c^3} - \frac{3ab}{4c^2} \right) \int \frac{dx}{R^{1/2}} \]

5. \[ \int \frac{dx}{R^{1/2}} = \left( \frac{2cx + b}{4c} \right) R^{1/2} + \frac{\Delta}{8c} \int \frac{dx}{R^{1/2}} \]

6. \[ \int xR^{1/2} = \frac{R^{3/2}}{3c} - \frac{2cx + b}{8c^2} \int \frac{dx}{R^{1/2}} \]

7. \[ \int x^2 R^{1/2} \, dx = \left( \frac{x}{4c} - \frac{5b}{24c^2} \right) R^{3/2} + \left( \frac{5b^2}{16c^2} - \frac{a}{4c} \right) \frac{(2cx + b) R^{1/2}}{4c} \]

\[ + \left( \frac{5b^2}{16c^2} - \frac{a}{4c} \right) \frac{\Delta}{8c} \int \frac{dx}{R^{1/2}} \]

8. \[ \int R^{3/2} = \left( \frac{R}{8c} + \frac{3\Delta}{64c^2} \right)(2cx + b)R^{1/2} + \frac{3\Delta^2}{128c^3} \int \frac{dx}{R^{1/2}} \]

9. \[ \int xR^{3/2} = \frac{R^{5/2}}{5c} - (2cx + b) \left( \frac{b}{16c^2} R^{3/2} + \frac{3\Delta b}{128c^3} R^{1/2} \right) - \frac{3\Delta^2 b}{256c^3} \int \frac{dx}{R^{1/2}} \]

10. \[ \int \frac{dx}{xR^{1/2}} = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{a}} \ln \left| \frac{2a + bx + 2(aR)^{1/2}}{x} \right| \quad [a > 0] \]

\[ = \frac{1}{\sqrt{-a}} \arcsin \left( \frac{2a + bx}{x (b^2 - 4ac)^{1/2}} \right) \quad [a < 0, \Delta < 0] \]

\[ = \frac{1}{\sqrt{-a}} \arctan \left( \frac{2a + bx}{2\sqrt{-aR^{1/2}}} \right) \quad [a < 0] \]

\[ = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{-a}} \arcsinh \left( \frac{2a + bx}{x \Delta^{1/2}} \right) \quad [a < 0, \Delta > 0] \]

\[ = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{a}} \arctanh \left( \frac{2a + bx}{2\sqrt{aR^{1/2}}} \right) \quad [a > 0] \]

\[ = \frac{1}{\sqrt{a}} \ln \left| \frac{x}{2a + bx} \right| \quad [a > 0, \Delta = 0] \]

\[ = -\frac{2}{bx} \left( bx + cx^2 \right)^{1/2} \quad [a = 0, b \neq 0] \]
11. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^{R(2n+1)/2}} = \frac{1}{(2n - 1) a R^{(2n-1)/2}} - \frac{b}{2a} \int \frac{dx}{R^{(2n+1)/2}} + \frac{1}{a} \int \frac{dx}{x R^{(2n-1)/2}} \]

12. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^m R^{(2n+1)/2}} = - \frac{1}{(m - 1) ax^{m-1} R^{(2n-1)/2}} - \frac{(2n + 2m - 3) b}{2 (m - 1) a} \]
\[ \times \int \frac{dx}{x^{m-1} R^{(2n+1)/2}} - \frac{(2n + m - 2) c}{(m - 1) a} \int \frac{dx}{x^{m-2} R^{(2n+1)/2}} \]

13. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^2 R^{1/2}} = - \frac{R^{1/2}}{ax} - \frac{b}{2a} \int \frac{dx}{x R^{1/2}} \]

14. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^2 (bx + cx^2)^{1/2}} = \frac{2}{3} \left( - \frac{1}{2bx^2} + \frac{2c}{b^2x^2} \right) (bx + cx^2)^{1/2} \]

15. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^3 R^{1/2}} = \left( - \frac{1}{2ax^2} + \frac{3b}{4a^2x} \right) R^{1/2} + \left( \frac{3b^2}{8a^2} - \frac{c}{2a} \right) \int \frac{dx}{x R^{1/2}} \]

16. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x^3 (bx + cx^2)^{1/2}} = \frac{2}{5} \left( - \frac{1}{bx^2} + \frac{4c}{3b^2x^2} - \frac{8c^2}{3b^3x} \right) (bx + cx^2)^{1/2} \]
5.1 BASIC RESULTS

5.1.1 Indefinite Integrals Involving $e^{ax}$

5.1.1.1

1. $\int e^x \, dx = e^x$
2. $\int e^{-x} \, dx = -e^{-x}$

3. $\int e^{ax} \, dx = \frac{1}{a} e^{ax}$
4. $\int a^x \, dx = \int e^{x \ln a} \, dx = \frac{a^x}{\ln a}$

5.1.1.2

As in 5.1.1.4, when $e^{ax}$ occurs in an integrand it should be replaced by $a^x = e^{x \ln a}$ (see 2.2.1).

5.1.2 Integrals Involving the Exponential Functions Combined with Rational Functions of $x$

5.1.2.1 Positive Powers of $x$

1. $\int xe^{ax} \, dx = e^{ax} \left( \frac{x}{a} - \frac{1}{a^2} \right)$

2. $\int x^2 e^{ax} \, dx = e^{ax} \left( \frac{x^2}{a} - \frac{2x}{a^2} + \frac{2}{a^3} \right)$
3. \( \int x^3e^{ax}dx = e^{ax}\left(\frac{x^3}{a} - \frac{3x^2}{a^2} + \frac{6x}{a^3} - \frac{6}{a^4}\right) \)

4. \( \int x^4e^{ax}dx = e^{ax}\left(\frac{x^4}{a} - \frac{4x^3}{a^2} + \frac{12x^2}{a^3} - \frac{24x}{a^4} + \frac{24}{a^5}\right) \)

5. \( \int x^m e^{ax}dx = \frac{x^m e^{ax}}{a} - \frac{m}{a} \int x^{m-1}e^{ax}dx \)

6. \( \int P_m(x)e^{ax}dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{a} \sum_{k=0}^{m} (-1)^k \frac{P^{(k)}(x)}{a^k} \),

where \( P_m(x) \) is a polynomial in \( x \) of degree \( m \) and \( P^{(k)}(x) \) is the \( k \)'th derivative of \( P_m(x) \) with respect to \( x \).

5.1.2.2
The **exponential integral** function \( Ei(x) \), defined by

1. \( Ei(x) = \int \frac{e^x}{x} dx \),

is a transcendental function with the series representation

2. \( Ei(x) = \ln|x| + \frac{x}{1!} + \frac{x^2}{2 \cdot 2!} + \frac{x^3}{3 \cdot 3!} + \cdots + \frac{x^k}{k \cdot k!} + \cdots \ [x^2 < \infty] \).

When \( Ei(x) \) is tabulated, 5.1.2.2.1, with \( x \) replaced by the dummy variable \( t \), is integrated over \( -\infty < t \leq x \). The principal value of the integral is used and to the series 5.1.2.2.2 must then be added the Euler constant \( \gamma \).

5.1.2.3 Negative Powers of \( x \)

1. \( \int \frac{e^{ax}}{x} dx = Ei(ax) \)

2. \( \int \frac{e^{ax}}{x^2} dx = -\frac{e^{ax}}{x} + aEi(ax) \)

3. \( \int \frac{e^{ax}}{x^3} dx = -\frac{e^{ax}}{2x^2} - \frac{ae^{ax}}{2x} + \frac{a^2}{2} Ei(ax) \)

4. \( \int \frac{e^{ax}}{x^n} dx = -\frac{e^{ax}}{(n-1)x^{n-1}} - \frac{ae^{ax}}{(n-1)(n-2)x^{n-2}} - \cdots - \frac{a^{n-2}e^{ax}}{(n-1)!x} + \frac{a^{n-1}}{(n-1)!} Ei(ax) \)
5.1.2.4 Integrands Involving \((a + be^{mx})^{-1}\)

1. \[
\int \frac{dx}{1 + e^x} = \ln \left( \frac{e^x}{1 + e^x} \right) = x - \ln (1 + e^x)
\]

2. \[
\int \frac{dx}{a + be^{mx}} = \frac{1}{am} \left[ mx - \ln (a + be^{mx}) \right]
\]

3. \[
\int \frac{e^{mx}}{a + be^{mx}} \, dx = \frac{1}{mb} \ln (a + be^{mx})
\]

4. \[
\int \frac{e^{2mx}}{a + be^{mx}} \, dx = \frac{1}{mb} e^{mx} - \frac{a}{mb^2} \ln (a + be^{mx})
\]

5. \[
\int \frac{e^{3mx}}{a + be^{mx}} \, dx = \frac{1}{2mb} e^{2mx} - \frac{a}{mb^2} e^{mx} + \frac{a^2}{mb^3} \ln (a + be^{mx})
\]

5.1.2.5 Integrands Involving \(xe^{ax}(1 + ax)^{-m}\)

1. \[
\int \frac{xe^x \, dx}{(1 + x)^2} = \frac{e^x}{1 + x}
\]

2. \[
\int \frac{xe^{ax} \, dx}{(1 + ax)^2} = \frac{e^{ax}}{a^2 (1 + ax)}
\]

5.1.3 Integrands Involving the Exponential Functions Combined with Trigonometric Functions

5.1.3.1

1. \[
\int e^{ax} \sin bx \, dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{a^2 + b^2} (a \sin bx - b \cos bx)
\]

2. \[
\int e^{ax} \sin^2 bx \, dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{a(a^2 + 4b^2)} (a^2 \sin^2 bx - 2ab \sin bx \cos bx + 2b^2)
\]

3. \[
\int e^{ax} \sin^3 bx \, dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{(a^2 + b^2)(a^2 + 9b^2)} \times \{ a \sin bx \left[ (a^2 + b^2) \sin^2 bx + 6b^2 \right] \\
- 3b \cos bx \left[ (a^2 + b^2) \sin^2 bx + 2b^2 \right] \}
\]

4. \[
\int e^{ax} \cos bx \, dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{a^2 + b^2} (a \cos bx + b \sin bx)
\]

5. \[
\int e^{ax} \cos^2 bx \, dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{a(a^2 + 4b^2)} (a^2 \cos^2 bx + 2ab \sin bx \cos bx + 2b^2)
\]
6. \[\int e^{ax} \cos bx \, dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{(a^2 + b^2) (a^2 + 9b^2)} \]
\[\times \left[ a \left( a^2 + b^2 \right) \cos^2 bx + 3b \left( a^2 + b^2 \right) \sin bx \cos^2 bx + 6ab^2 \cos bx + 6b^3 \sin bx \right] \]

7. \[\int e^{ax} \sin^n bx \, dx = \frac{1}{a^2 + n^2 b^2} \left[ (a \sin bx - nb \cos bx) e^{ax} \sin^{n-1} bx \right] \]
\[+ n(n-1)b^2 \int e^{ax} \sin^{n-2} bx \, dx \]

8. \[\int e^{ax} \cos^n bx \, dx = \frac{1}{a^2 + n^2 b^2} \left[ (a \cos bx + nb \sin bx) e^{ax} \cos^{n-1} bx \right] \]
\[+ n(n-1)b \int e^{ax} \cos^{n-2} bx \, dx \]

As an alternative to using the recurrence relations 5.1.3.1.7 and 8, integrals of this type may be evaluated entirely in terms of exponential functions by substituting either \( \cos bx = \frac{e^{ibx} + e^{-ibx}}{2} \), or \( \sin bx = \frac{e^{ibx} - e^{-ibx}}{2i} \).

For example,
\[\int e^{ax} \cos^2 bx \, dx = \int e^{ax} \left[ \left( e^{ibx} + e^{-ibx} \right) / 2 \right]^2 \, dx \]
\[= \frac{1}{4} \int \left[ e^{(a+i2b)x} + 2e^{ax} + e^{(a-i2b)x} \right] \, dx \]
\[= \frac{e^{ax}}{2a} + \frac{e^{ax}}{4} \left[ \frac{e^{i2bx}}{(a+i2b)} + \frac{e^{-i2bx}}{(a-i2b)} \right] \]
\[= \frac{1}{2a} e^{ax} + \frac{e^{ax}}{2(a^2 + 4b^2)} \left[ a \cos 2bx + 2b \sin 2bx \right], \]
where the arbitrary additive constant of integration has been omitted.

Notice that this method of integration produces a different form of result compared to the one given in 5.1.3.1.5. That the two results are identical can be seen by substituting \( \cos 2bx = 2 \cos^2 bx - 1, \sin 2bx = 2 \sin bx \cos bx \) and then combining the terms.

We remark that 5.1.3.1.2 can be deduced directly from 5.1.3.1.5 and, conversely, by using the fact that
\[\int e^{ax} \left[ \cos^2 bx + \sin^2 bx \right] \, dx = \int e^{ax} \, dx = \frac{1}{a} e^{ax}, \]
so

\[
\int e^{ax} \sin^2 bx \, dx = \frac{1}{a} e^{ax} - \int e^{ax} \cos^2 bx \, dx,
\]

where again the arbitrary additive constant of integration has been omitted.

To evaluate integrals of the form \( \int e^{ax} \sin (bx \pm c) \, dx \) and \( \int e^{ax} \cos (bx \pm c) \, dx \), use the identities

\[
\sin (bx \pm c) = \cos c \sin bx \pm \sin c \cos bx
\]

\[
\cos (bx \pm c) = \cos c \cos bx \mp \sin c \sin bx,
\]

to simplify the integrands and then use 5.1.3.1.1 and 4.

To evaluate integrals of the form \( \int e^{ax} \sin bx \sin cx \, dx \), \( \int e^{ax} \sin bx \cos cx \, dx \), and \( \int e^{ax} \cos bx \cos cx \, dx \), use the identities

\[
\sin bx \sin cx = \frac{1}{2} [\cos (b - c) x - \cos (b + c) x],
\]

\[
\sin bx \cos cx = \frac{1}{2} [\sin (b + c) x + \sin (b - c) x],
\]

\[
\cos bx \cos cx = \frac{1}{2} [\cos (b + c) x + \cos (b - c) x],
\]

to simplify the integrands and then use 5.1.3.1.1 and 4.

9. \( \int xe^{ax} \sin bx \, dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{a^2 + b^2} \left[ (ax - \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a^2 + b^2}) \sin bx - \left( bx - \frac{2ab}{a^2 + b^2} \right) \cos bx \right] \)

10. \( \int xe^{ax} \cos bx \, dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{a^2 + b^2} \left[ (ax - \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a^2 + b^2}) \cos bx + \left( bx - \frac{2ab}{a^2 + b^2} \right) \sin bx \right] \)

11. \( \int x^n e^{ax} \sin bx \, dx = e^{ax} \sum_{k=1}^{n+1} \frac{(-1)^{k+1} n! a^{n-k+1}}{(n-k+1)! (a^2 + b^2)^{k/2}} \sin (bx + kt) \)

12. \( \int x^n e^{ax} \cos bx \, dx = e^{ax} \sum_{k=1}^{n+1} \frac{(-1)^{k+1} n! a^{n-k+1}}{(n-k+1)! (a^2 + b^2)^{k/2}} \cos (bx + kt) \)

where

\[
\sin t = \frac{-b}{(a^2 + b^2)^{1/2}} \quad \text{and} \quad \cos t = \frac{a}{(a^2 + b^2)^{1/2}}.
\]
6.1 COMBINATIONS OF LOGARITHMS AND POLYNOMIALS

6.1.1 The Logarithm

6.1.1.1 Integrals Involving $\ln^m(ax)$

1. $\int \ln x \, dx = x \ln x - x$
2. $\int \ln (ax) \, dx = x \ln(ax) - x$
3. $\int \ln^2 (ax) \, dx = x \ln^2 (ax) - 2x \ln(ax) + 2x$
4. $\int \ln^3 (ax) \, dx = x \ln^3 (ax) - 3x \ln^2 (ax) + 6x \ln(ax) - 6x$
5. $\int \ln^4 (ax) \, dx = x \ln^4 (ax) - 4x \ln^3 (ax) + 12x \ln^2 (ax) - 24x \ln(ax) + 24x$
6. $\int \ln^m (ax) \, dx = x \ln^m (ax) - m \int \ln^{m-1} (ax) \, dx$

$$= \frac{x}{m+1} \sum_{k=0}^{m} (-1)^k (m+1) m (m-1) \cdots (m-k+1) \ln^{m-k} (ax) \quad [m > 0]$$
6.1.2 Integrands Involving Combinations of $\ln(ax)$ and Powers of $x$

6.1.2.1 Integrands Involving $x^m \ln^n(ax)$

1. $\int x \ln (ax) \, dx = \frac{x^2}{2} \ln(ax) - \frac{x^2}{4}$

2. $\int x^2 \ln(ax) \, dx = \frac{x^3}{3} \ln(ax) - \frac{x^3}{9}$

3. $\int x^3 \ln(ax) \, dx = \frac{x^4}{4} \ln(ax) - \frac{x^4}{16}$

4. $\int x^n \ln(ax) \, dx = x^{n+1} \left[ \ln(ax) \frac{n}{n+1} - \frac{1}{(n+1)^2} \right] \quad \mbox{[ } n > 0 \mbox{]}

5. $\int x^n \ln^2(ax) \, dx = x^{n+1} \left[ \ln^2(ax) \frac{n}{n+1} - \frac{2 \ln(ax)}{(n+1)^2} + \frac{2}{(n+1)^3} \right]$

6. $\int x^n \ln^3(ax) \, dx = x^{n+1} \left[ \ln^3(ax) \frac{n}{n+1} - \frac{3 \ln^2(ax)}{(n+1)^2} + \frac{6 \ln(ax)}{(n+1)^3} - \frac{6}{(n+1)^4} \right]$

7. $\int x^n \ln^m(ax) \, dx$

\[ = \frac{x^{n+1}}{m+1} \sum_{k=0}^{m} \frac{(-1)^k (m+1) m (m-1) \cdots (m-k+1) \ln^{m-k}(ax)}{(n+1)^{k+1}} \quad \mbox{[ } n > 0, \ m > 0 \mbox{]}$

6.1.2.2 Integrands Involving $\ln^m(ax)/x^n$

1. $\int \frac{\ln(ax)}{x} \, dx = \frac{1}{2} \{ \ln(ax) \}^2$

2. $\int \frac{\ln(ax)}{x^2} \, dx = -\frac{1}{x} [ \ln(ax) + 1 ]$

3. $\int \frac{\ln(ax)}{x^3} \, dx = -\frac{1}{2x^2} \left[ \ln(ax) + \frac{1}{2} \right]$

4. $\int \frac{\ln^2(ax)}{x} \, dx = \frac{\ln(a^2 x^2)}{3}$

5. $\int \frac{\ln^2(ax)}{x^2} \, dx = -\frac{1}{x} [ \ln(a^2 x^2) + 2 \ln(ax) + 2 ]$
6.1 Combinations of Logarithms and Polynomials

6. \[ \int \frac{\ln^2(ax)}{x^3} \, dx = -\frac{1}{2x^2} \left[ \ln^2(ax) + \ln(ax) + \frac{1}{2} \right] \]

7. \[ \int \frac{\ln^n(ax)}{x^m} \, dx = -\frac{1}{(n+1)x^{m-1}} \sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{(n+1)n(n-1)\cdots(n-k+1)\ln^{n-k}(ax)}{(m-1)^{k+1}} \quad [m > 1] \]

8. \[ \int \frac{\ln^n(ax)}{x} \, dx = \frac{\ln^{n+1}(ax)}{n+1} \]

6.1.2.3 Integrands Involving \([x \ln^m(ax)]^{-1}\)

1. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x \ln(ax)} = \ln|\ln(ax)| \]

2. \[ \int \frac{dx}{x \ln^n(ax)} = -\frac{1}{(m-1)\ln^{m-1}(ax)} \quad [m > 1] \]

6.1 Integrands Involving \((a + bx)^m \ln^n x\)

6.1.3.1 Integrands Involving \((a + bx)^m \ln x\)

1. \[ \int (a + bx) \ln x \, dx = \left[ \frac{(a + bx)^2}{2b} - \frac{a^2}{2b} \right] \ln x - \left( ax + \frac{1}{4} bx^2 \right) \]

2. \[ \int (a + bx)^2 \ln x \, dx = \frac{1}{3b} \left[ (a + bx)^3 - a^3 \right] \ln x - \left( a^2 x + \frac{abx^2}{2} + \frac{b^2 x^3}{9} \right) \]

3. \[ \int (a + bx)^3 \ln x \, dx = \frac{1}{4b} \left[ (a + bx)^4 - a^4 \right] \ln x \]

\[ - \left( a^3 x + \frac{3}{4} a^2 b x^2 + \frac{1}{3} ab^2 x^3 + \frac{1}{16} b^3 x^4 \right) \]

4. \[ \int (a + bx)^m \ln x \, dx = \frac{1}{(m + 1)b} \left[ (a + bx)^{m+1} - a^{m+1} \right] \ln x - \sum_{k=0}^{m} \frac{(m_k) a^{m-k} b^k x^{k+1}}{(k + 1)^2} \]

To integrate expressions of the form \((a + bx)^m \ln(cx)\), use the fact that

\((a + bx)^m \ln(cx) = (a + bx)^m \ln c + (a + bx)^m \ln x\)

to reexpress the integral in terms of 6.1.3.1.1–4.
6.1.3.2 Integrands Involving $\ln x/(a + bx)^m$

1. \[ \int \frac{\ln x \, dx}{(a + bx)^2} = -\ln x \frac{1}{b(a + bx)} + \frac{1}{ab} \ln \left( \frac{x}{a + bx} \right) \]

2. \[ \int \frac{\ln x \, dx}{(a + bx)^3} = \frac{-\ln x}{2b(a + bx)^2} + \frac{1}{2ab(a + bx)} + \frac{1}{2a^2 b} \ln \left( \frac{x}{a + bx} \right) \]

3. \[ \int \frac{\ln x \, dx}{(a + bx)^m} = \frac{1}{b(m - 1)} \left[ -\frac{\ln x}{(a + bx)^{m-1}} + \int \frac{dx}{x(a + bx)^{m-1}} \right] \quad [m > 1] \]

4. \[ \int \frac{\ln x \, dx}{(a + bx)^{1/2}} = \frac{2}{b} \left\{ (\ln x - 2) (a + bx)^{1/2} - 2a^{1/2} \ln \left[ \frac{(a + bx)^{1/2} - a^{1/2}}{x^{1/2}} \right] \right\} \quad [a > 0] \]

\[ = \frac{2}{b} \left\{ (\ln x - 2) (a + bx)^{1/2} - 2 (-a)^{1/2} \arctan \left[ \left( \frac{a + bx}{-a} \right)^{1/2} \right] \right\} \quad [a < 0] \]

To integrate expressions of the form $\ln(cx)/(a + bx)^m$, use the fact that

\[ \ln(cx)/(a + bx)^m = \ln c/(a + bx)^m + \ln x/(a + bx)^m \]

to reexpress the integral in terms of 6.1.3.2.1–4.

6.1.3.3 Integrands Involving $x^m \ln(a + bx)$

1. \[ \int \ln(a + bx) \, dx = \frac{1}{b} (a + bx) \ln(a + bx) - x \]

2. \[ \int x \ln(a + bx) \, dx = \frac{1}{2} \left( x^2 - \frac{a^2}{b^2} \right) \ln(a + bx) - \frac{1}{4} \left( \frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{ax}{b} \right) \]

3. \[ \int x^2 \ln(a + bx) \, dx = \frac{1}{3} \left( x^3 + \frac{a^3}{b^3} \right) \ln(a + bx) - \frac{1}{3} \left( \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{ax^2}{2b} + \frac{a^2 x}{b^2} \right) \]

4. \[ \int x^3 \ln(a + bx) \, dx = \frac{1}{4} \left( x^4 - \frac{a^4}{b^4} \right) \ln(a + bx) - \frac{1}{4} \left( \frac{x^4}{4} - \frac{ax^3}{3b} + \frac{a^2 x^2}{2b^2} - \frac{a^3 x}{b^3} \right) \]

5. \[ \int x^m \ln(a + bx) \, dx = \frac{1}{m + 1} \left[ x^{m+1} - \frac{(-a)^{m+1}}{b^{m+1}} \right] \ln(a + bx) \]

\[ + \frac{1}{m + 1} \sum_{k=1}^{m+1} \frac{(-1)^k x^{m-k+2} a^{k-1}}{(m - k + 2) b^{k-1}} \]
6.1.3.4 Integrands Involving $\ln(a + bx)/x^m$

1. \[ \int \frac{\ln(a + bx)}{x} \, dx = \ln|a| \ln|x| + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{k^2} \left( \frac{bx}{a} \right)^k \quad [|bx| < |a|] \]
   \[ = \frac{1}{2} \ln^2 |bx| + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{k^2} \left( \frac{a}{bx} \right)^2 \quad [|bx| > |a|] \]

2. \[ \int \frac{\ln(a + bx)}{x^2} \, dx = -\ln x - \left( \frac{1}{x} + \frac{b}{a} \right) \ln(a + bx) \]
3. \[ \int \frac{\ln(a + bx)}{x^3} \, dx = \frac{b^2}{2a^2} \ln x + \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{b^2}{a^2} - \frac{1}{x^2} \right) \ln(a + bx) - \frac{b}{2ax} \]

6.1.4 Integrands Involving $\ln(x^2 \pm a^2)$

6.1.4.1

1. \[ \int \ln(x^2 + a^2) \, dx = x \ln(x^2 + a^2) - 2x + 2a \arctan \frac{x}{a} \]
2. \[ \int x \ln(x^2 + a^2) \, dx = \frac{1}{2} \left[ (x^2 + a^2) \ln(x^2 + a^2) - x^2 \right] \]
3. \[ \int x^2 \ln(x^2 + a^2) \, dx = \frac{1}{3} \left[ x^3 \ln(x^2 + a^2) - \frac{2}{3} x^3 + 2a^2 x - 2a^3 \arctan \frac{x}{a} \right] \]
4. \[ \int x^3 \ln(x^2 + a^2) \, dx = \frac{1}{4} \left[ (x^4 - a^4) \ln(x^2 + a^2) - \frac{x^4}{2} + a^2 x^2 \right] \]
5. \[ \int x^{2n} \ln(x^2 + a^2) \, dx = \frac{1}{2n+1} \left\{ x^{2n+1} \ln(x^2 + a^2) + (-1)^n 2a^{2n+1} \arctan \frac{x}{a} \right. \\
   \left. -2 \sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{(-1)^{n-k}}{2k+1} a^{2n-2k+1} x^{2k+1} \right\} \]
6. \[ \int x^{2n+1} \ln(x^2 + a^2) \, dx = \frac{1}{2n+2} \left\{ (x^{2n+2} + (-1)^n a^{2n+2}) \ln(x^2 + a^2) \right. \\
   \left. + \sum_{k=1}^{n+1} \frac{(-1)^{n-k}}{k} a^{2n-2k+2} x^{2k} \right\} \]
7. \[ \int \ln |x^2 - a^2| \, dx = x \ln |x^2 - a^2| - 2x + a \ln \left| \frac{x + a}{x - a} \right| \]
8. \[ \int x \ln |x^2 - a^2| \, dx = \frac{1}{2} \left\{ (x^2 - a^2) \ln |x^2 - a^2| - x^2 \right\} \]

9. \[ \int x^2 \ln |x^2 - a^2| \, dx = \frac{1}{3} \left\{ x^3 \ln |x^2 - a^2| - \frac{2}{3} x^3 - 2a^2 x + a^3 \ln \left| \frac{x + a}{x - a} \right| \right\} \]

10. \[ \int x^3 \ln |x^2 - a^2| \, dx = \frac{1}{4} \left\{ (x^4 - a^4) \ln |x^2 - a^2| - \frac{x^4}{2} - a^2 x^2 \right\} \]

11. \[ \int x^{2n} \ln |x^2 - a^2| \, dx = \frac{1}{2n + 1} \left\{ x^{2n+1} \ln |x^2 - a^2| + a^{2n+1} \ln \left| \frac{x + a}{x - a} \right| - 2 \sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{1}{2k + 1} a^{2n-2k} x^{2k+1} \right\} \]

12. \[ \int x^{2n+1} \ln |x^2 - a^2| \, dx = \frac{1}{2n + 2} \left\{ (x^{2n+2} - a^{2n+2}) \ln |x^2 - a^2| - \sum_{k=1}^{n+1} \frac{1}{k} a^{2n-2k+2} x^{2k} \right\} \]

### 6.1.5 Integrands Involving \( x^m \ln \left[ x + (x^2 \pm a^2)^{1/2} \right] \)

#### 6.1.5.1

1. \[ \int \ln \left[ x + (x^2 + a^2)^{1/2} \right] \, dx = x \ln \left[ x + (x^2 + a^2)^{1/2} \right] - (x^2 + a^2)^{1/2} \]

2. \[ \int x \ln \left[ x + (x^2 + a^2)^{1/2} \right] \, dx = \frac{1}{4} (2x^2 + a^2) \ln \left[ x + (x^2 + a^2)^{1/2} \right] - \frac{1}{4} x (x^2 + a^2)^{1/2} \]

3. \[ \int x^2 \ln \left[ x + (x^2 + a^2)^{1/2} \right] \, dx = \frac{x^3}{3} \ln \left[ x + (x^2 + a^2)^{1/2} \right] - \frac{1}{9} (x^2 + a^2)^{3/2} + \frac{a^2}{3} (x^2 + a^2)^{1/2} \]

4. \[ \int x^3 \ln \left[ x + (x^2 + a^2)^{1/2} \right] \, dx = \frac{1}{32} (8x^4 - 3a^4) \ln \left[ x + (x^2 + a^2)^{1/2} \right] + \frac{1}{32} (3a^2 x - 2x^3) (x^2 + a^2)^{1/2} \]

5. \[ \int \ln \left[ x + (x^2 - a^2)^{1/2} \right] \, dx = x \ln \left[ x + (x^2 - a^2)^{1/2} \right] - (x^2 - a^2)^{1/2} \]
6. \[ \int x \ln\left[x + (x^2 - a^2)^{1/2}\right] \, dx = \frac{1}{4} (2x^2 - a^2) \ln\left[x + (x^2 - a^2)^{1/2}\right] - \frac{1}{4} x (x^2 - a^2)^{1/2} \]

7. \[ \int x^2 \ln\left[x + (x^2 - a^2)^{1/2}\right] \, dx = \frac{x^3}{3} \ln\left[x + (x^2 - a^2)^{1/2}\right] - \frac{1}{9} (x^2 - a^2)^{3/2} - \frac{a^2}{3} (x^2 - a^2)^{1/2} \]

8. \[ \int x^3 \ln\left[x + (x^2 - a^2)^{1/2}\right] \, dx = \frac{1}{32} (8x^4 - 3a^4) \ln\left[x + (x^2 - a^2)^{1/2}\right] - \frac{1}{32} (2x^3 + 3a^2 x) (x^2 - a^2)^{1/2} \]
Chapter 7
Indefinite Integrals of
Hyperbolic Functions

7.1 BASIC RESULTS
7.1.1 Integrands Involving $\sinh(a + bx)$ and $\cosh(a + bx)$

7.1.1.1

1. $\int \sinh(a + bx) \, dx = \frac{1}{b} \cosh(a + bx)$

2. $\int \cosh(a + bx) \, dx = \frac{1}{b} \sinh(a + bx)$

3. $\int \tanh(a + bx) \, dx = \int \frac{\sinh(a + bx)}{\cosh(a + bx)} \, dx = \frac{1}{b} \ln[\cosh(a + bx)]$
   
   \[= \frac{1}{b} \ln[\exp(2a + 2bx) + 1] - x\]

4. $\int \text{sech}(a + bx) \, dx = \int \frac{dx}{\cosh(a + bx)} = \frac{2}{b} \arctan[\exp(a + bx)]$

5. $\int \text{csch}(a + bx) \, dx = \int \frac{dx}{\sinh(a + bx)} = \frac{1}{b} \ln \left| \tanh \frac{1}{2}(a + bx) \right|$
   
   \[= \frac{1}{b} \ln \left| \frac{\exp(a + bx) - 1}{\exp(a + bx) + 1} \right|\]
6. \[ \int \coth(a + bx) \, dx = \int \frac{\cosh(a + bx)}{\sinh(a + bx)} \, dx = \frac{1}{b} \ln|\sinh(a + bx)| \]
   \[ = \frac{1}{b} \exp(2a + 2bx) - 1 - x \]

7.2 INTEGRANDS INVOLVING POWERS OF sinh(bx) OR cosh(bx)

7.2.1 Integrands Involving Powers of sinh(bx)

7.2.1.1

1. \[ \int \sinh(bx) \, dx = \frac{1}{b} \cosh(bx) \]

2. \[ \int \sinh^2(bx) \, dx = \frac{1}{4b} \sinh(2bx) - \frac{1}{2} \]

3. \[ \int \sinh^3(bx) \, dx = \frac{1}{12b} \cosh(3bx) - \frac{3}{4b} \cosh(bx) \]

4. \[ \int \sinh^4(bx) \, dx = \frac{1}{32b} \sinh(4bx) - \frac{1}{4b} \sinh(2bx) + \frac{3}{8} x \]

5. \[ \int \sinh^5(bx) \, dx = \frac{1}{80b} \cosh(5bx) - \frac{5}{48b} \cosh(3bx) + \frac{5}{8b} \cosh(bx) \]

6. \[ \int \sinh^6(bx) \, dx = \frac{1}{192b} \sinh(6bx) - \frac{3}{64b} \sinh(4bx) + \frac{15}{64b} \sinh(2bx) - \frac{5}{16} x \]

To evaluate integrals of the form \( \int \sinh^m(a + bx) \, dx \), make the change of variable \( a + bx = u \), and then use the result

\[ \int \sinh^m(a + bx) \, dx = \frac{1}{b} \int \sinh^m u \, du, \]

together with 7.2.1.1.1–6.

7.2.2 Integrands Involving Powers of cosh(bx)

7.2.2.1

1. \[ \int \cosh(bx) \, dx = \frac{1}{b} \sinh(bx) \]

2. \[ \int \cosh^2(bx) \, dx = \frac{1}{4b} \sinh(2bx) + \frac{x}{2} \]
7.3 Integrands Involving \((a + bx)^m \sinh(cx)\) or \((a + bx)^m \cosh(cx)\)

3. \(\int \cosh^3(bx) \, dx = \frac{1}{12b} \sinh(3bx) + \frac{3}{4b} \sinh(bx)\)

4. \(\int \cosh^4(bx) \, dx = \frac{1}{32b} \sinh(4bx) + \frac{1}{4b} \sinh(2bx) + \frac{3}{8} x\)

5. \(\int \cosh^5(bx) \, dx = \frac{1}{80b} \sinh(5bx) + \frac{5}{48b} \sinh(3bx) + \frac{5}{8b} \sinh(bx)\)

6. \(\int \cosh^6(bx) \, dx = \frac{1}{192b} \sinh(6bx) + \frac{3}{64b} \sinh(4bx) + \frac{15}{64b} \sinh(2bx) + \frac{5}{16} x\)

To evaluate integrals of the form \(\int \cosh^m(a + bx) \, dx\), make the change of variable \(a + bx = u\), and then use the result

\[\int \cosh^m(a + bx) \, dx = \frac{1}{b} \int \cosh^m u \, du,\]

together with 7.2.2.1–6.

7.3 INTEGRANDS INVOLVING \((a + bx)^m \sinh(cx)\) OR \((a + bx)^m \cosh(cx)\)

7.3.1 General Results

7.3.1.1

1. \(\int (a + bx) \sinh(cx) \, dx = \frac{1}{c} (a + bx) \cosh(cx) - \frac{b}{c^2} \sinh(cx)\)

2. \(\int (a + bx)^2 \sinh(cx) \, dx = \frac{1}{c} \left( (a + bx)^2 + \frac{2b^2}{c^2} \right) \cosh(cx) - \frac{2b(a + bx)}{c^2} \sinh(cx)\)

3. \(\int (a + bx)^3 \sinh(cx) \, dx = \left( \frac{a + bx}{c} \right) \left( (a + bx)^2 + \frac{6b^2}{c^2} \right) \cosh(cx)\)

\[\quad - \frac{3b}{c^2} \left( (a + bx)^2 + \frac{2b^2}{c^2} \right) \sinh(cx)\]

4. \(\int (a + bx)^4 \sinh(cx) \, dx = \frac{1}{c} \left( (a + bx)^4 + \frac{12b^2}{c^2} (a + bx)^2 + \frac{24b^4}{c^4} \right) \cosh(cx)\)

\[\quad - \frac{4b(a + bx)}{c^2} \left( (a + bx)^2 + \frac{6b^2}{c^2} \right) \sinh(cx)\]

5. \(\int (a + bx) \cosh(cx) \, dx = \frac{1}{c} (a + bx) \sinh(cx) - \frac{b}{c^2} \cosh(cx)\)
6. \[\int (a + bx)^2 \cosh(cx) \, dx = \frac{1}{c} \left( (a + bx)^2 + \frac{2b^2}{c^2} \right) \sinh(cx) - \frac{2b(a + bx)}{c^2} \cosh(cx)\]

7. \[\int (a + bx)^3 \cosh(cx) \, dx = \left( \frac{a + bx}{c} \right) \left( (a + bx)^2 + \frac{6b^2}{c^2} \right) \sinh(cx) - \frac{3b}{c^2} \left( (a + bx)^2 + \frac{2b^2}{c^2} \right) \cosh(cx)\]

8. \[\int (a + bx)^4 \cosh(cx) \, dx = \frac{1}{c} \left( (a + bx)^4 + \frac{12b^2}{c^2} (a + bx)^2 + \frac{24b^4}{c^2} \right) \sinh(cx) - \frac{4b(a + bx)}{c^2} \left( (a + bx)^2 + \frac{6b^2}{c^2} \right) \cosh(cx)\]

### 7.3.1.2 Special Cases \(a = 0, \ b = c = 1\)

1. \[\int x \sinh x \, dx = x \cosh x - \sinh x\]

2. \[\int x^2 \sinh x \, dx = (x^2 + 2) \cosh x - 2x \sinh x\]

3. \[\int x^3 \sinh x \, dx = (x^3 + 6x) \cosh x - (3x^2 + 6) \sinh x\]

4. \[\int x^4 \sinh x \, dx = (x^4 + 12x^2 + 24) \cosh x - 4x(x^2 + 6) \sinh x\]

5. \[\int x^n \sinh x \, dx = x^n \cosh x - n \int x^{n-1} \cosh x \, dx\]

6. \[\int x \cosh x \, dx = x \sinh x - \cosh x\]

7. \[\int x^2 \cosh x \, dx = (x^2 + 2) \sinh x - 2x \cosh x\]

8. \[\int x^3 \cosh x \, dx = (x^3 + 6x) \sinh x - (3x^2 + 6) \cosh x\]

9. \[\int x^4 \cosh x \, dx = (x^4 + 12x^2 + 24) \sinh x - 4x(x^2 + 6) \cosh x\]

10. \[\int x^n \cosh x \, dx = x^n \sinh x - n \int x^{n-1} \sinh x \, dx\]
7.4 INTEGRANDS INVOLVING $x^m \sinh^n x$ OR $x^m \cosh^n x$

7.4.1 Integrands Involving $x^m \sinh^n x$

7.4.1.1

1. $\int x \sinh^2 x \, dx = \frac{1}{4} x \sinh 2x - \frac{1}{8} \cosh 2x - \frac{1}{4} x^2$

2. $\int x^2 \sinh^2 x \, dx = \frac{1}{4} \left( x^2 + \frac{1}{2} \right) \sinh 2x - \frac{1}{4} x \cosh 2x - \frac{1}{6} x^3$

3. $\int x \sinh^3 x \, dx = \frac{3}{4} \sinh x - \frac{1}{36} \sinh 3x - \frac{3}{4} x \cosh x + \frac{1}{12} x \cosh 3x$

4. $\int x^2 \sinh^3 x \, dx = - \left( \frac{3x^2}{4} + \frac{3}{2} \right) \cosh x + \left( \frac{x^2}{12} + \frac{1}{54} \right) \cosh 3x + \frac{3}{2} x \sinh x - \frac{1}{18} x \sinh 3x$

7.4.2 Integrands Involving $x^m \cosh^n x$

7.4.2.1

1. $\int x \cosh^2 x \, dx = \frac{1}{4} x \sinh 2x - \frac{1}{8} \cosh 2x + \frac{1}{4} x^2$

2. $\int x^2 \cosh^2 x \, dx = \frac{1}{4} \left( x^2 + \frac{1}{2} \right) \sinh 2x - \frac{1}{4} x \cosh 2x + \frac{1}{6} x^3$

3. $\int x \cosh^3 x \, dx = - \frac{3}{4} \cosh x - \frac{1}{36} \cosh 3x + \frac{3}{4} x \sinh x + \frac{1}{12} x \sinh 3x$

4. $\int x^2 \cosh^3 x \, dx = \left( \frac{3x^2}{4} + \frac{3}{2} \right) \sinh x + \left( \frac{x^2}{12} + \frac{1}{54} \right) \sinh 3x - \frac{3}{2} x \cosh x - \frac{1}{18} x \cosh 3x$

7.5 INTEGRANDS INVOLVING $x^m \sinh^{-n} x$ OR $x^m \cosh^{-n} x$

7.5.1 Integrands Involving $x^m \sinh^{-n} x$

7.5.1.1

1. $\int \frac{dx}{\sinh x} = \ln \left| \tanh \frac{x}{2} \right|$

2. $\int \frac{x \, dx}{\sinh x} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(2 - 2^{2k}) B_{2k}}{(2k + 1) (2k)!} x^{2k+1}$ \quad \left[ |x| < \pi \right]$ \quad \text{(see 1.3.1.1)}
3. \[ \int \frac{x^n \, dx}{\sinh x} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \left( \frac{2 - 2^{2k}}{(2k + n)(2k)!} \right) x^{2k+n} \quad |x| < \pi \] (see 1.3.1.1)

4. \[ \int \frac{dx}{\sinh^2 x} = -\coth x \]

5. \[ \int \frac{x \, dx}{\sinh^2 x} = -x \coth x + \ln|\sinh x| \]

6. \[ \int \frac{dx}{\sinh^3 x} = -\cosh x + \frac{1}{2} \ln|\tanh \frac{x}{2}| \]

7. \[ \int \frac{x \, dx}{\sinh^3 x} = -\cosh x + \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{x \, dx}{\sinh x} \]

8. \[ \int \frac{dx}{\sinh^4 x} = \coth x - \frac{1}{3} \coth^3 x \]

7.5.2 Integrands Involving \( x^m \cosh^{-n} x \)

7.5.2.1

1. \[ \int \frac{dx}{\cosh x} = \arctan(\sinh x) = 2 \arctan e^x \]

2. \[ \int \frac{x \, dx}{\cosh x} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \left( \frac{E_{2k}}{(2k + 2)(2k)!} \right) x^{2k+2} \quad |x| < \frac{\pi}{2} \] (see 1.3.1.1)

3. \[ \int \frac{x^n \, dx}{\cosh x} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \left( \frac{E_{2k}}{(2k + n + 1)(2k)!} \right) x^{2k+n+1} \quad |x| < \frac{\pi}{2} \] (see 1.3.1.1)

4. \[ \int \frac{dx}{\cosh^2 x} = \tanh x \]

5. \[ \int \frac{x \, dx}{\cosh^2 x} = x \tanh x - \ln(\cosh x) \]

6. \[ \int \frac{dx}{\cosh^3 x} = \frac{\sinh x}{2 \cosh^2 x} + \frac{1}{2} \arctan(\sinh x) \]

7. \[ \int \frac{x \, dx}{\cosh^3 x} = \frac{x \sinh x}{2 \cosh^2 x} + \frac{1}{2 \cosh x} + \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{x \, dx}{\cosh x} \]

8. \[ \int \frac{dx}{\cosh^4 x} = \tanh x - \frac{1}{3} \tanh^3 x \]
7.6 INTEGRANDS INVOLVING $(1 \pm \cosh x)^{-m}$

7.6.1 Integrands Involving $(1 \pm \cosh x)^{-1}$

7.6.1.1

1. \[ \int \frac{dx}{1 + \cosh x} = \tanh \frac{x}{2} \]
2. \[ \int \frac{dx}{1 - \cosh x} = \coth \frac{x}{2} \]
3. \[ \int \frac{x \, dx}{1 + \cosh x} = x \tanh \frac{x}{2} - 2 \ln \left( \cosh \frac{x}{2} \right) \]
4. \[ \int \frac{x \, dx}{1 - \cosh x} = x \coth \frac{x}{2} - 2 \ln \left| \sinh \frac{x}{2} \right| \]
5. \[ \int \frac{\cosh x \, dx}{1 + \cosh x} = x - \tanh \frac{x}{2} \]
6. \[ \int \frac{\cosh x \, dx}{1 - \cosh x} = \coth \frac{x}{2} - x \]

7.6.2 Integrands Involving $(1 \pm \cosh x)^{-2}$

7.6.2.1

1. \[ \int \frac{dx}{(1 + \cosh x)^2} = \frac{1}{2} \tanh \frac{x}{2} - \frac{1}{6} \tanh^3 \frac{x}{2} \]
2. \[ \int \frac{dx}{(1 - \cosh x)^2} = \frac{1}{2} \coth \frac{x}{2} - \frac{1}{6} \coth^3 \frac{x}{2} \]
3. \[ \int \frac{x \sinh x \, dx}{(1 + \cosh x)^2} = - \frac{x}{\cosh x + 1} + \tanh \frac{x}{2} \]
4. \[ \int \frac{x \sinh x \, dx}{(1 - \cosh x)^2} = - \frac{x}{\cosh x - 1} - \coth \frac{x}{2} \]

7.7 INTEGRANDS INVOLVING $\sinh(ax) \cosh^{-n}x$ OR $\cosh(ax) \sinh^{-n}x$

7.7.1 Integrands Involving $\sinh(ax) \cosh^{-n}x$

7.7.1.1

1. \[ \int \frac{\sinh 2x \, dx}{\cosh^n x} = \left( \frac{2}{2 - n} \right) \cosh^{2-n} x \quad [n \neq 2] \]
2. \[ \int \frac{\sinh 2x}{\cosh^2 x} \, dx = 2 \ln(\cosh x) \quad \text{[case } n = 2 \text{]} \]

3. \[ \int \frac{\sinh 3x}{\cosh^n x} \, dx = \left( \frac{4}{3-n} \right) \cosh^{3-n} x - \left( \frac{1}{1-n} \right) \cosh^{1-n} x \quad [n \neq 1, 3] \]

4. \[ \int \frac{\sinh 3x}{\cosh x} \, dx = 2 \sinh^2 x - \ln(\cosh x) \quad \text{[case } n = 1 \text{]} \]

5. \[ \int \frac{\sinh 3x}{\cosh^3 x} \, dx = -\frac{1}{2} \tanh^2 x + 4 \ln(\cosh x) \quad \text{[case } n = 3 \text{]} \]

### 7.7.2 Integrands Involving \( \cosh(ax) \sinh^{-n} x \)
#### 7.7.2.1

1. \[ \int \frac{\cosh 2x}{\sinh x} \, dx = 2 \cosh x + \ln\left| \tanh \frac{x}{2} \right| \]

2. \[ \int \frac{\cosh 2x}{\sinh^2 x} \, dx = -\coth x + 2x \]

3. \[ \int \frac{\cosh 2x}{\sinh^3 x} \, dx = -\frac{\cosh x}{2 \sinh^2 x} + \frac{3}{2} \ln\left| \tanh \frac{x}{2} \right| \]

4. \[ \int \frac{\cosh 3x}{\sinh^n x} \, dx = \left( \frac{4}{3-n} \right) \sinh^{3-n} x + \left( \frac{1}{1-n} \right) \sinh^{1-n} x \quad [n \neq 1, 3] \]

5. \[ \int \frac{\cosh 3x}{\sinh x} \, dx = 2 \sinh^2 x + \ln |\sinh x| \quad \text{[case } n = 1 \text{]} \]

6. \[ \int \frac{\cosh 3x}{\sinh^2 x} \, dx = -\frac{1}{2} \coth^2 x + 4 \ln |\sinh x| \quad \text{[case } n = 3 \text{]} \]

### 7.8 INTEGRANDS INVOLVING \( \sinh(ax + b) \) AND \( \cosh(cx + d) \)
#### 7.8.1 General Case

#### 7.8.1.1

1. \[ \int \sinh(ax + b) \sinh(cx + d) \, dx = \frac{1}{2(a+c)} \sinh[(a+c)x + b + d] \]

\[ -\frac{1}{2(a-c)} \sinh[(a-c)x + b - d] \quad [a^2 \neq c^2] \]
7.8 Integrands Involving sinh(ax + b) and cosh(cx + d)

2. \[ \int \sinh(ax + b) \cosh(cx + d) \, dx = \frac{1}{2(a + c)} \cosh[(a + c)x + b + d] + \frac{1}{2(a - c)} \cosh[(a - c)x + b - d] \quad [a^2 \neq c^2] \]

3. \[ \int \cosh(ax + b) \cosh(cx + d) \, dx = \frac{1}{2(a + c)} \sinh[(a + c)x + b + d] + \frac{1}{2(a - c)} \sinh[(a - c)x + b - d] \quad [a^2 \neq c^2] \]

7.8.2 Special Case \( a = c \)

7.8.2.1

1. \[ \int \sinh(ax + b) \sinh(ax + d) \, dx = -\frac{1}{2} x \cosh(b - d) + \frac{1}{4a} \sinh(2ax + b + d) \]

2. \[ \int \sinh(ax + b) \cosh(ax + d) \, dx = \frac{1}{2} x \sinh(b - d) + \frac{1}{4a} \cosh(2ax + b + d) \]

3. \[ \int \cosh(ax + b) \cosh(ax + d) \, dx = \frac{1}{2} x \cosh(b - d) + \frac{1}{4a} \sinh(2ax + b + d) \]

7.8.3 Integrands Involving \( \sinh^p x \cosh^q x \)

7.8.3.1

1. \[ \int \frac{\sinh^{2m} x}{\cosh x} \, dx = \sum_{k=1}^{m} \frac{(-1)^{m+k}}{2k-1} \sinh^{2k-1} x + (-1)^m \arctan(\sinh x) \quad [m \geq 1] \]

2. \[ \int \frac{\sinh^{2m+1} x}{\cosh x} \, dx = \sum_{k=1}^{m} \frac{(-1)^{m+k}}{2k} \sinh^{2k} x + (-1)^m \ln(\cosh x) \quad [m \geq 1] \]

3. \[ \int \frac{dx}{\sinh^{2m} x \cosh x} = \sum_{k=1}^{m} \frac{(-1)^k \cosech^{2m-2k+1} x}{2m - 2k + 1} + (-1)^m \arctan(\sinh x) \quad [m \geq 1] \]

4. \[ \int \frac{dx}{\sinh^{2m+1} x \cosh x} = \sum_{k=1}^{m} \frac{(-1)^k \cosech^{2m-2k+2} x}{2m - 2k + 2} + (-1)^m \ln|\tanh x| \]

5. \[ \int \frac{\cosh^{2m} x}{\sinh x} \, dx = \sum_{k=1}^{m} \cosh^{2k-1} x \frac{1}{2k - 1} + \ln|\tanh x| \]
\[ \int \frac{\cosh^{2m+1}x}{\sinh x} \, dx = \sum_{k=1}^{m} \frac{\cosh^{2k}x}{2k} + \ln|\sinh x| \]

\[ \int \frac{dx}{\sinh x \cosh^{2m}x} = \sum_{k=1}^{m} \frac{\text{sech}^{2m-2k+1}x}{2m-2k+1} + \ln|\tanh \frac{x}{2}| \]

\[ \int \frac{dx}{\sinh x \cosh^{2m+1}x} = \sum_{k=1}^{m} \frac{\text{sech}^{2m-2k+2}x}{2m-2k+2} + \ln|\tanh \frac{x}{2}| \]

### 7.9 INTEGRANDS INVOLVING \( \tanh kx \) AND \( \coth kx \)

#### 7.9.1 Integrands involving \( \tanh kx \)

1. \[ \int \tanh kx \, dx = \frac{1}{k} \ln(\cosh kx) \]
2. \[ \int \tanh^2 kx \, dx = x - \frac{1}{k} \tanh kx \]
3. \[ \int \tanh^3 kx \, dx = \frac{1}{k} \ln(\cosh kx) - \frac{1}{2k} \tanh^2 kx \]
4. \[ \int \tanh^{2n} kx \, dx = x - \frac{1}{k} \sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{\tanh^{2n-2k+1}kx}{2n-2k+1} \]
5. \[ \int \tanh^{2n+1} kx \, dx = \frac{1}{k} \ln(\cosh kx) - \frac{1}{k} \sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{\tanh^{2n-2k+2}kx}{2n-2k+2} \]

#### 7.9.2 Integrands Involving \( \coth kx \)

1. \[ \int \coth kx \, dx = \frac{1}{k} \ln|\sinh kx| \]
2. \[ \int \coth^2 kx \, dx = x - \frac{1}{k} \coth kx \]
3. \[ \int \coth^3 kx \, dx = \frac{1}{k} \ln|\sinh kx| - \frac{1}{2k} \coth^2 kx \]
4. \[ \int \coth^{2n} kx \, dx = x - \frac{1}{k} \sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{\coth^{2n-2k+1}kx}{2n-2k+1} \]
5. $\int \coth^{2n+1} kx\,dx = \frac{1}{k} \ln|\sinh kx| - \frac{1}{k} \sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{\coth^{2n-2k+2} kx}{2n-2k+2}$

### 7.10 INTEGRANDS INVOLVING $(a + bx)^m \sinh kx$ OR $(a + bx)^m \cosh kx$

#### 7.10.1 Integrands Involving $(a + bx)^m \sinh kx$

**7.10.1.1**

1. $\int (a + bx) \sinh kx\,dx = \frac{1}{k} (a + bx) \cosh kx - \frac{b}{k^2} \sinh kx$

2. $\int (a + bx)^2 \sinh kx\,dx = \frac{1}{k} \left( (a + bx)^2 + \frac{2b^2}{k^2} \right) \cosh kx - \frac{2b(a + bx)}{k^2} \sinh kx$

3. $\int (a + bx)^3 \sinh kx\,dx = \frac{(a + bx)}{k} \left( (a + bx)^2 + \frac{6b^2}{k^2} \right) \cosh kx$

$$- \frac{3b}{k^2} \left( (a + bx)^2 + \frac{2b^2}{k^2} \right) \sinh kx$$

#### 7.10.2 Integrands Involving $(a + bx)^m \cosh kx$

**7.10.2.1**

1. $\int (a + bx) \cosh kx\,dx = \frac{1}{k} (a + bx) \sinh kx - \frac{b}{k^2} \cosh kx$

2. $\int (a + bx)^2 \cosh kx\,dx = \frac{1}{k} \left( (a + bx)^2 + \frac{2b^2}{k^2} \right) \sinh kx - \frac{2b(a + bx)}{k^2} \cosh kx$

3. $\int (a + bx)^3 \cosh kx\,dx = \frac{(a + bx)}{k} \left( (a + bx)^2 + \frac{6b^2}{k^2} \right) \sinh kx$

$$- \frac{3b}{k^2} \left( (a + bx)^2 + \frac{2b^2}{k^2} \right) \cosh kx$$
Chapter 8
Indefinite Integrals Involving
Inverse Hyperbolic Functions

8.1 BASIC RESULTS
8.1.1 Integrands Involving Products of \( x^n \) and \( \text{arcsinh} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \) or \( \text{arccosh} \left( \frac{x}{c} \right) \)

8.1.1.1 Integrands Involving Products \( x^n \) and \( \text{arcsinh} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \)

1. \( \int \text{arcsinh} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \, dx = x \, \text{arcsinh} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) - (x^2 + a^2)^{1/2} \quad [a > 0] \)

2. \( \int x \, \text{arcsinh} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \, dx = \frac{1}{4} \left( 2x^2 + a^2 \right) \, \text{arcsinh} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) - \frac{1}{4} x \left( x^2 + a^2 \right)^{1/2} \quad [a > 0] \)

3. \( \int x^2 \, \text{arcsinh} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \, dx = \frac{1}{3} x^3 \, \text{arcsinh} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) + \frac{1}{9} \left( 2a^2 - x^2 \right) \left( x^2 + a^2 \right)^{1/2} \quad [a > 0] \)

4. \( \int x^3 \, \text{arcsinh} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \, dx = \frac{1}{32} \left( 8x^4 - 3a^4 \right) \, \text{arcsinh} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) + \frac{1}{32} \left( 3a^2 x - 2x^3 \right) \left( x^2 + a^2 \right)^{1/2} \quad [a > 0] \)

5. \( \int x^n \, \text{arcsinh} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \, dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n + 1} \, \text{arcsinh} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) - \frac{1}{n + 1} \int \frac{x^{n+1} \, dx}{(x^2 + a^2)^{1/2}} \quad \text{(see 4.3.3)} \)

8.1.1.2 Integrands Involving \( x^n \) \( \text{arccosh} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \)

1. \( \int \text{arccosh} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \, dx = x \, \text{arccosh} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) - (x^2 + a^2)^{1/2} \quad [\text{arccosh} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) > 0] \)

\[ = x \, \text{arccosh} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) + (x^2 - a^2)^{1/2} \quad [\text{arccosh} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) < 0] \]
2. \[ \int x \ln \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) dx = \frac{1}{4} \left( x^2 - a^2 \right) \ln \frac{x}{a} - \frac{1}{4} x \left( x^2 - a^2 \right)^{1/2} \quad \text{[asinh} (x/a) > 0]\]

3. \[ \int x^2 \ln \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) dx = \frac{1}{3} x^3 \ln \frac{x}{a} - \frac{1}{9} \left( 2a^2 + x^2 \right) \left( x^2 - a^2 \right)^{1/2} \quad \text{[asinh} (x/a) > 0]\]

4. \[ \int x^3 \ln \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) dx = \frac{1}{32} \left( 8x^4 - 3a^4 \right) \ln \frac{x}{a} - \frac{1}{32} \left( 3a^2 x + 2x^3 \right) \left( x^2 - a^2 \right)^{1/2} \quad \text{[asinh} (x/a) > 0]\]

5. \[ \int x^n \ln \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \ln \frac{x}{a} - \frac{1}{n+1} \int \frac{x^{n+1} dx}{(x^2 - a^2)^{1/2}} \quad \text{[asinh} (x/a) > 0, n \neq -1] \quad \text{(see 4.3.3)}\]

8.2 INTEGRANDS INVOLVING \( x^{-n} \) arcsinh \( (x/a) \) OR \( x^{-n} \) arccosh \( (x/a) \)

8.2.1 Integrands Involving \( x^{-n} \) arcsinh \( (x/a) \)

8.2.1.1

1. \[ \int \frac{1}{x} \ln \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) dx = \frac{x}{2} - \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{x^5}{3 \cdot 5 \cdot 5} - \frac{x^7}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \cdot 7 \cdot 7} + \cdots \quad \text{[asinh} (x/a) > 0 \text{, } x^2 < a^2]\]

2. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^2} \ln \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) dx = -\frac{1}{x} \ln \left| \frac{a + (x^2 + a^2)^{1/2}}{x} \right| \]
8.2 Integrands Involving $x^{-n} \arcsinh (x/a)$ or $x^{-n} \arccosh (x/a)$

3. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^3} \arcsinh \frac{x}{a} \, dx = -\frac{1}{2x^2} \arcsinh \frac{x}{a} - \frac{1}{2ax} \left( 1 + \frac{x^2}{a^2} \right)^{1/2} \]

4. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^4} \arcsinh \frac{x}{a} \, dx = -\frac{1}{3x^3} \arcsinh \frac{x}{a} + \frac{1}{6a^3} \arcsin \left( \frac{a}{x} \right) - \frac{1}{6ax^2} \left( 1 + \frac{x^2}{a^2} \right)^{1/2} \]

5. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^n} \arcsinh \frac{x}{a} \, dx = -\frac{1}{(n-1)x^{n-1}} \arcsinh \frac{x}{a} + \frac{1}{n-1} \int \frac{dx}{x^{n-1} \left( x^2 + a^2 \right)^{1/2}} \] (see 4.3.3)

8.2.2 Integrands Involving $x^{-n} \arccosh (x/a)$

8.2.2.1

1. \[ \int \frac{1}{x} \arccosh \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \frac{1}{2} \left( \ln \frac{2x}{a} \right)^2 + \frac{1}{2^3} \frac{a^2}{x^2} + \frac{1}{2 \cdot 4^3} \frac{a^4}{x^4} + \frac{1}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6^3} \frac{a^6}{x^6} + \cdots \] [arccosh $(x/a) > 0$]

\[ = -\left[ \frac{1}{2} \left( \ln \frac{2x}{a} \right)^2 + \frac{1}{2^3} \frac{a^2}{x^2} + \frac{1}{2 \cdot 4^3} \frac{a^4}{x^4} + \frac{1}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6^3} \frac{a^6}{x^6} + \cdots \right] \] [arccosh $(x/a) < 0$]

2. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^2} \arccosh \frac{x}{a} \, dx = -\frac{1}{x} \arccosh \frac{x}{a} - \frac{1}{a} \arcsin \left( \frac{a}{x} \right) \]

3. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^3} \arccosh \frac{x}{a} \, dx = -\frac{1}{2x^2} \arccosh \frac{x}{a} + \frac{1}{2ax} \left( \frac{x^2}{a^2} - 1 \right)^{1/2} \] [$x^2 > a^2$]

4. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^4} \arccosh \frac{x}{a} \, dx = -\frac{1}{3x^3} \arccosh \frac{x}{a} + \frac{1}{6a^3} \arcsin \left( \frac{a}{x} \right) + \frac{1}{6ax^2} \left( \frac{x^2}{a^2} - 1 \right)^{1/2} \] [$x^2 > a^2$]

5. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^n} \arccosh \frac{x}{a} \, dx = -\frac{1}{(n-1)x^{n-1}} \arccosh \frac{x}{a} - \frac{1}{n-1} \int \frac{dx}{x^{n-1} \left( x^2 - a^2 \right)^{1/2}} \] [arccosh $(x/a) > 0, n \neq 1$] (see 4.3.3)

\[ = -\frac{1}{(n-1)x^{n-1}} \arccosh \frac{x}{a} + \frac{1}{n-1} \int \frac{dx}{x^{n-1} \left( x^2 - a^2 \right)^{1/2}} \] [arccosh $(x/a) < 0, n \neq 1$] (see 4.3.3)
8.3 INTEGRANDS INVOLVING $x^n \arctanh (x/a)$ OR $x^n \text{arccoth} (x/a)$

8.3.1 Integrands Involving $x^n \arctanh (x/a)$

1. $\int \arctanh \frac{x}{a} \, dx = x \arctanh \frac{x}{a} + \frac{1}{2} a \ln (a^2 - x^2) \quad [x^2 < a^2]$

2. $\int \frac{x}{a} \arctanh \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \frac{1}{2} (x^2 - a^2) \arctanh \frac{x}{a} + \frac{1}{2} a x \quad [x^2 < a^2]$

3. $\int \frac{x^2}{a} \arctanh \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \frac{1}{3} x^3 \arctanh \frac{x}{a} + \frac{1}{6} a x^2 + \frac{1}{6} a^3 \ln (a^2 - x^2) \quad [x^2 < a^2]$

4. $\int \frac{x^3}{a} \arctanh \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \frac{1}{4} (x^4 - a^4) \arctanh \frac{x}{a} + \frac{1}{12} a x^3 + \frac{1}{4} a^3 x \quad [x^2 < a^2]$

5. $\int \frac{x^4}{a} \arctanh \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \frac{1}{5} x^5 \arctanh \frac{x}{a} + \frac{1}{20} a x^2 (2a^2 + x^2) + \frac{1}{10} a^5 \ln (x^2 - a^2) \quad [x^2 < a^2]$

6. $\int \frac{x^n}{a} \arctanh \frac{x}{a} \, dx = - \frac{1}{(n - 1) x^{n-1}} \arctanh \frac{x}{a} + \frac{a}{n - 1} \int \frac{dx}{x^{n-1} (a^2 - x^2)} \quad [x^2 < a^2, n \neq 1]$ (see 4.2.4.9)

8.3.2 Integrands Involving $x^n \text{arccoth} (x/a)$

8.3.2.1

1. $\int \text{arccoth} \frac{x}{a} \, dx = x \text{arccoth} \frac{x}{a} + \frac{1}{2} a \ln (x^2 - a^2) \quad [a^2 < x^2]$

2. $\int \frac{x}{a} \text{arccoth} \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \frac{1}{2} (x^2 - a^2) \text{arccoth} \frac{x}{a} + \frac{1}{2} a x \quad [a^2 < x^2]$

3. $\int \frac{x^2}{a} \text{arccoth} \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \frac{1}{3} x^3 \text{arccoth} \frac{x}{a} + \frac{1}{6} a x^2 + \frac{1}{6} a^3 \ln (x^2 - a^2) \quad [a^2 < x^2]$

4. $\int \frac{x^3}{a} \text{arccoth} \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \frac{1}{4} (x^4 - a^4) \text{arccoth} \frac{x}{a} + \frac{1}{12} a x^3 + \frac{1}{4} a^3 x \quad [a^2 < x^2]$

5. $\int \frac{x^4}{a} \text{arccoth} \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \frac{1}{5} x^5 \text{arccoth} \frac{x}{a} + \frac{1}{20} a x^2 (2a^2 + x^2) + \frac{1}{10} a^5 \ln (x^2 - a^2) \quad [a^2 < x^2]$

6. $\int \frac{x^n}{a} \text{arccoth} \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n + 1} \text{arccoth} \frac{x}{a} - \frac{a}{n + 1} \int \frac{x^{n+1} \, dx}{a^2 - x^2} \quad [a^2 < x^2, n \neq -1]$ (see 4.2.4)
8.4 INTEGRANDS INVOLVING $x^{-n}$ arctanh ($x/a$) OR $x^{-n}$ arccoth ($x/a$)

8.4.1 Integrands Involving $x^{-n}$ arctanh ($x/a$)

8.4.1.1

1. \[ \int \frac{1}{x} \frac{\text{arctanh} \frac{x}{a}}{dx} = \frac{x}{a} + \frac{x^3}{3^2 a^3} + \frac{x^5}{5^2 a^5} + \frac{x^7}{7^2 a^7} + \cdots \quad [x^2 < a^2] \]

2. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^2} \frac{\text{arctanh} \frac{x}{a}}{dx} = -\frac{1}{x} \frac{\text{arctanh} \frac{x}{a}}{a} - \frac{1}{2a} \ln \left( \frac{a^2 - x^2}{x^2} \right) \quad [x^2 < a^2] \]

3. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^3} \frac{\text{arctanh} \frac{x}{a}}{dx} = \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{a^2} - \frac{1}{x^2} \right) \frac{\text{arctanh} \frac{x}{a}}{a} - \frac{1}{2ax} \quad [x^2 < a^2] \]

4. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^n} \frac{\text{arctanh} \frac{x}{a}}{dx} = -\frac{1}{(n-1) x^{n-1}} \frac{\text{arctanh} \frac{x}{a}}{a} + \frac{a}{n-1} \int \frac{dx}{x^{n-1} (a^2 - x^2)} \quad [x^2 < a^2, n \neq 1] \quad (\text{see 4.2.4.9}) \]

8.4.2 Integrands Involving $x^{-n}$ arccoth ($x/a$)

1. \[ \int \frac{1}{x} \frac{\text{arccoth} \frac{x}{a}}{dx} = -\frac{a}{x} - \frac{a^3}{3^2 x^3} - \frac{a^5}{5^2 x^5} - \frac{a^7}{7^2 x^7} - \cdots \quad [a^2 < x^2] \]

2. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^2} \frac{\text{arccoth} \frac{x}{a}}{dx} = -\frac{1}{x} \frac{\text{arccoth} \frac{x}{a}}{a} - \frac{1}{2a} \ln \left( \frac{x^2 - a^2}{a^2} \right) \quad [a^2 < x^2] \]

3. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^3} \frac{\text{arccoth} \frac{x}{a}}{dx} = \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{a^2} - \frac{1}{x^2} \right) \frac{\text{arccoth} \frac{x}{a}}{a} - \frac{1}{2ax} \quad [a^2 < x^2] \]

4. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^n} \frac{\text{arccoth} \frac{x}{a}}{dx} = -\frac{1}{(n-1) x^{n-1}} \frac{\text{arccoth} \frac{x}{a}}{a} + \frac{a}{n-1} \int \frac{dx}{x^{n-1} (a^2 - x^2)} \quad [a^2 < x^2, n \neq 1] \quad (\text{see 4.2.4.9}) \]
9.1 BASIC RESULTS
9.1.1 Simplification by Means of Substitutions
9.1.1.1
Integrals of the form \( \int R(\sin x, \cos x, \tan x, \cot x) \, dx \), in which \( R \) is a rational function in terms of the functions \( \sin x, \cos x, \tan x, \) and \( \cot x \), but in which \( x \) does not appear explicitly, can always be reduced to an integral of a rational function of \( t \) by means of the substitution \( t = \tan(x/2) \). In terms of this substitution it follows that

\[
\begin{align*}
  t &= \tan \frac{x}{2}, \\
  \sin x &= \frac{2t}{1 + t^2}, \\
  \cos x &= \frac{1 - t^2}{1 + t^2}, \\
  \tan x &= \frac{2t}{1 - t^2}, \\
  \cot x &= \frac{1 - t^2}{2t}, \quad \text{and} \quad dx = \frac{2dt}{1 + t^2}.
\end{align*}
\]

Thus, for example,

\[
\int \frac{\cos x}{2 + \sin x} \, dx = \int \frac{(1 - t^2) \, dt}{(1 + t^2)(1 + t + t^2)}
\]

\[
= - \int \frac{2t}{1 + t^2} \, dt + \int \frac{(1 + 2t)}{1 + t + t^2} \, dt
\]

207
\[\begin{align*}
&= -\ln(1 + t^2) + \ln(1 + t + t^2) + C \\
&= \ln\left(\frac{1 + t + t^2}{1 + t^2}\right) + C = \ln\left(1 + \frac{t}{1 + t^2}\right) + C \\
&= \ln\left(1 + \frac{1}{2} \sin x\right) + C.
\end{align*}\]

Since this can be written
\[\ln\left[\frac{1}{2} (2 + \sin x)\right] + C = \ln(2 + \sin x) + \ln\frac{1}{2} + C,
\]
the term \(\ln\frac{1}{2}\) can be combined with the arbitrary constant \(C\), showing that the required indefinite integral can either be written as
\[\ln\left(1 + \frac{1}{2} \sin x\right) + C\]
or as \(\ln(2 + \sin x) + C\).

Other substitutions that are useful in special cases are listed below.

1. If
\[R(\sin x, \cos x) = -R(-\sin x, \cos x),\]
setting \(t = \cos x\) and using the results
\[\sin x = (1 - t^2)^{1/2}\quad\text{and}\quad dx = \frac{dt}{(1 - t^2)^{1/2}},\]
gives
\[\int R(\sin x, \cos x)\, dx = \int R\left((1 - t^2)^{1/2}, t\right) \frac{dt}{(1 - t^2)^{1/2}}.\]

2. If
\[R(\sin x, \cos x) = -R(\sin x, -\cos x),\]
setting \(t = \sin x\) and using the results
\[\cos x = (1 - t^2)^{1/2}\quad\text{and}\quad dx = \frac{dt}{(1 - t^2)^{1/2}},\]
gives
\[\int R(\sin x, \cos x)\, dx = \int R\left(t, (1 - t^2)^{1/2}\right) \frac{dt}{(1 - t^2)^{1/2}}.\]
9.2 Integrands Involving Powers of $x$ and Powers of $\sin x$ or $\cos x$

3. If

$$ R(\sin x, \cos x) = R(-\sin x, -\cos x), $$

setting $t = \tan x$ and using the results

$$ \sin x = \frac{t}{(1 + t^2)^{1/2}}, \quad \cos x = \frac{1}{(1 + t^2)^{1/2}}, \quad dx = \frac{dt}{1 + t^2} $$

gives

$$ \int R(\sin x, \cos x) \, dx = \int R\left(\frac{t}{(1 + t^2)^{1/2}}, \frac{1}{(1 + t^2)^{1/2}}\right) \, \frac{dt}{1 + t^2}. $$

9.2 INTEGRANDS INVOLVING POWERS OF $x$ AND POWERS OF $\sin x$ OR $\cos x$

9.2.1 Integrands Involving $x^n \sin^m x$

9.2.1.1

1. $\int \sin x \, dx = -\cos x$

2. $\int \sin^2 x \, dx = -\frac{1}{4} \sin 2x + \frac{1}{2} x = -\frac{1}{2} \sin x \cos x + \frac{1}{2} x$

3. $\int \sin^3 x \, dx = \frac{1}{12} \cos 3x - \frac{3}{4} \cos x = \frac{1}{3} \cos^3 x - \cos x$

4. $\int \sin^4 x \, dx = \frac{1}{32} \sin 4x - \frac{1}{4} \sin 2x + \frac{3}{8} x$

   $$ = -\frac{1}{4} \sin^3 x \cos x - \frac{3}{8} \sin x \cos x + \frac{3}{8} x $$

5. $\int \sin^5 x \, dx = -\frac{1}{80} \cos 5x + \frac{5}{48} \cos 3x - \frac{5}{8} \cos x$

   $$ = -\frac{1}{5} \sin^4 x \cos x + \frac{4}{15} \cos^3 x - \frac{4}{5} \cos x $$

6. $\int \sin^{2n} x \, dx = \frac{1}{2^{2n}} \binom{2n}{n} x + \frac{1}{2^{2n-1}} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} (-1)^k \binom{2n}{k} \frac{\sin(2n-2k) x}{2n-2k}$

7. $\int \sin^{2n+1} x \, dx = \frac{1}{2^{2n}} (-1)^{n+1} \sum_{k=0}^{n} (-1)^k \binom{2n+1}{k} \frac{\cos(2n+1-2k) x}{2n+1-2k}$
8. \[ \int x \sin x \, dx = \sin x - x \cos x \]
9. \[ \int x^2 \sin x \, dx = 2x \sin x - (x^2 - 2) \cos x \]
10. \[ \int x^3 \sin x \, dx = (3x^2 - 6) \sin x - (x^3 - 6x) \cos x \]
11. \[ \int x^4 \sin x \, dx = (4x^3 - 24x) \sin x - (x^4 - 12x^2 + 24) \cos x \]
12. \[ \int x^{2n} \sin x \, dx = (2n)! \left\{ \sum_{k=0}^{n} (-1)^{k+1} \frac{x^{2n-2k}}{(2n-2k)!} \cos x \right. \\
\left. + \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} (-1)^{k} \frac{x^{2n-2k-1}}{(2n-2k-1)!} \sin x \right\} \]
13. \[ \int x^{2n+1} \sin x \, dx = (2n+1)! \left\{ \sum_{k=0}^{n} (-1)^{k+1} \frac{x^{2n-2k+1}}{(2n-2k+1)!} \cos x \right. \\
\left. + \sum_{k=0}^{n} (-1)^{k} \frac{x^{2n-2k}}{(2n-2k)!} \sin x \right\} \]
14. \[ \int \sin^2 x \, dx = \frac{1}{2} x - \frac{1}{4} \sin 2x \]
15. \[ \int x \sin^2 x \, dx = \frac{1}{4} x^2 - \frac{1}{4} x \sin 2x - \frac{1}{8} \cos 2x \]
16. \[ \int x^2 \sin^2 x \, dx = \frac{1}{6} x^3 - \frac{1}{4} x \cos 2x - \frac{1}{4} \left( \frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \right) \sin 2x \]
17. \[ \int x^m \sin^n x \, dx = \frac{x^{m-1} \sin^{n-1} x}{n^2} \left[ m \sin x - nx \cos x \right] + \left( \frac{n-1}{n} \right) \int x^m \sin^{n-2} x \, dx \\
- \frac{m(m-1)}{n^2} \int x^{m-2} \sin^n x \, dx \]

9.2.2 Integrands Involving \( x^{-n} \sin^m x \)
9.2.2.1

1. \[ \int \frac{\sin x}{x} \, dx = x - \frac{x^3}{3 \cdot 3!} + \frac{x^5}{5 \cdot 5!} - \frac{x^7}{7 \cdot 7!} + \cdots \]
2. \[ \int \frac{\sin x}{x^2} \, dx = -\frac{\sin x}{x} + \int \frac{\cos x}{x} \, dx \]
3. \[ \int \frac{\sin x}{x^3} \, dx = -\frac{\sin x}{2x^2} - \frac{\cos x}{2x} - \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{\sin x}{x} \, dx \]

4. \[ \int \frac{\sin x}{x^n} \, dx = -\frac{\sin x}{(n-1)x^{n-1}} - \frac{\cos x}{(n-1)(n-2)x^{n-2}} - \frac{1}{(n-1)(n-2)} \int \frac{\sin x}{x^{n-2}} \, dx \quad [n > 2] \]

5. \[ \int \frac{\sin^m x}{x^n} \, dx = -\frac{\sin^{m-1} x [(n-2) \sin x + mx \cos x]}{(n-1)(n-2)x^{n-1}} - \frac{m^2}{(n-1)(n-2)} \]
\[ \times \int \frac{\sin^m x}{x^{n-2}} \, dx + \frac{m(m-1)}{(n-1)(n-2)} \int \frac{\sin^{m-2} x}{x^{n-2}} \, dx \quad [n \neq 1, 2] \]

9.2.3 Integrands Involving \( x^n \sin^{-m} x \)

9.2.3.1

1. \[ \int \frac{dx}{\sin x} = \ln \left| \tan \frac{x}{2} \right| = -\frac{1}{2} \ln \left( \frac{1 + \cos x}{1 - \cos x} \right) \quad ||x| < \pi| \]

2. \[ \frac{dx}{\sin^2 x} = -\cot x \quad ||x| < \pi| \]

3. \[ \frac{dx}{\sin^3 x} = -\frac{\cos x}{2 \sin^2 x} + \frac{1}{2} \ln \left| \tan \frac{x}{2} \right| \quad ||x| < \pi| \]

4. \[ \frac{dx}{\sin^n x} = -\frac{\cos x}{(n-1)\sin^{n-1} x} + \frac{\sin x}{n-2} \int \frac{dx}{\sin^{n-2} x} \quad ||x| < \pi, n > 1| \]

5. \[ \int \frac{x \, dx}{\sin x} = x + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} \frac{2 \left( 2^{2k-1} - 1 \right)}{(2k+1)(2k)!} B_{2k} x^{2k+1} \quad ||x| < \pi| \]

6. \[ \int \frac{x^2 \, dx}{\sin x} = \frac{x^2}{2} + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} \frac{2 \left( 2^{2k-1} - 1 \right)}{(2k+2)(2k)!} B_{2k} x^{2k+2} \quad ||x| < \pi| \]

7. \[ \int \frac{x^n \, dx}{\sin x} = \frac{x^n}{n} + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} \frac{2 \left( 2^{2k-1} - 1 \right)}{(2k+n)(2k)!} B_{2k} x^{2k+n} \quad ||x| < \pi, n > 0| \]

8. \[ \int \frac{x^n \, dx}{\sin^2 x} = -x^n \cot x + \left( \frac{n}{n-1} \right) x^{n-1} + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k} \frac{2^{2k} x^{n+2k-1}}{(n+2k-1)(2k)!} B_{2k} \quad ||x| < \pi, n > 1| \]
9.2.4 Integrands Involving $x^n \cos^m x$

9.2.4.1

1. \[ \int \cos x \, dx = \sin x \]

2. \[ \int \cos^2 x \, dx = \frac{1}{4} \sin 2x + \frac{1}{2} x = \frac{1}{2} \sin x \cos x + \frac{1}{2} x \]

3. \[ \int \cos^3 x \, dx = \frac{1}{12} \sin 3x + \frac{3}{4} \sin x = \sin x - \frac{1}{3} \sin^3 x \]

4. \[ \int \cos^4 x \, dx = \frac{1}{32} \sin 4x + \frac{1}{4} \sin 2x + \frac{3}{8} x = \frac{1}{4} \sin x \cos^3 x + \frac{3}{8} \sin x \cos x + \frac{3}{8} x \]

5. \[ \int \cos^5 x \, dx = \frac{1}{80} \sin 5x + \frac{5}{48} \sin 3x + \frac{5}{8} \sin x \]

\[= \frac{1}{8} \cos^4 x \sin x - \frac{4}{15} \sin^3 x + \frac{4}{5} \sin x \]

6. \[ \int \cos^{2n} x \, dx = \frac{1}{2^n} \left( \begin{array}{c} 2n \ \ 0 \end{array} \right) x + \frac{1}{2^{2n-1}} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left( \begin{array}{c} 2n \ \ k \end{array} \right) \frac{\sin (2n - 2k) x}{2n - 2k} \]

7. \[ \int \cos^{2n+1} x \, dx = \frac{1}{2^{2n}} \sum_{k=0}^{n} \left( \begin{array}{c} 2n + 1 \ \ k \end{array} \right) \frac{\sin (2n - 2k + 1) x}{2n - 2k + 1} \]

8. \[ \int x \cos x \, dx = \cos x + x \sin x \]

9. \[ \int x^2 \cos x \, dx = 2x \cos x + (x^2 - 2) \sin x \]

10. \[ \int x^3 \cos x \, dx = (3x^2 - 6) \cos x + (x^3 - 6x) \sin x \]

11. \[ \int x^4 \cos x \, dx = (4x^3 - 24x) \cos x + (x^4 - 12x^2 + 24) \sin x \]

12. \[ \int x^{2n} \cos x \, dx = (2n)! \left\{ \sum_{k=0}^{n} \left( -1 \right)^k \frac{x^{2n-2k}}{(2n-2k)!} \sin x + \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left( -1 \right)^k \frac{x^{2n-2k-1}}{(2n-2k-1)!} \cos x \right\} \]

13. \[ \int x^{2n+1} \cos x \, dx = (2n+1)! \left\{ \sum_{k=0}^{n} \left( -1 \right)^k \frac{x^{2n-2k+1}}{(2n-2k+1)!} \sin x \right. \]

\[+ \sum_{k=0}^{n} \left( -1 \right)^k \frac{x^{2n-2k}}{(2n-2k)!} \cos x \right\} \]
9.2.5 Integrands Involving $x^n \cos^m x$

9.2.5.1

1. \[ \int \frac{\cos x}{x} \, dx = \ln |x| - \frac{x^2}{2.2!} + \frac{x^4}{4.4!} - \frac{x^6}{6.6!} + \cdots \]

2. \[ \int \frac{\cos x}{x^2} \, dx = -\frac{\cos x}{x} - \int \frac{\sin x}{x} \, dx \]

3. \[ \int \frac{\cos x}{x^3} \, dx = -\frac{\cos x}{2x^2} + \frac{\sin x}{2x} - \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{\cos x}{x} \, dx \]

4. \[ \int \frac{\cos x}{x^n} \, dx = -\frac{\cos x}{(n-1)x^{n-1}} + \frac{\sin x}{(n-1)(n-2)x^{n-2}} - \frac{1}{(n-1)(n-2)} \int \frac{\cos x}{x^{n-2}} \, dx \quad [n > 2] \]

5. \[ \int \frac{\cos^m x}{x^n} \, dx = -\frac{\cos^{m-1} x}{(n-1)(n-2)x^{n-1}} \left( (n-2) \cos x - mx \sin x \right) - \frac{m^2}{(n-1)(n-2)} \int \frac{\cos^m x}{x^{n-2}} \, dx \]

\quad + \frac{m (m-1)}{(n-1)(n-2)} \int \frac{\cos^{m-2} x}{x^{n-2}} \, dx \quad [n \neq 1, 2] \]

9.2.6 Integrands Involving $x^n \cos^{-m} x$

9.2.6.1

1. \[ \int \frac{dx}{\cos x} = \ln |\sec x + \tan x| = \ln \left| \tan \left( \frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{x}{2} \right) \right| = \frac{1}{2} \ln \left( \frac{1 + \sin x}{1 - \sin x} \right) \quad [|x| < \frac{\pi}{2}] \]

2. \[ \int \frac{dx}{\cos^2 x} = \tan x \quad [|x| < \frac{\pi}{2}] \]
Chapter 9  Indefinite Integrals of Trigonometric Functions

3. \[ \int \frac{dx}{\cos^3 x} = \frac{1}{2} \sin x + \frac{1}{2} \ln \left| \tan \left( \frac{x}{2} \right) \right| \quad |x| < \frac{\pi}{2} \]

4. \[ \int \frac{dx}{\cos^n x} = \frac{\sin x}{(n-1) \cos^{n-1} x} + \left( \frac{n-2}{n-1} \right) \int \frac{dx}{\cos^{n-2} x} \quad |x| < \frac{\pi}{2}, n > 1 \]

5. \[ \int x dx \cos x = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{|E_{2k}| x^{2k+2}}{(2k+2) (2k)!} \quad |x| < \frac{\pi}{2} \]

6. \[ \int x^2 dx \cos x = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{|E_{2k}| x^{2k+3}}{(2k+3) (2k)!} \quad |x| < \frac{\pi}{2}, n > 0 \]

7. \[ \int x^n dx \cos x = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{|E_{2k}| x^{2k+n+1}}{(2k+n+1) (2k)!} \quad |x| < \frac{\pi}{2}, n > 0 \]

8. \[ \int \frac{x^n}{\cos^2 x} dx = x^n \tan x + n \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^k \frac{2^{2k} (2^{2k+1}-1) x^{2k+n-1}}{(2k+n-1) (2k)!} B_{2k} \quad |x| < \frac{\pi}{2}, n > 1 \]

9.2.7 Integrands Involving \( x^n \sin x / (a + b \cos x)^m \) or \( x^n \cos x / (a + b \sin x)^m \)

9.2.7.1

1. \[ \int \frac{dx}{1 + \sin x} = -\tan \left( \frac{\pi}{4} - \frac{x}{2} \right) \]

2. \[ \int \frac{dx}{1 - \sin x} = \tan \left( \frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{x}{2} \right) \]

3. \[ \int \frac{x dx}{1 + \sin x} = -x \tan \left( \frac{\pi}{4} - \frac{x}{2} \right) + 2 \ln \left[ \cos \left( \frac{\pi}{4} - \frac{x}{2} \right) \right] \]

4. \[ \int \frac{x dx}{1 - \sin x} = x \cot \left( \frac{\pi}{4} - \frac{x}{2} \right) + 2 \ln \left[ \sin \left( \frac{\pi}{4} - \frac{x}{2} \right) \right] \]

5. \[ \int \frac{x dx}{1 + \cos x} = x \tan \frac{x}{2} + 2 \ln \left[ \cos \frac{x}{2} \right] \]

6. \[ \int \frac{x dx}{1 - \cos x} = -x \cot \frac{x}{2} + 2 \ln \left[ \sin \frac{x}{2} \right] \]

7. \[ \int \frac{x \cos x dx}{(1 + \sin x)^2} = -x \frac{x}{1 + \sin x} + \tan \frac{x}{2} - \frac{\pi}{4} \]
9.3 Integrands Involving \(\tan x\) and/or \(\cot x\)

9.3.1 Integrands Involving \(\tan^n x\) or \(\tan^n x / (\tan x \pm 1)\)

9.3.1.1

1. \(\int \tan x \, dx = -\ln \cos x\)

2. \(\int \tan^2 x \, dx = \tan x - x\)
3. \[ \int \tan^3 x \, dx = \frac{1}{2} \tan^2 x + \ln \cos x \]

4. \[ \int \tan^4 x \, dx = \frac{1}{3} \tan^3 x - \tan x + x \]

5. \[ \int \tan^{2n} x \, dx = \sum_{k=1}^{n} (-1)^{k-1} \frac{\tan^{2n-2k+1} x}{(2n-2k+1)} + (-1)^n x \]

6. \[ \int \tan^{2n+1} x \, dx = \sum_{k=1}^{n} (-1)^{k-1} \frac{\tan^{2n-2k+2} x}{(2n-2k+2)} - (-1)^n \ln \cos x \]

7. \[ \int \frac{dx}{\tan x + 1} = \int \frac{\cot x \, dx}{1 + \cot x} = \frac{1}{2} x + \frac{1}{2} \ln |\sin x + \cos x| \]

8. \[ \int \frac{dx}{\tan x - 1} = \int \frac{\cot x \, dx}{1 - \cot x} = -\frac{1}{2} x + \frac{1}{2} \ln |\sin x - \cos x| \]

9. \[ \int \frac{\tan x \, dx}{\tan x + 1} = \int \frac{dx}{1 + \cot x} = \frac{1}{2} x - \frac{1}{2} \ln |\sin x + \cos x| \]

10. \[ \int \frac{\tan x \, dx}{\tan x - 1} = \int \frac{dx}{1 - \cot x} = \frac{1}{2} x + \frac{1}{2} \ln |\sin x - \cos x| \]

### 9.3.2 Integrands Involving \( \cot^n x \) or \( \tan x \) and \( \cot x \)

#### 9.3.2.1

1. \[ \int \cot x \, dx = \ln |\sin x| \]

2. \[ \int \cot^2 x \, dx = -\cot x - x \]

3. \[ \int \cot^3 x \, dx = -\frac{1}{2} \cot^2 x - \ln |\sin x| \]

4. \[ \int \cot^4 x \, dx = -\frac{1}{3} \cot^3 x + \cot x + x \]

5. \[ \int \cot^n x \, dx = -\frac{\cot^{n-1} x}{n-1} \int \cot^{n-2} x \, dx \quad [n \neq 1] \]

6. \[ \int (1 + \tan^2 x) \cot x \, dx = \ln |\tan x| \]

7. \[ \int (1 + \tan^2 x) \cot^2 x \, dx = -\cot x \]
9.4 Integrands Involving \( \sin x \) and \( \cos x \)

8. \( \int (1 + \tan^2 x) \cot^3 x \, dx = -\frac{1}{2} \cot^2 x \)

9. \( \int (1 + \tan^2 x) \cot^n x \, dx = -\frac{\cot^{n-1} x}{n-1} \)

9.4 \text{ INTEGRANDS INVOLVING} \ \sin x \ \text{AND} \ \cos x

9.4.1 Integrands Involving \( \sin^n x \cos^n x \)

9.4.1.1

1. \( \int \sin x \cos x \, dx = \frac{1}{2} \sin^2 x \)

2. \( \int \sin x \cos^2 x \, dx = -\frac{1}{4} \left[ \frac{1}{3} \cos 3x + \cos x \right] = -\frac{1}{3} \cos^3 x \)

3. \( \int \sin x \cos^4 x \, dx = -\frac{1}{5} \cos^5 x \)

4. \( \int \sin^2 x \cos x \, dx = -\frac{1}{4} \left[ \frac{1}{3} \sin 3x - \sin x \right] = \frac{1}{3} \sin^3 x \)

5. \( \int \sin^2 x \cos^2 x \, dx = -\frac{1}{8} \left[ \frac{1}{4} \sin 4x - x \right] \)

6. \( \int \sin^2 x \cos^3 x \, dx = -\frac{1}{16} \left[ \frac{1}{5} \sin 5x + \frac{1}{3} \sin 3x - 2 \sin x \right] \)

7. \( \int \sin^2 x \cos^4 x \, dx = \frac{1}{16} x + \frac{1}{64} \sin 2x - \frac{1}{64} \sin 4x - \frac{1}{192} \sin 6x \)

8. \( \int \sin^3 x \cos x \, dx = \frac{1}{8} \left( \frac{1}{4} \cos 4x - \cos 2x \right) = \frac{1}{4} \sin^4 x \)

9. \( \int \sin^3 x \cos^2 x \, dx = \frac{1}{16} \left( \frac{1}{5} \cos 5x - \frac{1}{3} \cos 3x - 2 \cos x \right) \)

10. \( \int \sin^3 x \cos^3 x \, dx = \frac{1}{32} \left( \frac{1}{6} \cos 6x - \frac{3}{2} \cos 2x \right) \)

9.4.2 Integrands Involving \( \sin^{-n} x \)

9.4.2.1

1. \( \int \frac{dx}{\sin x} = \ln \left| \tan \frac{x}{2} \right| \)

2. \( \int \frac{dx}{\sin^2 x} = -\cot x \)
Chapter 9  Indefinite Integrals of Trigonometric Functions

3. \( \int \frac{dx}{\sin^3 x} = -\frac{1}{2} \tan^2 x + \frac{1}{2} \ln |\tan x| \)

4. \( \int \frac{dx}{\sin^4 x} = -\frac{\cos x}{3 \sin^2 x} - \frac{2}{3} \cot x \)

5. \( \int \frac{dx}{\sin^5 x} = -\frac{\cos x}{4 \sin^4 x} - \frac{3}{8} \ln |\tan x| \)

9.4.3 Integrands Involving \( \cos^{-n} x \)

9.4.3.1

1. \( \int \frac{dx}{\cos x} = \ln |\tan \left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{x}{2}\right)| = \frac{1}{2} \ln \left(1 + \sin x\right) \)

2. \( \int \frac{dx}{\cos^2 x} = \tan x \)

3. \( \int \frac{dx}{\cos^3 x} = \frac{1}{2} \sin x + \frac{1}{2} \ln |\tan \left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{x}{2}\right)| \)

4. \( \int \frac{dx}{\cos^4 x} = \frac{\sin x}{3 \cos^2 x} + \frac{2}{3} \tan x \)

5. \( \int \frac{dx}{\cos^5 x} = \frac{\sin x}{4 \cos^4 x} + \frac{3}{8} \sin x + \frac{3}{8} \ln |\tan \left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{x}{2}\right)| \)

9.4.4 Integrands Involving \( \sin^n x/\cos^m x \) or \( \cos^n x/\sin^m x \)

9.4.4.1

1. \( \int \frac{\sin x}{\cos x} \, dx = -\ln \cos x \)

2. \( \int \frac{\sin x}{\cos^2 x} \, dx = \frac{1}{\cos x} \)

3. \( \int \frac{\sin x}{\cos^3 x} \, dx = \frac{1}{2 \cos^2 x} \)

4. \( \int \frac{\sin x}{\cos^4 x} \, dx = \frac{1}{3 \cos^3 x} \)

5. \( \int \frac{\sin x}{\cos^n x} \, dx = \frac{1}{(n-1) \cos^{n-1} x} \)

6. \( \int \frac{\sin^2 x}{\cos x} \, dx = -\sin x + \ln |\tan \left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{x}{2}\right)| \)
9.4 Integrands Involving $\sin x$ and $\cos x$

7. \[ \int \frac{\sin^2 x}{\cos^2 x} \, dx = \tan x - x \]

8. \[ \int \frac{\sin^2 x}{\cos^3 x} \, dx = \frac{\sin x}{2 \cos^2 x} - \frac{1}{2} \ln|\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{x}{2}\right)| \]

9. \[ \int \frac{\sin^2 x}{\cos^3 x} \, dx = \frac{1}{3} \tan^3 x \]

10. \[ \int \frac{\sin^3 x}{\cos x} \, dx = -\frac{1}{2} \sin^2 x - \ln \cos x \]

11. \[ \int \frac{\sin^3 x}{\cos^2 x} \, dx = \cos x + \frac{1}{\cos x} \]

12. \[ \int \frac{\sin^3 x}{\cos^3 x} \, dx = \frac{1}{2 \cos^2 x} + \ln \cos x \]

13. \[ \int \frac{\sin^3 x}{\cos^4 x} \, dx = -\frac{1}{\cos x} + \frac{1}{3 \cos^3 x} \]

14. \[ \int \frac{\sin^4 x}{\cos x} \, dx = -\frac{1}{3} \sin^3 x - \sin x + \ln|\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{x}{2}\right)| \]

15. \[ \int \frac{\sin^4 x}{\cos^2 x} \, dx = \tan x + \frac{1}{2} \sin x \cos x - \frac{3}{2} x \]

16. \[ \int \frac{\sin^4 x}{\cos^3 x} \, dx = \frac{\sin x}{2 \cos^2 x} + \sin x - \frac{3}{2} \ln|\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{x}{2}\right)| \]

17. \[ \int \frac{\sin^4 x}{\cos^4 x} \, dx = \frac{1}{3} \tan^3 x - \tan x + x \]

18. \[ \int \frac{\cos x}{\sin x} \, dx = \ln|\sin x| \]

19. \[ \int \frac{\cos x}{\sin^2 x} \, dx = -\frac{1}{\sin x} \]

20. \[ \int \frac{\cos x}{\sin^3 x} \, dx = -\frac{1}{2 \sin^2 x} \]

21. \[ \int \frac{\cos x}{\sin^4 x} \, dx = -\frac{1}{3 \sin^3 x} \]

22. \[ \int \frac{\cos x}{\sin^n x} \, dx = -\frac{1}{(n - 1) \sin^{n-1} x} \]
23. \( \int \frac{\cos^2 x}{\sin x} \, dx = \cos x + \ln|\tan \frac{x}{2}| \)

24. \( \int \frac{\cos^2 x}{\sin^2 x} \, dx = -\cot x - x \)

25. \( \int \frac{\cos^2 x}{\sin^3 x} \, dx = -\frac{\cos x}{2 \sin^2 x} - \frac{1}{2} \ln|\tan \frac{x}{2}| \)

26. \( \int \frac{\cos^2 x}{\sin^3 x} \, dx = -\frac{1}{3} \cot^3 x \)

27. \( \int \frac{\cos^3 x}{\sin x} \, dx = \frac{1}{2} \cos^2 x + \ln|\sin x| \)

28. \( \int \frac{\cos^3 x}{\sin^2 x} \, dx = \sin x - \frac{1}{\sin x} \)

29. \( \int \frac{\cos^3 x}{\sin^3 x} \, dx = -\frac{1}{2 \sin^2 x} - \ln|\sin x| \)

30. \( \int \frac{\cos^3 x}{\sin^4 x} \, dx = \frac{1}{\sin x} - \frac{1}{3 \sin^3 x} \)

31. \( \int \frac{\cos^4 x}{\sin x} \, dx = \frac{1}{3} \cos^3 x + \cos x + \ln|\tan \frac{x}{2}| \)

32. \( \int \frac{\cos^4 x}{\sin^2 x} \, dx = -\cot x - \frac{1}{2} \sin x \cos x - \frac{3}{2} x \)

33. \( \int \frac{\cos^4 x}{\sin^3 x} \, dx = -\frac{\cos x}{2 \sin^2 x} + \cos x - \frac{3}{2} \ln|\tan \frac{x}{2}| \)

34. \( \int \frac{\cos^4 x}{\sin^4 x} \, dx = -\frac{1}{3} \cot^3 x + \cot x + x \)

9.4.5 Integrands Involving \( \sin^{-m} x \, \cos^{-n} x \)

9.4.5.1

1. \( \int \frac{dx}{\sin x \cos x} = \ln(\tan x) \)

2. \( \int \frac{dx}{\sin x \, \cos^2 x} = \frac{1}{\cos x} + \ln|\tan \frac{x}{2}| \)

3. \( \int \frac{dx}{\sin x \, \cos^3 x} = \frac{1}{2 \cos^2 x} + \ln|\tan x| \)
9.5 Integrands Involving Sines and Cosines with Linear Arguments and Powers of $x$

4. \[ \int \frac{dx}{\sin x \cos^4 x} = \frac{1}{\cos x} + \frac{1}{3 \cos^3 x} + \ln|\tan \frac{x}{2}| \]

5. \[ \int \frac{dx}{\sin^2 x \cos x} = \ln|\tan(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{x}{2})| - \sec x \]

6. \[ \int \frac{dx}{\sin^2 x \cos^2 x} = -2 \cot 2x \]

7. \[ \int \frac{dx}{\sin^2 x \cos^3 x} = \left( \frac{1}{2 \cos^2 x} - \frac{3}{2} \right) \frac{1}{\sin x} + \frac{3}{2} \ln|\tan(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{x}{2})| \]

8. \[ \int \frac{dx}{\sin^2 x \cos^4 x} = \frac{1}{3 \sin x \cos^3 x} - \frac{8}{3} \cot 2x \]

9. \[ \int \frac{dx}{\sin^{2m} x \cos^{2n} x} = \sum_{k=0}^{m+n-1} \left( \begin{array}{c} m+n-1 \\ k \end{array} \right) \frac{\tan^{2k-2m+1} x}{(2k-2m+1)} \]

10. \[ \int \frac{dx}{\sin^{2m+1} x \cos^{2n+1} x} = \sum_{k=0}^{m+n} \left( \begin{array}{c} m+n \\ k \end{array} \right) \frac{\tan^{2k-2m} x}{(2k-2m)} + \left( \begin{array}{c} m+n \\ m \end{array} \right) \ln|\tan x| \]

9.5 INTEGRANDS INVOLVING SINES AND COSINES WITH LINEAR ARGUMENTS AND POWERS OF $x$

9.5.1 Integrands Involving Products of $(ax + b)^n$, $\sin(cx + d)$, and/or $\cos(px + q)$

9.5.1.1

1. \[ \int \sin(ax + b) \, dx = -\frac{1}{a} \cos(ax + b) \]

2. \[ \int \cos(ax + b) \, dx = \frac{1}{a} \sin(ax + b) \]

3. \[ \int \sin(ax + b) \sin(cx + d) \, dx = \frac{\sin[(a-c)x + b-d]}{2(a-c)} - \frac{\sin[(a+c)x + b+d]}{2(a+c)} \quad [a^2 \neq c^2] \]

4. \[ \int \sin(ax + b) \cos(cx + d) \, dx = -\frac{\cos[(a-c)x + b-d]}{2(a-c)} - \frac{\cos[(a+c)x + b+d]}{2(a+c)} \quad [a^2 \neq c^2] \]
5. \[ \int \cos(ax + b) \cos(cx + d) \, dx = \frac{\sin[(a-c)x + b-d]}{2(a-c)} + \frac{\sin[(a+c)x + b+d]}{2(a+c)} \quad [a^2 \neq c^2] \]

**Special case** \(a = c\).

6. \[ \int \sin(ax + b) \sin(ax + d) \, dx = \frac{x}{2} \cos(b - d) - \frac{\sin(2ax + b + d)}{4a} \]

7. \[ \int \sin(ax + b) \cos(ax + d) \, dx = \frac{x}{2} \sin(b - d) - \frac{\cos(2ax + b + d)}{4a} \]

8. \[ \int \cos(ax + b) \cos(ax + d) \, dx = \frac{x}{2} \cos(b - d) + \frac{\sin(2ax + b + d)}{4a} \]

9. \[ \int (a+bx) \sin kx \, dx = -\frac{1}{k} (a+bx) \cos kx + \frac{b}{k^2} \sin kx \]

10. \[ \int (a+bx) \cos kx \, dx = \frac{1}{k} (a+bx) \sin kx + \frac{b}{k^2} \cos kx \]

11. \[ \int (a+bx)^2 \sin kx \, dx = \frac{1}{k} \left[ \frac{2b^2}{k^2} - (a+bx)^2 \right] \cos kx + \frac{2b(a+bx)}{k^2} \sin kx \]

12. \[ \int (a+bx)^2 \cos kx \, dx = \frac{1}{k} \left[ (a+bx)^2 - \frac{2b^2}{k^2} \right] \sin kx + \frac{2b(a+bx)}{k^2} \cos kx \]

### 9.5.2 Integrands Involving \(x^n \sin^m x\) or \(x^n \cos^m x\)

#### 9.5.2.1

1. \[ \int x \sin x \, dx = \sin x - x \cos x \]

2. \[ \int x \cos x \, dx = \cos x + x \sin x \]

3. \[ \int x^2 \sin x \, dx = 2x \sin x - (x^2 - 2) \cos x \]

4. \[ \int x^2 \cos x \, dx = 2x \cos x + (x^2 - 2) \sin x \]

5. \[ \int x^3 \sin x \, dx = (3x^2 - 6) \sin x - (x^3 - 6x) \cos x \]
6. \( \int x^3 \cos x \, dx = (3x^2 - 6) \cos x + (x^3 - 6x) \sin x \)

7. \( \int x^n \sin x \, dx = -x^n \cos x + n \int x^{n-1} \cos x \, dx \)

8. \( \int x^n \cos x \, dx = x^n \sin x - n \int x^{n-1} \sin x \, dx \)

9. \( \int x \sin^2 x \, dx = \frac{1}{4} x^2 - \frac{1}{4} x \sin 2x - \frac{1}{8} \cos 2x \)

10. \( \int x \cos^2 x \, dx = \frac{1}{4} x^2 + \frac{1}{4} x \sin 2x + \frac{1}{8} \cos 2x \)

11. \( \int x^2 \sin^2 x \, dx = \frac{1}{6} x^3 - \frac{1}{4} x \cos 2x - \frac{1}{4} \left( x^2 - \frac{1}{2} \right) \sin 2x \)

12. \( \int x^2 \cos^2 x \, dx = \frac{1}{6} x^3 + \frac{1}{4} x \cos 2x + \frac{1}{4} \left( x^2 - \frac{1}{2} \right) \sin 2x \)

13. \( \int x \sin^3 x \, dx = \frac{3}{4} \sin x - \frac{1}{36} \sin 3x - \frac{3}{4} x \cos x + \frac{1}{12} x \cos 3x \)

14. \( \int x \cos^3 x \, dx = \frac{3}{4} \cos x + \frac{1}{36} \cos 3x + \frac{3}{4} x \sin x + \frac{1}{12} x \sin 3x \)

15. \( \int x^2 \sin^3 x \, dx = -\left( \frac{3}{4} x^2 - \frac{3}{2} \right) \cos x + \left( \frac{x^2}{12} - \frac{1}{54} \right) \cos 3x + \frac{3}{2} x \sin x - \frac{1}{18} x \sin 3x \)

16. \( \int x^2 \cos^3 x \, dx = \left( \frac{3}{4} x^2 - \frac{3}{2} \right) \sin x + \left( \frac{x^2}{12} - \frac{1}{54} \right) \sin 3x + \frac{3}{2} x \cos x + \frac{1}{18} x \cos 3x \)
10.1 INTEGRANDS INVOLVING POWERS OF $x$ AND POWERS OF INVERSE TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS

10.1.1 Integrands Involving $x^n \arcsin^m(x/a)$

10.1.1.1

1. $\int \arcsin \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \arcsin \frac{x}{a} + \left( a^2 - x^2 \right)^{1/2} \left| \frac{x}{a} \right| \leq 1$

2. $\int \arcsin^2 \frac{x}{a} \, dx = x \arcsin^2 \frac{x}{a} + 2 \left( a^2 - x^2 \right)^{1/2} \arcsin \frac{x}{a} - 2x \left| \frac{x}{a} \right| \leq 1$

3. $\int \arcsin^3 \frac{x}{a} \, dx = x \arcsin^3 \frac{x}{a} + 3 \left( a^2 - x^2 \right)^{1/2} \arcsin^2 \frac{x}{a} - 6x \arcsin \frac{x}{a}$
   $- 6 \left( a^2 - x^2 \right)^{1/2} \left| \frac{x}{a} \right| \leq 1$

4. $\int \arcsin^n \frac{x}{a} \, dx = x \arcsin^n \frac{x}{a} + n \left( a^2 - x^2 \right)^{1/2} \arcsin^{n-1} \frac{x}{a}$
   $- n(n-1) \int \arcsin^{n-2} \frac{x}{a} \, dx \quad \left| \frac{x}{a} \right| \leq 1, n \neq 1$

5. $\int x \arcsin \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \left( \frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{a^2}{4} \right) \arcsin \frac{x}{a} + \frac{x}{4} \left( a^2 - x^2 \right)^{1/2} \left| \frac{x}{a} \right| \leq 1$

6. $\int x^2 \arcsin \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \frac{x^3}{3} \arcsin \frac{x}{a} + \frac{1}{9} \left( x^2 + 2a^2 \right) \left( a^2 - x^2 \right)^{1/2} \left| \frac{x}{a} \right| \leq 1$
7. \[ \int x^3 \arcsin \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \left( \frac{x^4}{4} - 3a^4 \right) \arcsin \frac{x}{a} + \frac{1}{32} (2x^3 + 3a^2x) \left( a^2 - x^2 \right)^{1/2} \quad ||x/a|| \leq 1 \]

8. \[ \int x^n \arcsin \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \arcsin \frac{x}{a} - \frac{1}{n+1} \int \frac{x^{n+1} \, dx}{(a^2 - x^2)^{1/2}} \quad ||x/a|| \leq 1 \]

10.1.2 Integrands Involving \( x^{-n} \arcsin(x/a) \)

10.1.2.1

1. \[ \int \frac{1}{x} \arcsin \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(2k-1)!}{(2k)!! (2k+1)^2} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right)^{2k+1} \quad ||x/a|| < 1, (2k)!! = 2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \cdots (2k) \]

2. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^2} \arcsin \frac{x}{a} \, dx = -\frac{1}{x} \arcsin \frac{x}{a} - \frac{1}{a} \ln \left| a + \left( a^2 - x^2 \right)^{1/2} \right| \quad ||x/a|| < 1 \]

3. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^3} \arcsin \frac{x}{a} \, dx = -\frac{1}{2x^2} \arcsin \frac{x}{a} - \frac{(a^2 - x^2)^{1/2}}{2a^2x} \quad ||x/a|| < 1 \]

4. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^n} \arcsin \frac{x}{a} \, dx = -\frac{1}{(n-1)x^{n-1}} \arcsin \frac{x}{a} + \frac{1}{n-1} \int \frac{dx}{x^{n-1}(a^2 - x^2)^{1/2}} \quad ||x/a|| < 1, n \neq 1 \]

10.1.3 Integrands Involving \( x^n \arccos^m(x/a) \)

10.1.3.1

1. \[ \int \arccos \frac{x}{a} \, dx = x \arccos \frac{x}{a} - \left( a^2 - x^2 \right)^{1/2} \quad ||x/a|| \leq 1 \]

2. \[ \int \arccos^2 \frac{x}{a} \, dx = x \arccos^2 \frac{x}{a} - 2 \left( a^2 - x^2 \right)^{1/2} \arccos \frac{x}{a} - 2x \quad ||x/a|| \leq 1 \]

3. \[ \int \arccos^3 \frac{x}{a} \, dx = x \arccos^3 \frac{x}{a} - 3 \left( a^2 - x^2 \right)^{1/2} \arccos^2 \frac{x}{a} - 6x \arccos \frac{x}{a} + 6 \left( a^2 - x^2 \right)^{1/2} \quad ||x/a|| \leq 1 \]

4. \[ \int \arccos^n \frac{x}{a} \, dx = x \arccos^n \frac{x}{a} - n \left( a^2 - x^2 \right)^{1/2} \arccos^{n-1} \frac{x}{a} - n(n-1) \int \arccos^{n-2} \frac{x}{a} \, dx \quad ||x/a|| \leq 1, n \neq 1 \]

5. \[ \int x \arccos \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \left( \frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{a^2}{4} \right) \arccos \frac{x}{a} - \frac{x}{4} \left( a^2 - x^2 \right)^{1/2} \quad ||x/a|| < 1 \]

6. \[ \int x^2 \arccos \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \frac{x^3}{3} \arccos \frac{x}{a} - \frac{1}{9} \left( x^2 + 2a^2 \right) \left( a^2 - x^2 \right)^{1/2} \quad ||x/a|| \leq 1 \]
7. \[ \int x^3 \arccos \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \left( \frac{x^4}{4} - 3a^2 \right) \arccos \frac{x}{a} - \frac{1}{32} \left( 2x^3 + 3a^2 x \right) (a^2 - x^2)^{1/2} \quad ||x/a|| \leq 1 \]

8. \[ \int x^n \arccos \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \arccos \frac{x}{a} + \frac{1}{2} \left[ \int \frac{x^{n+1}}{(a^2 - x^2)^{1/2}} \, dx \right] \quad ||x/a|| \leq 1, n \neq -1 \]

### 10.1.4 Integrands Involving \( x^{-n} \) \( \arccos(x/a) \)

#### 10.1.4.1

1. \[ \int \frac{1}{x} \arccos \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \frac{\pi}{2} \ln|x| - \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(2k-1)!!}{(2k)!! (2k+1)^2} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right)^{2k+1} \quad ||x/a|| < 1, (2k)!! = 2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \cdots (2k), (2k-1)!! = 1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (2k-1) \]

2. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^2} \arccos \frac{x}{a} \, dx = -\frac{1}{x} \arccos \frac{x}{a} + \frac{1}{a} \ln \left| a + \left( a^2 - x^2 \right)^{1/2} \right| \quad ||x/a|| \leq 1 \]

3. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^3} \arccos \frac{x}{a} \, dx = -\frac{1}{2x^2} \arccos \frac{x}{a} + \frac{a^2 - x^2}{2a^2 x} ^{1/2} \quad ||x/a|| \leq 1 \]

4. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^n} \arccos \frac{x}{a} \, dx = -\frac{1}{(n-1)x^{n-1}} \arccos \frac{x}{a} - \frac{1}{n-1} \left[ \int \frac{dx}{x^{n-1} (a^2 - x^2)^{1/2}} \right] \quad ||x/a|| \leq 1, n \neq 1 \]

### 10.1.5 Integrands Involving \( x^n \) \( \arctan(x/a) \)

#### 10.1.5.1

1. \[ \int \arctan \frac{x}{a} \, dx = x \arctan \frac{x}{a} - \frac{a}{2} \ln (x^2 + a^2) \]

2. \[ \int x \arctan \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \frac{1}{2} \left( x^2 + a^2 \right) \arctan \frac{x}{a} - \frac{1}{2} ax \]

3. \[ \int x^2 \arctan \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \frac{1}{3} x^3 \arctan \frac{x}{a} - \frac{1}{6} ax^2 + \frac{a^3}{6} \ln (x^2 + a^2) \]

4. \[ \int x^3 \arctan \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \frac{1}{4} \left( x^4 - a^4 \right) \arctan \frac{x}{a} - \frac{1}{12} ax^3 + \frac{a}{4} x \]

5. \[ \int x^n \arctan \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \arctan \frac{x}{a} - \frac{a}{n+1} \left[ \int \frac{x^{n+1}}{x^2 + a^2} \, dx \right] \]

### 10.1.6 Integrands Involving \( x^{-n} \) \( \arctan(x/a) \)

#### 10.1.6.1

1. \[ \int \frac{1}{x} \arctan \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{(2k+1)^2} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right)^{2k+1} \quad ||x/a|| < 1 \]
Chapter 10  Indefinite Integrals of Inverse Trigonometric Functions

\[ \int \frac{1}{x^2} \arctan \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \, dx = -\frac{1}{x} \arctan \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) + \frac{1}{2a} \ln \left( \frac{x^2}{x^2 + a^2} \right) \]

\[ \int \frac{1}{x^3} \arctan \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \, dx = -\frac{1}{6} \left( \frac{1}{x^2} + \frac{1}{a^2} \right) \arctan \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) - \frac{1}{2ax} \]

\[ \int \frac{1}{x^n} \arctan \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \, dx = -\frac{1}{n-1} x^{n-1} \arctan \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) + \frac{a}{n-1} \int \frac{dx}{x^{n-1} (x^2 + a^2)} \quad [n \neq 1] \]

10.1.7 Integrands Involving \( x^n \arccot(x/a) \)

10.1.7.1

1. \[ \int \frac{x}{a} \, dx = x \arccot \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) + \frac{1}{2a} \ln(x^2 + a^2) \]

2. \[ \int x \arccot \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \, dx = \frac{1}{2} (x^2 + a^2) \arccot \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) + \frac{1}{2} ax \]

3. \[ \int \frac{x^2}{a} \, dx = \frac{1}{3} x^3 \arccot \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) + \frac{1}{6} ax^2 - \frac{1}{6} a^3 \ln(x^2 + a^2) \]

4. \[ \int \frac{x^3}{a} \, dx = \frac{1}{4} (x^4 - a^4) \arccot \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) + \frac{1}{12} ax^3 - \frac{1}{4} a^3 x \]

5. \[ \int \frac{x^n}{a} \, dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \arccot \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) + \frac{a}{n+1} \int \frac{x^{n+1} \, dx}{x^2 + a^2} \]

10.1.8 Integrands Involving \( x^{-n} \arccot(x/a) \)

10.1.8.1

1. \[ \int \frac{1}{x} \arccot \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \, dx = \frac{\pi}{2} \ln|x| - \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{(2k+1)^2} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right)^{2k+1} \quad [|x/a| < 1] \]

\[ = -\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{(2k+1)^2} \left( \frac{a}{x} \right)^{2k+1} \quad [x/a > 1] \]

\[ = \pi \ln|x| - \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{(2k+1)^2} \left( \frac{a}{x} \right)^{2k+1} \quad [x/a < -1] \]

2. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^2} \arccot \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \, dx = -\frac{1}{x} \arccot \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) - \frac{1}{2a} \ln \left( \frac{x^2}{x^2 + a^2} \right) \]

3. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^3} \arccot \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \, dx = -\frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{x^2} + \frac{1}{a^2} \right) \arccot \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) + \frac{1}{2ax} \]
10.1 Integrands Involving Powers of $x$ and Powers of Inverse Trigonometric Functions

4. \[ \int \frac{1}{x^n} \arccot \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \frac{-1}{(n-1)x^{n-1}} \arccot \frac{x}{a} - \frac{a}{n-1} \int \frac{dx}{x^{n-1}(x^2 + a^2)} \quad [n \neq 1] \]

10.1.9 Integrands Involving Products of Rational Functions and $\arccot(x/a)$

10.1.9.1

1. \[ \int \frac{1}{(x^2 + a^2)} \arccot \frac{x}{a} \, dx = -\frac{1}{2a} \arccot^2 \frac{x}{a} \]

2. \[ \int \left( \frac{x^2}{x^2 + a^2} \right) \arccot \frac{x}{a} \, dx = x \arccot \frac{x}{a} + \frac{1}{2a} \ln(x^2 + a^2) + \frac{1}{2a} \arccot^2 \frac{x}{a} \]

3. \[ \int \frac{1}{(x^2 + a^2)^2} \arccot \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \frac{x}{2a^2 (x^2 + a^2)} \arccot \frac{x}{a} - \frac{1}{4a^3} \arccot^2 \frac{x}{a} - \frac{1}{4a (x^2 + a^2)} \]

4. \[ \int \frac{1}{(x^2 + a^2)} \arccot^n \frac{x}{a} \, dx = -\frac{1}{(n+1)a} \arccot^{n+1} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \]
11.1 THE EULER INTEGRAL. LIMIT AND INFINITE PRODUCT REPRESENTATIONS FOR THE GAMMA FUNCTION $\Gamma(x)$.
THE INCOMPLETE GAMMA FUNCTIONS $\Gamma(\alpha, x)$ AND $\gamma(\alpha, x)$

11.1.1 Definitions and Notation

11.1.1.1 The gamma function, denoted by $\Gamma(x)$, provides a generalization of factorial $n$ to the case in which $n$ is not an integer. It is defined by the Euler integral:

1. $\Gamma(x) = \int_0^\infty t^{x-1}e^{-t} \, dt = \int_0^1 [\ln(1/t)]^{x-1} \, dt.$

and for the integral values of $x$ has the property that

2. $\Gamma(n + 1) = 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdots (n - 1) n = n!$

and, in particular,

3. $\Gamma(1) = \Gamma(2) = 1.$

A related notation defines the pi function $\Pi(x)$ as

4. $\Pi(x) = \Gamma(x + 1) = \int_0^\infty t^x e^{-t} \, dt.$
It follows from this that when $n$ is an integer

5. $\Pi(n) = n!$ and $\Pi(n) = n\Pi(n - 1)$.

Alternative definitions of the gamma function are the Euler definition in terms of a limit

6. $\Gamma(x) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \frac{n!n^x}{x(x + 1) \cdots (x + n)} \quad [n \neq 0, -1, -2, \ldots]$

and the Weierstrass infinite product representation

7. $\frac{1}{\Gamma(x)} = xe^{\gamma x} \prod_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(1 + \frac{x}{n} e^{-x/n}\right)$,

where $\gamma$ is Euler’s constant (also known as the Euler–Mascheroni constant) defined as

$$
\gamma = \lim_{n \to \infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n} - \ln n\right) = 0.57721566\ldots.
$$

The symbol $C$ is also used to denote this constant instead of $\gamma$.

### 11.1.2 Special Properties of $\Gamma(x)$

#### 11.1.2.1

The two most important recurrence formulas involving the gamma function are

1. $\Gamma(x + 1) = x\Gamma(x)$
2. $\Gamma(x + n) = (x + n - 1)(x + n - 2) \cdots (x + 1) \Gamma(x + 1)$.

The reflection formula for the gamma function is

3. $\Gamma(x)\Gamma(1 - x) = -x\Gamma(-x)\Gamma(x) = \pi \csc \pi x$
4. $\Gamma(x)\Gamma(-x) = -\frac{\pi}{x \sin \pi x}$
5. $\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{2} + x\right)\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{2} - x\right) = \frac{\pi}{\cos \pi x}$

6. A result involving $\Gamma(2n)$ is

$$
\Gamma(2n) = \pi^{-1/2}2^{2n-1}\Gamma(n)\Gamma\left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right).
$$

When working with series it is sometimes useful to express the binomial coefficient $\binom{n}{m}$ in terms of the gamma function by using the result
11.1 The Euler Integral. Limit and Infinite Product Representations for $\Gamma(x)$

7. \[
\binom{n}{m} = \frac{n!}{m!(n-m)!} = \frac{\Gamma(n+1)}{\Gamma(m+1)\Gamma(n-m+1)}.
\]

11.1.3 Asymptotic Representations of $\Gamma(x)$ and $n!$

11.1.3.1

The \textbf{Stirling formulas} that yield asymptotic approximations to $\Gamma(x)$ and $n!$ for large values of $x$ and $n$, respectively, are

1. $\Gamma(x) \sim e^{-x}x^{-(1/2)}(2\pi)^{1/2}\left(1 + \frac{1}{12x} + \frac{1}{288x^2} - \frac{139}{51840x^3} - \cdots\right) \quad [x \gg 0]$

2. $n! \sim (2\pi)^{1/2}n^{n+1/2}e^{-n} \quad [n \gg 0]$.

Two other useful asymptotic results are

3. $\Gamma(ax+b) \sim (2\pi)^{1/2}e^{-ax}(ax)^{a+b-(1/2)} \quad [x \gg 0, a > 0]$

4. $\ln\Gamma(x) \sim \left(x - \frac{1}{2}\right)\ln x - x + \frac{1}{2}\ln(2\pi) + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{B_{2n}}{2n(2n-1)x^{2n-1}} \quad [x \gg 0]$.

11.1.4 Special Values of $\Gamma(x)$

11.1.4.1

1. $\Gamma(1/4) = 3.62560990 \ldots$
2. $\Gamma(1/2) = \pi^{1/2} = 1.77245385 \ldots$
3. $\Gamma(3/4) = 1.22541670 \ldots$
4. $\Gamma(3/2) = \frac{1}{2}\pi^{1/2} = 0.88622692 \ldots$

5. $\Gamma\left(n + \frac{1}{4}\right) = \frac{1 \cdot 5 \cdot 9 \cdot 13 \cdots (4n-3)}{4^n}\Gamma(1/4)$

6. $\Gamma\left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right) = \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdot 7 \cdots (2n-1)}{2^n}\Gamma(1/2)$

7. $\Gamma\left(n + \frac{3}{4}\right) = \frac{3 \cdot 7 \cdot 11 \cdot 15 \cdots (4n-1)}{4^n}\Gamma(3/4)$

8. $\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)\Gamma\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) = -2\pi$

11.1.5 The Gamma Function in the Complex Plane

11.1.5.1

For complex $z = x + iy$, the gamma function is defined as

1. $\Gamma(z) = \int_{0}^{\infty} t^{z-1}e^{-t}\,dt \quad [\text{Re}\{z\} > 0]$. 
The following properties hold for $\Gamma(z)$:

2. $\Gamma(\overline{z}) = \overline{\Gamma(z)}$
3. $\ln \Gamma(\overline{z}) = \overline{\ln \Gamma(z)}$
4. $\arg \Gamma(z + 1) = \arg \Gamma(z) + \arctan \frac{y}{x}$
5. $|\Gamma(z)| \leq |\Gamma(x)|$

11.1.6 The Psi (Digamma) Function

11.1.6.1

The psi function, written $\psi(z)$ and also called the digamma function, is defined as

1. $\psi(z) = \frac{d}{dz} [\ln \Gamma(z)] = \Gamma'(z)/\Gamma(z)$.

The psi function has the following properties:

2. $\psi(z + 1) = \psi(z) + \frac{1}{z}$ (recurrence formula)
3. $\psi(1 - z) = \psi(z) + \pi \cot \pi z$ (reflection formula)
4. $\psi(\overline{z}) = \overline{\psi(z)}$
5. $\psi(1) = -\gamma$
6. $\psi(n) = -\gamma + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \frac{1}{k} \quad [n \geq 2]$
7. $\psi\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) = -\gamma - 2 \ln 2 = -1.96351002 \ldots$
8. $\psi\left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right) = -\gamma - 2 \ln 2 + 2 \left(1 + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5} + \cdots + \frac{1}{2n-1}\right) \quad [n \geq 1]$
9. $\psi(z + n) = \frac{1}{(n-1)+z} + \frac{1}{(n-2)+z} + \cdots + \frac{1}{2+z} + \frac{1}{1+z} + \psi(z + 1)$
10. $\psi(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{n} - \frac{1}{x-1+n}\right) - \gamma$
11. $\psi(z) \sim \ln z - \frac{1}{2z} - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{B_{2n}}{2n z^{2n}} \quad [z \to \infty \text{ in } |\arg z| < \pi]$

Care must be exercised when using the psi function in conjunction with other reference sources because on occasions, instead of the definition used in 11.1.6.1.1, $\psi(z)$ is defined as $d [\ln \Gamma(z + 1)]/dz$. 
11.1 The Euler Integral. Limit and Infinite Product Representations for $\Gamma(x)$

11.1.7 The Beta Function

11.1.7.1 The beta function, denoted by $B(x, y)$, is defined as

$$B(x, y) = \int_0^1 t^{x-1} (1-t)^{y-1} dt = \int_0^\infty \frac{t^{x-1}}{(1+t)^{x+y}} dt \quad [x > 0, y > 0].$$

$B(x, y)$ has the following properties:

2. $B(x, y) = \frac{\Gamma(x)\Gamma(y)}{\Gamma(x+y)} \quad [x > 0, y > 0]$

3. $B(x, y) = B(y, x)$ (symmetry)

4. $B(m, n) = \frac{(m-1)!(n-1)!}{(m+n-1)!} \quad (m, n \text{ nonnegative integers})$

5. $B(x, y) B(x+y, w) = B(y, w) B(y+w, x)$

6. $\frac{1}{B(m, n)} = m \binom{n+m-1}{n-1} = n \binom{n+m-1}{m-1} \quad [m, n = 1, 2, \ldots]$

11.1.8 Graph of $\Gamma(x)$ and Tabular Values of $\Gamma(x)$ and $\ln \Gamma(x)$

11.1.8.1 Figure 11.1 shows the behavior of $\Gamma(x)$ for $-4 < x < 4$. The gamma function becomes infinite at $x = 0, -1, -2, \ldots$

Table 11.1 lists numerical values of $\Gamma(x)$ and $\ln \Gamma(x)$ for $0 \leq x \leq 2$. If required, the table may be extended by using these results:

1. $\Gamma(x+1) = x \Gamma(x)$,
2. $\ln \Gamma(x+1) = \ln x + \ln \Gamma(x)$.

Figure 11.1. Graph of $\Gamma(x)$ for $-4 < x < 4$. 
11.1.9 The Incomplete Gamma Function

The incomplete gamma function takes the two forms

1. $\gamma(\alpha, x) = \int_0^x t^{\alpha - 1} e^{-t} dt \quad [\text{Re} \, \alpha > 0]$
2. $\Gamma(\alpha, x) = \int_x^\infty t^{\alpha - 1} e^{-t} dt \quad [\text{Re} \, \alpha > 0],$

where these two forms of the function are related to the gamma function $\Gamma(\alpha)$ by the result

3. $\Gamma(\alpha) = \gamma(\alpha, x) + \Gamma(\alpha, x)$.

Special cases

4. $\gamma(1 + n, x) = n! \left[ 1 - e^{-x} \left( \sum_{m=0}^{n} \frac{x^m}{m!} \right) \right] \quad [n = 0, 1, \ldots]$
5. $\Gamma(n + 1, x) = n! e^{-x} \sum_{m=0}^{n} \frac{x^m}{m!} \quad [n = 0, 1, \ldots]$
6. $\Gamma(-n, x) = \frac{(-1)^n}{n!} \left[ \text{Ei}(-x) - e^{-x} \sum_{m=0}^{n-1} (-1)^m \frac{m!}{x^{m+1}} \right] \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots]$

Series representations

7. $\gamma(\alpha, x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^nx^{\alpha+n}}{n!(\alpha+n)} \quad [\alpha \neq 0, -1, -2, \ldots]$
8. $\Gamma(\alpha, x) = \Gamma(\alpha) - \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^nx^{\alpha+n}}{n!(\alpha+n)} \quad [\alpha \neq 0, -1, -2, \ldots]$

Functional relations

9. $\frac{\Gamma(\alpha + n, x)}{\Gamma(\alpha + n)} = \frac{\Gamma(\alpha, x)}{\Gamma(\alpha)} + e^{-x} \sum_{s=0}^{n-1} \frac{x^{\alpha+s}}{\Gamma(\alpha + s + 1)}$
10. $\Gamma(\alpha)\Gamma(\alpha + n, x) - \Gamma(\alpha + n)\Gamma(\alpha, x) = \Gamma(\alpha + n)\gamma(\alpha, x) - \Gamma(\alpha)\Gamma(\alpha + n, x)$

Definite integrals

11. $\int_0^\infty \exp(-\beta x^n \pm \alpha) dx = \frac{e^{\pm\alpha}}{n\beta^{1/n}} \Gamma(1/n) \quad [\beta > 0, n > 0]$
12. $\int_0^u \exp(-\beta x^n \pm \alpha) dx = \frac{e^{\pm\alpha}}{n\beta^{1/n}} \gamma(1/n, \beta u^n) \quad [\beta > 0, n > 0]$
13. $\int_u^\infty \exp(-\beta x^n) \pm \alpha dx = \frac{e^{\pm u}}{n\beta^{1/n}} \Gamma(1/n, \beta u^n) \quad [\beta > 0, \ n > 0]$

14. $\int_0^u \frac{\exp(-\beta x^n)}{x^m} dx = \frac{\Gamma(z)}{n\beta^z}, \quad \text{with } z = (1 - m)/n > 0 \quad [\beta > 0, \ n > 0]$

15. $\int_0^u \frac{\exp(-\beta x^n)}{x^m} dx = \frac{\gamma(z, \beta u^n)}{n\beta^z}, \quad \text{with } z = (1 - m)/n > 0 \quad [\beta > 0, \ n > 0]$

16. $\int_u^\infty \frac{\exp(-\beta x^n)}{x^m} dx = \frac{\Gamma(z, \beta u^n)}{n\beta^z}, \quad \text{with } z = (1 - m)/n > 0 \quad [\beta > 0, \ n > 0]$

Table 11.1. Tables of $\Gamma(x)$ and $\ln \Gamma(x)$

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$x$</th>
<th>$\Gamma(x)$</th>
<th>$\ln \Gamma(x)$</th>
<th>$x$</th>
<th>$\Gamma(x)$</th>
<th>$\ln \Gamma(x)$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>∞</td>
<td>∞</td>
<td>0.46</td>
<td>1.925227</td>
<td>0.655044</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>99.432585</td>
<td>4.599480</td>
<td>0.47</td>
<td>1.884326</td>
<td>0.633570</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>49.442210</td>
<td>3.900805</td>
<td>0.48</td>
<td>1.845306</td>
<td>0.612645</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>32.784998</td>
<td>3.489971</td>
<td>0.49</td>
<td>1.808051</td>
<td>0.592250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>24.460955</td>
<td>3.197078</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>1.772454</td>
<td>0.572365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>19.470085</td>
<td>2.968879</td>
<td>0.51</td>
<td>1.738415</td>
<td>0.552974</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>16.145727</td>
<td>2.781655</td>
<td>0.52</td>
<td>1.705844</td>
<td>0.534060</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>13.773601</td>
<td>2.622754</td>
<td>0.53</td>
<td>1.674656</td>
<td>0.515608</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>11.996566</td>
<td>2.484620</td>
<td>0.54</td>
<td>1.644773</td>
<td>0.497603</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>10.616217</td>
<td>2.362383</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>1.616124</td>
<td>0.480031</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>9.513508</td>
<td>2.252713</td>
<td>0.56</td>
<td>1.588641</td>
<td>0.462879</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>8.612686</td>
<td>2.153236</td>
<td>0.57</td>
<td>1.562263</td>
<td>0.446135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>7.863252</td>
<td>2.062200</td>
<td>0.58</td>
<td>1.536930</td>
<td>0.429787</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>7.230242</td>
<td>1.978272</td>
<td>0.59</td>
<td>1.512590</td>
<td>0.413824</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>6.688686</td>
<td>1.900417</td>
<td>0.60</td>
<td>1.489192</td>
<td>0.398234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>6.220273</td>
<td>1.827814</td>
<td>0.61</td>
<td>1.466690</td>
<td>0.383008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>5.811269</td>
<td>1.759799</td>
<td>0.62</td>
<td>1.445038</td>
<td>0.368136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>5.451174</td>
<td>1.695831</td>
<td>0.63</td>
<td>1.424197</td>
<td>0.353608</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>5.131821</td>
<td>1.635461</td>
<td>0.64</td>
<td>1.404128</td>
<td>0.339417</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>4.846763</td>
<td>1.578311</td>
<td>0.65</td>
<td>1.384795</td>
<td>0.325552</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continues)
**Table 11.1. (Continued)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$x$</th>
<th>$\Gamma(x)$</th>
<th>$\ln \Gamma(x)$</th>
<th>$x$</th>
<th>$\Gamma(x)$</th>
<th>$\ln \Gamma(x)$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>4.590844</td>
<td>1.524064</td>
<td>0.66</td>
<td>1.366164</td>
<td>0.312007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>4.359888</td>
<td>1.472446</td>
<td>0.67</td>
<td>1.348204</td>
<td>0.298773</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>4.150482</td>
<td>1.423224</td>
<td>0.68</td>
<td>1.330884</td>
<td>0.285843</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.23</td>
<td>3.959804</td>
<td>1.376194</td>
<td>0.69</td>
<td>1.314177</td>
<td>0.273210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.24</td>
<td>3.785504</td>
<td>1.331179</td>
<td>0.70</td>
<td>1.298055</td>
<td>0.260867</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>3.625610</td>
<td>1.288023</td>
<td>0.71</td>
<td>1.282495</td>
<td>0.248808</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.26</td>
<td>3.478450</td>
<td>1.246587</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>1.267473</td>
<td>0.237025</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>3.342604</td>
<td>1.206750</td>
<td>0.73</td>
<td>1.252966</td>
<td>0.225514</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.28</td>
<td>3.216852</td>
<td>1.168403</td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>1.238954</td>
<td>0.214268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.29</td>
<td>3.100143</td>
<td>1.131448</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>1.225417</td>
<td>0.203281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.30</td>
<td>2.991569</td>
<td>1.095798</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>1.212335</td>
<td>0.192549</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.31</td>
<td>2.890336</td>
<td>1.061373</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>1.199692</td>
<td>0.182065</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.32</td>
<td>2.795751</td>
<td>1.028101</td>
<td>0.78</td>
<td>1.187471</td>
<td>0.171826</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>2.707206</td>
<td>0.995917</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>1.175655</td>
<td>0.161825</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.34</td>
<td>2.624163</td>
<td>0.964762</td>
<td>0.80</td>
<td>1.164230</td>
<td>0.152060</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.35</td>
<td>2.546147</td>
<td>0.934581</td>
<td>0.81</td>
<td>1.153181</td>
<td>0.142524</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.36</td>
<td>2.472735</td>
<td>0.905325</td>
<td>0.82</td>
<td>1.142494</td>
<td>0.132114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>2.403550</td>
<td>0.876947</td>
<td>0.83</td>
<td>1.132157</td>
<td>0.124125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.38</td>
<td>2.338256</td>
<td>0.849405</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>1.122158</td>
<td>0.115253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.39</td>
<td>2.276549</td>
<td>0.822661</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>1.112484</td>
<td>0.106595</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.40</td>
<td>2.218160</td>
<td>0.796678</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>1.103124</td>
<td>0.098147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.41</td>
<td>2.162841</td>
<td>0.771422</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>1.094069</td>
<td>0.089904</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.42</td>
<td>2.110371</td>
<td>0.746864</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>1.085308</td>
<td>0.081864</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.43</td>
<td>2.060549</td>
<td>0.722973</td>
<td>0.89</td>
<td>1.076831</td>
<td>0.074022</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.44</td>
<td>2.013193</td>
<td>0.699722</td>
<td>0.90</td>
<td>1.068629</td>
<td>0.066376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.45</td>
<td>1.968136</td>
<td>0.677087</td>
<td>0.91</td>
<td>1.060693</td>
<td>0.058923</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>1.053016</td>
<td>0.051658</td>
<td>1.37</td>
<td>0.889314</td>
<td>−0.117305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>1.045588</td>
<td>0.044579</td>
<td>1.38</td>
<td>0.888537</td>
<td>−0.118179</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continues)
### Table 11.1. (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$x$</th>
<th>$\Gamma(x)$</th>
<th>$\ln \Gamma(x)$</th>
<th>$x$</th>
<th>$\Gamma(x)$</th>
<th>$\ln \Gamma(x)$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>1.038403</td>
<td>0.037684</td>
<td>1.39</td>
<td>0.887854</td>
<td>-0.118948</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>1.031453</td>
<td>0.030969</td>
<td>1.40</td>
<td>0.887264</td>
<td>-0.119613</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.96</td>
<td>1.024732</td>
<td>0.024431</td>
<td>1.41</td>
<td>0.886765</td>
<td>-0.120176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.97</td>
<td>1.018232</td>
<td>0.018068</td>
<td>1.42</td>
<td>0.886356</td>
<td>-0.120637</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>1.011947</td>
<td>0.011877</td>
<td>1.43</td>
<td>0.886036</td>
<td>-0.120997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>1.005872</td>
<td>0.005855</td>
<td>1.44</td>
<td>0.885805</td>
<td>-0.121258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>0.885661</td>
<td>-0.121421</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.01</td>
<td>0.994326</td>
<td>-0.005690</td>
<td>1.46</td>
<td>0.885604</td>
<td>-0.121485</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.02</td>
<td>0.988844</td>
<td>-0.011218</td>
<td>1.47</td>
<td>0.885633</td>
<td>-0.121452</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.03</td>
<td>0.983550</td>
<td>-0.016587</td>
<td>1.48</td>
<td>0.885747</td>
<td>-0.121324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.04</td>
<td>0.978438</td>
<td>-0.021798</td>
<td>1.49</td>
<td>0.885945</td>
<td>-0.121100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.05</td>
<td>0.973504</td>
<td>-0.026853</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>0.886227</td>
<td>-0.120782</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.06</td>
<td>0.968744</td>
<td>-0.031755</td>
<td>1.51</td>
<td>0.886592</td>
<td>-0.120371</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.07</td>
<td>0.964152</td>
<td>-0.036506</td>
<td>1.52</td>
<td>0.887039</td>
<td>-0.119867</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.08</td>
<td>0.959725</td>
<td>-0.041108</td>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>0.887568</td>
<td>-0.119271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.09</td>
<td>0.955459</td>
<td>-0.045563</td>
<td>1.54</td>
<td>0.888178</td>
<td>-0.118583</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.10</td>
<td>0.951351</td>
<td>-0.049872</td>
<td>1.55</td>
<td>0.888868</td>
<td>-0.117806</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.11</td>
<td>0.947396</td>
<td>-0.054039</td>
<td>1.56</td>
<td>0.889639</td>
<td>-0.116939</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.12</td>
<td>0.943590</td>
<td>-0.058063</td>
<td>1.57</td>
<td>0.890490</td>
<td>-0.115984</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.13</td>
<td>0.939931</td>
<td>-0.061948</td>
<td>1.58</td>
<td>0.891420</td>
<td>-0.114940</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.14</td>
<td>0.936416</td>
<td>-0.065695</td>
<td>1.59</td>
<td>0.892428</td>
<td>-0.113809</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.15</td>
<td>0.933041</td>
<td>-0.069306</td>
<td>1.60</td>
<td>0.893515</td>
<td>-0.112592</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.16</td>
<td>0.929803</td>
<td>-0.072782</td>
<td>1.61</td>
<td>0.894681</td>
<td>-0.111288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.17</td>
<td>0.926700</td>
<td>-0.076126</td>
<td>1.62</td>
<td>0.895924</td>
<td>-0.109900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.18</td>
<td>0.923728</td>
<td>-0.079338</td>
<td>1.63</td>
<td>0.897244</td>
<td>-0.108427</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.19</td>
<td>0.920885</td>
<td>-0.082420</td>
<td>1.64</td>
<td>0.898642</td>
<td>-0.106871</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.20</td>
<td>0.918169</td>
<td>-0.085374</td>
<td>1.65</td>
<td>0.900117</td>
<td>-0.105231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>0.915576</td>
<td>-0.088201</td>
<td>1.66</td>
<td>0.901668</td>
<td>-0.103508</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 11.1. (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$x$</th>
<th>$\Gamma(x)$</th>
<th>$\ln \Gamma(x)$</th>
<th>$x$</th>
<th>$\Gamma(x)$</th>
<th>$\ln \Gamma(x)$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.22</td>
<td>0.913106</td>
<td>-0.090903</td>
<td>1.67</td>
<td>0.903296</td>
<td>-0.101704</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.23</td>
<td>0.910755</td>
<td>-0.093482</td>
<td>1.68</td>
<td>0.905001</td>
<td>-0.099819</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.24</td>
<td>0.908521</td>
<td>-0.095937</td>
<td>1.69</td>
<td>0.906782</td>
<td>-0.097853</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>0.906402</td>
<td>-0.098272</td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>0.908639</td>
<td>-0.095808</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.26</td>
<td>0.904397</td>
<td>-0.100487</td>
<td>1.71</td>
<td>0.910572</td>
<td>-0.093683</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.27</td>
<td>0.902503</td>
<td>-0.102583</td>
<td>1.72</td>
<td>0.912581</td>
<td>-0.091479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.28</td>
<td>0.900718</td>
<td>-0.104563</td>
<td>1.73</td>
<td>0.914665</td>
<td>-0.089197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.29</td>
<td>0.899042</td>
<td>-0.106426</td>
<td>1.74</td>
<td>0.916826</td>
<td>-0.086838</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.30</td>
<td>0.897471</td>
<td>-0.108175</td>
<td>1.75</td>
<td>0.919063</td>
<td>-0.084401</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.31</td>
<td>0.896004</td>
<td>-0.109810</td>
<td>1.76</td>
<td>0.921375</td>
<td>-0.081888</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.32</td>
<td>0.894640</td>
<td>-0.111333</td>
<td>1.77</td>
<td>0.923763</td>
<td>-0.079300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.33</td>
<td>0.893378</td>
<td>-0.112745</td>
<td>1.78</td>
<td>0.926227</td>
<td>-0.076636</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.34</td>
<td>0.892216</td>
<td>-0.114048</td>
<td>1.79</td>
<td>0.928767</td>
<td>-0.073897</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.35</td>
<td>0.891151</td>
<td>-0.115241</td>
<td>1.80</td>
<td>0.931384</td>
<td>-0.071084</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.36</td>
<td>0.890185</td>
<td>-0.116326</td>
<td>1.81</td>
<td>0.934076</td>
<td>-0.068197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.37</td>
<td>0.8936845</td>
<td>-0.065237</td>
<td>1.91</td>
<td>0.965231</td>
<td>-0.035388</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.38</td>
<td>0.939690</td>
<td>-0.062205</td>
<td>1.92</td>
<td>0.968774</td>
<td>-0.031724</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.39</td>
<td>0.942612</td>
<td>-0.059100</td>
<td>1.93</td>
<td>0.972397</td>
<td>-0.027991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.40</td>
<td>0.945611</td>
<td>-0.055924</td>
<td>1.94</td>
<td>0.976099</td>
<td>-0.024191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.41</td>
<td>0.948687</td>
<td>-0.052676</td>
<td>1.95</td>
<td>0.979881</td>
<td>-0.020324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.42</td>
<td>0.951840</td>
<td>-0.049358</td>
<td>1.96</td>
<td>0.983743</td>
<td>-0.016391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.43</td>
<td>0.955071</td>
<td>-0.045970</td>
<td>1.97</td>
<td>0.987685</td>
<td>-0.012391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.44</td>
<td>0.958379</td>
<td>-0.042512</td>
<td>1.98</td>
<td>0.991708</td>
<td>-0.008326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>0.961766</td>
<td>-0.038984</td>
<td>1.99</td>
<td>0.995813</td>
<td>-0.004196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.46</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12.1 ELLIPTIC INTEGRALS

12.1.1 Legendre Normal Forms

12.1.1.1

An elliptic integral is an integral of the form $\int R(x, \sqrt{P(x)})\,dx$, in which $R$ is a rational function of its arguments and $P(x)$ is a third- or fourth-degree polynomial with distinct zeros. Every elliptic integral can be reduced to a sum of integrals expressible in terms of algebraic, trigonometric, inverse trigonometric, logarithmic, and exponential functions (the elementary functions), together with one or more of the following three special types of integral:

**Elliptic integral of the first kind.**

1. $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{(1-x^2)(1-k^2x^2)}} \quad [k^2 < 1]$

**Elliptic integral of the second kind.**

2. $\int \frac{\sqrt{1-k^2x^2}}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}\,dx \quad [k^2 < 1]$

**Elliptic integral of the third kind.**

3. $\int \frac{dx}{(1-nx^2)\sqrt{(1-x^2)(1-k^2x^2)}} \quad [k^2 < 1]$
Chapter 12  Elliptic Integrals and Functions

These integrals are said to be expressed in the **Legendre normal form**. The number \(k\) is called the **modulus** of the elliptic integral, and the number \(k' = \sqrt{1-k^2}\) is called the **complementary modulus** of the elliptic integral. It is usual to set \(k = \sin \alpha\), to call \(\alpha\) the **modular angle**, and \(m = k^2 = \sin^2 \alpha\) the **parameter**. In 12.1.1.3, the number \(n\) is called the **characteristic parameter** of the elliptic integral of the third kind.

For many purposes it is more convenient to work with the trigonometric forms of these integrals. These are obtained by setting \(x = \sin \theta\), and then regarding the integrals as functions of their upper limits by evaluating them over the interval \([0, \varphi]\), thereby defining the **elliptic functions**, or incomplete elliptic integrals, \(F(\varphi, k)\), \(E(\varphi, k)\), and \(\Pi(\varphi, k)\) as follows:

**Incomplete elliptic integral of the first kind.**

4. \(F(\varphi, k) = \int_0^\varphi \frac{d\theta}{(1-k^2 \sin^2 \theta)^{1/2}} = \int_0^{\sin \varphi} \frac{dx}{\sqrt{(1-x^2)(1-k^2x^2)}}\)

**Incomplete elliptic integral of the second kind.**

5. \(E(\varphi, k) = \int_0^\varphi (1-k^2 \sin^2 \theta)^{1/2} d\theta = \int_0^{\sin \varphi} \frac{\sqrt{1-k^2x^2}}{\sqrt{1-k^2}} dx \quad [k^2 < 1]\)

**Incomplete elliptic integral of the third kind.**

6. \(\Pi(\varphi, n, k) = \int_0^\varphi \frac{d\theta}{(1-n \sin^2 \theta)(1-k^2 \sin^2 \theta)^{1/2}} = \int_0^{\sin \varphi} \frac{dx}{(1-nx^2)\sqrt{(1-x^2)(1-k^2x^2)}} \quad [k^2 < 1]\)

When the integration in 12.1.1.4–5 is extended over the interval \(0 \leq \theta \leq \pi/2\), the integrals are called **complete elliptic integrals**. The notation used for complete elliptic integrals is

7. \(K(k) = F\left(\frac{\pi}{2}, k\right) = K'(k')\)
8. \(E(k) = E\left(\frac{\pi}{2}, k\right) = E'(k')\)
9. \(K'(k) = F\left(\frac{\pi}{2}, k'\right) = K(k')\)
10. \(E'(k) = E\left(\frac{\pi}{2}, k'\right) = E(k')\)

Frequently the modulus \(k\) is omitted from this notation with the understanding that

\[
K \equiv K(k), \quad K' \equiv K'(k'), \quad E = E(k), \quad E' = E'(k).
\]
12.1 Elliptic Integrals

12.1.2 Tabulations and Trigonometric Series Representations of Complete Elliptic Integrals

Abbreviated tabulations of complete elliptic integrals of the first and second kinds are given in Tables 12.1 and 12.2, with the respective arguments $k^2$ and the modular angle $\alpha (k = \sin \alpha)$.

Table 12.1. Short Table of Complete Elliptic Integrals of the First and Second Kinds with Argument $k^2$

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$k^2$</th>
<th>$K(k)$</th>
<th>$K'(k)$</th>
<th>$E(k)$</th>
<th>$E'(k)$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1.570796</td>
<td>$\infty$</td>
<td>1.570796</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>1.591003</td>
<td>2.908337</td>
<td>1.550973</td>
<td>1.060474</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>1.612441</td>
<td>2.578092</td>
<td>1.530758</td>
<td>1.104775</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>1.635257</td>
<td>2.389016</td>
<td>1.510122</td>
<td>1.143396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>1.659624</td>
<td>2.257205</td>
<td>1.489035</td>
<td>1.17849</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>1.68575</td>
<td>2.156516</td>
<td>1.467462</td>
<td>1.211056</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>1.713889</td>
<td>2.075363</td>
<td>1.445363</td>
<td>1.241671</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.35</td>
<td>1.744351</td>
<td>2.007598</td>
<td>1.422691</td>
<td>1.270707</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>1.777519</td>
<td>1.949568</td>
<td>1.399392</td>
<td>1.298428</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.45</td>
<td>1.813884</td>
<td>1.898925</td>
<td>1.375402</td>
<td>1.325024</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>1.854075</td>
<td>1.854075</td>
<td>1.350644</td>
<td>1.350644</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>1.898925</td>
<td>1.813884</td>
<td>1.325024</td>
<td>1.375402</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>1.949568</td>
<td>1.777519</td>
<td>1.298428</td>
<td>1.399392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.65</td>
<td>2.007598</td>
<td>1.744351</td>
<td>1.270707</td>
<td>1.422691</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>2.075363</td>
<td>1.713889</td>
<td>1.241671</td>
<td>1.445363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>2.156516</td>
<td>1.68575</td>
<td>1.211056</td>
<td>1.467402</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>2.257205</td>
<td>1.659624</td>
<td>1.17849</td>
<td>1.489035</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>2.389016</td>
<td>1.635257</td>
<td>1.143396</td>
<td>1.510122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>2.578092</td>
<td>1.612441</td>
<td>1.104775</td>
<td>1.530758</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>2.908337</td>
<td>1.591003</td>
<td>1.060474</td>
<td>1.550973</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>$\infty$</td>
<td>1.570796</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.570796</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When an analytical approximation is necessary, the following trigonometric series representations can be used.

1. \[ K = \frac{\pi}{2} \left\{ 1 + \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^2 k^2 + \left( \frac{1 \cdot 3}{2 \cdot 4} \right)^2 k^4 + \cdots + \left[ \frac{(2n-1)!!}{2^n n!} \right]^2 k^{2n} + \cdots \right\} \]
Table 12.2. Short Table of Complete Elliptic Integrals of the First and Second Kinds with Argument Modular Angle $\alpha$

\[
K(\alpha) = \int_0^{\pi/2} (1 - \sin^2 \alpha \sin^2 t)^{-1/2} dt \quad K'(\alpha) = \int_0^{\pi/2} [1 - (1 - \sin^2 \alpha \sin^2 t)]^{-1/2} dt
\]

\[
E(\alpha) = \int_0^{\pi/2} (1 - \sin^2 \alpha \sin^2 t)^{1/2} dt \quad E'(\alpha) = \int_0^{\pi/2} [1 - (1 - \sin^2 \alpha \sin^2 t)]^{1/2} dt
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$\alpha$</th>
<th>$K(\alpha)$</th>
<th>$K'(\alpha)$</th>
<th>$E(\alpha)$</th>
<th>$E'(\alpha)$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1.570796</td>
<td>$\infty$</td>
<td>1.570796</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1.573792</td>
<td>3.831742</td>
<td>1.567809</td>
<td>1.012664</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.582843</td>
<td>3.153385</td>
<td>1.558887</td>
<td>1.040114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>1.598142</td>
<td>2.768063</td>
<td>1.544150</td>
<td>1.076405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>1.604695</td>
<td>2.504550</td>
<td>1.532799</td>
<td>1.118378</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>1.648995</td>
<td>2.308787</td>
<td>1.498115</td>
<td>1.163828</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>1.685750</td>
<td>2.156516</td>
<td>1.467462</td>
<td>1.211056</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>1.731245</td>
<td>2.034715</td>
<td>1.432291</td>
<td>1.258680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>1.786769</td>
<td>1.935581</td>
<td>1.393140</td>
<td>1.305539</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>1.854075</td>
<td>1.854075</td>
<td>1.350644</td>
<td>1.350644</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>1.935581</td>
<td>1.786769</td>
<td>1.305539</td>
<td>1.393140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>2.034715</td>
<td>1.731245</td>
<td>1.258680</td>
<td>1.432291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>2.156516</td>
<td>1.685750</td>
<td>1.211056</td>
<td>1.467462</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>2.308787</td>
<td>1.648995</td>
<td>1.163828</td>
<td>1.498115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>2.504550</td>
<td>1.620026</td>
<td>1.118378</td>
<td>1.523799</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>2.768063</td>
<td>1.598142</td>
<td>1.076405</td>
<td>1.544150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>3.153385</td>
<td>1.582843</td>
<td>1.040114</td>
<td>1.558887</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>3.831742</td>
<td>1.573792</td>
<td>1.012664</td>
<td>1.567809</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>$\infty$</td>
<td>1.570796</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.570796</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. $K = \frac{\pi}{1 + k^2} \left\{ 1 + \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^2 \left( \frac{1-k'}{1+k'} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{1 \cdot 3}{2 \cdot 4} \right)^2 \left( \frac{1-k'}{1+k'} \right)^4 + \cdots \right. $

\[ + \left. \left[ \frac{(2n-1)!!}{2^n n!} \right]^2 \left( \frac{1-k'}{1+k'} \right)^{2n} + \cdots \right\} \]

3. $K = \ln \left( \frac{4}{k} \right) + \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^2 \left( \ln \left( \frac{4}{k} \right) - \frac{2}{1 \cdot 2} \right) k'^2$

\[ + \left( \frac{1 \cdot 3}{2 \cdot 4} \right)^2 \left( \ln \left( \frac{4}{k} \right) - \frac{2}{1 \cdot 2} - \frac{2}{2 \cdot 3} \right) k'^4 + \cdots \]

\[ + \left( \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6} \right)^2 \left( \ln \left( \frac{4}{k} \right) - \frac{2}{1 \cdot 2} - \frac{2}{3 \cdot 4} - \frac{2}{5 \cdot 6} \right) k'^6 + \cdots \]
4. \[ E = \frac{\pi}{2} \left\{ 1 - \frac{1}{2^2} k^2 - \frac{1^2 \cdot 3}{2^2 \cdot 4} k^4 - \cdots - \left[ \frac{(2n-1)!!}{2^n n!} \right]^2 k^{2n} \right\} \]

5. \[ E = \frac{(1 + k')\pi}{4} \left\{ 1 + \frac{1}{2^2} \left( \frac{1 - k'}{1 + k'} \right)^2 + \frac{1^2}{2^2 \cdot 4^2} \left( \frac{1 - k'}{1 + k'} \right)^4 + \cdots \\
+ \left[ \frac{(2n - 3)!!}{2^n n!} \right]^2 \left( \frac{1 - k'}{1 + k'} \right)^{2n} + \cdots \right\} \]

6. \[ E = 1 + \frac{1}{2} \left( \ln \left( \frac{4}{k'} \right) - \frac{2}{1 \cdot 2} \right) k^2 + \frac{1^2 \cdot 3}{2^2 \cdot 4} \left( \ln \left( \frac{4}{k'} \right) - \frac{2}{1 \cdot 2} - \frac{1}{3 \cdot 4} \right) k^4 \\
+ \frac{1^2 \cdot 3^2 \cdot 5}{2^2 \cdot 4^2 \cdot 6} \left( \ln \left( \frac{4}{k'} \right) - \frac{2}{1 \cdot 2} - \frac{2}{3 \cdot 4} - \frac{2}{5 \cdot 6} \right) k^6 + \cdots \\
\left( (2n - 1)!! = 1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (2n - 1) \right) \]

12.1.3 Tabulations and Trigonometric Series for \( E(\varphi, k) \) and \( F(\varphi, k) \)

Abbreviated tabulations of incomplete elliptic integrals of the first and second kinds are given in Table 12.3, with the argument being the modular angle \( \alpha \) \((k = \sin \alpha)\). When an analytical approximation is necessary the following trigonometric series representations can be used. For small values of \( \varphi \) and \( k \):

1. \[ F(\varphi, k) = \frac{2}{\pi} K \varphi - \sin \varphi \cos \varphi \left( a_0 + \frac{2}{3} a_1 \sin^2 \varphi + \frac{2}{3} \cdot 4 a_2 \sin^4 \varphi + \cdots \right), \]
   where
   \[ a_0 = \frac{2}{\pi} K - 1, \quad a_n = a_{n-1} - \left[ \frac{(2n - 1)!!}{2^n n!} \right]^2 k^{2n}. \]

2. \[ E(\varphi, k) = \frac{2}{\pi} E \varphi + \sin \varphi \cos \varphi \left( b_0 + \frac{2}{3} b_1 \sin^2 \varphi + \frac{2}{3} \cdot 4 b_2 \sin^4 \varphi + \cdots \right), \]
   where
   \[ b_0 = 1 - \frac{2}{\pi} K, \quad b_n = b_{n-1} - \left[ \frac{(2n - 1)!!}{2^n n!} \right]^2 k^{2n} \frac{2n - 1}{2n - 1}. \]
   For \( k \) close to 1:

3. \[ F(\varphi, k) = \frac{2}{\pi} K' \ln \tan \left( \frac{\varphi}{2} + \frac{\pi}{4} \right) - \tan \frac{\varphi}{\cos \varphi} \left( a'_0 - \frac{2}{3} a'_1 \tan^2 \varphi + \frac{2}{3} \cdot 4 a'_2 \sin^4 \varphi + \cdots \right), \]
   where
   \[ a'_0 = \frac{2}{\pi} K' - 1, \quad a'_n = a'_{n-1} - \left[ \frac{(2n - 1)!!}{2^n n!} \right]^2 k'^{2n}. \]
Table 12.3. Short Table of Incomplete Elliptic Integrals of the First and Second Kinds with Argument Modular Angle $\alpha$

\[
F(\varphi, \alpha) = \int_0^{\varphi} (1 - \sin^2 \alpha \sin^2 t)^{-1/2} dt \quad [k = \sin \alpha]
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(\varphi)</th>
<th>0°</th>
<th>10°</th>
<th>20°</th>
<th>30°</th>
<th>40°</th>
<th>50°</th>
<th>60°</th>
<th>70°</th>
<th>80°</th>
<th>90°</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0°</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10°</td>
<td>0.174533</td>
<td>0.174559</td>
<td>0.174636</td>
<td>0.174754</td>
<td>0.174899</td>
<td>0.175054</td>
<td>0.175200</td>
<td>0.175320</td>
<td>0.175399</td>
<td>0.175426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20°</td>
<td>0.349066</td>
<td>0.349275</td>
<td>0.349880</td>
<td>0.350819</td>
<td>0.351989</td>
<td>0.353257</td>
<td>0.354472</td>
<td>0.355480</td>
<td>0.356146</td>
<td>0.356379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30°</td>
<td>0.523599</td>
<td>0.524284</td>
<td>0.526284</td>
<td>0.529429</td>
<td>0.533427</td>
<td>0.537868</td>
<td>0.542229</td>
<td>0.545932</td>
<td>0.548425</td>
<td>0.549306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40°</td>
<td>0.698132</td>
<td>0.699692</td>
<td>0.704287</td>
<td>0.712626</td>
<td>0.723208</td>
<td>0.732308</td>
<td>0.743581</td>
<td>0.753521</td>
<td>0.760426</td>
<td>0.762910</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50°</td>
<td>0.872665</td>
<td>0.875555</td>
<td>0.884162</td>
<td>0.898245</td>
<td>0.917255</td>
<td>0.940076</td>
<td>0.964652</td>
<td>0.987623</td>
<td>1.004439</td>
<td>1.010683</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60°</td>
<td>1.047198</td>
<td>1.051879</td>
<td>1.065969</td>
<td>1.089551</td>
<td>1.122557</td>
<td>1.164316</td>
<td>1.212597</td>
<td>1.261860</td>
<td>1.301353</td>
<td>1.316958</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70°</td>
<td>1.221730</td>
<td>1.228610</td>
<td>1.253011</td>
<td>1.285301</td>
<td>1.337228</td>
<td>1.406768</td>
<td>1.494411</td>
<td>1.595906</td>
<td>1.691815</td>
<td>1.735415</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80°</td>
<td>1.396263</td>
<td>1.405645</td>
<td>1.434116</td>
<td>1.484555</td>
<td>1.559734</td>
<td>1.665965</td>
<td>1.812530</td>
<td>2.011928</td>
<td>2.265272</td>
<td>2.436246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90°</td>
<td>1.570796</td>
<td>1.582843</td>
<td>1.620026</td>
<td>1.685750</td>
<td>1.786769</td>
<td>1.935581</td>
<td>2.156516</td>
<td>2.504549</td>
<td>3.153384</td>
<td>$\infty$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[
E(\varphi, \alpha) = \int_0^{\varphi} (1 - \sin^2 \alpha \sin^2 t)^{1/2} dt \quad [k = \sin \alpha]
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(\varphi)</th>
<th>0°</th>
<th>10°</th>
<th>20°</th>
<th>30°</th>
<th>40°</th>
<th>50°</th>
<th>60°</th>
<th>70°</th>
<th>80°</th>
<th>90°</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0°</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10°</td>
<td>0.174533</td>
<td>0.174506</td>
<td>0.174430</td>
<td>0.174312</td>
<td>0.174168</td>
<td>0.174015</td>
<td>0.173870</td>
<td>0.173752</td>
<td>0.173675</td>
<td>0.173648</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20°</td>
<td>0.349066</td>
<td>0.348857</td>
<td>0.348255</td>
<td>0.347329</td>
<td>0.346168</td>
<td>0.344963</td>
<td>0.343806</td>
<td>0.342858</td>
<td>0.342236</td>
<td>0.342020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30°</td>
<td>0.523599</td>
<td>0.522915</td>
<td>0.520937</td>
<td>0.517882</td>
<td>0.514089</td>
<td>0.509995</td>
<td>0.506092</td>
<td>0.502868</td>
<td>0.500747</td>
<td>0.500000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40°</td>
<td>0.698132</td>
<td>0.696578</td>
<td>0.692070</td>
<td>0.685600</td>
<td>0.676282</td>
<td>0.666705</td>
<td>0.657463</td>
<td>0.649737</td>
<td>0.645932</td>
<td>0.642788</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50°</td>
<td>0.872665</td>
<td>0.869790</td>
<td>0.861421</td>
<td>0.848317</td>
<td>0.831732</td>
<td>0.813383</td>
<td>0.795380</td>
<td>0.780066</td>
<td>0.769713</td>
<td>0.760444</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60°</td>
<td>1.047198</td>
<td>1.042550</td>
<td>1.028972</td>
<td>1.007556</td>
<td>0.980134</td>
<td>0.949298</td>
<td>0.918393</td>
<td>0.891436</td>
<td>0.872555</td>
<td>0.866025</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70°</td>
<td>1.221730</td>
<td>1.214913</td>
<td>1.194925</td>
<td>1.163177</td>
<td>1.122054</td>
<td>1.074998</td>
<td>1.026637</td>
<td>0.982976</td>
<td>0.951438</td>
<td>0.939693</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80°</td>
<td>1.396263</td>
<td>1.386979</td>
<td>1.359682</td>
<td>1.316058</td>
<td>1.258967</td>
<td>1.192553</td>
<td>1.122486</td>
<td>1.056482</td>
<td>1.005433</td>
<td>0.984808</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90°</td>
<td>1.570796</td>
<td>1.558887</td>
<td>1.523799</td>
<td>1.467462</td>
<td>1.393140</td>
<td>1.305539</td>
<td>1.211056</td>
<td>1.118378</td>
<td>1.040114</td>
<td>1.000000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12.2 Jacobian Elliptic Functions

4. \[ E(\varphi, k) = \frac{2}{\pi} (K' - E') \ln \tan \left( \frac{\varphi}{2} + \frac{\pi}{4} \right) + \frac{\tan \varphi}{\cos \varphi} \left( b'_1 - \frac{2}{3} b'_2 \tan^2 \varphi + \frac{2}{3} \cdot 4 b'_3 \tan^4 \varphi - \cdots \right) \]

\[ + \frac{1}{\sin \varphi} \left[ 1 - \cos \varphi \sqrt{1 - k^2 \sin \varphi} \right], \]

where

\[ b'_0 = \frac{2}{\pi} (K' - E'), \quad b'_n = b'_{n-1} - \left[ \frac{(2n - 3)!!}{2^{n-1}(n-1)!} \right]^2 \left( \frac{2n - 1}{2n} \right) k^{2n}. \]

12.2 JACOBIAN ELLIPTIC FUNCTIONS

12.2.1 The Functions sn u, cn u, and dn u

12.2.1.1

The Jacobian elliptic functions are defined in terms of the elliptic integral

1. \[ u = \int_0^\varphi \frac{d\theta}{(1 - k^2 \sin^2 \theta)^{1/2}} = F(\varphi, k), \]

in which \( \varphi \) is called the amplitude of \( u \) and is written

2. \( \varphi = \text{am} u. \)

The Jacobian elliptic functions sn u, cn u, and dn u are defined as

3. \( \text{sn} u = \sin \varphi \)
4. \( \text{cn} u = \cos \varphi = (1 - \text{sn}^2 u)^{1/2} \)
5. \( \text{dn} u = (1 - k^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{1/2} = \Delta(\varphi) \) \hspace{1cm} (the delta amplitude)

In terms of the Legendre normal form of 12.2.1.1,

\[ u = \int_0^x \frac{dv}{\sqrt{(1 - v^2)(1 - k^2 v^2)}}, \]

we have

6. \( x = \sin \varphi = \text{sn} u, \)
7. \( \varphi = \text{am} u = \arcsin(\text{sn} u) = \arcsin x. \)

12.2.2 Basic Results

12.2.2.1 Even and Odd Properties and Special Values

1. \( \text{am}(-u) = -\text{am} u \)
2. \( \text{sn}(-u) = -\text{sn} u \) \hspace{1cm} (odd function)
3. \( \text{cn}(-u) = \text{cn} u \) (even function)
4. \( \text{dn}(-u) = \text{dn} u \) (even function)
5. \( \text{am} 0 = 0 \)
6. \( \text{sn} 0 = 0 \)
7. \( \text{cn} 0 = 1 \)
8. \( \text{dn} 0 = 1 \)

12.2.2.2 Identities

1. \( \text{sn}^2 u + \text{cn}^2 u = 1 \)
2. \( \text{dn}^2 u + k^2 \text{sn}^2 u = 1 \)
3. \( \text{dn}^2 u - k^2 \text{cn}^2 u = 1 - k^2 \)

12.2.2.3 Addition Formulas for Double and Half-Arguments

1. \( \text{sn}(u \pm v) = \frac{\text{sn} u \text{cn} v \text{dn} v \pm \text{cn} u \text{sn} v \text{dn} u}{1 - k^2 \text{sn}^2 u \text{sn}^2 v} \)
2. \( \text{cn}(u \pm v) = \frac{\text{cn} u \text{cn} v \mp \text{sn} u \text{dn} u \text{sn} v \text{dn} v}{1 - k^2 \text{sn}^2 u \text{sn}^2 v} \)
3. \( \text{dn}(u \pm v) = \frac{\text{dn} u \text{dn} v \mp k^2 \text{sn} u \text{cn} u \text{sn} v \text{cn} v}{1 - k^2 \text{sn}^2 u \text{sn}^2 v} \)
4. \( \text{sn}(2u) = \frac{2 \text{sn} u \text{cn} u \text{dn} u}{1 - k^2 \text{sn}^4 u} \)
5. \( \text{cn}(2u) = \frac{\text{cn}^2 u - \text{sn}^2 u \text{dn}^2 u}{1 - k^2 \text{sn}^4 u} \)
6. \( \text{dn}(2u) = \frac{\text{dn}^2 u - k^2 \text{sn}^2 u \text{cn}^2 u}{1 - k^2 \text{sn}^4 u} \)
7. \( \text{sn}\left(\frac{1}{2} u\right) = \left( \frac{1 - \text{cn} u}{1 + \text{dn} u} \right)^{1/2} \)
8. \( \text{cn}\left(\frac{1}{2} u\right) = \left( \frac{\text{cn} u + \text{dn} u}{1 + \text{dn} u} \right)^{1/2} \)
9. \( \text{dn}\left(\frac{1}{2} u\right) = \left( \frac{\text{cn} u + \text{dn} u}{1 + \text{cn} u} \right)^{1/2} \)
12.2.2.4 Series Expansions of $\text{sn} u$, $\text{cn} u$, $\text{dn} u$, and $\text{am} u$ in Powers of $u$

Using the notation $pq(u | k^2)$ to signify that $pq$ is a function of $u$ and $k^2$ we have:

1. $\text{sn}(u | k^2) = u - \frac{1}{3!} (1 + k^2)u^3 + \frac{1}{5!} (1 + 14k^2 + k^4)u^5 - \cdots$

2. $\text{cn}(u | k^2) = 1 - \frac{1}{2!} (1 + k^2)u^2 + \frac{1}{4!} (1 + 4k^2)u^4 - \frac{1}{6!} (1 + 44k^2 + 16k^4)u^6 + \cdots$

3. $\text{dn}(u | k^2) = 1 - \frac{1}{2!} k^2u^2 + \frac{1}{4!} k^2(4 + k^2)u^4 - \frac{1}{6!} k^2(16 + 44k^2 + k^4)u^6 + \cdots$

4. $\text{am}(u | k^2) = u - \frac{1}{3!} k^2u^3 + \frac{1}{5!} k^2(4 + k^2)u^5 - \frac{1}{7!} k^2(16 + 44k^2 + k^4)u^7 + \cdots$

5. $\text{sn}(u | 0) = \sin u$

6. $\text{cn}(u | 0) = \cos u$

7. $\text{dn}(u | 0) = 1$

8. $\text{sn}(u | 1) = \tanh u$

9. $\text{cn}(u | 1) = \text{sech} u$

10. $\text{dn}(u | 1) = \text{sech} u$

12.3 DERIVATIVES AND INTEGRALS

12.3.1 Derivatives of $\text{sn} u$, $\text{cn} u$, and $\text{dn} u$

12.3.1.1

1. $\frac{d}{du} [\text{sn} u] = \text{cn} u \text{dn} u$

2. $\frac{d}{du} [\text{cn} u] = -\text{sn} u \text{dn} u$

3. $\frac{d}{du} [\text{dn} u] = -k^2 \text{sn} u \text{cn} u$

12.3.2 Integrals Involving $\text{sn} u$, $\text{cn} u$, and $\text{dn} u$

12.3.2.1

1. $\int \text{sn} u \, du = \frac{1}{k} (\text{dn} u - k \text{cn} u)$
2. \[ \int \text{cn} \, u \, du = \frac{1}{k} \arccos(\text{dn} \, u) \]

3. \[ \int \text{dn} \, u \, du = \arcsin(\text{sn} \, u) = \text{am} \, u \]

4. \[ \int \frac{du}{\text{sn} \, u} = \ln \left| \frac{\text{sn} \, u}{\text{cn} \, u + \text{dn} \, u} \right| \]

5. \[ \int \frac{du}{\text{cn} \, u} = \left( \frac{1}{1 - k^2} \right) \ln \left| \frac{(1 - k^2) \, \text{sn} \, u + \text{dn} \, u}{\text{cn} \, u} \right| \]

6. \[ \int \frac{du}{\text{dn} \, u} = \left( \frac{1}{1 - k^2} \right) \arctan \left| \frac{(1 - k^2) \, \text{sn} \, u - \text{cn} \, u}{(1 - k^2) \, \text{sn} \, u + \text{cn} \, u} \right| \]

### 12.4 INVERSE JACOBIAN ELLIPTIC FUNCTIONS

#### 12.4.1 Definitions

##### 12.4.1.1 \( \text{sn}^{-1} \, u, \text{cn}^{-1} \, u, \text{and} \, \text{dn}^{-1} \, u \)

Each Jacobian elliptic function is the inverse of an appropriate elliptic integral. Since \( \varphi = \text{am} \, u \) and

1. \[ u = \int_0^\varphi \frac{d\theta}{(1 - k^2 \sin^2 \theta)^{1/2}} \quad [0 < \varphi \leq \pi/2], \]

   it follows that

2. \[ \text{am}^{-1} \, \varphi = \int_0^\varphi \frac{d\theta}{(1 - k^2 \sin^2 \theta)^{1/2}} = F(\varphi, k). \]

Analogously,

3. \[ \text{sn}^{-1} \, u = \int_0^u \frac{dx}{\sqrt{(1 - x^2)(1 - k^2 x^2)}} = F(\arcsin x, k) \quad [0 < x \leq 1] \]

4. \[ \text{cn}^{-1} \, u = \int_u^1 \frac{dx}{\sqrt{(1 - x^2)(1 - k^2 + k^2 x^2)}} = F(\arcsin \sqrt{1 - x^2}, k) \quad [0 \leq x < 1] \]

5. \[ \text{dn}^{-1} \, u = \int_u^1 \frac{dx}{\sqrt{(1 - x^2)(x^2 + k^2 - 1)}} = F(\arcsin \sqrt{(1 - x^2)/k^2}, k) \quad [1 - k^2 \leq x < 1] \]

#### 12.4.1.2 Special Values

1. \( \text{sn}^{-1}(\varphi, 1) = \ln|\sec \varphi + \tan \varphi| \)

2. \( \text{cn}^{-1}(u, 1) = \ln|(1 + u)^{1/2}(1 - u)^{-1/2}| \)
3. $dn^{-1}(u, 1) = \ln\left[1 + (1 - u^2)^{1/2}\right]/u$

4. $sn^{-1}(u, 0) = \arcsin u$

5. $cn^{-1}(u, 0) = \arccos u$

### 12.4.1.3 Integrals of $sn^{-1} u$, $cn^{-1} u$, and $dn^{-1} u$

1. $\int sn^{-1} u \, du = u \, sn^{-1} u + \frac{1}{k} \cosh \left[ \frac{(1 - k^2 u^2)^{1/2}}{1 - k^2} \right]$

2. $\int cn^{-1} u \, du = u \, cn^{-1} u - \frac{1}{k} \arccosh[(1 - k^2 + k^2 u^2)^{1/2}]$

3. $\int dn^{-1} u = u \, dn^{-1} u - \arcsin \left[ \frac{(1 - u^2)^{1/2}}{k} \right]$
Chapter 13
Probability Distributions and Integrals, and the Error Function

13.1 DISTRIBUTIONS
13.1.1 Definitions
13.1.1.1 The Normal or Gaussian Probability Density Function

1. \( f(x) = \frac{1}{\sigma \sqrt{2\pi}} \exp \left\{ -\frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{x - \mu}{\sigma} \right)^2 \right\} \),

is symmetrical about \( x = \mu \) and such that

2. \( \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) \, dx = \frac{1}{\sigma \sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp \left\{ -\frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{x - \mu}{\sigma} \right)^2 \right\} \, dx = 1. \)

The distribution has a mean of

3. \( \mu = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x f(x) \, dx = \frac{1}{\sigma \sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x \exp \left\{ -\frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{x - \mu}{\sigma} \right)^2 \right\} \, dx \)

and a variance of

4. \( \sigma^2 = \frac{1}{\sigma \sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (x - \mu)^2 \exp \left\{ -\frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{x - \mu}{\sigma} \right)^2 \right\} \, dx. \)

When the normal probability density \( f(x) \) is standardized with zero mean \( (\mu = 0) \) and unit variance \( (\sigma = 1) \) the normal probability distribution \( P(x) \), also denoted by \( \Phi(x) \), is defined as
5. \[ P(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{x} e^{-t^2/2} dt. \]

Related functions used in statistics are

6. \[ Q(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{x}^{\infty} e^{-t^2/2} dt = 1 - P(x) = P(-x) \]

7. \[ A(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-x}^{x} e^{-t^2/2} dt = 2P(x) - 1. \]

Special values of \( P(x), Q(x), \) and \( A(x) \) are

\[ P(-\infty) = 0, \quad P(0) = 0.5, \quad P(\infty) = 1, \quad Q(-\infty) = 1, \quad Q(0) = 0.5, \]
\[ Q(\infty) = 0, \quad A(0) = 0, \quad A(\infty) = 1. \]

An abbreviated tabulation of \( P(x), Q(x), \) and \( A(x) \) is given in Table 13.1.

13.1.1.2

The binomial distribution, also called the Bernoulli distribution, is a discrete distribution that describes the behavior of \( n \) independent random variables, \( x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n, \) often called experiments, that can assume one of two different states, say \( A \) and \( B. \) Let the probability of occurrence of state \( A \) be \( p, \) in which case the probability of occurrence of state \( B \) will be \( 1 - p. \) Then in a test of \( n \) trials, the probability \( P(k) \) that state \( A \) will occur precisely \( k \) times is

\[ P(k) = \binom{n}{k} p^k (1-p)^{n-k} = \frac{n!}{k! (n-k)!} p^k (1-p)^{n-k} \quad (k = 1, 2, \ldots, n) \]

The mean value \( \mu \) of the binomial distribution, also called the mathematical expectation and denoted by \( E(x_n), \) is given by \( \mu = E(x_n) = np \) and the variance of the binomial distribution is given by \( \sigma^2 = np(1-p). \) A set of \( n \) independent random trials with the probability that the occurrence of event \( A \) is given by \( P(k) \) is said to satisfy a binomial distribution.

A typical example of a set of trials described by a binomial distribution occurs when a coin is flipped \( n \) times. In this case if state \( A \) is the occurrence of “heads” and state \( B \) is the occurrence of “tails,” the probability of the occurrence of “heads” will only be \( p = 0.5 \) if the coin is unbiased; otherwise, \( p \neq 0.5. \)

When \( n \) is large, provided \( p \) and \( 1-p \) are not too small, the binomial distribution can be approximated by the normal distribution in 13.1.1.1, using as the mean \( \mu = np \) and as the variance \( \sigma^2 = np(1-p) \) to arrive at the approximation

\[ \lim_{n \to \infty} P \left( \frac{x_n - \mu}{\sigma} \leq \kappa \right) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\kappa} \exp \left( -\frac{1}{2} s^2 \right) ds. \]

This provides a good approximation when \( p \approx 0.5 \) and \( n \) is large, though the approximation is also used when \( p \) is not close to 0.5, provided both \( np \) and \( n(1-p) \) exceed 4.
When either $p$ or $1-p$ are small, this approximation fails, and the binomial distribution must be approximated by the Poisson distribution (see 13.1.1.3).

Table 13.1. Abbreviated Tabulation of $P(x)$, $Q(x)$, $A(x)$, and $\text{erf } x$

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$x$</th>
<th>$P(x)$</th>
<th>$Q(x)$</th>
<th>$A(x)$</th>
<th>$\text{erf } x$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.539828</td>
<td>0.460172</td>
<td>0.079656</td>
<td>0.112463</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.579260</td>
<td>0.420740</td>
<td>0.158519</td>
<td>0.222702</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0.617911</td>
<td>0.382089</td>
<td>0.235823</td>
<td>0.328627</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.655422</td>
<td>0.344578</td>
<td>0.310843</td>
<td>0.428392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.691462</td>
<td>0.308538</td>
<td>0.382925</td>
<td>0.520500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.725747</td>
<td>0.274253</td>
<td>0.451494</td>
<td>0.603856</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>0.758036</td>
<td>0.241964</td>
<td>0.516073</td>
<td>0.677801</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.788145</td>
<td>0.211855</td>
<td>0.576289</td>
<td>0.742101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>0.815940</td>
<td>0.184060</td>
<td>0.631880</td>
<td>0.796908</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.841345</td>
<td>0.158655</td>
<td>0.682689</td>
<td>0.842701</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>0.864334</td>
<td>0.135666</td>
<td>0.728668</td>
<td>0.880205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>0.884930</td>
<td>0.115070</td>
<td>0.769861</td>
<td>0.910314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>0.903199</td>
<td>0.096801</td>
<td>0.806399</td>
<td>0.934008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>0.919243</td>
<td>0.080757</td>
<td>0.838487</td>
<td>0.952285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>0.933193</td>
<td>0.066807</td>
<td>0.866386</td>
<td>0.966105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>0.945201</td>
<td>0.054799</td>
<td>0.890401</td>
<td>0.976348</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>0.955435</td>
<td>0.044565</td>
<td>0.910869</td>
<td>0.983790</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>0.964070</td>
<td>0.035930</td>
<td>0.928139</td>
<td>0.989090</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>0.971284</td>
<td>0.028716</td>
<td>0.942567</td>
<td>0.992790</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>0.977250</td>
<td>0.022750</td>
<td>0.954500</td>
<td>0.995322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>0.982136</td>
<td>0.017864</td>
<td>0.964271</td>
<td>0.997020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>0.986097</td>
<td>0.013903</td>
<td>0.972193</td>
<td>0.998137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>0.989276</td>
<td>0.010724</td>
<td>0.978552</td>
<td>0.998857</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>0.991802</td>
<td>0.008198</td>
<td>0.983605</td>
<td>0.999311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>0.993790</td>
<td>0.006210</td>
<td>0.987581</td>
<td>0.999593</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>0.995339</td>
<td>0.004661</td>
<td>0.990678</td>
<td>0.999764</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>0.996533</td>
<td>0.003467</td>
<td>0.993066</td>
<td>0.999866</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>0.997445</td>
<td>0.002555</td>
<td>0.994890</td>
<td>0.999925</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.9</td>
<td>0.998134</td>
<td>0.001866</td>
<td>0.996268</td>
<td>0.999959</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>0.998650</td>
<td>0.001350</td>
<td>0.997300</td>
<td>0.999978</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>∞</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13.1.1.3

The Poisson distribution is a discrete distribution of random variables $x$ that are non-negative integers, where the probability that $x = k$, written $P(k)$ is given by

$$P(k) = \frac{\lambda^k}{k!} e^{-\lambda} \quad (\mu > 0, k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots).$$
The number \( \lambda \) is called the parameter of the Poisson distribution, and its mean and variance are given by
\[
\mu = \lambda \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma^2 = \lambda.
\]

A typical application of the Poisson distribution is in the analysis of rare events, like floods or freak accidents.

### 13.1.2 Power Series Representations \((x \geq 0)\)

#### 13.1.2.1

1. \(P(x) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \left\{ x - \frac{x^3}{6} + \frac{x^5}{40} - \frac{x^7}{336} + \frac{x^9}{3456} - \cdots \right\} \]

\[
= \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k x^{2k+1}}{k!2^k (2k+1)} \quad [x \geq 0]
\]

2. \(Q(x) = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \left\{ x - \frac{x^3}{6} + \frac{x^5}{40} - \frac{x^7}{336} + \frac{x^9}{3456} - \cdots \right\} \]

\[
= \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k x^{2k+1}}{k!2^k (2k+1)} \quad [x \geq 0]
\]

3. \(A(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \left\{ x - \frac{x^3}{6} + \frac{x^5}{40} - \frac{x^7}{336} + \frac{x^9}{3456} - \cdots \right\} \]

\[
= \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k x^{2k+1}}{k!2^k (2k+1)} \quad [x \geq 0]
\]

### 13.1.3 Asymptotic Expansions \((x \gg 0)\)

#### 13.1.3.1

1. \(P(x) \sim 1 - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{e^{-x^2/2}}{x} \left[ 1 - \frac{1}{x^2} + \frac{1}{x^4} - \frac{1}{x^6} + \cdots \right.\]

\[
+ \frac{(-1)^n 1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (2n-1)}{x^{2n}} \left] + R_n, \quad \text{where the remainder (error) term } R_n \text{ is such that } |R_n| \text{ is less than the magnitude of the first term to be neglected in the asymptotic expansion and of the same sign for } x \gg 0.\right]
\]

2. \(Q(x) \sim \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{e^{-x^2/2}}{x} \left[ 1 - \frac{1}{x^2} + \frac{1}{x^4} - \frac{1}{x^6} + \cdots \right.\]

\[
+ \frac{(-1)^n 1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (2n-1)}{x^{2n}} \left] + R_n, \quad \text{where the remainder (error) term } R_n \text{ is such that } |R_n| \text{ is less than the magnitude of the first term to be neglected in the asymptotic expansion and of the same sign for } x \gg 0.\right]
\]
3. \( A(x) \sim 1 - \frac{2}{\pi} e^{-x^2/2} x \left[ 1 - \frac{1}{x^2} + \frac{1 \cdot 3}{x^4} - \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5}{x^6} + \cdots \right. \\
\left. + \left( -1 \right)^n \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (2n - 1)}{x^{2n}} \right] + R_n, \)

where the remainder (error) term \( R_n \) is such that \(|R_n|\) is less than the magnitude of the first term to be neglected in the asymptotic expansion and of the same sign for \( x \gg 0 \).

13.2 THE ERROR FUNCTION

13.2.1 Definitions

13.2.1.1

The error function \( \text{erf} \) occurs in probability theory and statistics and diffusion problems, and is defined as

\[ \text{erf} x = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_0^x e^{-t^2} dt, \]

and it obeys the symmetry relation

\[ \text{erf}(-x) = -\text{erf} \, x. \]

Special values of \( \text{erf} \) are

3. \( \text{erf} \, 0 = 0 \) and \( \text{erf} \, \infty = 1. \)

The complementary error function \( \text{erfc} \) is defined as

4. \( \text{erfc} \, x = 1 - \text{erf} \, x. \)

13.2.2 Power Series Representation

13.2.2.1

\[ \text{erf} x = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \left\{ x - \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{x^5}{10} - \frac{x^7}{42} + \frac{x^9}{216} - \cdots \right\} \]
\[ = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k x^{2k+1}}{k! (2k + 1)}. \]

An abbreviated tabulation of \( \text{erf} \) is given in Table 13.1.

13.2.3 Asymptotic Expansion (\( x \gg 0 \))

13.2.3.1

\[ \text{erf} x \sim 1 - \frac{e^{-x^2}}{x \sqrt{\pi}} \left\{ 1 - \frac{1}{2x^2} + \frac{1 \cdot 3}{2^2 x^4} - \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5}{2^3 x^6} + \cdots + \frac{(-1)^n (2n)!}{n! 2^{2n} x^{2n}} \right\} + R_n \]

where the remainder (error) term \( R_n \) is less than the magnitude of the first term to be neglected in the asymptotic expansion and of the same sign, for \( x \gg 0. \)
13.2.4 Connection Between $P(x)$ and erf $x$

13.2.4.1

1. $P(x) = \frac{1}{2} \left[ 1 + \text{erf} \frac{x}{\sqrt{2}} \right].$

13.2.5 Integrals Expressible in Terms of erf $x$

13.2.5.1

1. \[ \int_0^\infty e^{-t^2} \frac{2tx}{t} dt = \frac{1}{2\pi} \text{erf} x \]
2. \[ \int_0^\infty e^{-t^2} \sin 2tx dx = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\pi}} e^{-x^2} \text{erf} x \]

13.2.6 Derivatives of erf $x$

13.2.6.1

1. \[ \frac{d}{dx} \text{erf} x = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} e^{-x^2} \]
2. \[ \frac{d^2}{dx^2} \text{erf} x = -\frac{4}{\sqrt{\pi}} x e^{-x^2} \]
3. \[ \frac{d^3}{dx^3} \text{erf} x = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}} (8x^2 - 4) e^{-x^2} \]
4. \[ \frac{d^4}{dx^4} \text{erf} x = -\frac{8}{\sqrt{\pi}} (3 - 2x^2) x e^{-x^2} \]

13.2.7 Integrals of erfc $x$

13.2.7.1

The $n$th repeated integral of erfc $x$ arises in the study of diffusion and heat conduction and is denoted by $i^n \text{erfc} x$, with

1. $i^n \text{erfc} x = \int_x^\infty i^{n-1} \text{erfc} t dt \quad [n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots]$,
2. $i^{-1} \text{erfc} x = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} e^{-x^2}$ and $i^0 \text{erfc} x = \text{erfc} x$.

In particular,

3. $i \text{erfc} x = -\frac{1}{\pi} e^{-x^2} - x \text{erfc} x$
4. $i^2 \text{erfc} x = -\frac{1}{4} (\text{erfc} x - 2x i \text{erfc} x)$
and $i^n \text{erfc} \ x$ satisfies the recurrence relation

5. $2n \ i^n \ \text{erfc} \ x = -i^{n-2} \ \text{erfc} \ x + 2x \ i^{n-1} \ \text{erfc} \ x \quad [n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots].$

13.2.8 Integral and Power Series Representation of $i^n \ \text{erfc} \ x$

13.2.8.1

1. $i^n \ \text{erfc} \ x = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_x^\infty \frac{(t-x)^n}{n!} e^{-t^2} \, dt$

2. $i^n \ \text{erfc} \ x = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k \ x^k}{2^n - k! \Gamma \left(1 + \frac{n-k}{2}\right)}$

13.2.9 Value of $i^n \ \text{erfc} \ x$ at zero

13.2.9.1

1. $i^n \ \text{erfc} \ 0 = \frac{1}{2^n \Gamma(1 + n/2)}$

2. $i^0 \ \text{erfc} \ 0 = 1, \quad i \ \text{erfc} \ 0 = 1/\sqrt{\pi}, \quad i^2 \ \text{erfc} \ 0 = 1/4$
   
   $i^3 \ \text{erfc} \ 0 = 1/(6\sqrt{\pi}), \quad i^4 \ \text{erfc} \ 0 = 1/32, \quad i^5 \ \text{erfc} \ 0 = 1/(60\sqrt{\pi})$
14.1 DEFINITIONS, SERIES REPRESENTATIONS, AND VALUES AT INFINITY

14.1.1 The Fresnel Integrals

14.1.1.1
The Fresnel integrals arise in diffraction problems and they are defined as

1. \( C(x) = \int_{0}^{x} \cos \left( \frac{\pi t^2}{2} \right) dt \)

2. \( S(x) = \int_{0}^{x} \sin \left( \frac{\pi t^2}{2} \right) dt \)

14.1.2 Series Representations

14.1.2.1

1. \( C(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n (\pi/2)^{2n}}{(2n)! (4n + 1)} x^{4n+1} \)

2. \( C(x) = \cos \left( \frac{\pi}{2} x^2 \right) \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n \pi^{2n}}{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (4n + 1)} x^{4n+1} \)

\[ + \sin \left( \frac{\pi}{2} x^2 \right) \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n \pi^{2n+1}}{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (4n + 3)} x^{4n+3} \]
Figure 14.1. Fresnel integral $C(x)$.

Figure 14.2. Fresnel integral $S(x)$. 
3. \[ S(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n (\pi/2)^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)! (4n+3)} x^{4n+3} \]

4. \[ S(x) = -\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} x^2\right) \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n \pi^{2n+1}}{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (4n+3)} x^{4n+3} \]

\[ + \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} x^2\right) \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n \pi^{2n}}{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (4n+1)} x^{4n+1} \]

14.1.3 Limiting Values as \( x \to \infty \)

14.1.3.1

1. \[ \lim_{x \to \infty} C(x) = \frac{1}{2} \]

14.2 Definitions, Series Representations, and Values at Infinity

14.2.1 Sine and Cosine Integrals

14.2.1.1

The sine and cosine integrals are defined as

1. \[ \text{Si}(x) = \int_0^x \frac{\sin t}{t} \, dt \]

2. \[ \text{Ci}(x) = \gamma + \ln x + \int_0^x \frac{\cos t - 1}{t} \, dt \]

\[ \gamma = 0.57721 56649 \ldots \quad \text{(Euler's constant)} \]

14.2.2 Series Representations

14.2.2.1

1. \[ \text{Si}(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1) (2n+1)!} \]

2. \[ \text{Ci}(x) = \gamma + \ln x + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^{2n}}{2n (2n)!} \]
14.2.3 Limiting values as $x \to \infty$

14.2.3.1

1. $\lim_{x \to \infty} \text{Si}(x) = \pi/2$, $\lim_{x \to \infty} \text{Ci}(x) = 0$

Figure 14.3. Sine integral $\text{Si}(x)$ and cosine integral $\text{Ci}(x)$. 

π/2

$\text{Si}$

$\text{Ci}$

2 4 6 8 10

$X$
15.1 INTEGRANDS INVOLVING POWERS OF $x$

15.1.1

1. \[ \int_{1}^{\infty} \frac{dx}{x^{n}} = \frac{1}{n-1} \quad [n > 1] \]

2. \[ \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{x^{p-1}dx}{1 + x} = \frac{\pi}{\sin p\pi} \quad [0 < p < 1] \]

3. \[ \int_{0}^{1} \frac{x^{p-1} - x^{-p}}{1 + x} \, dx = \pi \cosec p\pi \quad [p^2 < 1] \]

4. \[ \int_{0}^{1} \frac{x^{p} - x^{-p}}{1 + x} \, dx = \frac{1}{p} - \pi \cosec p\pi \quad [p^2 < 1] \]

5. \[ \int_{0}^{1} \frac{x^{p-1} - x^{-p}}{1 - x} \, dx = \pi \cot p\pi \quad [p^2 < 1] \]

6. \[ \int_{0}^{1} \frac{x^{p} - x^{-p}}{x - 1} \, dx = \frac{1}{p} - \pi \cot p\pi \quad [p^2 < 1] \]

7. \[ \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{x^{p-1} - x^{q-1}}{1 - x} \, dx = \pi (\cot p\pi - \cot q\pi) \quad [p > 0, q > 0] \]

8. \[ \int_{0}^{1} \frac{x^{p} - x^{-p}}{1 - x^2} \, dx = \frac{\pi}{2} \cot \frac{p\pi}{2} - \frac{1}{p} \quad [p^2 < 1] \]
9. \[ \int_0^1 \frac{x^p - x^{-p}}{1 + x^2} \, dx = \frac{1}{p} - \frac{\pi}{2} \csc \frac{p\pi}{2} [p^2 < 1] \]

10. \[ \int_0^\infty \frac{x^{p-1}}{1 - x^q} \, dx = \frac{\pi}{q} \cot \frac{p\pi}{q} [p < q] \]

11. \[ \int_0^\infty \frac{x^{p-1}}{1 - x^q} \, dx = \frac{\pi}{q} \csc \frac{p\pi}{q} [0 < p < q] \]

12. \[ \int_0^\infty \frac{x^{p-1}}{(1 + x^q)^2} \, dx = \frac{(p - q)\pi}{q^2} \csc \frac{(p - q)\pi}{q} [p < 2q] \]

13. \[ \int_0^\infty \frac{x^{p+1}}{(1 + x^q)^2} \, dx = \frac{p\pi}{2} \cosec \frac{p\pi}{2} [|p| < 2] \]

14. \[ \int_0^\infty \frac{x^{2n+1}}{\sqrt{1 - x^2}} \, dx = \frac{(2n)!!}{(2n + 1)!!} \]

15. \[ \int_0^\infty \frac{a \, dx}{a^2 + x^2} = \begin{cases} \frac{\pi}{2} \sin a, & a \neq 0 \\ 0, & a = 0 \end{cases} \]

16. \[ \int_0^\infty \frac{dx}{(a^2 + x^2)(b^2 + x^2)} = \frac{\pi}{2ab(a + b)} \]

17. \[ \int_0^\infty \frac{x^{p-1}}{(a^2 + x^2)(b^2 + x^2)} \, dx = \frac{\pi}{2} \frac{b^{p-2} - a^{p-2}}{a^2 - b^2} \cosec \frac{p\pi}{2} [a > 0, b > 0, 0 < p < 4] \]

18. \[ \int_0^\infty \frac{x^{p-1}}{(a^2 + x^2)(b^2 - x^2)} \, dx = \frac{\pi}{2} \frac{a^{p-2} + b^{p-2} \cos \frac{p\pi}{2}}{a^2 + b^2} \cosec \frac{p\pi}{2} [a > 0, b > 0, 0 < p < 4] \]

19. \[ \int_0^\infty \frac{dx}{(ax^2 + 2bx + c)^n} = \frac{(-1)^{n-1}}{(n - 1)!} \frac{\partial^{n-1}}{\partial c^{n-1}} \left[ \frac{1}{\sqrt{ac - b^2}} \arccot \frac{b}{\sqrt{ac - b^2}} \right] [a > 0, ac > b^2] \]

20. \[ \int_{-\infty}^\infty \frac{dx}{(ax^2 + 2bx + c)^n} = \frac{(2n - 3)!! \pi a^{n-1}}{(2n - 2)!! (ac - b^2)^{n-1/2}} [a > 0, ac > b^2] \]

21. \[ \int_0^\infty \frac{x \, dx}{(ax^2 + 2bx + c)^n} = \frac{(-1)^n}{(n - 1)!} \frac{\partial^{n-2}}{\partial c^{n-2}} \left[ \frac{1}{2(2ac - b^2)} - \frac{b}{2(2ac - b^2)^{3/2}} \arccot \frac{b}{\sqrt{2ac - b^2}} \right] [ac > b^2] \]

\[ = \frac{(-1)^n}{(n - 1)!} \frac{\partial^{n-2}}{\partial c^{n-2}} \left[ \frac{1}{2(ac - b^2)} + \frac{b}{4(b^2 - ac)^{3/2}} \ln \left( \frac{b + \sqrt{b^2 - ac}}{b - \sqrt{b^2 - ac}} \right) \right] [b^2 > ac > 0] \]
22. \[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{x}{(ax^2 + 2bx + c)^n} \, dx = -\frac{(2n-3)!!b^{n-2}}{(2n-2)!!(ac-b^2)^{(2n-1)/2}} \quad [ac > b^2, a > 0, n \geq 2] \]

23. \[ \int_0^{\infty} (\sqrt{x^2 + a^2} - x)^n \, dx = \frac{na^{n+1}}{n^2 - 1} \quad [n \geq 2] \]

24. \[ \int_0^{\infty} \frac{dx}{(x + \sqrt{x^2 + a^2})^n} = \frac{n}{a^{n-1}(n^2 - 1)} \quad [n \geq 2] \]

15.2 INTEGRANDS INVOLVING TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS

15.2.1

1. \[ \int_0^{\pi} \sin mx \sin nx \, dx = 0 \quad [m, n \text{ integers, } m \neq n] \]

2. \[ \int_0^{\pi} \cos mx \cos nx \, dx = 0 \quad [m, n \text{ integers, } m \neq n] \]

3. \[ \int_0^{\pi} \sin mx \cos nx \, dx = \frac{m}{m^2 - n^2} \left[ 1 - (-1)^{m+n} \right] \quad [m, n \text{ integers, } m \neq n] \]

4. \[ \int_0^{2\pi} \sin mx \sin nx \, dx = 0 \quad [m, n \text{ integers, } m \neq n] \]

5. \[ \int_0^{2\pi} \sin^2 nx \, dx = \pi \quad [n \neq 0 \text{ integral}] \]

6. \[ \int_0^{2\pi} \sin mx \cos nx \, dx = 0 \quad [m, n \text{ integers}] \]

7. \[ \int_0^{2\pi} \cos mx \cos nx \, dx = \begin{cases} 0, & m \neq n \\ \pi, & m = n \neq 0 \\ 2\pi, & m = n = 0 \end{cases} \quad [m, n \text{ integers}] \]

8. \[ \int_0^\pi \frac{\sin nx}{\sin x} \, dx = \begin{cases} 0, & n \text{ even} \\ \pi, & n \text{ odd} \end{cases} \]

9. \[ \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\sin(2n-1)x}{\sin x} \, dx = \frac{\pi}{2} \]

10. \[ \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2m} x \, dx = \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^{2m} x \, dx = \frac{(2m-1)!! \pi}{(2m)!!} \frac{1}{2} \]
11. \[\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2m+1} x \, dx = \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^{2m+1} x \, dx = \frac{(2m)!}{(2m+1)!}\]

12. \[\int_0^\infty \frac{\sin ax}{\sqrt{x}} \, dx = \int_0^\infty \frac{\cos ax}{\sqrt{x}} \, dx = \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2a}} [a > 0]\]

13. \[\int_0^\infty \frac{\sin ax}{x} \, dx = \begin{cases} \frac{\pi}{2} \sin a, & a > 0 \\ 0, & a = 0 \end{cases}\]

14. \[\int_0^\infty \frac{\sin ax \cos ax}{x} \, dx = \begin{cases} 0, & a^2 > 1 \\ \frac{\pi}{4}, & a = \pm 1 \\ \frac{\pi}{2}, & a^2 < 1 \end{cases}\]

15. \[\int_0^{2\pi} \frac{dx}{1 + a \cos x} = \frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{1 - a^2}} [a^2 < 1]\]

16. \[\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{dx}{1 + a \cos x} = \arccos \frac{a}{\sqrt{1 - a^2}} [a^2 < 1]\]

17. \[\int_0^\infty \frac{\cos ax}{b^2 + x^2} \, dx = \begin{cases} \frac{\pi}{2b} e^{-ab}, & a > 0, b > 0 \\ \frac{\pi}{2b} e^{ab}, & a < 0, b > 0 \end{cases}\]

18. \[\int_0^\infty \frac{\cos ax}{b^2 - x^2} \, dx = \frac{\pi}{2b} \sin ab [a > 0, b > 0]\]

19. \[\int_0^\infty \frac{x \sin ax}{b^2 + x^2} \, dx = \frac{\pi}{2} e^{-ab} [a > 0, b > 0]\]

20. \[\int_0^\infty \frac{x \sin ax}{b^2 - x^2} \, dx = -\frac{\pi}{2} \cos ab [a > 0]\]

21. \[\int_0^\infty \frac{\sin^2 x}{x^2} \, dx = \frac{\pi}{2}\]

22. \[\int_0^\infty \frac{\sin^2 ax}{x^2 + b^2} \, dx = \frac{\pi}{4b} (1 - e^{-2ab}) [a > 0, b > 0]\]

23. \[\int_0^\infty \frac{\cos^2 ax}{x^2 + b^2} \, dx = \frac{\pi}{4b} (1 + e^{-2ab}) [a > 0, b > 0]\]
24. \[ \int_0^\infty \frac{\cos ax}{b^4 + x^4} \, dx = \frac{\pi \sqrt{2}}{4b^3} \exp \left( -\frac{ab}{\sqrt{2}} \right) \left( \cos \frac{ab}{\sqrt{2}} + \sin \frac{ab}{\sqrt{2}} \right) \quad [a > 0, b > 0] \]

25. \[ \int_0^\infty \frac{\cos ax}{b^4 - x^4} \, dx = \frac{\pi}{4b^3} (e^{-ab} + \sin ab) \quad [a > 0, b > 0] \]

26. \[ \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\cos^2 x \, dx}{1 - 2a \cos 2x + a^2} = \begin{cases} \frac{\pi}{4(1-a)}, & a^2 < 1 \\ \frac{\pi}{4(a-1)}, & a^2 > 1 \end{cases} \]

27. \[ \int_0^\infty \frac{\cos ax \, dx}{(b^2 + x^2)(c^2 + x^2)} = \frac{\pi (be^{-ac} - ce^{-ab})}{2bc(b^2 - c^2)} \quad [a > 0, b > 0, c > 0] \]

28. \[ \int_0^\infty \frac{x \sin ax \, dx}{(b^2 + x^2)(c^2 + x^2)} = \frac{\pi (e^{-ab} - e^{-ac})}{2(c^2 - b^2)} \quad [a > 0, b > 0, c > 0] \]

29. \[ \int_0^\infty \frac{\cos ax \, dx}{(b^2 + x^2)^2} = \frac{\pi}{4b^3} (1 + ab)e^{-ab} \quad [a > 0, b > 0] \]

30. \[ \int_0^\infty \frac{x \sin ax \, dx}{(b^2 + x^2)^2} = \frac{\pi a}{4b} e^{-ab} \quad [a > 0, b > 0] \]

31. \[ \int_0^\pi \frac{\cos nx \, dx}{1 - 2a \cos x + a^2} = \begin{cases} \frac{\pi a^n}{1 - a^2}, & a^2 < 1 \\ \frac{\pi}{(a^2 - 1)a^n}, & a^2 > 1 \end{cases} \quad [n \geq 0 \text{ integral}] \]

32. \[ \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\sin^2 x \, dx}{1 - 2a \cos 2x + a^2} = \frac{\pi}{4(1+a)} \quad [a^2 < 1] \]

33. \[ \int_0^\infty \sin ax^2 \, dx = \int_0^\infty \cos ax^2 \, dx = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2a}} \quad [a > 0] \quad \text{(see 14.1.1.1)} \]

34. \[ \int_0^\infty \sin ax^2 \cos 2bx \, dx = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2a}} \left( \cos \frac{b^2}{a} - \sin \frac{b^2}{a} \right) \quad [a > 0, b \geq 0] \]

35. \[ \int_0^\infty \cos ax^2 \cos 2bx \, dx = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2a}} \left( \cos \frac{b^2}{a} + \sin \frac{b^2}{a} \right) \quad [a > 0, b > 0] \]

36. \[ \int_0^\pi \cos(x \sin \theta) \, d\theta = \pi J_0(x) \]

37. \[ \int_0^\pi \cos(n\theta - x \sin \theta) \, d\theta = \pi J_n(x) \]
15.3 INTEGRANDS INVOLVING THE EXPONENTIAL FUNCTION

15.3.1

1. \[ \int_0^\infty e^{-px} \, dx = \frac{1}{p} \quad [p > 0] \]

2. \[ \int_0^\infty x^n e^{-px} \, dx = n! / p^{n+1} \quad [p > 0, \text{n integral}] \]

3. \[ \int_0^u xe^{-px} \, dx = \frac{1}{p^2} - \frac{1}{p^2} e^{-pu} (1 + pu) \quad [u > 0] \]

4. \[ \int_0^u x^2 e^{-px} \, dx = \frac{2}{p^3} - \frac{1}{p^3} e^{-pu} (2 + 2pu - p^2 u^2) \quad [u > 0] \]

5. \[ \int_0^u x^3 e^{-px} \, dx = \frac{6}{p^4} - \frac{1}{p^4} e^{-pu} (6 + 6pu + 3p^2 u^2 + p^3 u^3) \quad [u > 0] \]

6. \[ \int_0^1 \frac{x e^x \, dx}{(1 + x)^2} = \frac{1}{2} e - 1 \]

7. \[ \int_0^\infty x^{v-1} e^{-\mu x} \, dx = \frac{1}{\mu^v} \Gamma(v) \quad [\mu > 0, v > 0] \]

8. \[ \int_0^\infty \frac{dx}{1 + e^{px}} = \frac{\ln 2}{p} \quad [p > 0] \]

9. \[ \int_0^u \frac{e^{-qx}}{\sqrt{x}} \, dx = \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{q}} P(\sqrt{qu}) \quad [q > 0] \quad (\text{see 13.1.1.1.5}) \]

10. \[ \int_0^\infty \frac{e^{-qx}}{\sqrt{x}} \, dx = \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{q}} \quad [q > 0] \]

11. \[ \int_{-\infty}^\infty \frac{e^{-px}}{1 + e^{-qx}} \, dx = \frac{\pi}{q} \cot \frac{p\pi}{q} \quad [q > p > 0 \quad \text{or} \quad 0 > p > q] \]

12. \[ \int_{-\infty}^\infty \frac{e^{-px}}{b - e^{-qx}} \, dx = \pi b^{p-1} \cot p\pi \quad [b > 0, 0 < p < 1] \]

13. \[ \int_{-\infty}^\infty \frac{e^{-px}}{b + e^{-qx}} \, dx = \pi b^{p-1} \cosec p\pi \quad [b > 0, 0 < p < 1] \]

14. \[ \int_1^\infty \frac{e^{-px}}{\sqrt{x-1}} \, dx = \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{p}} e^{-p} \quad [p > 0] \]

15. \[ \int_0^\infty \frac{e^{-px}}{\sqrt{x+\beta}} \, dx = \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{p}} e^{\beta p} [1 - P(\beta p)] \quad [p > 0, \beta > 0] \quad (\text{see 13.1.1.1.5}) \]
16. \( \int_{u}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-px}}{x\sqrt{x-u}} \, dx = \frac{\pi}{\sqrt{u}} \left[ 1 - P(\sqrt{pu}) \right] \quad [p \geq 0, \, u > 0] \) (see 13.1.1.1.5)

17. \( \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{xe^{-x}}{e^x - 1} \, dx = \frac{\pi^2}{6} - 1 \)

18. \( \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{xe^{-2x}}{e^{-x} + 1} \, dx = 1 - \frac{\pi^2}{12} \)

19. \( \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{xe^{-3x}}{e^{-x} + 1} \, dx = \frac{\pi^2}{12} - \frac{3}{4} \)

20. \( \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{x \, dx}{\sqrt{e^x - 1}} = 2\pi \ln 2 \)

21. \( \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{x^2 \, dx}{\sqrt{e^x - 1}} = 4\pi \left[ (\ln 2)^2 + \frac{\pi^2}{12} \right] \)

22. \( \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{xe^{-x}}{\sqrt{e^x - 1}} \, dx = \frac{\pi}{2} (2 \ln 2 - 1) \)

23. \( \int_{0}^{1} \left( \frac{1}{\ln x} + \frac{1}{1-x} \right) \, dx = \gamma \) (see 11.1.1.1.7)

24. \( \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{x} \left( \frac{1}{1+x^2} - e^{-x} \right) \, dx = \gamma \) (see 11.1.1.1.7)

25. \( \int_{0}^{\infty} \left( \frac{1}{e^x - 1} - \frac{1}{xe^x} \right) \, dx = \gamma \) (see 11.1.1.1.7)

26. \( \int_{0}^{\infty} x^{2n} e^{-px^2} \, dx = \frac{(2n-1)!!}{2^{2n}p^n} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{p}} \quad [p > 0, \, n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, (2n-1)!! = 1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (2n-1)] \)

27. \( \int_{0}^{x} x^{2n+1} e^{-px^2} \, dx = \frac{n!}{2p^{n+1}} \quad [p > 0, \, n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots] \)

28. \( \int_{0}^{x} e^{-q^2t^2} \, dt = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2q} \text{erf}(qx) \quad [q > 0] \) (see 13.2.1.1)

29. \( \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-q^2t^2} \, dt = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2q} \quad [q > 0] \)

30. \( \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp(-p^2x^2 \pm qx) \, dx = \exp \left( \frac{q^2}{4p^2} \right) \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{p} \quad [p > 0] \)
31. \( \int x^p e^{-qx^2} \, dx = \frac{x^{p-1}}{2q^2} e^{-qx^2} + \frac{(p-1)}{2q^2} \int x^{p-2} e^{-qx^2} \, dx \quad [p = 2, 3, \ldots] \)

32. \( \int_0^u e^{-qx^2} \, dx = \frac{\sqrt{\pi} \text{erf}(qu)}{2q} \)

33. \( \int_0^\infty e^{-qx^2} \, dx = \frac{\sqrt{\pi} (1 - e^{-(qu)^2})}{2q} \)

34. \( \int_0^u x e^{-qx^2} \, dx = \frac{1 - e^{-(qu)^2}}{2q^2} \)

35. \( \int_0^\infty x e^{-qx^2} \, dx = \frac{e^{-(qu)^2}}{2q^2} \)

36. \( \int_0^u x^2 e^{-qx^2} \, dx = \frac{[\sqrt{\pi} \text{erf}(qu) - 2qu e^{-(qu)^2}]}{4q^3} \)

37. \( \int_0^\infty x^2 e^{-qx^2} \, dx = \frac{\sqrt{\pi} [\text{erf}(qu) - 1] - 2qu e^{-(qu)^2}}{4q^3} \)

38. \( \int_0^u x^3 e^{-qx^2} \, dx = \frac{[1 - (1 + (qu)^2) e^{-(qu)^2}]}{2q^4} \)

39. \( \int_0^\infty x^3 e^{-qx^2} \, dx = \frac{[1 + (qu)^2] e^{-(qu)^2}}{2q^4} \)

40. \( \int_0^u x^4 e^{-qx^2} \, dx = \frac{[3 \sqrt{\pi} \text{erf}(qu) - 2(3qu + 2(qu)^3) e^{-(qu)^2}]}{8q^5} \)

41. \( \int_0^\infty x^4 e^{-qx^2} \, dx = \frac{3 \sqrt{\pi} (1 - \text{erf}(qu)) + 2(3qu + 2(qu)^3) e^{-(qu)^2}}{8q^5} \)

42. \( \int_0^\infty x^n e^{-qx^2} \, dx = \frac{1}{m q^{n+1}} \Gamma \left( \frac{n + 1}{m} \right) \quad [m, n > 0, \text{ and real}] \)

43. \( \int_0^\infty x^{m/n} \exp(-qx^2) \, dx = \frac{1}{2q^{(m+n)/n}} \Gamma \left( \frac{m + n}{2n} \right) \quad [m, n > 0, \text{ and real}] \)

44. \( \int_0^\infty x^{m/n} \exp(-q^{p}x^p) \, dx = \frac{(q^p)[-(m+n)/(pn)] \Gamma \left( (m+n)/(pn) \right)}{p} \quad [m, n, p > 0, \text{ and real}] \)

45. \( \int_0^\infty e^{-qx^2} \cos(mx) \, dx = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2q} \exp(-m^2/(4q^2)) \quad [m \text{ real}] \)
15.5 Integrands Involving the Logarithmic Function

15.5.1

1. \[ \int_0^1 \ln x \frac{1}{1-x} \, dx = -\frac{\pi^2}{6} \]

2. \[ \int_0^1 \ln x \frac{1}{1+x} \, dx = -\frac{\pi^2}{12} \]

3. \[ \int_0^1 \ln(1+x) \frac{1}{1+x^2} \, dx = \frac{\pi}{8} \ln 2 \]
4. $\int_0^1 (\ln x)^p \, dx = (-1)^p p! \quad [p = 0, 1, 2, \ldots]$

5. $\int_0^1 x \ln(1 + x) \, dx = \frac{1}{4}$

6. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \ln \sin x \, dx = \int_0^{\pi/2} \ln \cos x \, dx = \frac{\pi}{2} \ln 2$

7. $\int_0^\pi \ln[1 + a \cos x]^2 \, dx = 2\pi \ln \left[1 + \sqrt{1 - a^2} \right] \quad [a^2 \leq 1]$  
or equivalently  

\[ \int_0^\pi \ln[1 + a \cos x] \, dx = \pi \ln \left[1 + \sqrt{1 - a^2} \right] \quad [a^2 \leq 1] \]

8. $\int_0^\pi \ln[1 + a \cos x]^2 \, dx = \frac{\pi}{2} \ln \left(\frac{a^2}{4}\right) \quad [a^2 \geq 1]$

Notice that, unlike case 7, this integrand cannot be rewritten as $2 \ln[1 + a \cos x]$, because $1 + a \cos x$ becomes negative in the interval of integration.

### 15.6 INTEGRANDS INVOLVING THE EXPONENTIAL INTEGRAL $Ei(x)$

1. $\int x Ei(-ax) \, dx = \frac{x^2}{2} Ei(-ax) + \frac{1}{2a^2} e^{-ax} + \frac{xe^{-ax}}{2a} \quad [a > 0]$  

2. $\int x^n Ei(-ax) \, dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} Ei(-ax) + \frac{n! e^{-ax}}{(n+1)a^{n+1}} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(ax)^k}{k!} \quad [a > 0]$  

3. $\int |Ei(-ax)|^2 \, dx = x[Ei(-ax)]^2 + \frac{2}{a} \left[ Ei(-ax) e^{-ax} - Ei(-2ax) \right] \quad [a > 0]$  

4. $\int x[Ei(-ax)]^2 \, dx = \frac{x^2}{2} |Ei(-ax)|^2 + \left( \frac{1}{a^2} + \frac{x}{a} \right) Ei(-ax) e^{-ax} - \frac{1}{a^2} Ei(-2ax) + \frac{1}{2a^2} e^{-2ax} \quad [a > 0]$  

5. $\int_0^u Ei(-ax) \, dx = uEi(-au) + \frac{e^{-au} - 1}{a} \quad [a > 0]$  

6. $\int_0^\infty x Ei(-x/a) Ei(-x/b) \, dx = \left( \frac{a^2 + b^2}{2} \right) \ln(a + b) - \frac{a^2}{2} \ln a - \frac{b^2}{2} \ln b - \frac{ab}{2} \quad [a > 0, b > 0]$
16.1 FOURIER SERIES FOR $f(x)$ ON $-\pi \leq x \leq \pi$

16.1.1 The Fourier Series

16.1.1.1

1. \[ \frac{1}{2}a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n \cos nx + b_n \sin nx) \]

2. **Fourier coefficients**

   \[ a_0 = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x) dx, \quad a_n = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x) \cos nx \, dx \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots] \]

   \[ b_n = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x) \sin nx \, dx \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots] \]

3. **Parseval relation**

   \[ \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} |f(x)|^2 dx = \frac{1}{2}a_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n^2 + b_n^2) \]

If $f(x)$ is periodic with period $2\pi$ the Fourier series represents $f(x)$ for all $x$ and these integrals may be evaluated over any interval of length $2\pi$. 

275
16.2 FOURIER SERIES FOR $f(x)$ ON $-L \leq x \leq L$

16.2.1 The Fourier Series

16.2.1.1

1. \[
\frac{1}{2}a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left[ a_n \cos \left( \frac{n\pi x}{L} \right) + b_n \sin \left( \frac{n\pi x}{L} \right) \right]
\]

2. Fourier coefficients

\[
a_0 = \frac{1}{L} \int_{-L}^{L} f(x) \, dx, \quad a_n = \frac{1}{L} \int_{-L}^{L} f(x) \cos \left( \frac{n\pi x}{L} \right) \, dx \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots]
\]

\[
b_n = \frac{1}{L} \int_{-L}^{L} f(x) \sin \left( \frac{n\pi x}{L} \right) \, dx \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots]
\]

3. Parseval relation

\[
\frac{1}{L} \int_{-L}^{L} [f(x)]^2 \, dx = \frac{1}{2}a_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n^2 + b_n^2)
\]

If $f(x)$ is periodic with period $2L$ the Fourier series represents $f(x)$ for all $x$ and these integrals may be evaluated over any interval of length $2L$.

16.3 FOURIER SERIES FOR $f(x)$ ON $a \leq x \leq b$

16.3.1 The Fourier Series

16.3.1.1

1. \[
\frac{1}{2}a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left[ a_n \cos \left( \frac{2n\pi x}{b-a} \right) + b_n \sin \left( \frac{2n\pi x}{b-a} \right) \right]
\]

2. Fourier coefficients

\[
a_0 = \frac{2}{b-a} \int_{a}^{b} f(x) \, dx, \quad a_n = \frac{2}{b-a} \int_{a}^{b} f(x) \cos \left( \frac{2n\pi x}{b-a} \right) \, dx \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots]
\]

\[
b_n = \frac{2}{b-a} \int_{a}^{b} f(x) \sin \left( \frac{2n\pi x}{b-a} \right) \, dx \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots]
\]

3. Parseval relation

\[
\frac{2}{b-a} \int_{a}^{b} [f(x)]^2 \, dx = \frac{1}{2}a_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n^2 + b_n^2)
\]
If \( f(x) \) is periodic with period \((b - a)\) the Fourier series represents \( f(x) \) for all \( x \) and these integrals may be evaluated over any interval of length \((b - a)\).

16.4 HALF-RANGE FOURIER COSINE SERIES FOR \( f(x) \) ON \( 0 \leq x \leq \pi \)
16.4.1 The Fourier Series

16.4.1.1

1. \[ \frac{1}{2} a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos nx \]

2. **Fourier coefficients**

\[ a_0 = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^{\pi} f(x) dx, \quad a_n = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^{\pi} f(x) \cos nx \, dx \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots] \]

3. **Parseval relation**

\[ \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^{\pi} |f(x)|^2 \, dx = \frac{1}{2} a_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n^2 \]

If \( f(x) \) is an even function, or it is extended to the interval \(-\pi \leq x \leq 0\) as an even function so that \( f(x) = f(-x) \), the Fourier series represents \( f(x) \) on the interval \(-\pi \leq x \leq \pi\).

16.5 HALF-RANGE FOURIER COSINE SERIES FOR \( f(x) \) ON \( 0 \leq x \leq L \)
16.5.1 The Fourier Series

16.5.1.1

1. \[ \frac{1}{2} a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos \left( \frac{n\pi x}{L} \right) \]

2. **Fourier coefficients**

\[ a_0 = \frac{2}{L} \int_0^{L} f(x) dx, \quad a_n = \frac{2}{L} \int_0^{L} f(x) \cos \left( \frac{n\pi x}{L} \right) dx \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots] \]

3. **Parseval relation**

\[ \frac{2}{L} \int_0^{L} |f(x)|^2 \, dx = \frac{1}{2} a_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n^2 \]

If \( f(x) \) is an even function, or it is extended to the interval \(-L \leq x \leq 0\) as an even function so that \( f(-x) = f(x) \), the Fourier series represents \( f(x) \) on the interval \(-L \leq x \leq L\).
16.6 HALF-RANGE FOURIER SINE SERIES FOR $f(x)$ ON $0 \leq x \leq \pi$

16.6.1 The Fourier Series

16.6.1.1

1. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sin nx$

2. Fourier coefficients

$$b_n = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_{0}^{\pi} f(x) \sin nx \, dx \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots]$$

3. Parseval relation

$$\frac{2}{\pi} \int_{0}^{\pi} [f(x)]^2 \, dx = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n^2$$

If $f(x)$ is an odd function, or it is extended to the interval $-\pi \leq x \leq 0$ as an odd function so that $f(-x) = -f(x)$, the Fourier series represents $f(x)$ on the interval $-\pi \leq x \leq \pi$.

16.7 HALF-RANGE FOURIER SINE SERIES FOR $f(x)$ ON $0 \leq x \leq L$

16.7.1 The Fourier Series

16.7.1.1

1. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sin \left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)$

2. Fourier coefficients

$$b_n = \frac{2}{L} \int_{0}^{L} f(x) \sin \left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) \, dx \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots]$$

3. Parseval relation

$$\frac{2}{L} \int_{0}^{L} [f(x)]^2 \, dx = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n^2$$

If $f(x)$ is an odd function, or it is extended to the interval $-L \leq x \leq 0$ as an odd function so that $f(-x) = -f(x)$, the Fourier series represents $f(x)$ on the interval $-L \leq x \leq L$. 
16.8 **COMPLEX (EXPONENTIAL) FOURIER SERIES FOR** $f(x)$
**ON** $-\pi \leq x \leq \pi$

16.8.1 The Fourier Series

1. $\lim_{m \to \infty} \sum_{n=-m}^{m} c_n e^{inx}$

2. **Fourier coefficients**

   $$c_n = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x)e^{-inx} \, dx \quad [n = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots]$$

3. **Parseval relation**

   $$\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} |f(x)|^2 \, dx = \lim_{m \to \infty} \sum_{n=-m}^{m} |c_n|^2$$

If $f(x)$ is periodic with period $2\pi$ the Fourier series represents $f(x)$ for all $x$ and these integrals may be evaluated over any interval of length $2\pi$.

16.9 **COMPLEX (EXPONENTIAL) FOURIER SERIES FOR** $f(x)$
**ON** $-L \leq x \leq L$

16.9.1 The Fourier Series

16.9.1.1

1. $\lim_{m \to \infty} \sum_{n=-m}^{m} c_n \exp\left[(in\pi x)/L\right]$

2. **Fourier coefficients**

   $$c_n = \frac{1}{2L} \int_{-L}^{L} f(x) \exp[-(in\pi x)/L] \, dx \quad [n = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots]$$

3. **Parseval relation**

   $$\frac{1}{2L} \int_{-L}^{L} |f(x)|^2 \, dx = \lim_{m \to \infty} \sum_{n=-m}^{m} |c_n|^2.$$ 

If $f(x)$ is periodic with period $2L$ the Fourier series represents $f(x)$ for all $x$ and these integrals may be evaluated over any interval of length $2L$. 

16.10 REPRESENTATIVE EXAMPLES OF FOURIER SERIES

16.10.1

1. \( f(x) = x \quad \left[ -\pi \leq x \leq \pi \right] \)

Fourier series

\[
2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{n} \sin nx
\]

Converges pointwise to \( f(x) \) for \(-\pi < x < \pi\).

Fourier coefficients

\[
a_n = 0 \quad [n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots]
\]

\[
b_n = \frac{2(-1)^{n+1}}{n} \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots]
\]

Parseval relation

\[
\frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} x^2 \, dx = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n^2 \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{\pi^2}{6} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^2}
\]

2. \( f(x) = |x| \quad \left[ -\pi \leq x \leq \pi \right] \)

Fourier series

\[
\frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{4}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\cos(2n-1)x}{(2n-1)^2}
\]

Converges pointwise to \( f(x) \) for \(-\pi \leq x \leq \pi\).

Fourier coefficients

\[
a_0 = \pi, \quad a_{2n} = 0, \quad a_{2n-1} = \frac{-4}{\pi(2n-1)^2} \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots]
\]

\[
b_n = 0 \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots]
\]

Parseval relation

\[
\frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} |x|^2 \, dx = \frac{1}{2} a_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n^2 \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{\pi^4}{96} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2n-1)^4}
\]
3. \( f(x) = \begin{cases} 
-1, & -\pi \leq x < 0 \\
1, & 0 < x \leq \pi 
\end{cases} \)

**Fourier series**

\[
\frac{4}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sin(2n-1)x}{2n-1}
\]

Converges pointwise to \( f(x) \) for \(-\pi < x < \pi \) and \( x \neq 0 \).

**Fourier coefficients**

\[
a_n = 0 \quad [n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots]
\]

\[
b_{2n} = 0, \quad b_{2n-1} = \frac{4}{\pi(2n-1)} \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots]
\]

**Parseval relation**

\[
\frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{0} (-1)^2 \, dx + \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{0}^{\pi} 1^2 \, dx = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n^2 \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{\pi^2}{8} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2n-1)^2}
\]

4. \( f(x) = |\sin x| \quad [-\pi \leq x \leq \pi] \)

**Fourier series**

\[
\frac{2}{\pi} - \frac{4}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\cos 2nx}{4n^2 - 1}
\]

Converges pointwise to \( f(x) \) for \(-\pi \leq x \leq \pi \).

**Fourier coefficients**

\[
a_0 = \frac{4}{\pi}, \quad a_{2n} = \frac{-4}{\pi(4n^2 - 1)}, \quad a_{2n-1} = 0 \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots]
\]

**Parseval relation**

\[
\frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} (\sin x)^2 \, dx = \frac{1}{2} a_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n^2 \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{\pi^2}{16} = \frac{1}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(4n^2 - 1)^2}
\]
5. \( f(x) = x^2 \quad [-\pi \leq x \leq \pi] \)

**Fourier series**

\[
\frac{\pi^2}{3} + 4 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{n^2} \cos nx
\]

Converges pointwise to \( f(x) \) for \(-\pi \leq x \leq \pi\).

**Fourier coefficients**

\[
a_0 = \frac{2\pi^2}{3}, \quad a_n = \frac{4(-1)^n}{n^2} \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots] \\
b_n = 0 \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots]
\]

**Parseval relation**

\[
\frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} x^4 \, dx = \frac{1}{2} a_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n^2 \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{\pi^4}{90} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^4}
\]

6. \( f(x) = x^2 \quad [0 \leq x \leq 2\pi] \)

**Fourier series**

\[
\frac{4\pi^2}{3} + 4 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{1}{n^2} \cos nx - \frac{\pi}{n} \sin nx \right)
\]

Converges pointwise to \( f(x) \) for \(0 < x < 2\pi\).

**Fourier coefficients**

\[
a_0 = \frac{8\pi^2}{3}, \quad a_n = \frac{4}{n^2} \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots] \\
b_n = -\frac{4\pi}{n} \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots]
\]

**Parseval relation**

\[
\frac{1}{\pi} \int_{0}^{2\pi} x^4 \, dx = \frac{1}{2} a_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n^2 + b_n^2) \quad \text{or} \quad \\
\frac{128\pi^4}{45} = 16 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^4} + 16\pi^2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^2},
\]
but from 16.10.1.5 above \(\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^4} = \frac{\pi^4}{90}\), so it follows that

\[
\frac{\pi^4}{6} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^2}.
\]

7. \(f(x) = x - x^2 \quad [0 \leq x \leq 1]\)

**Half-range Fourier cosine series**

\[
\frac{1}{6} - \frac{1}{\pi^2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\cos 2n\pi x}{n^2}
\]

Converges pointwise to \(f(x)\) for \(0 \leq x \leq 1\).

**Half-range Fourier cosine series coefficients**

\[
a_0 = \frac{1}{3}, \quad a_n = \frac{-1}{\pi^2 n^2} \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots]
\]

**Parseval relation**

\[
2 \int_0^1 (x - x^2)^2 \, dx = \frac{1}{2} a_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n^2 \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{\pi^4}{90} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^4}
\]

8. \(f(x) = x - x^2 \quad [0 \leq x \leq 1]\)

**Half-range Fourier sine series**

\[
\frac{8}{\pi^3} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sin(2n-1)\pi x}{(2n-1)^3}
\]

Converges pointwise to \(f(x)\) for \(0 \leq x \leq 1\).

**Half-range Fourier sine series coefficients**

\[
b_{2n} = 0 \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots]
\]

\[
b_{2n-1} = \frac{8}{\pi^2(2n-1)^3} \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots]
\]
**Parseval relation**

\[
2 \int_0^1 (x - x^2)^2 \, dx = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n^2 \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{\pi^6}{960} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2n-1)^6}
\]

9. \( f(x) = e^{ax} \quad [-\pi \leq x \leq \pi] \)

**Complex Fourier series**

\[
\frac{\sinh \pi a}{\pi} \left[ \lim_{m \to \infty} \sum_{n=-m}^{m} \left( \frac{1}{a - in} \right) e^{inx} \right]
\]

Converges pointwise to \( f(x) \) for \(-\pi < x < \pi\).

**Complex Fourier series coefficients**

\[
c_n = (-1)^n \frac{\sinh \pi a}{\pi} \left( \frac{1}{a - in} \right)
\]

The complex Fourier series reduces to the real Fourier series

\[
\frac{\sinh \pi a}{\pi a} + \frac{2 \sinh \pi a}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^n \left[ \left( \frac{a}{a^2 + n^2} \right) \cos nx - \left( \frac{n}{a^2 + n^2} \right) \sin nx \right],
\]

which like the complex series converges pointwise to \( f(x) \) for \(-\pi < x < \pi\).

**Parseval relation**

\[
\frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} e^{2ax} \, dx = \frac{1}{2} a_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n^2 + b_n^2)
\]

with

\[
a_0 = \frac{2 \sinh \pi a}{\pi a}, \quad a_n = \frac{(-1)^n a}{(a^2 + n^2)}, \quad b_n = \frac{(-1)^n n a}{(a^2 + n^2)} \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots],
\]

which yields

\[
\frac{\pi \coth \pi a}{2a} - \frac{1}{2a^2} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(a^2 + n^2)}.
\]
16.11 FOURIER SERIES AND DISCONTINUOUS FUNCTIONS

16.11.1 Periodic Extensions and Convergence of Fourier Series

16.11.1.1

Let \( f(x) \) be defined on the interval \(-\pi \leq x \leq \pi\). Then since each function in the Fourier series of \( f(x) \) is periodic with a period that is a multiple of \( 2\pi \), the Fourier series itself will be periodic with period \( 2\pi \). Thus, irrespective of how \( f(x) \) is defined outside the fundamental interval \(-\pi \leq x \leq \pi\), the Fourier series will replicate the behavior of \( f(x) \) in the intervals \((2n-1)\pi \leq x \leq (2n+1)\pi\), for \( n = \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots \). Each of these intervals is called a periodic extension of \( f(x) \).

At a point \( x_0 \), a Fourier series, which is piecewise continuous with a finite number of jump discontinuities, converges to the number \( \frac{f(x_0 + 0) + f(x_0 - 0)}{2} \).

Thus, if \( f(x) \) is continuous at \( x_0 \), the Fourier series converges to the number \( f(x_0) \), while if it is discontinuous it follows from 16.11.1.1 that it converges to the average of \( f(x_0 - 0) \) and \( f(x_0 + 0) \). The periodicity of the Fourier series for \( f(x) \) implies that these properties that are true in the fundamental interval \(-\pi \leq x \leq \pi\) are also true in every periodic extension of \( f(x) \).

In particular, if \( f(-\pi) \neq f(\pi) \), there will be a jump discontinuity (a saltus) at each end of the fundamental interval (and at the ends of each periodic extension) where the Fourier series will converge to the value

\[
\frac{1}{2}[f(\pi) + f(-\pi)].
\]

These same arguments apply to Fourier series defined on an arbitrary interval \( a \leq x \leq b \), and not only to the interval \(-\pi \leq x \leq \pi\).

16.11.2 Applications to Closed-Form Summations of Numerical Series

16.11.2.1

The implications of 16.11.1.1 are best illustrated by means of examples that show how closed-form summations may be obtained for certain numerical series.

1. **Application to** \( f(x) = x, -\pi \leq x \leq \pi \). From 16.10.1.1 the Fourier series of \( f(x) = x, -\pi \leq x \leq \pi \) is known to be

\[
2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{n} \sin nx.
\]

A convenient choice of \( x \) will reduce this Fourier series to a simple numerical series. Let us choose \( x = \pi/2 \), at which point \( f(x) \) is continuous and the Fourier series simplifies. At \( x = \pi/2 \) the Fourier series converges to \( f(\pi/2) = \pi/2 \). Using this result and setting \( x = \pi/2 \) in the Fourier series gives
Chapter 16  Different Forms of Fourier Series

\[ \frac{\pi}{2} = 2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{n+1} \sin \frac{n\pi}{2}}{n} \]

or

\[ \frac{\pi}{4} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{(2n-1)} = 1 - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5} - \cdots . \]

2. Application to \( f(x) = |\sin x|, \ -\pi \leq x \leq \pi \). From 16.10.1.4 the Fourier series of \( f(x) = |\sin x|, \ -\pi \leq x \leq \pi \) is known to be

\[
\frac{2}{\pi} - \frac{4}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\cos 2nx}{4n^2 - 1}.
\]

Because \( f(x) \) is continuous and \( f(-\pi) = f(\pi) \), it follows that the Fourier series converges to \( f(x) \) for any choice of \( x \) in the interval \( -\pi \leq x \leq \pi \), so let us set \( x = 0 \) at which point \( f(0) = 0 \). Then

\[
0 = \frac{2}{\pi} - \frac{4}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{4n^2 - 1}
\]

or

\[
\frac{1}{2} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{4n^2 - 1}
\]

(see 1.8.3.3.3)

This result could have been obtained without appeal to Fourier series, because

\[
\frac{1}{4n^2 - 1} = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{1}{2n-1} - \frac{1}{2n+1} \right],
\]

so

\[
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{4n^2 - 1} = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left[ \frac{1}{2n-1} - \frac{1}{2n+1} \right] = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \left( 1 - \frac{1}{3} \right) + \left( \frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{5} \right) + \left( \frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{7} \right) + \cdots \right].
\]

After cancellation of terms (telescoping of the series) only the first term remains so the sum is seen to be \( 1/2 \).

3. Application to \( f(x) = x - x^2, \ 0 \leq x \leq 1 \). From 16.10.1.7 the Fourier series of \( f(x) = x - x^2, \ 0 \leq x \leq 1 \) is known to be
Because \( f(x) \) is continuous for \( 0 \leq x \leq 1 \), it follows that at \( x = 1/2 \) the Fourier series will converge to \( f(1/2) = 1/4 \). Using this result and setting \( x = 1/2 \) in the Fourier series gives

\[
\frac{1}{6} - \frac{1}{\pi^2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\cos 2n\pi x}{n^2}.
\]

or

\[
\frac{1}{4} = \frac{1}{6} - \frac{1}{\pi^2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{n^2},
\]

and so

\[
\frac{\pi^2}{12} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{n^2} = 1 - \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{9} - \frac{1}{16} + \cdots.
\]

4. **Application to** \( f(x) = e^{ax}, -\pi \leq x \leq \pi \). From 16.10.1.9 it is known that \( f(x) = e^{ax}, -\pi \leq x \leq \pi \) has the Fourier series

\[
\frac{\sinh \pi a}{\pi a} + \frac{2 \sinh \pi a}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^n \left[ \left( \frac{a}{a^2 + n^2} \right) \cos nx - \left( \frac{n}{a^2 + n^2} \right) \sin nx \right].
\]

The function \( f(x) \) is continuous for \( -\pi \leq x \leq \pi \), but \( f(-\pi) \neq f(\pi) \). Thus, from 16.11.1.1, at the ends of the fundamental interval the Fourier series for \( f(x) \) will converge to the value

\[
\frac{1}{2} [f(\pi) + f(-\pi)] = \frac{1}{2} [e^{a\pi} + e^{-a\pi}] = \cosh \pi a.
\]

Using this result and setting \( x = \pi \) in the Fourier series gives

\[
\cosh \pi a = \frac{\sinh \pi a}{\pi a} + \frac{2 \sinh \pi a}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{a}{a^2 + n^2} \right),
\]

where use has been made of the result \( \cos n\pi = (-1)^n \). Thus

\[
\coth \pi a = \frac{1}{\pi} \left[ \frac{1}{a} + 2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{a}{a^2 + n^2} \right]
\]

or, equivalently,

\[
\frac{1}{2} \left[ \pi \coth \pi a - \frac{1}{a} \right] = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{a}{a^2 + n^2}.
\]
Had the value $x = 0$ been chosen, at which point $f(x)$ is continuous, the Fourier series would have converged to $f(0) = 1$, and setting $x = 0$ in the Fourier series would have yielded

$$1 = \frac{\sinh \pi a}{\pi a} + \frac{2 \sinh \pi a}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n a}{a^2 + n^2},$$

from which it follows that

$$\frac{1}{2a} [1 - \pi a \coth \pi a] = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{n+1} a}{a^2 + n^2}.$$
17.1 BESSEL’S DIFFERENTIAL EQUATION
17.1.1 Different Forms of Bessel’s Equation
17.1.1.1
In standard form, Bessel’s equation is either written as

1. \[ x^2 \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + x \frac{dy}{dx} + (x^2 - \nu^2)y = 0 \]

or as

2. \[ \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + \frac{1}{x} \frac{dy}{dx} + \left(1 - \frac{\nu^2}{x^2}\right)y = 0, \]

where the real parameter \( \nu \) determines the nature of the two linearly independent solutions of the equation. By convention, \( \nu \) is understood to be any real number that is not an integer, and when integral values of this parameter are involved \( \nu \) is replaced by \( n \).

Two linearly independent solutions of 17.1.1.1 are the Bessel functions of the first kind of order \( \nu \), written \( J_\nu(x) \) and \( J_{-\nu}(x) \). Another solution of 17.1.1.1, to which reference will be made later, is the Bessel function of the second kind of order \( \nu \), written \( Y_\nu(x) \). The general solution of 17.1.1.1 is

3. \[ y = AJ_\nu(x) + BJ_{-\nu}(x) \quad [\nu \text{ not an integer}]. \]
When the order is an integer \( (v = n) \) the Bessel functions \( J_n(x) \) and \( J_{-n}(x) \) cease to be linearly independent because

4. \( J_{-n}(x) = (-1)^n J_n(x) \).

A second solution of Bessel’s equation that is always linearly independent of \( J_v(x) \) is \( Y_v(x) \), irrespective of the value of \( v \). Thus, the general solution of 17.1.1.1 may always be written

5. \( y = AJ_v(x) + BY_v(x) \).

Take note of the fact that in many books the Bessel function \( Y_v(x) \) of the second kind is called the Neumann function and is denoted by \( N_v(x) \).

The Bessel function of the second kind \( Y_v(x) \) is defined as

6. \( Y_v(x) = \frac{J_v(x) \cos (v\pi) - J_{-v}(x)}{\sin (v\pi)} \),

and when \( v \) is an integer \( n \) or zero,

7. \( Y_n(x) = \lim_{v \to n} Y_v(x) \).

A more general form of Bessel’s equation that arises in many applications is

8. \( x^2 \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + x \frac{dy}{dx} + (\lambda^2 x^2 - v^2) y = 0 \)

or, equivalently,

9. \( \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + \frac{1}{x} \frac{dy}{dx} + \left( \lambda^2 - \frac{v^2}{x^2} \right) y = 0 \).

These forms may be derived from 17.1.1.1 by first making the change of variable \( x = \lambda u \), and then replacing \( u \) by \( x \). Bessel’s equations 17.1.1.8–9 always have the general solution

10. \( y = AJ_v(\lambda x) + BY_v(\lambda x) \).

### 17.2 SERIES EXPANSIONS FOR \( J_v(x) \) AND \( Y_v(x) \)

#### 17.2.1 Series Expansions for \( J_n(x) \) and \( J_v(x) \)

17.2.1.1

1. \( J_0(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k x^{2k}}{2^{2k} (k!)^2} \)

\[ = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2^2 (1!)^2} + \frac{x^4}{2^4 (2!)^2} - \frac{x^6}{2^6 (3!)^2} + \cdots. \]
2. \( J_1(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k x^{2k+1}}{2^{2k+1}k!(k+1)!} \)

\[ = \frac{x}{2} - \frac{x^3}{2^3 1! 2!} + \frac{x^5}{2^5 2! 3!} - \frac{x^7}{2^7 3! 4!} + \cdots. \]

3. \( J_2(x) = \frac{x^2}{4} \left[ 1 - \frac{x^2}{2^2 1! 3!} + \frac{x^4}{2^4 2! 4!} - \frac{x^6}{2^6 3! 5!} + \cdots \right]. \)

4. \( J_n(x) = x^n \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k x^{2k}}{2^{2k-n} k! (n+k)!} \).

5. \( J_{-n}(x) = x^n \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{n+k} x^{2k}}{2^{2k-n} k! (n+k)!} \).

6. \( J_\nu(x) = x^\nu \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k x^{2k}}{2^{2k+\nu} \Gamma(\nu+k+1)} \).

17.2.1.2 Special Values

1. \( J_0(0) = 1, \quad J_n(0) = 0 \quad [n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots] \)

2. \( J'_0(0) = 0, \quad J'_1(0) = \frac{1}{2}, \quad J'_n(0) = 0 \quad [n = 2, 3, 4, \ldots] \)

3. \( \lim_{x \to \infty} J_n(x) = 0, \quad [n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots] \)

17.2.2 Series Expansions for \( Y_n(x) \) and \( Y_\nu(x) \)

17.2.2.1

1. \( Y_0(x) = \frac{2}{\pi} \left\{ \left( \ln \frac{x}{2} + \gamma \right) J_0(x) + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{k-1}}{2^{2k} (k!)^2} \left[ 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} + \cdots + \frac{1}{k} \right] x^{2k} \right\} \)

\[ = \frac{2}{\pi} \left( \ln \frac{x}{2} + \gamma \right) J_0(x) - \frac{1}{\pi x} - \frac{1}{\pi} \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{2^{2k-1} (k!) (k-1)!} \]

\[ \times \left[ \frac{1}{k} + 2 \sum_{m=1}^{k-1} \frac{1}{m} \right] x^{2k-1} \quad [\gamma = 0.577215 \ldots] \) (see 11.1.1.1.7)

2. \( Y_1(x) = \frac{2}{\pi} \left( \ln \frac{x}{2} + \gamma \right) J_1(x) - \frac{2}{\pi x} - \frac{1}{\pi} \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{2^{2k-1} (k!) (k-1)!} \)

\times \left[ \frac{1}{k} + 2 \sum_{m=1}^{k-1} \frac{1}{m} \right] x^{2k-1} \quad [\gamma = 0.577215 \ldots] \) (see 11.1.1.1.7)
3. \( Y_n(x) = -\frac{(\frac{1}{2}x)^n}{\pi} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \frac{(n-k-1)!}{k!} \left( \frac{1}{4}x^2 \right)^k + \frac{2}{\pi} \ln \frac{x}{2} J_n(x) \)

\[
-\frac{(\frac{1}{2}x)^n}{\pi} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \{\psi(k+1) + \psi(n+k+1)\} \left( \frac{-\frac{1}{4}x^2}{k!(n+k)!} \right)^k
\]

[with \( \psi(k) \) given by 11.1.6.1.6]

4. \( Y_\nu(x) = \frac{1}{\sin(\nu \pi)} \left\{ \cos(\nu \pi) \left( \frac{x}{2} \right)^\nu \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k x^{2k}}{2^{2k} k! \Gamma(\nu + k + 1)} \right\} \)

\[
-\left( \frac{x}{2} \right)^{-\nu} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k x^{2k}}{2^{2k} k! \Gamma(\nu - k + 1)} \right\}
\]

[\( \nu \) not an integer].

### 17.2.2.2 Special Values

1. \( \lim_{x \to 0} Y_n(x) = -\infty \) \([n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots]\)

2. \( \lim_{x \to \infty} Y_n(x) = 0 \) \([n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots]\)

### 17.2.3 Expansion of \( \sin(x \sin \theta) \) and \( \cos(x \sin \theta) \) in Terms of Bessel Functions

1. \( \sin(x \sin \theta) = 2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} J_{2n-1}(x) \sin[(2n - 1) \theta] \)

2. \( \cos(x \sin \theta) = J_0(x) + 2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} J_{2n}(x) \cos(2n\theta) \)

### 17.3 BESSEL FUNCTIONS OF FRACTIONAL ORDER

#### 17.3.1 Bessel Functions \( J_{\pm(n+1/2)}(x) \)

1. \( J_{1/2}(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi x}} \sin x \)

2. \( J_{-1/2}(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi x}} \cos x \)

3. \( J_{3/2}(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi x}} \left( \frac{\sin x}{x} - \cos x \right) \)
4. \( J_{-3/2} (x) = -\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi x}} \left( \frac{\cos x}{x} + \sin x \right) \)

5. \( J_{5/2} (x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi x}} \left[ \left( \frac{3}{x^2} - 1 \right) \sin x - \frac{3}{x} \cos x \right] \)

6. \( J_{-5/2} (x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi x}} \left[ \left( \frac{3}{x^2} - 1 \right) \cos x + \frac{3}{x} \sin x \right] \)

7. \( J_{n+1/2} (x) = \frac{2 (\frac{1}{2} x)^{n+1/2}}{\sqrt{\pi n!}} \left[ \left( 1 + \frac{d^2}{dx^2} \right)^n \frac{\sin x}{x} \right] \)

8. \( J_{-(n+1/2)} (x) = (-1)^n J_{n+1/2} (x) \) (see 17.3.1.1.7)

17.3.2 Bessel Functions \( Y \pm (n+1/2) (x) \)

17.3.2.1

1. \( Y_{1/2} (x) = -\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi x}} \cos x \)

2. \( Y_{-1/2} (x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi x}} \sin x \)

3. \( Y_{3/2} (x) = -\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi x}} \left( \frac{\cos x}{x} + \sin x \right) \)

4. \( Y_{-3/2} (x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi x}} \left( \frac{\sin x}{x} + \cos x \right) \)

5. \( Y_{5/2} (x) = -\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi x}} \left[ \left( \frac{3}{x^2} - 1 \right) \cos x + \frac{3}{x} \sin x \right] \)

6. \( Y_{-5/2} (x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi x}} \left[ \left( \frac{3}{x^2} - 1 \right) \sin x - \frac{3}{x} \cos x \right] \)

7. \( Y_{n+1/2} (x) = -\frac{2 (\frac{1}{2} x)^{n+1/2}}{\sqrt{\pi n!}} \left\{ \left( 1 + \frac{d^2}{dx^2} \right)^n \frac{\cos x}{x} \right\} \)

8. \( Y_{-(n+1/2)} (x) = (-1)^n J_{n+1/2} (x) \) (see 17.3.1.1.7)
17.4 ASYMPTOTIC REPRESENTATIONS FOR BESSEL FUNCTIONS
17.4.1 Asymptotic Representations for Large Arguments
17.4.1.1
1. \( J_\nu(x) \sim \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi x}} \left[ \cos \left( x - \frac{1}{2} \nu \pi - \frac{1}{4} \pi \right) \right] \quad [x \gg 0] \)
2. \( Y_\nu(x) \sim \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi x}} \left[ \sin \left( x - \frac{1}{2} \nu \pi - \frac{1}{4} \pi \right) \right] \quad [x \gg 0] \)

17.4.2 Asymptotic Representation for Large Orders
17.4.2.1
1. \( J_\nu(x) \sim \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi \nu}} \left( \frac{ex}{2\nu} \right)^\nu \quad [\nu \gg 0] \)
2. \( Y_\nu(x) \sim -\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi \nu}} \left( \frac{ex}{2\nu} \right)^{-\nu} \quad [\nu \gg 0] \)

17.5 ZEROS OF BESSEL FUNCTIONS
17.5.1 Zeros of \( J_n(x) \) and \( Y_n(x) \)
17.5.1.1
Denote the zeros of \( J_n(x) \) arranged in order of increasing magnitude by \( j_{n,1}, j_{n,2}, j_{n,3}, \ldots \), and those of \( Y_n(x) \) when similarly ordered by \( y_{n,1}, y_{n,2}, y_{n,3}, \ldots \). Then the zeros of successive orders of Bessel functions of the first kind interlace, as do those of Bessel functions of the second kind, in the sense that

1. \( j_{n-1,m} < j_{n,m} < j_{n-1,m+1} \quad [n, m = 1, 2, \ldots] \)
2. \( y_{n-1,m} < y_{n,m} < y_{n-1,m+1} \quad [n, m = 1, 2, \ldots] \)

Table 17.1 lists the zeros \( j_{n,m} \) and \( y_{n,m} \) for \( n = 0, 1, 2 \) and \( m = 1, 2, \ldots, 10 \). Figure 17.1 shows the behavior of \( J_n(x) \) and Figure 17.2 the behavior of \( Y_n(x) \) for \( n = 0, 1, 2 \) and \( 0 \leq x \leq 10 \).

17.6 BESSEL’S MODIFIED EQUATION
17.6.1 Different Forms of Bessel’s Modified Equation
17.6.1.1
In standard form, Bessel’s modified equation is either written as

1. \( x^2 \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + x \frac{dy}{dx} - (x^2 + \nu^2) y = 0 \)
or as

\[ 2. \quad \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + \frac{1}{x} \frac{dy}{dx} - \left(1 + \frac{\nu^2}{x^2}\right)y = 0, \]

where the real parameter \(\nu\) determines the nature of the two linearly independent solutions of the equation. As in 17.1.1, by convention \(\nu\) is understood to be any real number that is not an integer, and when integral values of this parameter are involved \(\nu\) is replaced by \(n\).

| Table 17.1. Zeros \(j_{n,m}\) and \(y_{n,m}\) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| \(m\) | \(j_{0,m}\) | \(j_{1,m}\) | \(j_{2,m}\) | \(y_{0,m}\) | \(y_{1,m}\) | \(y_{2,m}\) |
| 1  | 2.40483 | 3.83171 | 5.13562 | 0.89358 | 2.19714 | 3.38424 |
| 2  | 5.52008 | 7.01559 | 8.41724 | 3.95768 | 5.42968 | 6.79381 |
| 3  | 8.65373 | 10.17347 | 11.61984 | 7.08605 | 8.59601 | 10.02348 |
| 8  | 24.35247 | 25.90367 | 27.42057 | 22.78203 | 24.33194 | 25.84561 |
| 9  | 27.49348 | 29.04683 | 30.56920 | 25.92296 | 27.47529 | 28.99508 |
| 10 | 30.63461 | 32.18968 | 33.71652 | 29.06403 | 30.61829 | 32.14300 |

**Figure 17.1.**

**Figure 17.2.**
Two linearly independent solutions of 17.6.1.1 are the modified Bessel functions of the first kind of order \( \nu \), written \( I_\nu(x) \) and \( I_{-\nu}(x) \). Another solution of 17.6.1.1, to which reference will be made later, is the modified Bessel function of the second kind of order \( \nu \), written \( K_\nu(x) \).

The general solution of 17.6.1.1 is

\[ y = AI_\nu(x) + BI_{-\nu}(x), \quad [\nu \text{ not an integer}]. \]

When the order is an integer \( (\nu = n) \), the modified Bessel functions \( I_n(x) \) and \( I_{-n}(x) \) cease to be linearly independent because

\[ I_{-n}(x) = I_n(x). \]

A second solution of 17.6.1.1 that is always linearly independent of \( I_\nu(x) \) is \( K_\nu(x) \), irrespective of the value of \( \nu \). Thus, the general solution of 17.6.1.1 can always be written

\[ y = AI_\nu(x) + BK_\nu(x). \]

The modified Bessel function of the second kind \( K_\nu(x) \) is defined as

\[ K_\nu(x) = \frac{\pi}{2} \frac{I_{-\nu}(x) - I_\nu(x)}{\sin(\nu \pi)}, \]

and when \( \nu \) is an integer \( n \) or zero,

\[ K_n(x) = \lim_{\nu \to n} K_\nu(x). \]

A more general form of Bessel’s modified equation that arises in many applications is

\[ x^2 \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + x \frac{dy}{dx} - \left( \lambda^2 x^2 + \nu^2 \right) y = 0 \]

or, equivalently,

\[ \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + \frac{1}{x} \frac{dy}{dx} - \left( \lambda^2 + \frac{\nu^2}{x^2} \right) y = 0. \]

These forms may be derived from 17.6.1.1 by first making the change of variable \( x = \lambda u \), and then replacing \( u \) by \( x \). Bessel’s modified equations 17.6.1.1.8–9 always have the general solution

\[ y = AI_\nu(\lambda x) + BK_\nu(\lambda x). \]

Figure 17.3 shows the behavior of \( I_n(x) \) and \( K_n(x) \) for \( n = 0, 1 \) and \( 0 \leq x \leq 4 \).
17.7 SERIES EXPANSIONS FOR $I_\nu(x)$ AND $K_\nu(x)$

17.7.1 Series Expansions for $I_\nu(x)$ and $I_\nu(x)$

17.7.1.1

1. $I_0(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^{2k}}{2^{2k} (k!)^2} = 1 + \frac{x^2}{2^2 (1!)^2} + \frac{x^4}{2^4 (2!)^2} + \frac{x^6}{2^6 (3!)^2} + \cdots$

2. $I_1(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^{2k+1}}{2^{2k+1} (k+1)!}$

$$= \frac{x}{2} + \frac{x^3}{2^3 1!2!} + \frac{x^5}{2^5 2!3!} + \frac{x^7}{2^7 3!4!} + \cdots$$

3. $I_n(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^{n+2k}}{2^{n+2k} k! (n+k)!}$

4. $I_\nu(x) = i^{-\nu} J_\nu(ix) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^{\nu+2k}}{2^{\nu+2k} k! \Gamma(\nu+k+1)}$

5. $I_{-\nu}(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^{2k-\nu}}{2^{2k-\nu} k! \Gamma(k+1-\nu)}$

17.7.1.2

1. $I_0(0) = 1, \quad I_n(0) = 0 \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots]$

2. $\lim_{x \to \infty} I_n(x) = \infty \quad [n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots]$
17.7.2 Series Expansions for $K_0(x)$ and $K_n(x)$

17.7.2.1

1. $K_0(x) = -\left[ \ln \frac{x}{2} + \gamma \right] I_0(x) + \frac{1}{4} x^2 + \left( 1 + \frac{1}{2} \right) \frac{(\frac{1}{4} x^2)^2}{(2!)^2} + \left( 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} \right) \frac{(\frac{1}{4} x^2)^3}{3!^2} \ldots$
   \[ \gamma = 0.577215 \ldots \] (see 11.1.1.1.7)

2. $K_n(x) = \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{x}{2} \right)^{-n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \frac{(n-k-1)!}{k!} \left( -\frac{1}{4} x^2 \right)^k + (-1)^{n+1} \ln \left( \frac{x}{2} \right) I_n(x) + (-1)^n \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{x}{2} \right)^n$
   \[ \times \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{\psi(k+1) + \psi(n+k+1)}{k!(n+k)!} \left( -\frac{1}{4} x^2 \right)^k \] [with $\psi(k)$ given by 11.1.6.1.6]

3. $K_{-n}(x) = K_n(x) \quad [n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots]$

17.7.2.2 Special Cases

1. $\lim_{x \to 0} K_n(x) = \infty \quad [n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots]$

2. $\lim_{x \to \infty} K_n(x) = 0 \quad [n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots]$

17.8 MODIFIED BESSEL FUNCTIONS OF FRACTIONAL ORDER

17.8.1 Modified Bessel Functions $I_{\pm(n+1/2)}(x)$

17.8.1.1

1. $I_{1/2}(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi x}} \sinh x$

2. $I_{-1/2}(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi x}} \cosh x$

3. $I_{3/2}(x) = -\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi x}} \left( \frac{\sinh x}{x} - \cosh x \right)$

4. $I_{-3/2}(x) = -\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi x}} \left( \frac{\cosh x}{x} - \sinh x \right)$

5. $I_{5/2}(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi x}} \left[ \left( \frac{3}{x^2} + 1 \right) \sinh x - \frac{3}{x} \cosh x \right]$

6. $I_{-5/2}(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi x}} \left[ \left( \frac{3}{x^2} + 1 \right) \cosh x - \frac{3}{x} \sinh x \right]
7. \( I_{n+1/2}(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi x}} \left[ e^x \sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{(-1)^k (n+k)!}{k! (n-k)! (2x)^k} + (-1)^{n+1} e^{-x} \sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{(n+k)!}{k! (n-k)! (2x)^k} \right] \)

8. \( I_{-(n+1/2)}(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi x}} \left[ e^x \sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{(-1)^k (n+k)!}{k! (n-k)! (2x)^k} + (-1)^n e^{-x} \sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{(n+k)!}{k! (n-k)! (2x)^k} \right] \)

17.8.2 Modified Bessel Functions \( K_{\pm(n+1/2)}(x) \)

1. \( K_{1/2}(x) = e^{-x} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2x}} \)
2. \( K_{3/2}(x) = e^{-x} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2x}} \left( \frac{1}{x} + 1 \right) \)
3. \( K_{5/2}(x) = e^{-x} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2x}} \left( \frac{3}{x^2} + \frac{3}{x} + 1 \right) \)
4. \( K_{n+1/2}(x) = \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2x}} e^{-x} \sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{(n+k)!}{2^k k! (n-k)! x^k} \)
5. \( K_{-(n+1/2)}(x) = K_{n+1/2}(x) \)

17.9 ASYMPTOTIC REPRESENTATIONS OF MODIFIED BESSEL FUNCTIONS

17.9.1 Asymptotic Representations for Large Arguments

1. \( I_{\nu}(x) \sim \frac{e^x}{\sqrt{2\pi x}} \left[ 1 - \frac{4\nu^2 - 1}{8x} \right] \quad [x \gg 0] \)
2. \( K_{\nu}(x) \sim \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2x}} e^{-x} \left[ 1 + \frac{4\nu^2 - 1}{8x} \right] \quad [x \gg 0] \)

17.10 RELATIONSHIPS BETWEEN BESSEL FUNCTIONS

17.10.1 Relationships Involving \( J_{\nu}(x) \) and \( Y_{\nu}(x) \)

1. \( J_2(x) = \frac{2}{x} J_1(x) - J_0(x) \)
2. \( Y_2(x) = \frac{2}{x} Y_1(x) - Y_0(x) \)
3. \( \frac{d}{dx} [J_0(x)] = -J_1(x) \)
4. \( \frac{d}{dx} [Y_0 (x)] = -Y_1 (x) \)

5. \( x J_{\nu-1} (x) + x J_{\nu+1} (x) = 2\nu J_\nu (x) \)

6. \( xY_{\nu-1} (x) + xY_{\nu+1} (x) = 2\nu Y_\nu (x) \)

7. \( J_{\nu-1} (x) - J_{\nu+1} (x) = 2 \frac{d}{dx} [J_\nu (x)] \)

8. \( Y_{\nu-1} (x) - Y_{\nu+1} (x) = 2 \frac{d}{dx} [Y_\nu (x)] \)

9. \( x \frac{d}{dx} [J_\nu (x)] + \nu J_\nu (x) = x J_{\nu-1} (x) \)

10. \( x \frac{d}{dx} [Y_\nu (x)] + \nu Y_\nu (x) = x Y_{\nu-1} (x) \)

11. \( x \frac{d}{dx} [J_\nu (x)] - \nu J_\nu (x) = -x J_{\nu+1} (x) \)

12. \( x \frac{d}{dx} [Y_\nu (x)] - \nu Y_\nu (x) = -x Y_{\nu+1} (x) \)

13. \( \left( \frac{1}{x} \frac{d}{dx} \right)^m [x^\nu J_\nu (x)] = x^{\nu-m} J_{\nu-m} (x) \)

14. \( \left( \frac{1}{x} \frac{d}{dx} \right)^m [x^\nu Y_\nu (x)] = x^{\nu-m} Y_{\nu-m} (x) \)

15. \( \left( \frac{1}{x} \frac{d}{dx} \right)^m [x^{-\nu} J_\nu (x)] = (-1)^m x^{-\nu-m} J_{\nu+m} (x) \)

16. \( \left( \frac{1}{x} \frac{d}{dx} \right)^m [x^{-\nu} Y_\nu (x)] = (-1)^m x^{-\nu-m} Y_{\nu+m} (x) \)

17. \( J_{-n} (x) = (-1)^n J_n (x) \quad [n \text{ an integer}] \)

18. \( Y_{-n} (x) = (-1)^n Y_n (x) \quad [n \text{ an integer}] \)

19. \( \frac{d}{dx} [x^n J_n (x)] = x^n J_{n-1} (x) \)

20. \( \frac{d}{dx} [x^n Y_n (x)] = x^n Y_{n-1} (x) \)
21. \[ J_n (x + y) = \sum_{k=\infty}^{\infty} J_k (x) J_{n-k} (y) \quad (n = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots) \]

17.10.2 Relationships Involving \( I_v(x) \) and \( K_v(x) \)

17.10.2.1

1. \( x I_{v-1} (x) - x I_{v+1} (x) = 2v I_v (x) \)
2. \( I_{v-1} (x) + I_{v+1} (x) = 2 \frac{d}{dx} [I_v (x)] \)
3. \( x \frac{d}{dx} [I_v (x)] + v I_v (x) = x I_{v-1} (x) \)
4. \( x \frac{d}{dx} [I_v (x)] - v I_v (x) = x I_{v+1} (x) \)
5. \( \left( \frac{1}{x} \frac{d}{dx} \right)^m [x^v I_v (x)] = x^{v-m} I_{v-m} (x) \)
6. \( \left( \frac{1}{x} \frac{d}{dx} \right)^m [x^{-v} I_v (x)] = x^{-v-m} I_{v+m} (x) \)
7. \( I_{-n} (x) = I_n (x) \quad [n \text{ an integer}] \)
8. \( I_2 (x) = -\frac{2}{x} I_1 (x) + I_0 (x) \)
9. \( \frac{d}{dx} [I_0 (x)] = I_1 (x) \)
10. \( x K_{n-1} (x) - x K_{n+1} (x) = -2n K_n (x) \)
11. \( K_{n-1} (x) + K_{n+1} (x) = -2 \frac{d}{dx} [K_n (x)] \)
12. \( x \frac{d}{dx} [K_n (x)] + n K_n (x) = -x K_{n-1} (x) \)
13. \( x \frac{d}{dx} [K_n (x)] - n K_n (x) = -x K_{n+1} (x) \)
14. \( \left( \frac{1}{x} \frac{d}{dx} \right)^m [x^n K_n (x)] = (-1)^m x^{n-m} K_{n-m} (x) \)
15. \( \left( \frac{1}{x} \frac{d}{dx} \right)^m [x^{-n} K_n (x)] = (-1)^m x^{-n-m} K_{n+m} (x) \)
16. \( K_{-v} (x) = K_v (x) \)
17. \( K_2 (x) = \frac{2}{x} K_1 (x) + K_0 (x) \)
18. \( \frac{d}{dx} [K_0(x)] = -K_1(x) \)

19. \( K_{-n}(x) = K_n(x) \) \( [n \text{ an integer}] \)

### 17.11 INTEGRAL REPRESENTATIONS OF \( J_n(x), I_n(x), \) AND \( K_n(x) \)

#### 17.11.1 Integral Representations of \( J_n(x) \)

1. \( J_0(x) = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos(x \cos \theta) \, d\theta \)

2. \( J_1(x) = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin(x \cos \theta) \cos \theta \, d\theta \)

3. \( J_n(x) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{\pi} \cos(x \sin \theta - n\theta) \, d\theta \)

4. \( J_n(x) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{\pi} \cos(x \sin \theta) \cos n\theta \, d\theta \) \( [n = 0, 2, 4, \ldots] \)

5. \( J_n(x) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{\pi} \sin(x \sin \theta) \sin n\theta \, d\theta \) \( [n = 1, 3, 5, \ldots] \)

6. \( J_n(x) = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi} \Gamma(n + \frac{1}{2})} \left( \frac{x}{2} \right)^n \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos(x \sin \theta) (\cos \theta)^{2n} \, d\theta \)

7. \( J_n(x) = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi} \Gamma(n + \frac{1}{2})} \left( \frac{x}{2} \right)^n \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos(x \sin \theta) (\sin \theta)^{2n} \, d\theta \)

8. \( I_n(x) = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi} \Gamma(n + \frac{1}{2})} \left( \frac{x}{2} \right)^n \int_0^{\pi/2} \cosh(x \sin \theta) (\cos \theta)^{2n} \, d\theta \)

9. \( I_n(x) = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi} \Gamma(n + \frac{1}{2})} \left( \frac{x}{2} \right)^n \int_0^{\pi/2} \cosh(x \sin \theta) (\sin \theta)^{2n} \, d\theta \)

10. \( K_n(x) = e^{-x} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2x \Gamma(n + \frac{1}{2})}} \int_0^{\infty} e^{-u} u^{n-1/2} \left( 1 + \frac{u}{2x} \right)^{-n-1/2} \, du \)

### 17.12 INDEFINITE INTEGRALS OF BESSEL FUNCTIONS

#### 17.12.1 Integrals of \( J_n(x), I_n(x), \) and \( K_n(x) \)

1. \( \int x J_0(ax) \, dx = \frac{x}{a} J_1(ax) \)
2. \[ \int x^2 J_0(ax) \, dx = \frac{x^2}{a} J_1(ax) + \frac{x}{a^2} J_0(ax) - \frac{1}{a^3} \int J_0(ax) \, dx \]
3. \[ \int \frac{J_0(ax)}{x^2} \, dx = a J_1(ax) - \frac{J_0(ax)}{x} - a^2 \int J_0(ax) \, dx \]
4. \[ \int J_1(ax) \, dx = -\frac{1}{a} J_0(ax) \]
5. \[ \int x J_1(ax) \, dx = -\frac{x}{a} J_0(ax) + \frac{1}{a} \int J_0(ax) \, dx \]
6. \[ \int \frac{J_1(ax)}{x} \, dx = -J_1(ax) + a \int J_0(ax) \, dx \]
7. \[ \int x J_n(ax) J_n(bx) \, dx = \frac{x[a J_{n-1}(ax) J_n(bx) - b J_n(ax) J_{n-1}(bx)]}{b^2 - a^2} \quad [a \neq b] \]
8. \[ \int x J_n^2(ax) \, dx = \frac{1}{2} x^2 \left[ J_n^2(ax) - J_{n-1}(ax) J_{n+1}(ax) \right] \]
9. \[ \int x^n J_{n-1}(ax) \, dx = \frac{x^n}{a} J_n(ax) \]
10. \[ \int x^{-n} J_{n+1}(ax) \, dx = -\frac{x^{-n}}{a} J_n(ax) \]
11. \[ \int x^n I_{n-1}(ax) \, dx = \frac{x^n}{a} I_n(ax) \]
12. \[ \int x^{-n} I_{n+1}(ax) \, dx = \frac{x^{-n}}{a} I_n(ax) \]
13. \[ \int x^n K_{n-1}(ax) \, dx = -\frac{x^n}{a} K_n(ax) \]
14. \[ \int x^{-n} K_{n+1}(ax) \, dx = -\frac{x^{-n}}{a} K_n(ax) \]

The integrals involving \( J_n(x) \) are also true when \( J_n(x) \) is replaced by any other Bessel function.

### 17.13 DEFINITE INTEGRALS INVOLVING BESSEL FUNCTIONS

#### 17.13.1 Definite Integrals Involving \( J_n(x) \) and Elementary Functions

#### 17.13.1.1

1. \[ \int_0^a J_1(x) \, dx = 1 - J_0(a) \quad [a > 0] \]
2. \[ \int_a^\infty J_1(x) \, dx = J_0(a) \quad [a > 0] \]
3. \[ \int_0^\infty J_n(ax) \, dx = \frac{1}{a} \quad [n > -1, a > 0] \]
4. \[ \int_0^\infty \frac{J_n(ax)}{x} \, dx = \frac{1}{n} \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots] \]

5. \[ \int_0^1 x J_n(ax)J_n(bx) \, dx = \begin{cases} 0, & a \neq b, \quad J_n(a) = J_n(b) = 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} [J_{n+1}(a)]^2, & a = b, \quad J_n(a) = J_n(b) = 0 \end{cases} \quad [n > -1] \]

6. \[ \int_0^\infty e^{-ax} J_0(bx) \, dx = \frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} \]

7. \[ \int_0^\infty e^{-ax} J_n(bx) \, dx = \frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} \left[ \frac{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2} - a}{b} \right]^n \quad [a > 0, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots] \]

8. \[ \int_0^\infty J_n(ax) \sin bx \, dx = \begin{cases} \sin [n \arcsin (b/a)], & 0 < b < a \\ \frac{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}}{a^n \cos (n\pi/2)}, & 0 < a < b \end{cases} \quad [n > -2] \]

9. \[ \int_0^\infty J_n(ax) \cos bx \, dx = \begin{cases} \cos [n \arccos (b/a)], & 0 < b < a \\ \frac{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}}{-a^n \sin (n\pi/2)}, & 0 < a < b \end{cases} \quad [n > -2] \]

10. \[ \int_0^\infty \frac{J_m(x)J_n(x)}{x} \, dx = \begin{cases} \frac{2}{\pi (m^2 - n^2)} \sin \frac{(m - n)\pi}{2}, & m \neq n \\ 1/2m, & m = n \end{cases} \quad [m + n > 0] \]

11. \[ \int_0^\infty J_0(ax)J_1(bx) \, dx = \begin{cases} 1/b, & b^2 > a^2 \\ 0, & b^2 < a^2 \end{cases} \]

12. \[ \int_0^\infty J_0(ax)J_1(ax) \, dx = \frac{1}{2a} \quad [a > 0] \]

17.14 SPHERICAL BESSEL FUNCTIONS

17.14.1 The Differential Equation

17.14.1.1

When the Helmholtz equation for a function \( V \) is expressed in terms of the spherical coordinates \((r, \theta, \phi)\) (see 24.3.1.3(h)), and the variables are separated by setting \( V = R(r) \Theta(\theta) \Phi(\Phi) \), the equation for \( R(r) \) becomes
1. \( r^2 \frac{d^2 R}{dr^2} + 2r \frac{dR}{dr} + \left[ \lambda^2 r^2 - n(n+1) \right] R = 0, \)
which is the differential equation satisfied by spherical Bessel functions, though it is not Bessel’s equation. Its solutions are found in terms of Bessel functions of fractional order by replacing \( r \) by \( x \) and \( R(\lambda r) \) by \( y(\lambda x)/\sqrt{\lambda x} \), when the equation is transformed into

2. \( x^2 \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + 2x \frac{dy}{dx} + \left[ \lambda^2 x^2 - \left( n + \frac{1}{2} \right)^2 \right] y = 0, \)
which is Bessel’s equation of order \( n + \frac{1}{2} \), where \( n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \). The solutions of this equation can be found by using the results of Section 17.3 that define Bessel functions of fractional order in terms of trigonometric functions.

The spherical Bessel equation has two linearly independent solutions denoted by \( j_n(\lambda x) \) and \( y_n(\lambda x) \), so its general solution is

3. \( y = Aj_n(\lambda x) + By_n(\lambda x), \)

where \( j_n(x) \) and \( y_n(x) \) are defined as

4. \( j_n(x) = \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2x}} J_{n+1/2}(x), \quad y_n(x) = \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2x}} (\lambda x)^{n+1} J_{-(n+1/2)}(x). \)

Take note that books using \( N_n(\lambda x) \) for the Bessel function of the second kind of order \( n \) in place of the \( Y_n(\lambda x) \) used here usually use \( n_n(\lambda x) \) in place of the \( y_n(\lambda x) \) used here.

### 17.14.2 The Spherical Bessel Function \( j_n(x) \) and \( y_n(x) \)
#### 17.14.2.1
From 17.4.1.4 we have

1. \( j_0(x) = \frac{\sin x}{x}, \quad j_1(x) = -\frac{\cos x}{x} + \frac{\sin x}{x^2}, \)
   \( j_2(x) = \left( \frac{3}{x^3} - \frac{1}{x} \right) \sin x - \frac{3}{x^2} \cos x, \ldots \)

2. \( y_0(x) = -\frac{\cos x}{x}, \quad y_1(x) = -\frac{\sin x}{x} - \frac{\cos x}{x^2}, \)
   \( y_2(x) = \left( -\frac{3}{x^3} + \frac{1}{x} \right) \cos x - \frac{3}{x^2} \sin x, \ldots \)
In general, we have the Rayleigh formulas

3. \( j_n(x) = (-1)^n x^n \left( \frac{d}{dx} \right)^n \left( \frac{\sin x}{x} \right), \quad y_n(x) = (-1)^{n+1} x^n \left( \frac{d}{dx} \right)^n \left( \frac{\cos x}{x} \right) \).

The spherical Bessel functions \( j_n(x) \) are finite at the origin and decay to zero as \( x \to \infty \), whereas the spherical Bessel functions \( y_n(x) \) are infinite at the origin but also decay to zero as \( x \to \infty \).

### 17.14.3 Recurrence Relations

If \( h_n(x) \) represents either \( j_n(x) \) or \( y_n(x) \), the function \( h_n(x) \) satisfies the recurrence relations

1. \( h_{n+1}(x) = (2n + 1) \frac{h_n(x)}{x} - h_{n-1}(x) \)

2. \( h'_n(x) = \frac{n}{2n+1} h_{n-1}(x) - \frac{n+1}{2n+1} h_{n+1}(x) \\
   = h_{n-1}(x) - \frac{n+1}{x} h_n(x) \\
   = \frac{n}{x} h_n(x) - h_{n+1}(x) \)

3. \( \left( \frac{d}{dx} \right)^m [x^{n+1} h_n(x)] = x^{n-m+1} h_{n-m}(x), \quad (n = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots, \ m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots) \)

4. \( \left( \frac{d}{dx} \right)^m [x^{-n} h_n(x)] = (-1)^m x^{-(n+m)} h_{n+m}(x), \quad (n = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots, \ m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots) \)

### 17.14.4 Series Representations

#### 17.14.4.1

1. \( j_n(x) = \frac{x^n}{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (2n+1)} \left\{ 1 - \frac{\frac{1}{2} x^2}{1! (2n+3)} + \frac{\left(\frac{1}{2} x^2\right)^2}{2! (2n+3) (2n+5)} - \cdots \right\} \)

2. \( y_n(x) = -\frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (2n-1)}{x^{n+1}} \left\{ 1 - \frac{\frac{1}{2} x^2}{1! (1-2n)} + \frac{\left(\frac{1}{2} x^2\right)^2}{2! (1-2n) (3-2n)} - \cdots \right\} \)

#### 17.14.5 Limiting Values as \( x \to 0 \)

When the second term in the expansions 17.14.4(1) and (2) is much smaller than the first term:

1. \( j_n(x) \to \frac{x^n}{(2n+1)!!}, \quad y_n(x) \to -x^{-(n+1)} (2n-1)!! \)
17.15 Fourier-Bessel Expansions

A function \( f(r) \) can be expanded over the interval \( 0 \leq x \leq R \) in terms of the Bessel function \( J_n \), with fixed \( n \), to obtain a **Fourier-Bessel expansion** of the form

\[
1. f(r) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k J_n \left( j_{n,k} r/R \right) = a_1 J_n \left( j_{n,1} r/R \right) + a_2 J_n \left( j_{n,2} r/R \right) + \cdots ,
\]

where \( j_{n,k} \) is the \( k \)th zero of \( J_n(x) \), the first few of which are listed in 17.5.1, and the coefficients \( a_k \) are given by

\[
2. a_k = \frac{1}{2 R^2} \int_0^R J_n \left( j_{n,k} r/R \right) f(r) \, dr \int_0^R J_{n+1} \left( j_{n,k} \right) \, dr, \quad [k = 1, 2, \ldots]
\]

**Example** When a stretched uniformly thin circular elastic drumhead of radius \( R \) is disturbed from its equilibrium position, its oscillatory displacement \( u(r, \theta, t) \) perpendicular to its equilibrium position at \( (r, \theta) \) is determined by the wave equation in plane polar coordinates

\[
u_{tt} = c^2 (u_{rr} + (1/r) u_r + (1/r^2) u_{\theta\theta}) \tag{1}
\]

where \( r \) is the radial distance from the center, \( \theta \) is an angle in the drumhead measured from a fixed line in the equilibrium position, and \( t \) is the time. When the variables are separated by setting \( u = R(r) \Theta(\theta) T(t) \) the normal displacement \( u(r, \theta, t) \) at time \( t \) can be written as \( u(r, \theta, t) = U(r, \theta) T(t) \), where \( U \) describes the spatial displacement and satisfies the Helmholtz equation \( \nabla^2 U + \lambda^2 U = 0 \), with \( \lambda \) a separation constant (see 25.2.1) and \( \nabla^2 \) is the Laplacian in (1). As \( U(r, \Theta) = R(r) \Theta(\theta) \), each term \( J_n(j_{n,k} r/R) \) in the Fourier-Bessel expansion in equation 1 is a term in \( R(r) \), and the displacement at the point \( (r, \theta) \) of the form, \( U_{nm}(r, \theta) = J_n(j_{n,m} r/R) \left[ A \sin n \theta + b \cos n \theta \right] \), with \( n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \) and \( m = 1, 2, \ldots \). This spatial mode is modulated by a sinusoidal time variation with frequency \( j_{n,m} c/(2\pi) \) cycles in a unit time. When the initial configuration of the drumhead is given by specifying \( f(r) \), the displacement of the drumhead \( U_r(\theta) \) follows once results of equation 2 are used with the Fourier-Bessel expansion in equation 1. If the expansion is performed in terms of \( J_1 \), a representative mode \( U_{12}(r, \theta) = J_1(j_{1,2} r/R) \cos \theta \), for which \( j_{1,2} = 7.01559 \), and typically \( A = 1, B = 0 \), is shown in Figure 17.4(a), while Figure 17.4(b) shows a contour plot of this mode.
The time variation of this mode is obtained by modulating it with a sinusoid of frequency $\frac{j_{1,2}c}{\left(2\pi\right)}$, and when $f(r)$ is specified, the corresponding term in the expansion in equation 1 is multiplied by the coefficient $a_2$ found from 2. Unless $f(r)$ is particularly simple, it becomes necessary to determine the coefficients $a_k$ by means of numerical integration.
18.1 INTRODUCTION
18.1.1 Definition of a System of Orthogonal Polynomials
18.1.1.1 Let \( \{ \Phi_n(x) \} \) be a system of polynomials defined for \( a \leq x \leq b \) such that \( \Phi_n(x) \) is of degree \( n \), and let \( w(x) > 0 \) be a function defined for \( a \leq x \leq b \). Define the positive numbers \( \parallel \Phi_n \parallel^2 \) as

\[
\parallel \Phi_n \parallel^2 = \int_a^b [\Phi_n(x)]^2 w(x) \, dx.
\]

Then the system of polynomials \( \{ \Phi_n(x) \} \) is said to be orthogonal over \( a \leq x \leq b \) with respect to the weight function \( w(x) \) if

\[
\int_a^b \Phi_m(x) \Phi_n(x) w(x) \, dx = \begin{cases} 
0, & m \neq n \\
\parallel \Phi_n \parallel^2, & m = n
\end{cases} \quad [m, n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots].
\]

The normalized system of polynomials \( \{ \phi_n(x) \} \), where \( \phi_n(x) = \Phi_n(x)/\parallel \Phi_n \parallel \), is said to be orthonormal over \( a \leq x \leq b \) with respect to the weight function \( w(x) \), where \( \parallel \Phi_n \parallel \) is called the norm of \( \Phi_n(x) \) and it follows from 18.1.1.1.1–2 that

\[
\int_a^b \phi_m(x) \phi_n(x) w(x) \, dx = \begin{cases} 
0, & m \neq n \\
1, & m = n
\end{cases} \quad [m, n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots].
\]

Orthogonal polynomials are special solutions of linear variable coefficient second-order differential equations defined on the interval \( a \leq x \leq b \), in which \( n \) appears as a parameter.
These polynomials can be generated by differentiation of a suitable sequence of functions (Rodrigues’ formula), and they satisfy recurrence relations.

18.2 LEGENDRE POLYNOMIALS \( P_n(x) \)

18.2.1 Differential Equation Satisfied by \( P_n(x) \)

18.2.1.1 The Legendre polynomials \( P_n(x) \) satisfy the differential equation

\[
(1 - x^2) \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - 2x \frac{dy}{dx} + n(n + 1)y = 0
\]

defined on the interval \(-1 \leq x \leq 1\), with \( n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \).

18.2.2 Rodrigues’ Formula for \( P_n(x) \)

18.2.2.1 The Legendre polynomial \( P_n(x) \) of degree \( n \) is given by Rodrigues’ formula:

\[
P_n(x) = \frac{1}{2^n n!} \frac{d^n}{dx^n}[(x^2 - 1)^n].
\]

18.2.3 Orthogonality Relation for \( P_n(x) \)

18.2.3.1 The weight function for Legendre polynomials is \( w(x) = 1 \), and the orthogonality relation is

\[
\int_{-1}^{1} P_m(x)P_n(x) \, dx = \begin{cases} 
0, & \text{for } m \neq n \\
\frac{2}{2n+1}, & \text{for } m = n 
\end{cases} \quad [n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots].
\]

A function \( f(x) \) can be expanded over the interval \(-1 \leq x \leq 1\) in terms of the Legendre polynomials to obtain a Fourier-Legendre expansion of the form

\[
f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n P_n(x) = a_0 + a_1 P_1(x) + a_2 P_2(x) + \cdots,
\]

where the coefficients \( a_n \) are given by

\[
a_n = \left( \frac{2n + 1}{2} \right) \int_{-1}^{1} f(x)P_n(x) \, dx, \quad [n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots]
\]

18.2.4 Explicit Expressions for \( P_n(x) \)

18.2.4.1

1. \[
P_n(x) = \frac{1}{2^n} \sum_{k=0}^{[n/2]} \frac{(-1)^k(2n - 2k)!}{k!(n-k)!(n-2k)!} x^{n-2k}
\]
\[ P_n(x) = \frac{(2n)!}{2^n(n!)^2} \left[ x^n - \frac{n(n-1)}{2(2n-1)} x^{n-2} + \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)(n-3)}{2 \cdot 4(2n-1)(2n-3)} x^{n-4} - \ldots \right] \]

\[ \left\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \right\rfloor \text{ signifies the integral part of } \frac{n}{2} \]

2. \[ P_{2n}(x) = (-1)^n \frac{(2n-1)!!}{2^n n!} \left[ 1 - \frac{2n(2n+1)}{2!} x^2 + \frac{2n(2n-2)(2n+1)(2n+3)}{4!} x^4 - \ldots \right] \]

\[ [(2n-1)!! = 1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (2n-1)] \]

3. \[ P_{2n+1}(x) = (-1)^n \frac{(2n+1)!!}{2^n n!} \left[ x - \frac{2n(2n+3)}{3!} x^3 + \frac{2n(2n-2)(2n+3)(2n+5)}{5!} x^5 - \ldots \right] \]

\[ [(2n+1)!! = 1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (2n+1)] \]

### 18.2.4.2 Special Cases and Graphs of \( P_n(x) \)

**Notation:** \( x = \cos \theta \)

1. \( P_0(x) = 1 \)
2. \( P_1(x) = x = \cos \theta \)
3. \( P_2(x) = \frac{1}{2} (3x^2 - 1) = \frac{1}{4} (3 \cos 2\theta + 1) \)
4. \( P_3(x) = \frac{1}{2} (5x^3 - 3x) = \frac{1}{8} (5 \cos 3\theta + 3 \cos \theta) \)
5. \( P_4(x) = \frac{1}{8} (35x^4 - 30x^2 + 3) = \frac{1}{64} (35 \cos 4\theta + 20 \cos 2\theta + 9) \)
6. \( P_5(x) = \frac{1}{8} (63x^5 - 70x^3 + 15x) = \frac{1}{128} (63 \cos 5\theta + 35 \cos 3\theta + 30 \cos \theta) \)
7. \( P_6(x) = \frac{1}{16} (231x^6 - 315x^4 + 105x^2 - 5) \)

\[ = \frac{1}{512} (231 \cos 6\theta + 126 \cos 4\theta + 105 \cos 2\theta + 50) \]

Graphs of these polynomials are shown in Figure 18.1.

**Powers of \( x \) in terms of \( P_n(x) \)**

1. \( 1 = P_0(x) \)
2. \( x = P_1(x) \)
3. \( x^2 = \frac{1}{3} (2P_2(x) + P_0(x)) \)
Chapter 18 Orthogonal Polynomials

Figure 18.1. Legendre polynomials $P_n(x)$: (a) even polynomials and (b) odd polynomials.

4. $x^3 = \frac{1}{5}(2P_3(x) + 3P_1(x))$
5. $x^4 = \frac{1}{35}(8P_4(x) + 20P_2(x) + 7P_0(x))$
6. $x^5 = \frac{1}{63}(8P_5(x) + 28P_3(x) + 27P_1(x))$
7. $x^6 = \frac{1}{231}(16P_6(x) + 72P_4(x) + 110P_2(x) + 33P_0(x))$

18.2.5 Recurrence Relations Satisfied by $P_n(x)$

18.2.5.1

1. $(n + 1)P_{n+1}(x) = (2n + 1)XP_n(x) - nP_{n-1}(x)$
2. $(x^2 - 1) \frac{d}{dx}[P_n(x)] = nxP_n(x) - nP_{n-1}(x)
   = \frac{n(n + 1)}{2n + 1} [P_{n+1}(x) - P_{n-1}(x)]$
3. \( \frac{d}{dx}[P_{n+1}(x)] - x \frac{d}{dx}[P_n(x)] = (n + 1)P_n(x) \)

4. \( x \frac{d}{dx}[P_n(x)] - \frac{d}{dx}[P_n(x)] = nP_n(x) \)

5. \( \frac{d}{dx}[P_{n+1}(x) - P_{n-1}(x)] = (2n + 1)P_n(x) \)

6. \( \frac{d}{dx}[P_{n+1}(x)] + \frac{d}{dx}[P_{n-1}(x)] = 2x \frac{d}{dx}[P_n(x)] + P_n(x) \)

7. \( (1 - x^2) \frac{d}{dx}[P_n(x)] = (n + 1)(nP_n(x) - P_{n+1}(x)) \)

### 18.2.6 Generating Function for \( P_n(x) \)

#### 18.2.6.1

The Legendre polynomial \( P_n(x) \) occurs as the multiplier of \( t^n \) in the expansion of the generating function:

1. \( \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - 2tx + t^2}} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} P_k(x)t^k \quad |t| < \min |x \pm \sqrt{x^2 - 1}| \)

### 18.2.7 Legendre Functions of the Second Kind \( Q_n(x) \)

#### 18.2.7.1

There is a nonpolynomial solution to the Legendre differential equation 18.2.1.1.1 that is linearly independent of the Legendre polynomial \( P_n(x) \) and that has singularities at \( x = \pm 1 \). This solution, denoted by \( Q_n(x) \), is called the **Legendre function of the second kind** of order \( n \), to distinguish it from \( P_n(x) \), which is the corresponding function of the first kind.

The general solution of the Legendre differential equation 18.2.1.1.1 on the interval \(-1 < x < 1\) with \( n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \), is

1. \( y(x) = AP_n(x) + BQ_n(x) \),

where \( A \) and \( B \) are arbitrary constants.

The functions \( Q_n(x) \), the first six of which are listed below, satisfy the same recurrence relations as those for \( P_n(x) \) given in 18.2.5.1.

2. \( Q_0(x) = \frac{1}{2} \ln \left( \frac{1 + x}{1 - x} \right) \)

3. \( Q_1(x) = \frac{x}{2} \ln \left( \frac{1 + x}{1 - x} \right) - 1 \)

4. \( Q_2(x) = \frac{1}{4}(3x^2 - 1) \ln \left( \frac{1 + x}{1 - x} \right) - \frac{3}{2}x \)

5. \( Q_3(x) = \frac{1}{4}(5x^3 - 3x) \ln \left( \frac{1 + x}{1 - x} \right) - \frac{5}{2}x^2 + \frac{2}{3} \)
Figure 18.2. Legendre functions \( Q_n(x) \).

6. \[ Q_4(x) = \frac{1}{16} (35x^4 - 30x^2 + 3) \ln \left( \frac{1 + x}{1 - x} \right) - \frac{35}{8} x^3 + \frac{55}{24} x \]

7. \[ Q_5(x) = \frac{1}{16} (63x^5 - 70x^3 + 15x) \ln \left( \frac{1 + x}{1 - x} \right) - \frac{63}{8} x^4 + \frac{49}{8} x^2 - \frac{8}{15} \]

Graphs of \( Q_n(x) \) for \(-0.95 \leq x \leq 0.95\) and \( n = 0, 1, 2, 3 \) are shown in Figure 18.2.

18.2.7.2 Recurrence Relations for \( Q_n(x) \)

1. \( (2n + 1)xQ_n(x) = (n + 1)Q_{n+1}(x) + nQ_{n-1}(x) \)  \( ||x| < 1 \) and \( |x| > 1 \)

2. \( (2n + 1)Q_n(x) = \frac{d}{dx} [Q_{n+1}(x)] - \frac{d}{dx} [Q_{n-1}(x)] \)  \( ||x| < 1 \) and \( |x| > 1 \)

18.2.7.3 A Connection Between \( P_n(x) \) and \( Q_n(x) \) and \( P_n(-x) \) and \( P_n(x) \)

1. \( n[P_n(x)Q_{n-1}(x) - P_{n-1}(x)Q_n(x)] = P_1(x)Q_0(x) - P_0(x)Q_1(x) \)  \( ||x| < 1 \)

2. \( P_n(-x) = (-1)^n P_n(x) \)

18.2.7.4 Summation Formulas

1. \( (x - y) \sum_{m=0}^{n} (2m + 1)P_m(x)P_m(y) = (n + 1) [P_{n+1}(x)P_n(y) - P_n(x)P_{n+1}(y)] \)

2. \( (x - y) \sum_{m=0}^{n} (2m + 1)Q_m(x)P_m(y) = 1 - (n + 1) [P_{n+1}(y)Q_n(x) - P_n(y)Q_{n+1}(x)] \)
18.2.8 Definite Integrals Involving $P_n(x)$

1. \[ \int_0^1 x^2 P_{n-1}(x)P_{n+1}(x) \, dx = \frac{n(n+1)}{(2n-1)(2n+1)(2n+3)} \]

2. \[ \int_{-1}^1 x^r P_n(x) \, dx = 0, \quad r = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, n - 1 \]

3. \[ \int_{-1}^1 x^n P_n(x) \, dx = \frac{2^{n+1}(n!)^2}{(2n+1)!} \]

4. \[ \int_{-1}^1 [P_n(x)]^2 \, dx = \frac{2}{2n+1} \]

5. \[ \int_{-1}^1 x^{2r} P_{2n}(x) \, dx = \frac{2^{2n+1}(r!(r+n)!)}{(2r+2n+1)!(r-n)!}, \quad r \geq n \]

6. \[ \int_{-1}^1 P_n(x) \arcsin x \, dx = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{n even} \\ \frac{\pi}{2} \left[ \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (n-2)}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \cdots (n+1)} \right]^2 & \text{n odd} \end{cases} \]

7. \[ \int_{-1}^1 \frac{P_n(x)}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} \, dx = \frac{2^{5/2}}{2n+1} \]

8. \[ \int_{-1}^1 (1-x^2) [P_n'(x)]^2 \, dx = \frac{2n(n+1)}{2n+1} \]

9. \[ \int_0^{2\pi} P_{2n}(\cos \theta) \, d\theta = \frac{2\pi}{2^{4n}} \binom{2n}{n} \]

10. \[ \int_0^{2\pi} P_{2n+1}(\cos \theta) \cos \theta \, d\theta = \frac{\pi}{2^{4n+2}} \binom{2n}{n} \binom{2n+2}{n+1} \]

18.2.9 Special Values

1. \[ P_n(\pm 1) = (\pm 1)^n \]

2. \[ P_{2n}(0) = (-1)^n \frac{(2n)!}{2^{2n}(n!)^2} \]

3. \[ P_{2n+1}(0) = 0 \]

4. \[ P_{2n}'(0) = 0 \]

5. \[ P_{2n+1}'(0) = 0 \]

6. \[ P_{2n+1}'(0) = (-1)^n \frac{(2n+1)\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)_n}{n!} \]

[for the Pochhammer symbol $(a)_n$ see Section 0.3]
18.2.10 Associated Legendre Functions

18.2.10.1 The Differential Equation and the Functions \( P_n^m(x) \) and \( P_n^m(\theta) \)

When the Laplace equation for a function \( V \) is expressed in terms of the spherical coordinates \((r, \theta, \phi)\) (see 24.3.1.3(h)), and the variables are separated by setting \( V = R(r)\Theta(\theta)\Phi(\phi) \), the equation for \( \Theta(\theta) \) with \( x = \cos \theta \) is found to be

\[
1. \quad (1 - x^2) \frac{d^2 \Theta(x)}{dx^2} - 2x \frac{d\Theta(x)}{dx} + \left[ n(n + 1) - \frac{m^2}{1 - x^2} \right] \Theta(x) = 0,
\]

where \( m \) is the separation constant introduced because of the dependence of \( V \) on \( \phi \), and \( n \) is a separation constant introduced because of the dependence of \( V \) on \( \theta \) (see Section 25.2.1). This is called the associated Legendre equation, and when \( m = 0 \), it reduces to the Legendre equation. Like the Legendre equation, the associated Legendre equation also has two linearly independent solutions, one of which is a function that remains finite for \(-1 \leq x \leq 1\), while the other is a function that becomes infinite at \( x = \pm 1 \). As \( \Theta(x) \) depends on the two parameters \( m \) and \( n \), the two solutions are called associated Legendre functions. The solution that remains finite is a polynomial denoted by the symbol \( P_n^m(x) \), and the differential equation satisfied by \( P_n^m(x) \) is

\[
2. \quad (1 - x^2) \frac{d^2 P_n^m(x)}{dx^2} - 2x \frac{dP_n^m(x)}{dx} + \left[ n(n + 1) - \frac{m^2}{1 - x^2} \right] P_n^m(x) = 0.
\]

When this equation is expressed in terms of \( \theta \), it becomes

\[
3. \quad \frac{1}{\sin \theta} \frac{d}{d\theta} \left( \sin \theta \frac{dP_n^m(\theta)}{d\theta} \right) + \left[ n(n + 1) - \frac{m^2}{\sin^2 \theta} \right] P_n^m(\theta) = 0.
\]

The second solution is a function denoted by \( Q_n^m(x) \), and it satisfies equation 2 with \( P_n^m(x) \) replaced by \( Q_n^m(x) \), while in terms of \( \theta \), the function \( Q_n^m(\theta) \) satisfies equation 3 with \( P_n^m(\theta) \) replaced by \( Q_n^m(\theta) \).

The connection between \( P_n^m(x) \) and the Legendre polynomial \( P_n(x) \), and between the associated Legendre function \( Q_n^m(x) \) and the Legendre function \( Q_n(x) \) is provided by the general results

\[
4. \quad P_n^m(x) = (1 - x^2)^{m/2} \frac{d^m}{dx^m} P_n(x), \quad Q_n^m(x) = (1 - x^2)^{m/2} \frac{d^m}{dx^m} Q_n(x),
\]

where \( P_n^m(x) \equiv 0 \) if \( m > n \).

\[
5. \quad P_n^m(-x) = (-1)^{m+n} P_n^m(x) \quad \text{with} \quad P_n^m(\pm 1) = 0 \quad \text{when} \quad m \neq 0.
\]

The first few associated Legendre polynomials \( P_n^m(x) \), equivalently \( P_n^m(\theta) \), are:

\[
P_1^1(x) = (1 - x^2)^{1/2}, \quad \text{equivalently} \quad P_1^1(\theta) = \sin \theta
\]
18.2 Legendre Polynomials \( P_n(x) \)

\[ P_2^1(x) = 3x(1 - x^2)^{1/2}, \text{ equivalently } P_2^1(\theta) = 3 \cos \theta \sin \theta \]

\[ P_2^2(x) = 3(1 - x^2)^{1/2}, \text{ equivalently } P_2^2(\theta) = 3 \sin^2 \theta \]

\[ P_3^1(x) = \frac{3}{2}(1 - x^2)^{1/2}(5x^2 - 1), \text{ equivalently } P_3^1(\theta) = \frac{3}{2} \sin \theta (5 \cos^2 \theta - 1) \]

\[ P_3^2(x) = 15x(1 - x^2), \text{ equivalently } P_3^2(\theta) = 15 \cos \theta \sin^2 \theta \]

\[ P_3^3(x) = 15(1 - x^2)^{3/2}, \text{ equivalently } P_3^3(\theta) = 15 \sin^3(\theta) \]

Results for larger values of \( m \) and \( n \) can be found from the recurrence relations in Section 18.2.10.2 or from the general definition of \( P_n^m(x) \) in 4.

18.2.10.2 The Recurrence Relations

Many recurrence relations exist, and some of the most useful are:

1. \((2n + 1)xP_n^m(x) = (m + n)P_{n-1}^m(x) + (n - m + 1)P_{n+1}^m(x)\)

2. \(P_n^{m+1}(x) = \frac{2mx}{(1-x^2)^{1/2}}P_n^m(x) + [m(m-1) - n(n+1)]P_n^{m-1}(x)\)

3. \(P_n^{m+1}(x) - P_n^{m+1}(x) = (2n+1)(1-x^2)^{1/2}P_n^m(x) - (m+n)(m+n-1)P_{n-1}^{m-1}(x)\)

\[ + (n-m+1)(n-m+2)P_{n+1}^{m-1}(x) \]

4. \(P_n^{m+1}(x) = (m-n)(1-x^2)^{1/2}P_n^m(x) + xP_n^{m+1}(x)\)

5. \((m-n+1)P_{n+1}^{m+1}(x) = (m+n)P_{n-1}^m(x) - (2n+1)xP_n^m(x)\)

6. \((1-x^2)\frac{dP_n^m(x)}{dx} = (m+n)P_{n-1}^m(x) - nxP_n^m(x)\)

7. \((1-x^2)^{1/2}\frac{dP_n^m(x)}{dx} = \frac{1}{2} \left[ P_{n+1}^m(x) - (m+n)(n-m+1)P_{n-1}^{m-1}(x) \right] \)

The functions \( Q_n^m(x) \) satisfy the same recurrence relations as the polynomials \( P_n^m(x) \).

18.2.10.3 The Orthogonality Relations Satisfied by \( P_n^m(x) \) and \( P_n^m(\cos \theta) \)

1. \(\int_{-1}^{1} P_n^m(x)P_k^m(x)\,dx = 0 \text{ if } n \neq k, \quad \int_{-1}^{1} \left[ P_n^m(x) \right]^2\,dx = \frac{2(n+m)!}{2n+1(n-m)!} \)

2. \(\int_{0}^{\pi} P_n^m(\cos \theta)P_k^m(\cos \theta)\,d\theta = 0 \text{ if } n \neq k, \quad \int_{0}^{\pi} \left[ P_n^m(\cos \theta) \right]^2\,d\theta = \frac{2(n+m)!}{2n+1(n-m)!} \)
18.2.11 Spherical Harmonics

When solutions $u$ for the Laplace and Helmholtz equations are required in spherical regions, it becomes necessary to express the equations in terms of the spherical coordinates $(r, \theta, \phi)$ (see Fig. 24.3). In this coordinate system, $r$ is the radius, $\theta$ is the polar angle with $0 \leq \theta \leq \pi$, and $\phi$ is the azimuthal angle with $0 \leq \phi \leq 2\pi$. After separating the variables by setting $u(r, \theta, \phi) = R(r) \Theta(\theta) \Phi(\phi)$, the dependence of the solution $u$ on the polar angle $\theta$ and the azimuthal angle $\phi$ is found to satisfy the equation

$$1. \frac{1}{\Theta(\theta) \sin \theta} \frac{d}{d\theta} \left( \sin \theta \frac{d\Theta}{d\theta} \right) + \frac{1}{\Phi(\phi) \sin^2 \theta} \frac{d^2 \Phi}{d\phi^2} + n(n+1) = 0,$$

where the integer $n$ is a separation constant introduced when the variable $r$ was separated. The first term in this equation is a function only of $\theta$, and the expression $(1/\Phi(\phi))d^2\Phi/d\phi^2$ in the second term is a function only of $\phi$, so as the functions $\Phi(\phi)$ and $\Theta(\theta)$ are independent for all $\phi$ and $\theta$, for this result to be true, the terms in $\theta$ and in $\phi$ must each be equal to a constant. Setting the $\phi$ dependence equal to the separation constant $-m^2$, with $m$ an integer, shows that the azimuthal dependence must obey the equation

$$2. \frac{d^2 \Phi(\phi)}{d\phi^2} + m^2 \Phi(\phi) = 0.$$

So the two linearly independent azimuthal solutions are given by the two complex conjugate functions $\Phi_1(\phi) = e^{im\phi}$ and $\Phi_2(\phi) = e^{-im\phi}$. These two complex solutions could, of course, have been replaced by the two linearly independent real solutions $\sin m\phi$ and $\cos m\phi$, but for what is to follow, the complex representations will be retained.

When the $\phi$ dependence is removed from equation 1 and replaced with $-m^2$, the equation for the $\theta$ dependence that remains becomes the associated Legendre equation with solutions $P_n^m(\theta)$, namely

$$3. \frac{1}{\sin \theta} \frac{d}{d\theta} \left( \sin \theta \frac{dP_n^m(\theta)}{d\theta} \right) + \left[ n(n+1) - \frac{m^2}{\sin^2 \theta} \right] P_n^m(\theta) = 0.$$

Solutions of equation 1, called spherical harmonics, involve the product of $\Phi_1(\phi)$ or $\Phi_2(\phi)$ and $P_n^m(\theta)$, but unfortunately, there is no standard notation for spherical harmonics, nor is there agreement on whether $P_n^m(\theta)$ should be normalized when it is used in the definition of spherical harmonics. The products of these functions are called spherical harmonics because solutions of the Laplace equation are called harmonic functions, and these are harmonic functions on the surface of a sphere. As spherical harmonics are mainly used in physics, the notation and normalization in what is to follow are the ones used in that subject. However, whereas in mathematics a complex conjugate is denoted by an overbar, as is the case elsewhere in this book, in physics it is usually denoted by an asterisk $\ast$. The spherical harmonic $Y_n^m(\theta, \phi)$ defined as

$$4. Y_n^m(\theta, \phi) = (-1)^m \sqrt{\frac{(2n+1)}{2} \cdot \frac{(n-m)!}{(n+m)!}} P_n^m(\cos \theta)e^{im\phi}, \quad -n \leq m \leq n.$$
These functions are also called surface harmonics of the first kind, in which case they are known as tesseral harmonics when \( m < n \) and as sectoral harmonics when \( m = n \). The function \( \Theta \) when \( \Phi \) is constant is called a zonal surface harmonic. When \( m \) is negative, the spherical harmonic functions with positive and negative \( m \) are related by the equation

\[ Y_{-m}(\cos \theta) = (-1)^m (Y^m_n(\cos \theta))^* . \]

The following table lists the first few spherical harmonics for \( m, n = 0, 1, 2, 3 \), where the corresponding results for negative \( m \) follow from result 5.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table of Spherical Harmonics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( n = 0 )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| \( n = 1 \)    | \[
\begin{align*}
Y^1_1(\cos \theta) &= -\sqrt{\frac{3}{8\pi}} \sin \theta e^{i\phi} \\
Y^0_1(\cos \theta) &= \sqrt{\frac{3}{4\pi}} \cos \theta \\
Y^2_1(\cos \theta) &= \sqrt{\frac{15}{2\pi}} \sin \theta \cos \theta e^{2i\phi} \\
Y^0_2(\cos \theta) &= \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{5}{4\pi}} (3 \cos^2 \theta - 1) \\
Y^3_1(\cos \theta) &= -\sqrt{\frac{105}{4\pi}} \sin^3 \theta e^{3i\phi} \\
Y^2_2(\cos \theta) &= \sqrt{\frac{105}{2\pi}} \sin^2 \theta \cos \theta e^{2i\phi} \\
Y^1_3(\cos \theta) &= -\sqrt{\frac{21}{2\pi}} \sin \theta (5 \cos^2 \theta - 1) e^{i\phi} \\
Y^0_3(\cos \theta) &= \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{7}{4\pi}} (5 \cos^3 \theta - 3 \cos \theta)
\end{align*}
\] |

The functions \( P^m_n(\cos \theta) \) and \( \Phi \) are each orthogonal over their respective intervals \( 0 \leq \theta \leq \pi \) and \( 0 \leq \phi \leq 2\pi \), and when this is taken into account together with the normalizations that have been used, the orthogonality of the spherical harmonics takes the form

\[ \int_{\phi=0}^{2\pi} \int_{\theta=0}^{\pi} (P^{m_1}_{n_1}(\theta, \phi))^* Y^{m_2}_{n_2}(\theta, \phi) \sin \theta \, d\theta \, d\phi = \delta_{n_1 n_2} \delta_{m_1 m_2}, \]

where \( \delta_{pq} \) is the Kronecker delta symbol defined in 1.4.2.1,8.
This orthogonality property allows an arbitrary function $f(\theta, \phi)$ defined for $0 \leq \theta \leq \pi$, $0 \leq \phi \leq 2\pi$ to be expanded as a uniformly convergent series of the form

$$f(\theta, \phi) = \sum c_{mn} Y^m_n(\theta, \phi),$$

where

$$c_{mn} = \int_{\phi=0}^{2\pi} \int_{\theta=0}^{\pi} f(\theta, \phi)(Y^m_n(\theta, \phi))^* \sin \theta d\theta d\phi.$$

Let $\gamma$ be the angle between two unit vectors $u_1$ and $u_2$ in space with the respective polar and azimuthal angles $(\theta_1, \phi_1)$ and $(\theta_2, \phi_2)$. Then the addition theorem for spherical harmonics takes the form

$$P_r(\cos \gamma) = \frac{4\pi}{2^r + 1} \sum_{m=-r}^{r} Y^m_r(\theta_1, \phi_1)(Y^m_r(\theta_2, \phi_2))^*.$$

### 18.3.1 Differential Equation Satisfied by $T_n(x)$ and $U_n(x)$

**18.3.1.1**

The Chebyshev polynomials $T_n(x)$ and $U_n(x)$ satisfy the differential equation

1. \[(1 - x^2) \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - x \frac{dy}{dx} + ny = 0,\]

defined on the interval $-1 \leq x \leq 1$, with $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$. The functions $T_n(x)$ and $\sqrt{1 - x^2}U_{n-1}(x)$ are two linearly independent solutions of 18.3.1.1.1.

### 18.3.2 Rodrigues’ Formulas for $T_n(x)$ and $U_n(x)$

**18.3.2.1**

The Chebyshev polynomials $T_n(x)$ and $U_n(x)$ of degree $n$ are given by Rodrigues’ formulas:

1. \[T_n(x) = \frac{(-1)^n \sqrt{\pi}(1 - x^2)^{1/2}}{2^n \Gamma(n + \frac{1}{2})} \frac{d^n}{dx^n} [(1 - x^2)^{n-1/2}] \]
2. \[U_n(x) = \frac{(-1)^n \sqrt{\pi}(n + 1)(1 - x^2)^{-1/2}}{2^{n+1} \Gamma(n + \frac{3}{2})} \frac{d^n}{dx^n} [(1 - x^2)^{n+1/2}] \]

### 18.3.3 Orthogonality Relations for $T_n(x)$ and $U_n(x)$

**18.3.3.1**

The weight function $w(x)$ for the Chebyshev polynomials $T_n(x)$ and $U_n(x)$ is $w(x) = (1 - x^2)^{-1/2}$, and the orthogonality relations are
18.3 Chebyshev Polynomials $T_n(x)$ and $U_n(x)$

1. $\int_{-1}^{1} T_m(x) T_n(x)(1 - x^2)^{-1/2} \, dx = \begin{cases} 0, & m \neq n \\ \pi/2, & m = n \neq 0 \\ \pi, & m = n = 0 \end{cases}$

2. $\int_{-1}^{1} U_m(x) U_n(x)(1 - x^2)^{1/2} \, dx = \begin{cases} 0, & m \neq n \\ \pi/2, & m = n \\ \pi/2, & m = n = 0 \end{cases}$

A function $f(x)$ can be expanded over the interval $-1 \leq x \leq 1$ in terms of the Chebyshev polynomials to obtain a **Fourier-Chebyshev expansion** of the form

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n T_n(x) = a_0 T_0(x) + a_1 T_1(x) + a_2 T_2(x) + \ldots,$$

where the coefficients $a_n$ are given by

$$a_n = \frac{1}{\|T_n(x)\|^2} \int_{-1}^{1} \frac{f(x) T_n(x) \, dx}{\sqrt{1 - x^2}}, \quad [n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots],$$

with $\|T_0(x)\|^2 = \pi$ and $\|T_n(x)\|^2 = \frac{1}{2} \pi$ for $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$.

18.3.4 Explicit Expressions for $T_n(x)$ and $U_n(x)$

18.3.4.1

1. $T_n(x) = \cos(n \arccos x) = \frac{1}{2} \left[ (x + i\sqrt{1 - x^2})^n + (x - i\sqrt{1 - x^2})^n \right]$

   $$= x^n - \frac{n}{2} x^{n-2}(1 - x^2) + \frac{n}{4} x^{n-4}(1 - x^2)^2$$

   $$- \frac{n}{6} x^{n-6}(1 - x^2)^3 + \ldots.$$  

2. $U_n(x) = \frac{\sin[(n + 1) \arccos x]}{\sin[\arccos x]}

   $$= \frac{1}{2i\sqrt{1 - x^2}} \left[ (x + i\sqrt{1 - x^2})^{n+1} - (x - i\sqrt{1 - x^2})^{n+1} \right]$$

   $$= \left( \frac{n + 1}{1} \right) x^n - \left( \frac{n + 1}{3} \right) x^{n-2}(1 - x^2) + \left( \frac{n + 1}{5} \right) x^{n-4}(1 - x^2)^2 - \ldots.$$  

18.3.4.2 Special Cases and Graphs of $T_n(x)$ and $U_n(x)$

1. $T_0(x) = 1$

2. $T_1(x) = x$
Chapter 18 Orthogonal Polynomials

3. \( T_2(x) = 2x^2 - 1 \)
4. \( T_3(x) = 4x^3 - 3x \)
5. \( T_4(x) = 8x^4 - 8x^2 + 1 \)
6. \( T_5(x) = 16x^5 - 20x^3 + 5x \)
7. \( T_6(x) = 32x^6 - 48x^4 + 18x^2 - 1 \)
8. \( T_7(x) = 64x^7 - 112x^5 + 56x^3 - 7x \)
9. \( T_8(x) = 128x^8 - 256x^6 + 160x^4 - 32x^2 + 1 \)
10. \( U_0(x) = 1 \)
11. \( U_1(x) = 2x \)
12. \( U_2(x) = 4x^2 - 1 \)
13. \( U_3(x) = 8x^3 - 4x \)
14. \( U_4(x) = 16x^4 - 12x^2 + 1 \)
15. \( U_5(x) = 32x^5 - 32x^3 + 6x \)
16. \( U_6(x) = 64x^6 - 80x^4 + 24x^2 - 1 \)
17. \( U_7(x) = 128x^7 - 192x^5 + 80x^3 - 8x \)
18. \( U_8(x) = 256x^8 - 448x^6 + 240x^4 - 40x^2 + 1 \)

See Figures 18.3 and 18.4.

18.3.4.3 Particular Values

1. \( T_n(1) = 1 \)
2. \( T_n(-1) = (-1)^n \)
3. \( T_{2n}(0) = (-1)^n \)
4. \( T_{2n+1}(0) = 0 \)
5. \( U_{2n+1}(0) = 0 \)
6. \( U_{2n}(0) = (-1)^n \)

Powers of \( x \) in terms of \( T_n(x) \) and \( U_n(x) \)

1. \( 1 = T_0(x) \)
2. \( x = T_1(x) \)
3. \( x^2 = \frac{1}{2}(T_2(x) + T_0(x)) \)
4. \( x^3 = \frac{1}{4}(T_3(x) + 3T_1(x)) \)
5. \( x^4 = \frac{1}{8}(T_4(x) + 4T_2(x) + 3T_0(x)) \)
18.3 Chebyshev Polynomials $T_n(x)$ and $U_n(x)$

Figure 18.3. Chebyshev polynomials $T_n(x)$: (a) even polynomials and (b) odd polynomials.

6. $x^5 = \frac{1}{16}(T_5(x) + 5T_3(x) + 10T_1(x))$
7. $x^6 = \frac{1}{32}(T_6(x) + 6T_4(x) + 15T_2(x) + 10T_0(x))$
8. $x^7 = \frac{1}{64}(T_7(x) + 7T_5(x) + 21T_3(x) + 35T_1(x))$
9. $x^8 = \frac{1}{128}(T_8(x) + 8T_6(x) + 28T_4(x) + 56T_2(x) + 35T_0(x))$
10. $1 = U_0(x)$
11. $x = \frac{1}{2}U_1(x)$
12. $x^2 = \frac{1}{4}(U_2(x) + U_0(x))$
13. $x^3 = \frac{1}{8}(U_3(x) + 2U_1(x))$
Figure 18.4. Chebyshev polynomials $U_n(x)$: (a) even polynomials and (b) odd polynomials.

14. $x^4 = \frac{1}{16} (U_4(x) + 3U_2(x) + 2U_0(x))$

15. $x^5 = \frac{1}{32} (U_5(x) + 4U_3(x) + 5U_1(x))$

16. $x^6 = \frac{1}{64} (U_6(x) + 5U_4(x) + 9U_2(x) + 5U_0(x))$

17. $x^7 = \frac{1}{128} (U_7(x) + 6U_5(x) + 14U_3(x) + 14U_1(x))$

18. $x^8 = \frac{1}{256} (U_8(x) + 7U_6(x) + 20U_4(x) + 28U_2(x) + 14U_0(x))$
18.3.5 Recurrence Relations Satisfied by $T_n(x)$ and $U_n(x)$

18.3.5.1

1. $T_{n+1}(x) - 2xT_n(x) + T_{n-1}(x) = 0$
2. $U_{n+1}(x) - 2xU_n(x) + U_{n-1}(x) = 0$
3. $T_n(x) = U_n(x) - xU_{n-1}(x)$
4. $(1 - x^2)U_{n-1}(x) = xT_n(x) - T_{n+1}(x)$

18.3.6 Generating Functions for $T_n(x)$ and $U_n(x)$

18.3.6.1

The Chebyshev polynomials $T_n(x)$ and $U_n(x)$ occur as the multipliers of $t^n$ in the expansions of the respective generating functions:

1. \[
\frac{1 - t^2}{1 - 2tx + t^2} = T_0(x) + 2 \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} T_k(x)t^k
\]
2. \[
\frac{1}{1 - 2tx + t^2} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} U_k(x)t^k.
\]

18.4 LAGUERRE POLYNOMIALS $L_n(x)$

18.4.1 Differential Equation Satisfied by $L_n(x)$

18.4.1.1

The Laguerre polynomials $L_n(x)$ satisfy the differential equation

1. \[
x \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + (1 - x) \frac{dy}{dx} + ny = 0
\]

defined on the interval $0 \leq x < \infty$, with $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$.

18.4.2 Rodrigues’ Formula for $L_n(x)$

18.4.2.1

The Laguerre polynomial $L_n(x)$ of degree $n$ is given by the following Rodrigues’ formula:

1. \[
L_n(x) = \frac{e^x}{n!} \frac{d^n}{dx^n}[e^{-x}x^n]
\]

A definition also in use in place of 18.4.2.1 is

2. \[
L_n(x) = e^x \frac{d^n}{dx^n}[e^{-x}x^n].
\]
This leads to the omission of the scale factor \(1/n!\) in 18.4.4.1 and to a modification of the recurrence relations in 18.4.5.1.

\[ \begin{align*}
3. \quad L_n(x) &= \sum_{r=0}^{n} (-1)^r \cdot \frac{n!x^r}{(n-r)!(r!)^2} = \sum_{m=0}^{n} (-1)^{n-m} \cdot \frac{n!x^{n-m}}{[(n-m)!]^2 m!}
\end{align*} \]

### 18.4.3 Orthogonality Relation for \(L_n(x)\)

#### 18.4.3.1

The weight function for Laguerre polynomials is \(w(x) = e^{-x}\), and the orthogonality relation is

\[ \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-x} L_m(x)L_n(x) \, dx = \begin{cases} 0, & m \neq n \\ 1, & m = n. \end{cases} \]

A function \(f(x)\) can be expanded over the interval \(0 \leq x \leq \infty\) in terms of the Laguerre polynomials to obtain a **Fourier-Laguerre expansion** of the form

\[ f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n L_n(x) = a_0 L_0(x) + a_1 L_1(x) + a_2 L_2(x) + \ldots, \]

where the coefficients \(a_n\) are given by

\[ a_n = \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-x} f(x)L_n(x) \, dx, \quad [n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots] \]

### 18.4.4 Explicit Expressions for \(L_n(x)\) and \(x^n\) in Terms of \(L_n(x)\)

#### 18.4.4.1

1. \(L_0(x) = 1\)
2. \(L_1(x) = 1 - x\)
3. \(L_2(x) = \frac{1}{2!} (2 - 4x + x^2)\)
4. \(L_3(x) = \frac{1}{3!} (6 - 18x + 9x^2 - x^3)\)
5. \(L_4(x) = \frac{1}{4!} (24 - 96x + 72x^2 - 16x^3 + x^4)\)
6. \(L_5(x) = \frac{1}{5!} (120 - 600x + 600x^2 - 200x^3 + 25x^4 - x^5)\)
7. \(L_6(x) = \frac{1}{6!} (720 - 4320x + 5400x^2 - 2400x^3 + 450x^4 - 36x^5 + x^6)\)
8. \(L_7(x) = \frac{1}{7!} (5040 - 35280x + 52920x^2 - 29400x^3 + 7350x^4 - 882x^5 + 49x^6 - x^7)\)
9. \( 1 = L_0 \)
10. \( x = L_0 - L_1 \)
11. \( x^2 = 2L_0 - 4L_1 + 2L_2 \)
12. \( x^3 = 6L_0 - 18L_1 + 18L_2 - 6L_3 \)
13. \( x^4 = 24L_0 - 96L_1 + 144L_2 - 96L_3 + 24L_4 \)
14. \( x^5 = 120L_0 - 600L_1 + 1200L_2 - 1200L_3 + 600L_4 - 120L_5 \)
15. \( x^6 = 720L_0 - 4320L_1 + 10800L_2 - 14400L_3 + 10800L_4 - 4320L_5 + 720L_6 \)

18.4.5 Recurrence Relations Satisfied by \( L_n(x) \)

18.4.5.1
1. \( (n + 1)L_{n+1}(x) = (2n + 1 - x)L_n(x) - nL_{n-1}(x) \)
2. \( x \frac{d}{dx}[L_n(x)] = nL_n(x) - nL_{n-1}(x) \)

18.4.6 Generating Function for \( L_n(x) \)

18.4.6.1
The Laguerre polynomial \( L_n(x) \) occurs as the multiplier of \( t^n \) in the expansion of the generating function:

1. \( \frac{1}{(1-t)} \exp \left( \frac{xt}{t-1} \right) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} L_k(x) t^k \).

18.4.7 Integrals Involving \( L_n(x) \)

18.4.7.1
1. \( \int_0^x L_n(t) \, dt = -L_{n+1}(x) \)
2. \( \int_0^\infty x^p e^{-x} L_n(x) \, dx = \begin{cases} 0, & p < n \\ (-1)^n n!, & p = n \end{cases} \)

18.4.8 Generalized (Associated) Laguerre Polynomials \( L_n^{(a)}(x) \)

18.4.8.1 Differential Equation Satisfied by \( L_n^{(a)}(x) \)

The generalized Laguerre polynomial \( L_n^{(a)}(x) \) satisfies the differential equation

1. \( x \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + (1 + \alpha - x) \frac{dy}{dx} + ny = 0 \).
18.4.8.2 Rodrigues’ Formula for $L_n^{(\alpha)}(x)$

The generalized Laguerre polynomial $L_n^{(\alpha)}(x)$ is defined by the Rodrigues’ formula

1. $L_n^{(\alpha)}(x) = \frac{1}{n!} e^{x} x^{-\alpha} \frac{d^n}{dx^n} [e^{-x} x^{n+\alpha}]$,

and when $\alpha = 0$ it follows that $L_n(x) = L_n^{(0)}(x), \; n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$

18.4.8.3 Orthogonality Relation for $L_n^{(\alpha)}(x)$

1. $\int_0^\infty x^\alpha e^{-x} L_m^{(\alpha)}(x)L_n^{(\alpha)}(x) \, dx = \begin{cases} 0, & m \neq n \\ \Gamma(1 + \alpha) \binom{n + \alpha}{n}, & m = n. \end{cases}$

18.4.8.4 Special Cases

1. $L_0^{(\alpha)}(x) = 1$
2. $L_1^{(\alpha)}(x) = \alpha + 1 - x$
3. $L_2^{(\alpha)}(x) = \frac{1}{2} [(\alpha + 1)(\alpha + 2) - 2(\alpha + 2)x + x^2]$
4. $L_3^{(\alpha)}(x) = \frac{1}{6} \alpha^3 + \alpha^2 + \frac{11}{6} \alpha + 1 - \frac{1}{2} \alpha^2 x - \frac{5}{2} \alpha x - 3x + \frac{1}{2} \alpha x^2 + \frac{3}{2} x^2 - \frac{1}{6} x^3$
5. $L_n^{(\alpha)}(0) = \binom{n + \alpha}{n}$
6. $L_n^{(-\alpha)}(x) = (-1)^n x^n / n!$

18.4.8.5 Recurrence Relations Satisfied by $L_n^{(\alpha)}(x)$

1. $n L_n^{(\alpha)}(x) = (2n + \alpha - 1 - x)L_{n-1}^{(\alpha)}(x) - (n + \alpha - 1)L_{n-2}^{(\alpha)}(x), \; n = 2, 3, \ldots$
2. $xL_n^{(\alpha+1)}(x) = (n + \alpha)L_{n-1}^{(\alpha)}(x) - (n - x)L_n^{(\alpha)}(x)$
3. $L_n^{(\alpha)}(x) = L_{n+1}^{(\alpha+1)}(x) - L_{n-1}^{(\alpha+1)}(x)$
4. $(n + \alpha)L_n^{(\alpha-1)}(x) = (n + 1)L_{n+1}^{(\alpha)}(x) - (n + 1 - x)L_n^{(\alpha)}(x)$

18.4.8.6 Generating Function for $L_n^{(\alpha)}(x)$

1. $\frac{1}{(1-t)^{\alpha+1}} \exp \left[ -\frac{x t}{1-t} \right] = \sum_{n=0}^\infty t^n L_n^{(\alpha)}(x), \; |t| < 1$
18.4.8.7 Differentiation Formulas for $L_n^{(\alpha)}(x)$

1. \[ \frac{d}{dx} \left[ L_n^{(\alpha)}(x) \right] = -L_{n-1}^{(\alpha+1)}(x) \]

2. \[ \frac{d}{dx} \left[ x^\alpha L_n^{(\alpha)}(x) \right] = (n + \alpha)x^{(\alpha-1)}L_{n-1}^{(\alpha)}(x) \]

18.4.8.8 Integrals Involving $L_n^{(\alpha)}(x)$

1. \[ \int_0^\infty e^{-x^2} k^{k+1} \left[ L_n^{(\alpha)}(x) \right]^2 \, dx = \frac{(n+k)!}{n!} (2n + k + 1) \]

2. \[ \int_0^x L_n^{(\alpha)}(t) \, dt = -L_{n+1}^{(\alpha-1)}(x) + \frac{(\alpha)_{n+1}}{(n+1)!} \]

   [for the Pochhammer symbol $(a)_n$, see Section 0.3]

3. \[ \int_0^x t^\alpha L_n^{(\alpha)}(t) \, dt = \frac{1}{(n+\alpha+1)} x^{\alpha+1} L_{n+1}^{(\alpha+1)}(x) \]

4. \[ \int_0^x e^{-t} L_n^{(\alpha)}(t) \, dt = e^{-x} \left[ L_n^{(\alpha)}(x) - L_{n+1}^{(\alpha)}(x) \right] \]

18.5 HERMITE POLYNOMIALS $H_n(x)$

18.5.1 Differential Equation Satisfied by $H_n(x)$

18.5.1.1 The Hermite polynomials $H_n(x)$ satisfy the differential equation

1. \[ \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} - 2x \frac{dy}{dx} + 2ny = 0 \]

defined on the interval $-\infty < x < \infty$, with $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$.

18.5.2 Rodrigues’ Formula for $H_n(x)$

18.5.2.1 The Hermite polynomial $H_n(x)$ of degree $n$ is given by the following Rodrigues’ formula:

1. $H_n(x) = (-1)^n e^{x^2} \frac{d^n}{dx^n} \left[ e^{-x^2} \right]$. 
18.5.3 Orthogonality Relation for $H_n(x)$

18.5.3.1

The **weight function** $w(x)$ for the Hermite polynomials $H_n(x)$ is $w(x) = e^{-x^2}$, and the **orthogonality relation** is

\[
\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-x^2} H_m(x) H_n(x) \, dx = \begin{cases} 
0, & m \neq n \\
\sqrt{\pi} 2^n n!, & m = n.
\end{cases}
\]

A function $f(x)$ can be expanded over the interval $-\infty \leq x \leq \infty$ in terms of the Hermite polynomials to obtain a **Fourier-Hermite expansion** of the form

\[
f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n H_n(x) = a_0 H_0(x) + a_1 H_1(x) + a_2 H_2(x) + \cdots,
\]

where the coefficients $a_n$ are given by

\[
a_n = \frac{1}{\|H_n(x)\|^2} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-x^2} f(x) H_n(x) \, dx, \quad [n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots]
\]

with $\|H_0(x)\|^2 = \sqrt{\pi}$ and $\|H_n(x)\|^2 = \sqrt{\pi} 2^n n!$ for $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$.

18.5.4 Explicit Expressions for $H_n(x)$

18.5.4.1

1. $H_0(x) = 1$
2. $H_1(x) = 2x$
3. $H_2(x) = 4x^2 - 2$
4. $H_3(x) = 8x^3 - 12x$
5. $H_4(x) = 16x^4 - 48x^2 + 12$
6. $H_5(x) = 32x^5 - 160x^3 + 120x$
7. $H_6(x) = 64x^6 - 480x^4 + 720x^2 - 120$
8. $H_7(x) = 128x^7 - 1344x^5 + 3360x^3 - 1680x$
9. $H_8(x) = 256x^8 - 3584x^6 + 13440x^4 - 13440x^2 + 1680$

18.5.5 Recurrence Relations Satisfied by $H_n(x)$

18.5.5.1

1. $H_{n+1}(x) = 2x H_n(x) - 2n H_{n-1}(x)$
2. $\frac{d}{dx} [H_n(x)] = 2n H_{n-1}(x)$
3. \( nH_n(x) = -n \frac{d}{dx} [H_{n-1}(x)] + x \frac{d}{dx} [H_n(x)] \)

4. \( H_n(x) = 2x H_{n-1}(x) - \frac{d}{dx} [H_{n-1}(x)] \)

**18.5.6 Generating Function for \( H_n(x) \)**

**18.5.6.1**

The Hermite polynomial \( H_n(x) \) occurs as the multiplier of \( t^n/n! \) in the expansion of the generating function:

1. \( \exp(-t^2 + 2tx) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} H_k(x) \frac{t^k}{k!} \).

**18.5.7 Series Expansions of \( H_n(x) \)**

1. \( H_n(x) = n! \sum_{s=0}^{[n/2]} (-1)^s \frac{(2x)^{n-2s}}{(n-2s)!s!} \) \((\text{where } [n/2] \text{ denotes integral part of } n/2)\)

2. \( H_{2n}(x) = (-1)^n (2n)! \sum_{s=0}^{n} (-1)^s \frac{(2x)^{2s}}{(2s)!(n-s)!} \)

3. \( H_{2n+1}(x) = (-1)^n (2n+1)! \sum_{s=0}^{n} (-1)^s \frac{(2x)^{2s+1}}{(2s+1)!(n-s)!} \)

**18.5.8 Powers of \( x \) in Terms of \( H_n(x) \)**

1. \( x^{2r} = \frac{(2r)!}{2^{2r}} \sum_{n=0}^{r} \frac{H_{2n}(x)}{(2n)!(r-n)!} \) \( r = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \)

2. \( x^{2r+1} = \frac{(2r+1)!}{2^{2r+1}} \sum_{n=0}^{r} \frac{H_{2n+1}(x)}{(2n+1)!(r-n)!} \) \( r = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \)

**18.5.9 Definite Integrals**

1. \( \int_0^x H_n(t) \, dt = \frac{H_{n+1}(x) - H_{n+1}(0)}{2(n+1)} \)

2. \( \int_0^x \exp(-t^2) H_n(t) \, dt = H_{n-1}(0) - \exp(-x^2) H_{n-1}(x) \)

3. \( \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}x^2\right) H_n(x) \, dx = \begin{cases} 2\pi n!/(n/2)! & \text{n even} \\ 0 & \text{n odd} \end{cases} \)

4. \( \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}x^2\right) H_n(x) \, dx = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{n even} \\ \frac{2\pi(n+1)!}{[(n+1)/2]!} & \text{n odd} \end{cases} \)
5. \[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x \exp(-x^2) H_m(x) H_n(x) \, dx = \sqrt{\pi} \left[ 2^{n-1} n! \delta_{m,n-1} + 2^n (n+1)! \delta_{m,n+1} \right] \]

6. \[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^2 \exp(-x^2) [H_n(x)]^2 \, dx = \sqrt{\pi} 2^n n! \left( n + \frac{1}{2} \right) \]

7. \[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^2 \exp(-x^2) H_m(x) H_n(x) \, dx \]
\[ = \sqrt{\pi} \left[ 2^{n-1} (2n+1)! \delta_{m,n} + 2^n (n+2)! \delta_{n+2,m} + 2^{n-2} n! \delta_{n-2,m} \right] \]

8. \[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^r \exp(-x^2) H_n(x) H_{n+p}(x) \, dx = \begin{cases} 0, & p > r \\ 2^n \sqrt{\pi} (n+r)! & p = r \end{cases} \]
\[ \text{[n, p, r nonnegative integers]} \]

9. \[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp(-t^2) H_{2n}(xt) \, dt = \sqrt{\pi} \left( \frac{2^n! (x^2 - 1)^n}{n!} \right) \]

10. \[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} t \exp(-t^2) H_{2n+1}(xt) \, dt = \sqrt{\pi} \left( \frac{(2n+1)! x (x^2 - 1)^n}{n!} \right) \]

11. \[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} t^n \exp(-t^2) H_n(x) \, dt = \sqrt{\pi} n! P_n(x) \]

12. \[ \int_{0}^{\infty} \exp(-t^2) [H_n(t)]^2 \cos \left( xt \sqrt{2} \right) \, dt = \sqrt{\pi} 2^{n-1} n! \exp(-x^2) L_n(x^2) \]

18.5.10 Asymptotic Expansion for Large \( n \)

1. \[ \frac{\Gamma \left( \frac{1}{2} n + 1 \right)}{\Gamma (n+1)} \exp \left( -\frac{1}{2} x^2 \right) H_n(x) = \cos \left[ \left( 2n+1 \right)^{1/2} x - \frac{1}{2} n \pi \right] \]
\[ + \frac{1}{6} x^3 (2n-1)^{-1/2} \sin \left[ \left( 2n+1 \right)^{1/2} x - \frac{1}{2} n \pi \right] + O(1/n) \]
\[ \text{[x real, } n \to \infty] \]

18.6 JACOBI POLYNOMIALS \( P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) \)

The Jacobi polynomial \( P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) \), with \( \alpha > -1, \beta > -1 \), is an orthogonal polynomial of degree \( n \) defined over the interval \([-1, 1] \) with weight function \( w(x) = (1-x)\alpha (1+x)\beta \), and the zeros of the polynomial are all simple and lie inside the interval \([-1, 1] \). The Jacobi polynomials are particularly useful in numerical analysis where they are used when finding highly accurate solutions of differential equations by the \textit{spectral Galerkin method}. 

The Jacobi polynomial is a polynomial in \( x \) that satisfies

\[ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) \left( x^2 - 1 \right)^{\alpha + \beta + 1} = \frac{1}{2} \left( x^2 - 1 \right)^{\alpha + \beta + 1} \]

These polynomials are orthogonal with respect to the inner product

\[ \langle P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}, P_m^{(\alpha, \beta)} \rangle = \frac{2^{\alpha + \beta + 1} \Gamma(n+1)}{n! \Gamma(n+\alpha+\beta+2)} \]

This means that

\[ \int_{-1}^{1} P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) P_m^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) (1-x)\alpha (1+x)\beta \, dx = \frac{2^{\alpha + \beta + 1} \Gamma(n+1)}{n! \Gamma(n+\alpha+\beta+2)} \delta_{nm} \]

where \( \delta_{nm} \) is the Kronecker delta.

The Jacobi polynomials are important in various areas of mathematics and physics, including quantum mechanics, approximation theory, and the study of differential equations.
18.6 Jacobi Polynomials $P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x)$

18.6.1 Differential Equation Satisfied by $P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x)$

The polynomials $P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x)$ are the eigenfunctions of the singular Sturm-Liouville equation

$$
(1 - x^2)\frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + [\beta - \alpha - (\alpha + \beta + 2)] x \frac{dy}{dx} + n(n + \alpha + \beta + 1)y = 0,
$$

for $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$ and $-1 \leq x \leq 1$, and the solutions are normalized by the condition

$$
P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(1) = \frac{\Gamma(n + \alpha + 1)}{n! \Gamma(\alpha + 1)}.
$$

18.6.2 Rodrigues’ Formula for $P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x)$

$$
P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) = \frac{(-1)^n}{2^n n! (1 - x)^\alpha (1 + x)^\beta} \frac{d^n}{dx^n} [(1 - x)^{\alpha+n}(1 + x)^{\beta+n}].
$$

18.6.3 Orthogonality Relation for $P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x)$

$$
\int_{-1}^{1} (1 - x)^\alpha(1 + x)^\beta P_m^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) \, dx = \begin{cases} 
0, & m \neq n \\
0_n, & m = n,
\end{cases}
$$

where

$$
h_n = \frac{2^{\alpha+\beta+1} \Gamma(n + \alpha + 1) \Gamma(n + \beta + 1)}{n!(2n + \alpha + \beta + 1) \Gamma(n + \alpha + \beta + 1)}.
$$

18.6.4 A Useful Integral Involving $P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x)$

$$
2n \int_{0}^{x} (1 - t)^\alpha(1 + t)^\beta P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(t) \, dt = P_{n-1}^{(\alpha+1, \beta+1)}(0) - (1 - x)^{\alpha+1}(1 + x)^{\beta+1} P_{n-1}^{(\alpha+1, \beta+1)}(x).
$$

18.6.5 Explicit Expressions for $P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x)$

$$
P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) = 2^{-n} \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n + \alpha}{k} \binom{n + \beta}{n - k} (x + 1)^k (x - 1)^{n-k}.
$$

$$
P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(-x) = (-1)^n P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x).
$$

$$
P_n^{(0,0)}(x) = P_n(x).
$$

$$
P_0^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) = 1.
$$
5. \( P_1^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) = \frac{1}{2}[(\alpha - \beta) + (\alpha + \beta + 2)x] \).

6. \( P_2^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) = \frac{1}{8} [(1 + \alpha)(2 + \alpha) + (1 + \beta)(2 + \beta) - 2(\alpha + 2)(\beta + 2)] \\
   + \frac{1}{4} [(1 + \alpha)(2 + \alpha) - (1 + \beta)(2 + \beta)] x \\
   + \frac{1}{8} [(1 + \alpha)(2 + \alpha) + (1 + \beta)(2 + \beta) + 2(2 + \alpha)(2 + \beta)] x^2. \)

7. \( \binom{n}{k} P_n^{(-k, \beta)}(x) = \binom{n + \beta}{k} \left( \frac{x - 1}{2} \right)^k P_n^{(k, \beta)}(x). \)

### 18.6.6 Differentiation Formulas for \( P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) \)

1. \( \frac{d}{dx} P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) = \left( \frac{\alpha + \beta + n + 1}{2} \right) P_{n-1}^{(\alpha+1, \beta+1)}(x). \)

2. \( \frac{d^m}{dx^m} P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) = 2^{-m}(\alpha + \beta + n + 1)_m P_n^{(\alpha+m, \beta+m)}(x). \)

3. \( (1 - x^2)(\alpha + \beta + 2n) \frac{d}{dx} P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) = n [\alpha - \beta - (\alpha + \beta + 2n)x] P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) \\
   + 2(\alpha + n)(\beta + n) P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x). \)

### 18.6.7 Recurrence Relation Satisfied by \( P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) \)

1. \( 2(n + 1)(n + \alpha + \beta + 1)(2n + \alpha + \beta) P_{n+1}^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) = (2n + \alpha + \beta)_3 x P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) \\
   + (\alpha^2 - \beta^2)(2n + \alpha + \beta + 1)P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) \\
   - 2(n + \alpha)(n + \beta)(2n + \alpha + \beta + 2) P_{n-1}^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x), \text{ for } n = 1, 2, \ldots \)

The Jacobi polynomials can be produced from this result starting from \( P_0^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) = 1 \) and \( P_1^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) = \frac{1}{2}[(\alpha - \beta) + (\alpha + \beta + 2)x]. \)

### 18.6.8 The Generating Function for \( P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) \)

1. \( \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) z^n = \frac{2^{\alpha+\beta}}{R} \frac{1}{(1 - z + R)^{\alpha}(1 + z + R)^{\beta}}, \)

   for \(|z| < 1\) and \( R = \sqrt{1 - 2xz + z^2} \), where \( R = 1 \) when \( z = 0 \).
18.6.9 Asymptotic Formula for \( P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) \) for Large \( n \)

1. \( P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(\cos \theta) = \frac{\cos \left[ n + \frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta + 1)\theta - \frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \frac{1}{2})\pi \right]}{\sqrt{n\pi}(\sin \frac{1}{2}\theta)^{\alpha+1/2}(\cos \frac{1}{2}\theta)^{\beta+1/2}} + O(n^{-3/2})\)

for \( 0 < \theta < \pi \).

18.6.10 Graphs of the Jacobi Polynomials \( P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) \)

The form taken by the graphs of the Jacobi polynomials \( P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) \) changes considerably as \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \) vary, but all remain finite at \( x = \pm 1 \) and all have \( n \) real zeros in the interval \(-1 \leq x \leq 1\). Figure 18.5 shows graphs of \( P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) \) for \( n = 1(1)5 \) corresponding to the representative values \( \alpha = 1.5 \) and \( \beta = -0.5 \).

**Figure 18.5.** The Jacobi polynomials \( J_n^{(1.5, -0.5)}(x) \) for \(-1 \leq x \leq 1\) and \( n = 1(1)5 \).
Chapter 19
Laplace Transformation

19.1 INTRODUCTION
19.1.1 Definition of the Laplace Transform
19.1.1.1
The Laplace transform of the function \( f(x) \), denoted by \( F(s) \), is defined as the improper integral

1. \( F(s) = \int_{0}^{\infty} f(x)e^{-sx} \, dx \quad [\text{Re} \{s\} > 0] \).

The functions \( f(x) \) and \( F(x) \) are called a Laplace transform pair, and knowledge of either one enables the other to be recovered.

If \( f \) can be integrated over all finite intervals, and there is a constant \( c \) for which

2. \( \int_{0}^{\infty} f(x)e^{-cx} \, dx \),

is finite, then the Laplace transform exists when \( s = \sigma + i\tau \) is such that \( \sigma \geq c \).

Setting

3. \( F(s) = \mathcal{L}[f(x); s] \),

to emphasize the nature of the transform, we have the symbolic inverse result

4. \( f(x) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}[F(s); x] \).
The inversion of the Laplace transform is accomplished for analytic functions $F(s)$ that behave asymptotically like $s^{-k}$ (or order $O(s^{-k})$) by means of the **inversion integral**

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\gamma-i\infty}^{\gamma+i\infty} F(s) e^{sx} \, ds,$$

where $\gamma$ is a real constant that exceeds the real part of all the singularities of $F(s)$.

A sufficient condition, though not a necessary one, for a function $f(x)$ to have a Laplace transform $F(s) = \int_0^\infty f(x)e^{-sx} \, dx$ is that

$$|f(x)| \leq M e^{kx},$$

for some constants $k$ and $M$. The Laplace transform then exists when $s > k$.

### 19.1.2 Basic Properties of the Laplace Transform

**19.1.2.1**

1. For $a$ and $b$ arbitrary constants,

   $$\mathcal{L}[af(x) + bg(x); s] = aF(s) + bG(s) \quad \text{(linearity)}.$$

2. If $n > 0$ is an integer and $\lim_{x \to \infty} f(x)e^{-sx} = 0$, then for $x > 0$,

   $$\mathcal{L}[f^{(n)}(x); s] = s^n F(s) - s^{n-1} f(0) - s^{n-2} f^{(1)}(0) - \cdots - f^{(n-1)}(0) \quad \text{(transform of a derivative)}.$$

3. If $\lim_{x \to \infty} e^{-sx} \int_0^x f(\xi) \, d\xi = 0$, then

   $$\mathcal{L}\left[ \int_0^x f(\xi) \, d\xi; s \right] = \frac{1}{s} F(s) \quad \text{(transform of an integral)}.$$

4. $\mathcal{L}[e^{-ax} f(x); s] = F(s + a) \quad \text{(first shift theorem)}.$

5. Let $\mathcal{L}[f(x); s] = F(s)$ for $s > s_0$, and take $a > 0$ to be an arbitrary nonnegative number. Then, if

   $$H(x-a) = \begin{cases} 0, & x < a \\ 1, & x \geq a \end{cases}$$

   is the **Heaviside step function**,

   $$\mathcal{L}[H(x-a)f(x-a); s] = e^{-as} F(s) \quad [s > s_0] \quad \text{(second shift theorem)}.$$
6. Let $\mathcal{L}[f(x); s] = F(s)$ for $s > s_0$. Then,
   \[ \mathcal{L}[-x^n f(x); s] = \frac{d^n}{ds^n}[F(s)] \quad [s > s_0] \quad \text{(differentiation of a transform)}. \]

7. Let $f(x)$ be a piecewise-continuous function for $x \geq 0$ and periodic with period $X$. Then
   \[ \mathcal{L}[f(x); s] = \frac{1}{1 - e^{-sx}} \int_0^X f(x)e^{-sx} dx \quad \text{(transform of a periodic function)}. \]

8. The **Laplace convolution** $f * g$ of two functions $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ is defined as the integral
   \[ f * g(x) = \int_0^x f(x - \xi)g(\xi) \, d\xi, \]
   and it has the property that $f * g = g * f$ and $f * (g * h) = (f * g) * h$. In terms of the convolution operation
   \[ \mathcal{L}[f * g(x); s] = F(s)G(s) \quad \text{[convolution (Faltung) theorem)}. \]
   When expressed differently, if $\mathcal{L}\{f(x)\} = F(s)$ and $\mathcal{L}\{g(x)\} = G(s)$, the convolution theorem takes the form
   \[ \mathcal{L}\left\{ \int_0^x f(\tau)g(x-\tau) d\tau \right\} = F(s)G(s), \]
   and taking the inverse Laplace transform gives
   \[ \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(s)G(s)\} = \int_0^x f(\tau)g(x-\tau) d\tau. \quad \text{[inverse Laplace convolution theorem]} \]
   When factoring a Laplace transform $H(s)$ into the product $F(s)G(s)$ before using the convolution theorem to find $\mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(s)G(s)\}$, it is essential to ensure that $F(s)$ and $G(s)$ are Laplace transforms of some functions $f(x)$ and $g(x)$. This can be done by ensuring that $F(s)$ and $G(s)$ satisfy the condition in 10.

9. **Initial value theorem.** If $\mathcal{L}\{f(x)\} = F(s)$ is the Laplace transform of an $n$ times differentiable function $f(x)$, then
   \[ f^{(r)}(0) = \lim_{s \to \infty} \left\{ s^{r+1}F(s) - s^r f(0) - s^{r-1}f'(0) - \cdots - sf^{(r-1)}(0) \right\}, \quad r = 0, 1, \ldots, n. \]
   In particular,
   \[ f(0) = \lim_{s \to \infty} \{sF(s)\} \quad \text{and} \quad f'(0) = \lim_{s \to \infty} \{s^2F(s) - sf(0)\}. \]

10. **Limiting value of $F(s)$**
    For $F(s)$ to be the Laplace transform of a function $f(x)$, it is necessary that
    \[ \lim_{s \to \infty} F(s) = 0. \]
19.1.3 The Dirac Delta Function $\delta(x)$

19.1.3.1

The **Dirac delta function** $\delta(x)$, which is particularly useful when working with the Laplace transform, has the following properties:

1. $\delta(x - a) = 0 \quad [x \neq a]$  
2. $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(x - a) \, dx = 1$  
3. $\int_{-\infty}^{x} \delta(\xi - a) \, d\xi = H(x - a)$,  

   where $H(x - a)$ is the Heaviside step function defined in 19.1.2.1.5.  
4. $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) \delta(x - a) \, dx = f(a)$

The delta function, which can be regarded as an impulse function, is not a function in the usual sense, but a generalized function or distribution.

19.1.4 Laplace Transform Pairs

Table 19.1 lists Laplace transform pairs, and it can either be used to find the Laplace transform $F(s)$ of a function $f(x)$ shown in the left-hand column or, conversely, to find the inverse Laplace transform $f(x)$ of a given Laplace transform $F(s)$ shown in the right-hand column. To assist in the task of determining inverse Laplace transforms, many commonly occurring Laplace transforms $F(s)$ of an algebraic nature have been listed together with their more complicated inverse Laplace transforms $f(x)$.

The list of both Laplace transforms and inverse transforms may be extended by appeal to the theorems listed in 19.1.2.

19.1.5 Solving Initial Value Problems by the Laplace Transform

The Laplace transform is a powerful technique for solving initial value problems for linear ordinary differential equations involving an unknown function $y(t)$, provided the initial conditions are specified at $t = 0$. The restriction on the value of $t$ at which the initial conditions must be specified is because, when transforming the differential equation, the Laplace transform of each derivative is found by using result 19.1.2.1. 2. This result leads to the introduction of the Laplace transform $Y(s) = \mathcal{L}\{y(t)\}$ and also to terms involving the untransformed initial conditions at $t = 0$.

The Laplace transform method is particularly straightforward when solving constant coefficient differential equations. This is because it replaces by routine algebra the usual process of first determining the general solution and then matching its arbitrary constants to the given initial conditions.

The steps involved when solving a linear constant coefficient differential equation by means of the Laplace transform are as follows:
Method of Solution of an Initial Value Problem Using the Laplace Transform

Step 1. Transform a differential equation for \( y(t) \), using result 19.1.2.1.2 to transform the derivatives of \( y(t) \), and substitute the values of the initial conditions at \( t = 0 \).

Step 2. Solve the transformed equation for \( Y(s) \) to obtain a result of the form

\[ Y(s) = \frac{P(s)}{Q(s)}. \]

Step 3. Find the solution \( y(t) \) for \( t > 0 \) by inverting the Laplace transform of \( Y(s) \) given by

\[ y(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{P(s)/Q(s)\}. \]

Example  
Solve the initial value problem

\[ y'' - 3y' + 2y = e^{2t} \quad \text{with} \quad y(0) = -1 \quad \text{and} \quad y'(0) = 2. \]

Solution  
Step 1. As first and second order derivatives are involved, result 19.1.2.1.2 must be used with \( n = 1 \) and \( n = 2 \), to obtain

\[ \mathcal{L}\{y'\} = sY(s) - y(0) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathcal{L}\{y''\} = s^2Y(s) - y'(0) - sy(0). \]

When the initial conditions are inserted, these transforms become \( \mathcal{L}\{y'\} = sY(s) + 1 \), and \( \mathcal{L}\{y''\} = s^2Y(s) - 2 + s \). Using these results to transform the differential equation together with the result \( \mathcal{L}\{e^{2t}\} = 1/(s-2) \) gives

\[ \begin{align*}
\mathcal{L}\{y''\} - 3\mathcal{L}\{y'\} + 2\mathcal{L}\{y\} &= \frac{1}{(s-2)} \\
\mathcal{L}\{y''\} &= \frac{s^2Y(s) - 2 + s - 3sY(s) - 3 + 2Y(s)}{2(s-2)}.
\end{align*} \]

Step 2. Solving for \( Y(s) \) gives

\[ Y(s) = -\frac{(s^2 - 7s + 9)}{(s-1)(s-2)^2} = \frac{2}{s-2} + \frac{1}{(s-2)^2} - \frac{3}{(s-1)}. \]

Step 3. Taking the inverse transform of \( Y(s) \) by using entries in Table 19.1 gives

\[ y(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{Y(s)\} = (2 + t)e^{2t} - 3e^t, \quad t > 0. \]

Notice that the Laplace transform deals automatically with the fact that the inhomogeneous term \( e^{2t} \) also appears in the complementary function of the differential equation. Had the equation been solved in the usual manner, this would have involved a special case when deriving the form of the complementary function.
### Table 19.1. Table of Laplace Transform Pairs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( f(x) )</th>
<th>( F(s) )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. ( 1 )</td>
<td>( 1/s )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ( x^n, \ n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots )</td>
<td>( n!/s^{n+1}, \ Re{s} &gt; 0 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ( x^v, \ v &gt; -1 )</td>
<td>( \Gamma(v+1)/s^{v+1}, \ Re{s} &gt; 0 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. ( x^{n-1/2} )</td>
<td>( \left( \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2} \right) \left( \frac{3}{2} \right) \ldots \left( \frac{2n-1}{2} \right) / s^{n+1/2}, \ Re{s} &gt; 0 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. ( e^{-ax} )</td>
<td>( 1/(s + a), \ Re{s} &gt; -Re{a} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. ( xe^{-ax} )</td>
<td>( 1/(s + a)^2, \ Re{s} &gt; -Re{a} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. ( (e^{-ax} - e^{-bx})/(b - a) )</td>
<td>( (s + a)^{-1}(s + b)^{-1}, \ Re{s} &gt; { -Re{a}, -Re{b} } )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. ( (ae^{-ax} - be^{-bx})/(b - a) )</td>
<td>( s(s + a)^{-1}(s + b)^{-1}, -Re{s} &gt; { -Re{a}, -Re{b} } )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. ( (e^a - 1)/a )</td>
<td>( s^{-1}(s - a)^{-1}, \ Re{s} &gt; Re{a} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. ( (e^{ax} - ax - 1)/a^2 )</td>
<td>( s^{-2}(s - a)^{-2}, \ Re{s} &gt; Re{a} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. ( \left( e^{ax} - \frac{1}{2}a^2 x^2 - ax - 1 \right)/a^3 )</td>
<td>( s^{-3}(s - a)^{-1}, \ Re{s} &gt; Re{a} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. ( (1 + ax)e^{ax} )</td>
<td>( s(s - a)^{-2}, \ Re{s} &gt; Re{a} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. ( [1 + (ax - 1)e^{ax}]/a^2 )</td>
<td>( s^{-1}(s - a)^{-2}, \ Re{s} &gt; Re{a} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. ( [2 + ax + (ax - 2)e^{ax}]/a^3 )</td>
<td>( s^{-2}(s - a)^{-2}, \ Re{s} &gt; Re{a} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. ( x^n e^{ax}, \ n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots )</td>
<td>( n!(s - a)^{-n-1}, \ Re{s} &gt; Re{a} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. ( \left( x + \frac{1}{2}ax^2 \right)e^{ax} )</td>
<td>( s(s - a)^{-3}, \ Re{s} &gt; Re{a} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. ( \left( 1 + 2ax + \frac{1}{2}a^2 x^2 \right)e^{ax} )</td>
<td>( s^2(s - a)^{-3}, \ Re{s} &gt; Re{a} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. ( \frac{1}{6}a^3 e^{ax} )</td>
<td>( (s - a)^{-4}, \ Re{s} &gt; Re{a} )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continues)
Table 19.1. (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( f(x) )</th>
<th>( F(s) )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( \left( \frac{1}{2} x^2 + \frac{1}{6} a^2 x^3 \right) e^{ax} )</td>
<td>( s(s-a)^{-4}, \text{Re}{s} &gt; \text{Re}{a} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( (x + ax^2 + \frac{1}{6} a^2 x^3) e^{ax} )</td>
<td>( s^2(s-a)^{-4}, \text{Re}{s} &gt; \text{Re}{a} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \left( 1 + 3ax + \frac{3}{2} a^2 x^2 + \frac{1}{6} a^3 x^3 \right) e^{ax} )</td>
<td>( s^3(s-a)^{-4}, \text{Re}{s} &gt; \text{Re}{a} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( (ae^{ax} - be^{bx})/(a - b) )</td>
<td>( s(s-a)^{-1}(s-b)^{-1}, \text{Re}{s} &gt; {\text{Re}{a}, \text{Re}{b}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \left( \frac{1}{a} e^{ax} - \frac{1}{b} e^{bx} + \frac{1}{b} - \frac{1}{a} \right)/(a - b) )</td>
<td>( s^{-1}(s-a)^{-1}(s-b)^{-1}, \text{Re}{s} &gt; {\text{Re}{a}, \text{Re}{b}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( e^{-v_1 ax}, \text{Re}\ v &gt; 0 )</td>
<td>( \Gamma(v)(s+a)^{-v}, \text{Re}{s} &gt; -\text{Re}{a} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( xe^{-x^2/(4a)} ), ( \text{Re}{a} &gt; 0 )</td>
<td>( 2a - 2\pi^2 a^2 se^{as^2} \text{erfc}(sa^2) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \sin(ax) )</td>
<td>( a(s^2 + a^2)^{-1}, \text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \cos(ax) )</td>
<td>( s(s^2 + a^2)^{-1}, \text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(</td>
<td>\sin(ax)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(</td>
<td>\cos(ax)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( [1 - \cos(ax)]/a^2 )</td>
<td>( s^{-1}(s^2 + a^2)^{-1}, \text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( [ax - \sin(ax)]/a^3 )</td>
<td>( s^{-2}(s^2 + a^2)^{-1}, \text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( [\sin(ax) - ax \cos(ax)]/(2a^3) )</td>
<td>( (s^2 + a^2)^{-2}, \text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( [x \sin(ax)]/(2a) )</td>
<td>( s(s^2 + a^2)^{-2}, \text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( [\sin(ax) + a \cos(ax)]/(2a) )</td>
<td>( s^2(s^2 + a^2)^{-2}, \text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( x \cos(ax) )</td>
<td>( (s^2 - a^2)(s^2 + a^2)^{-2}, \text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 19.1. (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$f(x)$</th>
<th>$F(s)$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| $36. \quad [\cos(ax) - \cos(bx)]/(b^2 - a^2)$ | $s(s^2 + a^2)^{-1}(s^2 + b^2)^{-1}$,  
Re\{s\} > \{\{\text{Im}\{a\}\}, \{\text{Im}\{b\}\}\} |
| $37. \quad \left[ \frac{1}{2}a^2x^2 - 1 + \cos(ax) \right]/a^4$ | $s^{-3}(s^2 + a^2)^{-1}$,  
Re\{s\} > \{\text{Im}\{a\}\} |
| $38. \quad \left[ 1 - \cos(ax) - \frac{1}{2}ax \sin(ax) \right]/a^4$ | $s^{-1}(s^2 + a^2)^{-2}$,  
Re\{s\} > \{\text{Im}\{a\}\} |
| $39. \quad \left[ \frac{1}{b} \sin(bx) - \frac{1}{a} \sin(ax) \right]/(a^2 - b^2)$ | $(s^2 + a^2)^{-1}(s^2 + b^2)^{-1}$,  
Re\{s\} > \{\{\text{Im}\{a\}\}, \{\text{Im}\{b\}\}\} |
| $40. \quad \left[ 1 - \cos(ax) + \frac{1}{2}ax \sin(ax) \right]/a^2$ | $s^{-1}(s^2 + a^2)^{-2}(2s^2 + a^2)$,  
Re\{s\} > \{\text{Im}\{a\}\} |
| $41. \quad [a \sin(ax) - b \sin(bx)]/(a^2 - b^2)$ | $s^2(s^2 + a^2)^{-1}(s^2 + b^2)^{-1}$,  
Re\{s\} > \{\{\text{Im}\{a\}\}, \{\text{Im}\{b\}\}\} |
| $42. \quad \sin(a + bx)$ | $(s \sin a + b \cos a)(s^2 + b^2)^{-1}$,  
Re\{s\} > \{\text{Im}\{b\}\} |
| $43. \quad \cos(a + bx)$ | $(s \cos a - b \sin a)(s^2 + b^2)^{-1}$,  
Re\{s\} > \{\text{Im}\{b\}\} |
| $44. \quad \left[ \frac{1}{a} \sinh(ax) - \frac{1}{b} \sin(bx) \right]/(a^2 + b^2)$ | $(s^2 - a^2)^{-1}(s^2 + b^2)^{-1}$,  
Re\{s\} > \{\{\text{Re}\{a\}\}, \{\text{Im}\{b\}\}\} |
| $45. \quad [\cosh(ax) - \cos(bx)]/(a^2 + b^2)$ | $s(s^2 - a^2)^{-1}(s^2 + b^2)^{-1}$,  
Re\{s\} > \{\{\text{Re}\{a\}\}, \{\text{Im}\{b\}\}\} |
| $46. \quad [a \sinh(ax) + b \sin(bx)]/(a^2 + b^2)$ | $s^2(s^2 - a^2)^{-1}(s^2 + b^2)^{-1}$,  
Re\{s\} > \{\{\text{Re}\{a\}\}, \{\text{Im}\{b\}\}\} |
| $47. \quad \sin(ax) \sin(bx)$ | $2abs[s^2 + (a - b)^2]^{-1}$  
$[s^2 + (a + b)^2]^{-1}$,  
Re\{s\} > \{\{\text{Im}\{a\}\}, \{\text{Im}\{b\}\}\} |
| $48. \quad \cos(ax) \cos(bx)$ | $s(s^2 + a^2 + b^2)[s^2 + (a - b)^2]^{-1}$  
$[s^2 + (a + b)^2]^{-1}$,  
Re\{s\} > \{\{\text{Im}\{a\}\}, \{\text{Im}\{b\}\}\} |

(Continues)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$f(x)$</th>
<th>$F(s)$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$\sin(ax) \cos(bx)$</td>
<td>$a(s^2 + a^2 - b^2)[s^2 + (a - b)^2]^{-1}$, $[s^2 + (a + b)^2]^{-1}$, $\text{Re}{s} &gt; {</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\sin^2(ax)$</td>
<td>$2a^2s^{-1}(s^2 + 4a^2)^{-1}$, $\text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\cos^2(ax)$</td>
<td>$(s^2 + 2a^2)s^{-1}(s^2 + 4a^2)^{-1}$, $\text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\sin(ax) \cos(ax)$</td>
<td>$a(s^2 + 4a^2)^{-1}$, $\text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$e^{-ax} \sin(bx)$</td>
<td>$b[(s + a)^2 + b^2]^{-1}$, $\text{Re}{s} &gt; {-\text{Re}{a},</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$e^{-ax} \cos(bx)$</td>
<td>$(s + a)[(s + a)^2 + b^2]^{-1}$, $\text{Re}{s} &gt; {-\text{Re}{a},</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\sinh(ax)$</td>
<td>$a(s^2 - a^2)^{-1}$, $\text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\cosh(ax)$</td>
<td>$s(s^2 - a^2)^{-1}$, $\text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$x^{ν-1} \cosh(ax)$, $</td>
<td>ν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$x \sinh(ax)$</td>
<td>$2as(s^2 - a^2)^{-2}$, $\text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$x \cosh(ax)$</td>
<td>$(s^2 + a^2)(s^2 - a^2)^{-2}$, $\text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\sinh(ax) - \sin(ax)$</td>
<td>$2a^3(s^4 - a^4)^{-1}$, $\text{Re}{s} &gt; {</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\cosh(ax) - \cos(ax)$</td>
<td>$2a^2s(s^4 - a^4)^{-1}$, $\text{Re}{s} &gt; {</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\sinh(ax) + ax \cosh(ax)$</td>
<td>$2as^2(a^2 - s^2)^{-2}$, $\text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$ax \cosh(ax) - \sin(ax)$</td>
<td>$2a^3(a^2 - s^2)^{-2}$, $\text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continues)
### Table 19.1. (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( f(x) )</th>
<th>( F(s) )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>64. ( x \sinh(ax) - \cosh(ax) ) &amp; ( s(a^2 + 2a - s^2)(a^2 - s^2)^{-2} ), ( \text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
<td>\text{Re}{a}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65. ( \left[ \frac{1}{a} \sinh(ax) - \frac{1}{b} \sinh(bx) \right] / (a^2 - b^2) ) &amp; ( (a^2 - s^2)^{-1}(b^2 - s^2)^{-1} ), ( \text{Re}{s} &gt; {</td>
<td>\text{Re}{a}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66. ( [\cosh(ax) - \cosh(bx)] / (a^2 - b^2) ) &amp; ( s(s^2 - a^2)^{-1}(s^2 - b^2)^{-1} ), ( \text{Re}{s} &gt; {</td>
<td>\text{Re}{a}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67. ( [a \sinh(ax) - b \sinh(bx)] / (a^2 - b^2) ) &amp; ( s^2(s^2 - a^2)^{-1}(s^2 - b^2)^{-1} ), ( \text{Re}{s} &gt; {</td>
<td>\text{Re}{a}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68. ( \sinh(a + bx) ) &amp; ( (b \cosh a + s \sinh a)(s^2 - b^2)^{-1} ), ( \text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
<td>\text{Re}{b}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69. ( \cosh(a + bx) ) &amp; ( (s \cosh a + b \sinh a)(s^2 - b^2)^{-1} ), ( \text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
<td>\text{Re}{b}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70. ( \sinh(ax) \sinh(bx) ) &amp; ( 2ab</td>
<td>s^2 - (a + b)^2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71. ( \cosh(ax) \cosh(bx) ) &amp; ( s(s^2 - a^2 - b^2) ) (</td>
<td>s^2 - (a + b)^2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72. ( \sinh(ax) \cosh(bx) ) &amp; ( a(s^2 - a^2 + b^2) ) (</td>
<td>s^2 - (a + b)^2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73. ( \sinh^2(ax) ) &amp; ( 2a^2s^{-1}(s^2 - 4a^2)^{-1} ), ( \text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
<td>\text{Re}{a}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74. ( \cosh^2(ax) ) &amp; ( (s^2 - 2a^2)^{-1}(s^2 - 4a^2)^{-1} ), ( \text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
<td>\text{Re}{a}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75. ( \sinh(ax) \cosh(ax) ) &amp; ( a(s^2 - 4a^2)^{-1} ), ( \text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
<td>\text{Re}{a}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76. ( [\cosh(ax) - 1] / a^2 ) &amp; ( s^{-1}(s^2 - a^2)^{-1} ), ( \text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
<td>\text{Re}{a}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continues)
Table 19.1. (Continued)

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>77.</td>
<td>(\frac{[\sinh(ax) - ax]}{a^2})</td>
<td>(s^{-2}(s^2 - a^2)^{-1}), (\text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78.</td>
<td>(\left[\cosh(ax) - \frac{1}{2}a^2x^2 - 1\right]/a^4)</td>
<td>(s^{-3}(s^2 - a^2)^{-1}), (\text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79.</td>
<td>(\left[1 - \cosh(ax) + \frac{1}{2}ax\sinh(ax)\right]/a^4)</td>
<td>(s^{-1}(s^2 - a^2)^{-2}), (\text{Re}{s} &gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80.</td>
<td>(H(x-a) = \begin{cases} 0, &amp; x &lt; a \ 1, &amp; x &gt; a \end{cases})</td>
<td>(s^{-1}e^{-as}, a \geq 0)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Heaviside step function)

81. \(\delta(x)\) (Dirac delta function) 1

82. \(\delta(x - a)\) | \(e^{-as}, a \geq 0\)

83. \(\delta'(x - a)\) | \(se^{-as}, a \geq 0\)

84. \(\text{erf}\left(\frac{x}{2a}\right) = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_0^{x/(2a)} e^{-t^2} dt\) | \(s^{-1}e^{a^2/2}\text{erfc}(as),\) \(\text{Re}\{s\} > 0, |\text{arg} a| < \pi /4\)

85. \(\text{erf}(a\sqrt{x})\) | \(as^{1/2}(s + a^2)^{-1/2},\) \(\text{Re}\{s\} > \{0, -\text{Re}\{a^2\}\}\)

86. \(\text{erfc}(a\sqrt{x})\) | \(1 - a(s + a^2)^{-1/2}, \text{Re}\{s\} > 0\)

87. \(\text{erfc}(a/\sqrt{x})\) | \(s^{-1}e^{-\sqrt{x}}, \text{Re}\{s\} > 0, \text{Re}\{a\} > 0\)

88. \(J_\nu(ax)\) | \(a^{-\nu}[s^{1/2} + a^{1/2} - s]^{\nu} \) \(\text{Re}\{s\} > |\text{Im}\{a\}|, \text{Re}\{\nu\} > -1\)

89. \(xJ_\nu(ax)\) | \(a^{\nu}[s + (s^2 + a^2)^{1/2}]^{\nu} \) \(\text{Re}\{s\} > |\text{Im}\{a\}|, \text{Re}\{\nu\} > -2\)

90. \(x^{-1}J_\nu(ax)\) | \(a^{\nu}[s + (s^2 + a^2)^{1/2}]^{-\nu} \) \(\text{Re}\{s\} \geq |\text{Im}\{a\}|\)

91. \(x^nJ_n(ax)\) | \(1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (2n-1)a^n \) \(\text{Re}\{s\} \geq |\text{Im}\{a\}|\)

(Continues)
Table 19.1. (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$f(x)$</th>
<th>$F(s)$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$92. x^\nu J_\nu(ax)$</td>
<td>$2^\nu \pi^{-1/2} \Gamma\left(v + \frac{1}{2}\right) a^\nu$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$(s^2 + a^2)^{-\nu+1/2} \Re{s} &gt;$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$93. x^{\nu+1} J_\nu(ax)$</td>
<td>$2^{\nu+1} \pi^{-1/2} \Gamma\left(v + \frac{3}{2}\right) a^\nu s$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$(s^2 + a^2)^{-\nu+3/2}, \Re{s} &gt;$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$94. I_0(ax)$</td>
<td>$1/(s^2 - a^2)^{1/2}, \Re{s} &gt; \Re{a}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$95. I_1(ax)$</td>
<td>$[s - (s^2 - a^2)^{1/2}]/[a(s^2 - a^2)^{1/2}]$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\Re{s} &gt; \Re{a}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$96. I_2(ax)$</td>
<td>$[s - (s^2 - a^2)^{1/2}]^2/[a^2(s^2 - a^2)^{1/2}]$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\Re{s} &gt; \Re{a}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$97. xI_0(ax)$</td>
<td>$s/(s^2 - a^2)^{3/2} \Re{s} &gt; \Re{a}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$98. xI_1(ax)$</td>
<td>$a/(s^2 - a^2)^{3/2} \Re{s} &gt; \Re{a}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$99. x^2I_2(ax)$</td>
<td>$3a^2/(s^2 - a^2)^{5/2} \Re{s} &gt; \Re{a}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$100. (1/x)I_1(ax)$</td>
<td>$[s - (s^2 - a^2)^{1/2}]/a$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\Re{s} &gt; \Re{a}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$101. (1/x)I_2(ax)$</td>
<td>$[s - (s^2 - a^2)^{1/2}]^2/(2a^2)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\Re{s} &gt; \Re{a}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$102. (1/x)I_3(ax)$</td>
<td>$[s - (s^2 - a^2)^{1/2}]^3/(3a^3)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\Re{s} &gt; \Re{a}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$103. J_0(ax) - axJ_1(ax)$</td>
<td>$s^2(s^2 + a^2)^{-3/2} \Re{s} &gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$104. I_0(ax) + axI_1(ax)$</td>
<td>$s^2(s^2 - a^2)^{-3/2} \Re{s} &gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 19.1. (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$f(x)$</th>
<th>$F(s)$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$e^{-ks}/s$ &amp; <img src="image1.png" alt="Fig. 105" /></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(1 - e^{-ks})/s$ &amp; <img src="image2.png" alt="Fig. 106" /></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(e^{-ax} - e^{-bx})/s$ &amp; <img src="image3.png" alt="Fig. 107" /></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$a(1 - e^{-ks})/s^2$ &amp; <img src="image4.png" alt="Fig. 108" /></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continues)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$f(x)$</th>
<th>$F(s)$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$L{f(x)} = \frac{1 + \coth(\frac{1}{2}ks)}{2s}$</td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Fig. 109" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L{f(x)} = \frac{\tanh(ks)}{2s}$</td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Fig. 110" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L{f(x)} = \frac{1}{s(1 + e^{-ks})}$</td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Fig. 111" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L{f(x)} = \frac{\tanh(ks)}{s^2}$</td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Fig. 112" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 19.1. (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$f(x)$</th>
<th>$F(s)$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Fig. 113. $\mathcal{L}\{f(x)\} = 1/[s \cosh(ks)]$

Fig. 114. $\mathcal{L}\{f(x)\} = (a/k) \left(1/s^2 - ke^{-ks}/[s(1 - e^{ks})]\right)$

Fig. 115. $\mathcal{L}\{f(x)\} = (a/k) \left(1 - 2kse^{-ks} - e^{-2ks}\right)/\left[s^2(1 - e^{-2ks})\right]$

Fig. 116. $\mathcal{L}\{f(x)\} = \left[tanh\left(\frac{1}{2}ks\right)\right]/(ks^2)$

(Continues)
Table 19.1. (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$f(x)$</th>
<th>$F(s)$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| $\mathcal{L}\{f(x)\} = \frac{k \coth(\pi s/2k)}{(s^2 + k^2)}$ | ![Graph](image1)
| $f(x) = |\sin kx|$ |

$\mathcal{L}\{f(x)\} = \frac{1}{(s^2 + 1)(1 - e^{-ks})}$

$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} H(x - n\pi) \sin x$
20.1 INTRODUCTION
20.1.1 Fourier Exponential Transform
20.1.1.1
Let \( f(x) \) be a bounded function such that in any interval \( (a, b) \) it has only a finite number of maxima and minima and a finite number of discontinuities (it satisfies the Dirichlet conditions). Then if \( f(x) \) is absolutely integrable on \( (-\infty, \infty) \), so that
\[
\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |f(x)| \, dx < \infty,
\]
the Fourier transform of \( f(x) \), also called the exponential Fourier transform, is the \( F(\omega) \) defined as
\[
F(\omega) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) e^{i\omega x} \, dx.
\]

The functions \( f(x) \) and \( F(\omega) \) are called a Fourier transform pair, and knowledge of either one enables the other to be recovered.

Setting
\[
F(\omega) = \mathcal{F}[f(x); \omega],
\]
where \( \mathcal{F} \) is used to denote the operation of finding the Fourier transform, we have the symbolic inverse result
3. \( f(x) = \mathcal{F}^{-1}[f(\omega); x] \).

The inversion of the Fourier transform is accomplished by means of the inversion integral

4. \( \frac{1}{2} [f(x+) + f(x-)] = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F(\omega) e^{-i\omega x} d\omega \),

where \( f(a+) \) and \( f(a-) \) signify the values of \( f(x) \) to the immediate right and left, respectively, of \( x = a \).

At points of continuity of \( f(x) \) the above result reduces to

5. \( f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F(\omega) e^{-i\omega x} d\omega \).

### 20.1.2 Basic Properties of the Fourier Transforms

#### 20.1.2.1

1. For \( a, b \) arbitrary constants and \( f(x), g(x) \) functions with the respective Fourier transforms \( F(\omega), G(\omega) \),

\[ \mathcal{F}[af(x) + bg(x); \omega] = aF(\omega) + bG(\omega) \] (linearity).

2. If \( a \neq 0 \) is an arbitrary constant, then

\[ \mathcal{F}[f(ax); \omega] = \frac{1}{|a|} F\left(\frac{\omega}{a}\right) \] (scaling).

3. For any real constant \( a \)

\[ \mathcal{F}[f(x-a); \omega] = e^{i\omega a}F(\omega) \] (spatial shift).

4. For any real constant \( a \)

\[ \mathcal{F}[e^{iax}f(x); \omega] = F(\omega + a) \] (frequency shift).

5. If \( n > 0 \) is an integer, \( f^{(n)}(x) \) is piecewise-continuously differentiable, and each of the derivatives \( f^{(r)}(x) \) with \( r = 0, 1, \ldots, n \) is absolutely integrable for \(-\infty < x < \infty \), then

\[ \mathcal{F}[f^{(n)}(x); \omega] = (-i\omega)^n F(\omega) \] (differentiation).

6. \( \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |F(\omega)|^2 d\omega = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |f(x)|^2 dx \) (Parseval’s relation).

7. The **Fourier convolution** of two integrable functions \( f(x) \) and \( g(x) \) is defined as

\[ f \ast (g(x)) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x-u)g(u) du, \]

and it has the following properties
20.1 Introduction

(i) \( f * (k g(x)) = (kf) * (g(x)) = kf * (g(x)) \) (scaling; \( k = \text{const.} \))

(ii) \( f * (g(x) + h(x)) = f * (g(x)) + f * (h(x)) \) (linearity)

(iii) \( f * (g(x)) = g * (f(x)) \) (commutability)

If \( f(x), g(x) \) have the respective Fourier transforms \( F(\omega), G(\omega) \),

\[ F[f * (g(x)); \omega] = F(\omega)G(\omega) \] [convolution (Faltung) theorem].

Taking the inverse Fourier transform of the above result gives

\[ F^{-1}\{F(\omega)G(\omega)\} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x - \omega)g(\omega)d\omega = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(\omega)g(x - \omega)d\omega \] [inverse Fourier convolution theorem].

20.1.3 Fourier Transform Pairs

20.1.3.1

Table 20.1 lists some elementary Fourier transform pairs, and it may either be used to find
the Fourier transform \( F(\omega) \) of a function \( f(x) \) shown in the left-hand column or, conversely,
to find the inverse Fourier transform \( f(x) \) of a given Fourier transform \( F(\omega) \) shown in the
right-hand column. The list may be extended by appeal to the properties given in 20.1.2.

Care is necessary when using general tables of Fourier transform pairs because of the dif-
ferent choices made for the numerical normalization factors multiplying the integrals, and the
signs of the exponents in the integrands. The product of the numerical factors multiplying the
transform and its inverse need only equal \( 1/(2\pi) \), so the Fourier transform and its inverse may
be defined as

1. \( F(\omega) = \frac{\alpha}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)e^{i\omega x}dx \)

and

2. \( \frac{1}{2}[f(x+) + f(x-)] = \frac{1}{\alpha} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F(\omega)e^{-i\omega x}d\omega, \)

where \( \alpha \) is an arbitrary real number. Throughout this section we have set \( \alpha = \sqrt{2\pi}, \) but other
reference works set \( \alpha = 2\pi \) or \( \alpha = 1. \) Another difference in the notation used elsewhere involves
the choice of the sign prefixing \( i \) in 20.1.3.1.1 and 20.1.3.1.2, which is sometimes reversed.

In many physical applications of the Fourier integral it is convenient to write \( \omega = 2\pi n \) and \( \alpha = 2\pi, \) when 20.1.3.1.1 and 20.1.3.1.2 become

3. \( F(n) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) e^{2\pi inx}dx \)

and

4. \( \frac{1}{2}[f(x+) + f(x-)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F(n)e^{-2\pi inx}dn. \)
Table 20.1. Table of Fourier Transform Pairs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F(\omega) e^{-i\omega x} , d\omega )</th>
<th>( F(\omega) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) e^{i\omega x} , dx )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. ( \frac{1}{a^2 + x^2} ) ([a &gt; 0])</td>
<td>( \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} e^{-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ( \frac{x}{a^2 + x^2} ) ([a &gt; 0])</td>
<td>( -\frac{i}{2} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} \omega e^{-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ( \frac{1}{x(a^2 + x^2)} )</td>
<td>( \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} \left(1 - e^{-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. ( f(x) = \begin{cases} 1, &amp;</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. ( \frac{1}{x} )</td>
<td>( i \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} \text{sgn}(\omega) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. ( \frac{1}{</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. ( H(x - a) - H(x - b) )</td>
<td>( \frac{1}{i\omega \sqrt{2\pi}} (e^{ib\omega} - e^{ia\omega}) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. ( x^n \text{sgn}(x) ) ([n \text{ a positive integer}])</td>
<td>( \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{n!}{(-i\omega)^{n+1}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. (</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. ( x^a H(x) ) ([a &lt; 1 \text{ not a negative integer}])</td>
<td>( \frac{\Gamma(a + 1)}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp[-\pi i (a + 1) \text{sgn}(\omega)] )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. ( e^{-a</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. ( xe^{-a</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. (</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. ( e^{-ax} H(x) ) ([a &gt; 0])</td>
<td>( \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{1}{a - i\omega} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. ( e^{ax} H(-x) ) ([a &gt; 0])</td>
<td>( \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{1}{a + i\omega} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. ( xe^{-ax} H(x) ) ([a &gt; 0])</td>
<td>( \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{1}{(a - i\omega)^2} )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continues)
### Table 20.1. (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$f(x)$</th>
<th>$F(\omega) =$ $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F(\omega) e^{-i\omega x} d\omega$</th>
<th>$F(\omega) =$ $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) e^{i\omega x} dx$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17. $-xe^{ax}H(-x)$ $[a &gt; 0]$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{1}{(a + i\omega)^2}$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{a\sqrt{2}} e^{-\omega^2/(4a^2)}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. $e^{-a^2x^2}$ $[a &gt; 0]$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-i\omega a}$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{a\sqrt{2}} e^{-\omega^2/(4a^2)}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. $\delta(x-a)$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-i\omega a}$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-i\omega a}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. $\delta(px+q)$ $[p \neq 0]$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{1}{</td>
<td>p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. $\cos(ax^2)$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2a}} \cos\left(\frac{\omega^2 - \frac{\pi}{4}}{4}\right)$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2a}} \cos\left(\frac{\omega^2 - \frac{\pi}{4}}{4}\right)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. $\sin(ax^2)$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2a}} \sin\left(\frac{\omega^2 + \frac{\pi}{4}}{4}\right)$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2a}} \sin\left(\frac{\omega^2 + \frac{\pi}{4}}{4}\right)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. $x \csch x$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{\pi\omega} \left(1 + e^{\pi\omega}\right)^{-1/2}$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{\pi\omega} \left(1 + e^{\pi\omega}\right)^{-1/2}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. $\text{sech}(ax)$ $[a &gt; 0]$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{1}{a} \text{sech}\left(\frac{\pi\omega}{2a}\right)$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{1}{a} \text{sech}\left(\frac{\pi\omega}{2a}\right)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. $\tanh(ax)$ $[a &gt; 0]$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{i}{a} \text{csch}\left(\frac{\pi\omega}{2a}\right)$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{i}{a} \text{csch}\left(\frac{\pi\omega}{2a}\right)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. $\sqrt{x}J_{-1/4}\left(\frac{1}{2}x^2\right)$</td>
<td>$\sqrt{\pi}J_{-1/4}\left(\frac{1}{2}\omega^2\right)$</td>
<td>$\sqrt{\pi}J_{-1/4}\left(\frac{1}{2}\omega^2\right)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. $1/(1 + x^4)$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \sqrt{\frac{\omega}{\sqrt{2}}} \cos \left(\frac{\omega}{\sqrt{2}} + \sin \frac{\omega}{\sqrt{2}}\right)$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \sqrt{\frac{\omega}{\sqrt{2}}} \cos \left(\frac{\omega}{\sqrt{2}} + \sin \frac{\omega}{\sqrt{2}}\right)$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### 20.1.4 Fourier Cosine and Sine Transforms

#### 20.1.4.1

When a function $f(x)$ satisfies the Dirichlet conditions of 20.1.1, and it is either an even function or it is only defined for positive values of $x$, its Fourier cosine transform is defined as

1. $F_c(\omega) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_0^{\infty} f(x) \cos(\omega x) dx$,

and we write

2. $F_c(\omega) = \mathcal{F}_c[f(x); \omega]$. 
The functions \( f(x) \) and \( F_c(\omega) \) are called a **Fourier cosine transform pair**, and knowledge of either one enables the other to be recovered.

The **inversion integral** for the Fourier cosine transform is

\[
f(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_{0}^{\infty} F_c(\omega) \cos(\omega x) \, d\omega \quad [x > 0].
\]

Similarly, if \( f(x) \) is either an odd function or it is only defined for positive values of \( x \), its **Fourier sine transform** is defined as

\[
F_s(\omega) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_{0}^{\infty} f(x) \sin(\omega x) \, dx,
\]

and we write

\[
F_s(\omega) = \mathcal{F}_s[f(x); \omega].
\]

The functions \( f(x) \) and \( F_s(\omega) \) are called a **Fourier sine transform** pair and knowledge of either one enables the other to be recovered. The **inversion integral** for the Fourier sine transform is

\[
f(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_{0}^{\infty} F_s(\omega) \sin(\omega x) \, d\omega \quad [x > 0].
\]

**20.1.5 Basic Properties of the Fourier Cosine and Sine Transforms**

**20.1.5.1**

1. For \( a, b \) arbitrary constants and \( f(x), g(x) \) functions with the respective Fourier cosine and sine transforms \( F_c(\omega), G_c(\omega), F_s(\omega), G_s(\omega) \),

   \[
   \mathcal{F}_c[af(x) + bg(x)] = aF_c(\omega) + bG_c(\omega)
   \]

   \[
   \mathcal{F}_s[af(x) + bg(x)] = aF_s(\omega) + bG_s(\omega)
   \]

   (linearity).

2. If \( a > 0 \), then

   \[
   \mathcal{F}_c[af(ax); \omega] = \frac{1}{a} F_c\left(\frac{\omega}{a}\right)
   \]

   \[
   \mathcal{F}_s[af(ax); \omega] = \frac{1}{a} F_s\left(\frac{\omega}{a}\right)
   \]

   (scaling).

3. \( \mathcal{F}_s[\cos(ax)f(x); \omega] = \frac{1}{2} [F_s(\omega + a) + F_s(\omega - a)] \)

   \[
   \mathcal{F}_s[\sin(ax)f(x); \omega] = \frac{1}{2} [F_c(\omega - a) - F_c(\omega + a)]
   \]

   \[
   \mathcal{F}_c[\cos(ax)f(x); \omega] = \frac{1}{2} [F_c(\omega + a) + F_c(\omega - a)]
   \]

   \[
   \mathcal{F}_c[\sin(ax)f(x); \omega] = \frac{1}{2} [F_s(a + \omega) + F_s(a - \omega)]
   \]

   (frequency shift).
4. \( \mathcal{F}_c[f'(x); \omega] = \omega F_s(\omega) - \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} f(0) \)
   \( \mathcal{F}_s[f'(x); \omega] = -\omega F_c(\omega) \) (differentiation).

5. \( \mathcal{F}_c^{-1} = \mathcal{F}_c \)
   \( \mathcal{F}_s^{-1} = \mathcal{F}_s \) (symmetry).

6. \( \int_0^\infty |F_c(\omega)|^2 d\omega = \int_0^\infty |f(x)|^2 dx \)
   \( \int_0^\infty |F_c(\omega)|^2 d\omega = \int_0^\infty |f(x)|^2 dx \) (Parseval’s relation).

### 20.1.6 Fourier Cosine and Sine Transform Pairs

#### 20.1.6.1

Tables 20.2 and 20.3 list some elementary Fourier cosine and sine transform pairs, and they may either be used to find the required transform of a function \( f(x) \) in the left-hand column or, conversely, given either \( F_c(\omega) \) or \( F_s(\omega) \), to find the corresponding inverse transform \( f(x) \).

Tables 20.2 and 20.3 may be extended by use of the properties listed in 20.1.5. As with the exponential Fourier transform, care must be taken when using other reference works because of the use of different choices for the normalizing factors multiplying the Fourier cosine and sine transforms and their inverses. The product of the normalizing factors multiplying either the Fourier cosine or sine transform and the corresponding inverse transform is \( 2/\pi \).

#### Table 20.2. Table of Fourier Cosine Pairs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( f(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_0^\infty F_c(\omega) \cos(\omega x) d\omega )</th>
<th>( F_c(\omega) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_0^\infty f(x) \cos(\omega x)dx )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. ( 1/\sqrt{x} )</td>
<td>( 1/\sqrt{\omega} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ( x^{a-1} ) ( [0 &lt; a &lt; 1] )</td>
<td>( \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{\Gamma(a)}{\omega^a} \cos \left( a\pi/2 \right) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ( f(x) = \begin{cases} 1, &amp; 0 &lt; x &lt; a \ 0, &amp; x &gt; a \end{cases} )</td>
<td>( \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{\sin(a\omega)}{\omega} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. ( \frac{1}{a^2 + x^2} ) ( [a &gt; 0] )</td>
<td>( \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{e^{-a\omega}}{a} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. ( \frac{1}{(a^2 + x^2)^2} ) ( [a &gt; 0] )</td>
<td>( \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{e^{-a\omega}(1 + a\omega)}{a^4} )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continues)
Table 20.2. (Continued)

\[ f(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_0^\infty F_c(\omega) \cos(\omega x) d\omega \quad F_c(\omega) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_0^\infty f(x) \cos(\omega x) dx \]

6. \( e^{-ax} \quad [a > 0] \)
\[ \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{a}{a^2 + \omega^2} \]

7. \( xe^{-ax} \quad [a > 0] \)
\[ \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{a^2 - \omega^2}{(a^2 + \omega^2)^2} \]

8. \( x^{n-1}e^{-ax} \quad [a > 0, \ n > 0] \)
\[ \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{\Gamma(n) \cos[n \arctan(\omega/a)]}{(a^2 + \omega^2)^{n/2}} \]

9. \( e^{-a^2x^2} \)
\[ \frac{1}{|a| \sqrt{2}} e^{-\omega^2/(4a^2)} \]

10. \( \cos(ax)^2 \quad [a > 0] \)
\[ \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{\sqrt{a}} \left[ \cos \frac{\omega^2}{4a} + \sin \frac{\omega^2}{4a} \right] \]

11. \( \sin(ax)^2 \quad [a > 0] \)
\[ \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{\sqrt{a}} \left[ \cos \frac{\omega^2}{4a} - \sin \frac{\omega^2}{4a} \right] \]

12. \( \text{sech}(ax) \quad [a > 0] \)
\[ \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{\text{sech}(\pi \omega/2a)}{a} \]

13. \( x \cosh x \)
\[ \sqrt{2\pi^3} \frac{e^{\pi \omega}}{(1 + e^{\pi \omega})^2} \]

14. \( \frac{e^{-bx} - e^{-ax}}{x} \quad [a > b] \)
\[ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \ln \left( \frac{a^2 + \omega^2}{b^2 + \omega^2} \right) \]

15. \( \frac{\sin(ax)}{x} \quad [a > 0] \)
\[ \begin{cases} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}}, & \omega < a \\ \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}}, & \omega = a \\ 0, & \omega > a \end{cases} \]

16. \( \frac{\sinh(ax)}{\sinh(bx)} \quad [0 < a < b] \)
\[ \frac{1}{b} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{\sin(\pi a/b)}{\cosh(\pi \omega/b) + \cos(\pi \omega/b)} \]

17. \( \frac{\cosh(ax)}{\cosh(bx)} \quad [0 < a < b] \)
\[ \frac{\sqrt{2\pi}}{b} \frac{\cos(\pi a/2b) \cosh(\pi \omega/2b)}{\cosh(\pi \omega/b) + \cos(\pi \omega/b)} \]

18. \( \frac{J_0(ax)}{b^2 + x^2} \quad [a, b > 0] \)
\[ \frac{1}{b} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} e^{-b \omega} I_0(ab) (\omega > a) \]
Table 20.3. Table of Fourier Sine Pairs

\[ f(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_{0}^{\infty} F_s(\omega) \sin \omega x \, d\omega \quad F_s(\omega) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_{0}^{\infty} f(x) \sin \omega x \, dx \]

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>(1/\sqrt{x})</td>
<td>(1/\sqrt{\omega})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>(x^{a-1})</td>
<td>([0 &lt; a &lt; 1])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>(f(x) = \begin{cases} 1, &amp; 0 &lt; x &lt; a \ 0, &amp; x &gt; a \end{cases})</td>
<td>(\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{1 - \cos (a\omega)}{\omega})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>(1/x)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>(\frac{x}{a^2 + x^2})</td>
<td>([a &gt; 0])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>(\frac{x}{(a^2 + x^2)^2})</td>
<td>([a &gt; 0])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>(\frac{1}{x(a^2 + x^2)})</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>(\frac{x^2 - a^2}{x(x^2 + a^2)})</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>(e^{-ax})</td>
<td>([a &gt; 0])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>(xe^{-ax})</td>
<td>([a &gt; 0])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>(xe^{-x^2/2})</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>(\frac{e^{-ax}}{x})</td>
<td>([a &gt; 0])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>(x^{n-1}e^{-ax})</td>
<td>([a &gt; 0, \ n &gt; 0])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>(\frac{e^{-bx} - e^{-ax}}{x})</td>
<td>([a &gt; b])</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continues)
Table 20.3. (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Formula</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15. $\text{csch } x$</td>
<td>$\sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} \tanh (\pi \omega/2)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. $x \text{csch } x$</td>
<td>$\sqrt{2 \pi^3} \frac{e^{\pi \omega}}{(1 + e^{\pi \omega})^2}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. $\frac{\sin (ax)}{x}$ $[a &gt; 0]$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \ln \left( \frac{\omega + a}{\omega - a} \right)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. $\frac{\sin (ax)}{x^2}$ $[a &gt; 0]$</td>
<td>$\begin{cases} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} \omega, &amp; \omega &lt; a \ \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} a, &amp; \omega &gt; a \end{cases}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. $\frac{\sinh (ax)}{\cosh (bx)}$ $[0 &lt; a &lt; b]$</td>
<td>$\sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{b}} \frac{\sin (\pi a/2b) \sinh (\pi \omega/b)}{\cos (\pi a/b) + \cosh (\pi \omega/b)}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. $\frac{\cosh (ax)}{\sinh (bx)}$ $[0 &lt; a &lt; b]$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{b} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{\sinh (\pi \omega/b)}{\cosh (\pi \omega/b) + \cos (\pi a/b)}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. $\frac{x J_0 (ax)}{(b^2 + x^2)}$ $[a, b &gt; 0]$</td>
<td>$\sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} e^{-b \omega} J_0 (a \omega)$ $[\omega &gt; a]$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 21
Numerical Integration

21.1 CLASSICAL METHODS
21.1.1 Open- and Closed-Type Formulas

The numerical integration (quadrature) formulas that follow are of the form

$$ I = \int_a^b f(x) \, dx = \sum_{k=0}^n w_k^{(n)} f(x_k) + R_n, $$

with $a \leq x_0 < x_1 < \cdots < x_n \leq b$. The weight coefficients $w_k^{(n)}$ and the abscissas $x_k$, with $k = 0, 1, \ldots, n$ are known numbers independent of $f(x)$ that are determined by the numerical integration method to be used and the number of points at which $f(x)$ is to be evaluated. The remainder term, $R_n$, when added to the summation, makes the result exact. Although, in general, the precise value of $R_n$ is unknown, its analytical form is usually known and can be used to determine an upper bound to $|R_n|$ in terms of $n$.

An integration formula is said to be of the closed type if it requires the function values to be determined at the end points of the interval of integration, so that $x_0 = a$ and $x_n = b$. An integration formula is said to be of open type if $x_0 > a$ and $x_n < b$, so that in this case the function values are not required at the end points of the interval of integration.

Many fundamental numerical integration formulas are based on the assumption that an interval of integration contains a specified number of abscissas at which points the function must be evaluated. Thus, in the basic Simpson’s rule, the interval $a \leq x \leq b$ is divided into two subintervals of equal length at the ends of which the function has to be evaluated, so that $f(x_0), f(x_1),$ and $f(x_2)$ are required, with $x_0 = a$, $x_1 = \frac{1}{2}(a + b)$, and $x_2 = b$. To control the
error, the interval \( a \leq x \leq b \) is normally subdivided into a number of smaller intervals, to each of which the basic integration formula is then applied and the results summed to yield the numerical estimate of the integral. When this approach is organized so that it yields a single integration formula, it is usual to refer to the result as a composite integration formula.

### 21.1.2 Composite Midpoint Rule (open type)

1. \[
\int_a^b f(x) \, dx = 2h \sum_{k=0}^{n/2} f(x_{2k}) + R_n,
\]
   \(n\) an even integer, \(1 + (n/2)\) subintervals of length \(h = (b - a)/(n + 2)\), \(x_k = a + (k + 1)h\) for \(k = -1, 0, 1, \ldots, n + 1\), and the remainder term

2. \[
R_n = \frac{(b - a)h^2}{6} f^{(2)}(\xi) = \frac{(n + 2)h^3}{6} f^{(2)}(\xi),
\]
   for some \(\xi\) such that \(a < \xi < b\).

### 21.1.3 Composite Trapezoidal Rule (closed type)

1. \[
\int_a^b f(x) \, dx = \frac{h}{2} \left[ f(a) + f(b) + 2 \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} f(x_k) \right] + R_n,
\]
   \(n\) an integer (even or odd), \(h = (b - a)/n\), \(x_k = a + kh\) for \(k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, n\), and the remainder term

2. \[
R_n = -\frac{(b - a)h^2}{12} f^{(2)}(\xi) = -\frac{nh^3}{12} f^{(2)}(\xi),
\]
   for some \(\xi\) such that \(a < \xi < b\).

### 21.1.4 Composite Simpson's Rule (closed type)

1. \[
\int_a^b f(x) \, dx = \frac{h}{3} \left[ f(a) + f(b) + 2 \sum_{k=1}^{(n/2)-1} f(x_{2k}) + 4 \sum_{k=1}^{n/2} f(x_{2k-1}) \right] + R_n,
\]
   \(n\) an even integer, \(h = (b - a)/n\), \(x_k = a + kh\) for \(k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, n\), and the remainder term

2. \[
R_n = -\frac{(b - a)h^4}{180} f^{(4)}(\xi) = -\frac{nh^5}{180} f^{(4)}(\xi),
\]
   for some \(\xi\) such that \(a < \xi < b\).
21.1.5 Newton–Cotes formulas

Closed types

1. \[ \int_{x_0}^{x_3} f(x) \, dx = \frac{3h}{8}(f(x_0) + 3f(x_1) + 3f(x_2) + f(x_3)) + R, \]
   \[ h = \frac{x_3 - x_0}{3}, \quad x_k = x_0 + kh \text{ for } k = 0, 1, 2, 3, \text{ and the remainder term} \]

2. \[ R = -\frac{3h^5}{80} f^{(4)}(\xi), \]
   for some \( \xi \) such that \( x_0 < \xi < x_3 \). \((\text{Simpson’s } \frac{3}{8} \text{ rule})\)

3. \[ \int_{x_0}^{x_4} f(x) \, dx = \frac{2h}{45}(7f(x_0) + 32f(x_1) + 12f(x_2) + 32f(x_3) + 7f(x_4)) + R, \]
   \[ h = \frac{x_4 - x_0}{4}, \quad x_k = x_0 + kh \text{ for } k = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, \text{ and the remainder term} \]

4. \[ R = -\frac{8h^7}{945} f^{(6)}(\xi), \]
   for some \( \xi \) such that \( x_0 < \xi < x_4 \). \((\text{Bode’s rule})\)

5. \[ \int_{x_0}^{x_5} f(x) \, dx = \frac{5h}{288}(19f(x_0) + 75f(x_1) + 50f(x_2) + 50f(x_3) + 75f(x_4) + 19f(x_5)) + R, \]
   \[ h = \frac{x_5 - x_0}{5}, \quad x_k = x_0 + kh \text{ for } k = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, \text{ and the remainder term} \]

6. \[ R = -\frac{275h^7}{12096} f^{(6)}(\xi), \]
   for some \( \xi \) such that \( x_0 < \xi < x_5 \).

Open types

7. \[ \int_{x_0}^{x_3} f(x) \, dx = \frac{3h}{2}(f(x_1) + f(x_2)) + R, \]
   \[ h = \frac{x_3 - x_0}{3}, \quad x_k = x_0 + kh, \text{ for } k = 1, 2, \text{ and the remainder term} \]

8. \[ R = \frac{h^3}{4} f^{(2)}(\xi), \]
   for some \( \xi \) such that \( x_0 < \xi < x_3 \).

9. \[ \int_{x_0}^{x_4} f(x) \, dx = \frac{4h}{3}(2f(x_1) - f(x_2) + 2f(x_3)) + R, \]
   \[ h = \frac{x_4 - x_0}{4}, \quad x_k = x_0 + kh \text{ for } k = 1, 2, 3, \text{ and the remainder term} \]
10. $R = \frac{28h^5}{90} f^{(4)}(\xi),$ for some $\xi$ such that $x_0 < \xi < x_4$.

11. \[ \int_{x_0}^{x_5} f(x) \, dx = \frac{5h}{24} \left( 11f(x_1) + f(x_2) + f(x_3) + 11f(x_4) \right) + R, \]
   \[ h = (x_5 - x_0)/5, \quad x_k = x_0 + kh \text{ for } k = 1, 2, 3, 4, \text{ and the remainder term} \]
12. $R = \frac{95h^5}{144} f^{(4)}(\xi),$ for some $\xi$ such that $x_0 < \xi < x_5$.

### 21.1.6 Gaussian Quadrature (open-type)

The fundamental Gaussian quadrature formula applies to an integral over the interval $[-1, 1]$. It is a highly accurate method, but unlike the other integration formulas given here it involves the use of abscissas that are unevenly spaced throughout the interval of integration.

1. \[ \int_{-1}^{1} f(x) \, dx = \sum_{k=1}^{n} w_k^{(n)} f\left(x_k^{(n)}\right) + R_n, \]
   where the abscissa $x_k^{(n)}$ is the $k$'th zero of the Legendre polynomial $P_n(x)$, and the weight $w_k^{(n)}$ is given by
2. \[ w_k^{(n)} = 2 \left[ P_n'\left(x_k^{(n)}\right)\right]^2 \left( 1 - \left(x_k^{(n)}\right)^2 \right). \]

The remainder term is
3. \[ R_n = \frac{2^{2n+1}(n!)^4}{(2n + 1)!(2n+1)!} f^{(2n)}(\xi), \]
   for some $\xi$ such that $-1 < \xi < 1$.

To apply this result to an integral over the interval $[a, b]$ the substitution
4. \[ y_k^{(n)} = \frac{1}{2} (b - a) x_k^{(n)} + \frac{1}{2} (b + a) \]

is made, yielding the result
5. \[ \int_{a}^{b} f(y) \, dy = \frac{1}{2} (b - a) \sum_{k=1}^{n} w_k^{(n)} f\left[y_k^{(n)}\right] + R_n, \]
where the remainder term is now

\[ R_n = \frac{(b - a)^{2n+1}(n!)^4}{(2n + 1)(2n)!(2n+1)!} f^{(2n)}(\xi), \]

for some \( a < \xi < b \).

The abscissas and weights for \( n = 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 \) are given in Table 21.1.

### 21.1.7 Romberg Integration (closed-type)

A robust and efficient method for the evaluation of the integral

\[ I = \int_a^b f(x) \, dx \]

is provided by the process of Romberg integration. The method proceeds in stages, with an increase in accuracy of the numerical estimate of \( I \) occurring at the end of each successive stage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( n )</th>
<th>( k )</th>
<th>( x_k^{(n)} )</th>
<th>( w_k^{(n)} )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.5773502692</td>
<td>1.0000000000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-0.5773502692</td>
<td>1.0000000000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.7745966692</td>
<td>0.5555555555</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.0000000000</td>
<td>0.8888888888</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-0.7745966692</td>
<td>0.5555555555</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.8611363116</td>
<td>0.3478548451</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.3399810436</td>
<td>0.6521451549</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-0.3399810436</td>
<td>0.6521451549</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-0.8611363116</td>
<td>0.3478548451</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.9061798459</td>
<td>0.2369268850</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.5384693101</td>
<td>0.4786286205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.0000000000</td>
<td>0.5688888889</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-0.5384693101</td>
<td>0.4786286205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-0.9061798459</td>
<td>0.2369268850</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.9324695142</td>
<td>0.1713244924</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.6612093865</td>
<td>0.3607615730</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.2386191861</td>
<td>0.4679139346</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.2386191861</td>
<td>0.4679139346</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-0.6612093865</td>
<td>0.3607615730</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-0.9324695142</td>
<td>0.1713244924</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
stage. The process may be continued until the result is accurate to the required number of decimal places, provided that at the $n$th stage the derivative $f^{(n)}(x)$ is nowhere singular in the interval of integration.

Romberg integration is based on the composite trapezoidal rule and an extrapolation process (Richardson extrapolation), and is well suited to implementation on a computer. This is because of the efficient use it makes of the function evaluations that are necessary at each successive stage of the computation, and its speed of convergence, which enables the numerical estimate of the integral to be obtained to the required degree of precision relatively quickly.

**The Romberg Method** At the $m$th stage of the calculation, the interval of integration $a \leq x \leq b$ is divided into $2^m$ intervals of length $(b-a)/2^m$. The corresponding composite trapezoidal estimate for $I$ is then given by

1. $I_{0,0} = \frac{(b-a)}{2} \left( f(a) + f(b) \right)$ and $I_{0,m} = \frac{(b-a)}{2^m} \left[ \frac{1}{2} f(a) + \frac{1}{2} f(b) + \sum_{r=1}^{2^{m-1}} f(x_r) \right],$

where $x_r = a + r[(b-a)/2^m]$ for $r = 1, 2, \ldots, 2^m - 1$. Here the initial suffix represents the computational step reached at the $m$th stage of the calculation, with the value zero indicating the initial trapezoidal estimate. The second suffix starts with the number of subintervals on which the initial trapezoidal estimate is based and the steps down to zero at the end of the $m$th stage.

Define

2. $I_{k,m} = \frac{4^k I_{k-1,m+1} - I_{k-1,m}}{4^k - 1},$

for $k = 1, 2, \ldots$ and $m = 1, 2, \ldots$.

For some preassigned error $\varepsilon > 0$ and some integer $N$, $I_{N,0}$ is the required estimate of the integral to within an error $\varepsilon$ if

3. $|I_{N,0} - I_{N-1,1}| < \varepsilon.$

The pattern of the calculation proceeds as shown here. Each successive entry in the $r$‘th row provides an increasingly accurate estimate of the integral, with the final estimate at the end of the $r$‘th stage of the calculation being provided by $I_{r,0}$:

\[
\begin{align*}
I_{0,0} \\
I_{0,1} &\rightarrow I_{1,0} \\
I_{0,2} &\rightarrow I_{1,1} \rightarrow I_{2,0} \\
I_{0,3} &\rightarrow I_{1,2} \rightarrow I_{2,1} \rightarrow I_{3,0} \\
I_{0,4} &\rightarrow I_{1,3} \rightarrow I_{2,2} \rightarrow I_{3,1} \rightarrow I_{4,0} \\
&\cdots\cdots\cdots\cdots\cdots
\end{align*}
\]
To illustrate the method consider the integral

\[ I = \int_{1}^{5} \frac{\ln(1 + \sqrt{x})}{1 + x^2} \, dx. \]

Four stages of Romberg integration lead to the following results, inspection of which shows that the approximation \( I_{4,0} = 0.519256 \) has converged to five decimal places. Notice that the accuracy achieved in \( I_{4,0} \) was obtained as a result of only 17 function evaluations at the end of the 16 subintervals involved, coupled with the use of relation 21.1.7.2. To obtain comparable accuracy using only the trapezoidal rule would involve the use of 512 subintervals.

\[
\begin{array}{cccccc}
  I_{0,m} & I_{1,m} & I_{2,m} & I_{3,m} & I_{4,m} \\
  0.783483 & & & & \\
  0.592752 & 0.529175 & & & \\
  0.537275 & 0.518783 & 0.518090 & & \\
  0.523633 & 0.519086 & 0.519106 & 0.519122 & \\
  0.520341 & 0.519243 & 0.519254 & 0.519255 & 0.519256
\end{array}
\]
22.1 INTRODUCTION
22.1.1 Basic Definitions
22.1.1.1
An \textit{n}th-order ordinary differential equation (ODE) for the function \( y(x) \) is an equation defined on some interval \( I \) that relates \( y^{(n)}(x) \) and some or all of \( y^{(n-1)}(x), y^{(n-2)}(x), \ldots, y^{(1)}(x), y(x) \) and \( x \), where \( y^{(r)}(x) = \frac{d^r y}{dx^r} \). In its most general form, such an equation can be written

\[ F(x, y(x), y^{(1)}(x), \ldots, y^{(n)}(x)) = 0, \]

where \( y^{(n)}(x) \neq 0 \) and \( F \) is an arbitrary function of its arguments.

The \textbf{general solution} of 22.1.1.1 is an \( n \) times differentiable function \( Y(x) \), defined on \( I \), that contains \( n \) arbitrary constants, with the property that when \( y = Y(x) \) is substituted into the differential equation reduces it to an identity in \( x \). A \textbf{particular solution} is a special case of the general solution in which the arbitrary constants have been assigned specific numerical values.

22.1.2 Linear Dependence and Independence
22.1.2.1
A set of functions \( y_1(x), y_2(x), \ldots, y_n(x) \) defined on some interval \( I \) is said to be \textbf{linearly dependent} on the interval \( I \) if there are constants \( c_1, c_2, \ldots, c_n \), not all zero, such that
1. \( c_1 y_1(x) + c_2 y_2(x) + \cdots + c_n y_n(x) = 0. \)

The set of functions is said to be **linearly independent** on \( I \) if 22.1.2.1.1 implies that \( c_1 = c_2 = \cdots = c_n = 0 \) for all \( x \) in \( I \).

The following **Wronskian test** provides a test for linear dependence.

**Wronskian test.** Let the \( n \) functions \( y_1(x), y_2(x), \ldots, y_n(x) \) defined on an interval \( I \) be continuous together with their derivatives of every order up to and including those of order \( n \). Then the functions are linearly dependent on \( I \) if the **Wronskian determinant**

\[
W[y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n] = \begin{vmatrix} y_1 & y_2 & \cdots & y_n \\
y_1^{(1)} & y_2^{(1)} & \cdots & y_n^{(1)} \\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
y_1^{(n-1)} & y_2^{(n-1)} & \cdots & y_n^{(n-1)} \end{vmatrix} = 0 \text{ for all } x \in I,
\]

where

2. \( W[y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n] = \frac{\sin^2 x}{0} - \frac{\cos^2 x}{0} = 0. \)

The linear dependence of these functions is obvious from the fact that

\[
1 = \sin^2 x + \cos^2 x,
\]

because when this is written in the form

\[
y_1 - y_2 - y_3 = 0
\]

and compared with 22.1.2.1.1 we see that \( c_1 = 1, c_2 = -1, \) and \( c_3 = -1. \)

**Example 22.2** The functions \( 1, \sin x, \) and \( \cos x \) are linearly independent for all \( x \), because setting \( y_1 = 1, y_2 = \sin x, y_3 = \cos x \) gives us the following Wronskian:

\[
W[y_1, y_2, y_3] = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & \sin x & \cos x \\
0 & 2 \sin x \cos x & -2 \sin x \cos x \\
0 & 2(\cos^2 x - \sin^2 x) & -2(\cos^2 x - \sin^2 x) \end{vmatrix} = -1.
\]

**Example 22.3** Let us compute the Wronskian of the functions

\[
y_1 = \begin{cases} x, & x < 0 \\ 0, & x \geq 0 \end{cases} \quad \text{and} \quad y_2 = \begin{cases} 0, & x < 0 \\ x, & x \geq 0 \end{cases}
\]
which are defined for all $x$. For $x < 0$ we have

$$W[y_1, y_2] = \begin{vmatrix} x & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{vmatrix} = 0,$$

whereas for $x \geq 0$

$$W[y_1, y_2] = \begin{vmatrix} 0 & x \\ 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 0,$$

so for all $x$

$$W[y_1, y_2] = 0.$$

However, despite the vanishing of the Wronskian for all $x$, the functions $y_1$ and $y_2$ are not linearly dependent, as can be seen from 22.1.2.1.1, because there exist no nonzero constants $c_1$ and $c_2$ such that

$$c_1y_1 + c_2y_2 = 0$$

for all $x$. This is not a failure of the Wronskian test, because although $y_1$ and $y_2$ are continuous, their first derivatives are not continuous as required by the Wronskian test.

22.2 SEPARATION OF VARIABLES

22.2.1 A differential equation is said to have separable variables if it can be written in the form

1. $F(x)G(y) \, dx + f(x)g(y) \, dy = 0$.

The general solution obtained by direct integration is

2. $\int \frac{F(x)}{f(x)} \, dx + \int \frac{g(y)}{G(y)} \, dy = \text{const}.$

22.3 LINEAR FIRST-ORDER EQUATIONS

22.3.1 The general linear first-order equation is of the form

1. $\frac{dy}{dx} + P(x)y = Q(x)$.

This equation has an integrating factor
2. \( \mu(x) = e^{P(x)dx} \),

and in terms of \( \mu(x) \) the general solution becomes

3. \( y(x) = \frac{c}{\mu(x)} + \frac{1}{\mu(x)} \int Q(x) \mu(x) \, dx \),

where \( c \) is an arbitrary constant. The first term on the right-hand side is the complementary function \( y_c(x) \), and the second term is the particular integral of \( y_p(x) \) (see 22.7.1).

**Example 22.4** Find the general solution of

\[
\frac{dy}{dx} + \frac{2}{x} y = \frac{1}{x^2 (1 + x^2)}.
\]

In this case \( P(x) = 2/x \) and \( Q(x) = x^{-2} (1 + x^2)^{-1} \), so

\[
\mu(x) = \exp \left[ \int \frac{2}{x} \, dx \right] = x^2
\]

and

\[
y(x) = \frac{c}{x^2} + \frac{1}{x^2} \int \frac{dx}{1 + x^2}
\]

so that

\[
y(x) = \frac{c}{x^2} + \frac{1}{x^2} \arctan x.
\]

Notice that the arbitrary additive integration constant involved in the determination of \( \mu(x) \) has been set equal to zero. This is justified by the fact that, had this not been done, the constant factor so introduced could have been incorporated into the arbitrary constant \( c \).

### 22.4 BERNOULLI’S EQUATION

**22.4.1**

*Bernoulli’s equation* is a *nonlinear* first-order equation of the form

1. \( \frac{dy}{dx} + p(x)y = q(x)y^\alpha \),

with \( \alpha \neq 0 \) and \( \alpha \neq 1 \).

Division of 22.4.1.1 by \( y^\alpha \) followed by the change of variable

2. \( z = y^{1-\alpha} \)

converts Bernoulli’s equation to the linear first-order equation
3. \( \frac{dz}{dx} + (1 - \alpha) p(x)z = (1 - \alpha)q(x) \)

which may be solved for \( z(x) \) by the method of 22.3.1. The solution of the original equation is given by

4. \( y(x) = z^{1/(1-\alpha)}. \)

**22.5 EXACT EQUATIONS**

**22.5.1**

An *exact equation* is of the form

1. \( P(x, y) \frac{dx}{dx} + Q(x, y) \frac{dy}{dy} = 0, \)

where \( P(x, y) \) and \( Q(x, y) \) satisfy the condition

2. \( \frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}. \)

Thus the left-hand side of 22.5.1.1 is the total differential of some function \( F(x, y) = \text{constant}, \)

with \( P(x, y) = \partial F/\partial x \) and \( Q(x, y) = \partial F/\partial y. \)

The general solution is

3. \( \int P(x, y) \frac{dx}{dx} + \int \left[ Q(x, y) - \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \int P(x, y) \frac{dx}{dx} \right] dy = \text{const.}, \)

where integration with respect to \( x \) implies \( y \) is to be regarded as a constant, while integration with respect to \( y \) implies \( x \) is to be regarded as a constant.

**Example 22.5** Find the general solution of

\[ 3x^2y \frac{dx}{dx} + (x^3 - y^2) \frac{dy}{dy} = 0. \]

Setting \( P(x, y) = 3x^2y \) and \( Q(x, y) = x^3 - y^2 \) we see the equation is exact because \( \partial P/\partial y = \partial Q/\partial x = 3x^2. \) It follows that

\[ \int P(x, y) \frac{dx}{dx} = \int 3x^2y \frac{dx}{dx} = 3y \int x^2 \frac{dx}{dx} = x^3y + c_1, \]

where \( c_1 \) is an arbitrary constant, whereas

\[ \int \left[ Q(x, y) - \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \int P(x, y) \frac{dx}{dx} \right] dy = \int \left[ x^3 - y^2 - x^3 \right] dy = -\frac{1}{3}y^3 + c_2, \]
where \( c_2 \) is an arbitrary constant. Thus, the required solution is

\[
x^3 y - \frac{1}{3} y^3 = c,
\]

where \( c = -(c_1 + c_2) \) is an arbitrary constant.

### 22.6 Homogeneous Equations

#### 22.6.1

In its simplest form, a homogeneous equation may be written

1. \( \frac{dy}{dx} = F\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) \),

where \( F \) is a function of the single variable

2. \( u = \frac{y}{x} \).

More generally, a homogeneous equation is of the form

3. \( P(x, y) \, dx + Q(x, y) \, dy = 0 \),

where \( P \) and \( Q \) are both algebraically homogeneous functions of the same degree. Here, by requiring \( P \) and \( Q \) to be algebraically homogeneous of degree \( n \), we mean that

4. \( P(kx, ky) = k^n P(x, y) \) and \( Q(kx, ky) = k^n Q(x, y) \),

with \( k \) a constant.

The solution of 22.6.1.1 is given in implicit form by

5. \( \ln x = \int \frac{du}{F(u) - u} \).

The solution of 22.6.1.3 also follows from this same result by setting \( F = -P/Q \).

### 22.7 Linear Differential Equations

#### 22.7.1

An \( n \)th-order variable coefficient differential equation is linear if it can be written in the form

1. \( \tilde{a}_0(x)y^{(n)} + \tilde{a}_1(x)y^{(n-1)} + \cdots + \tilde{a}_n(x)y = \tilde{f}(x) \),

where \( \tilde{a}_0, \tilde{a}_1, \ldots, \tilde{a}_n \) and \( \tilde{f} \) are real-valued functions defined on some interval \( I \). Provided \( \tilde{a}_0 \neq 0 \) this equation can be rewritten as
2. \( y^{(n)} + a_1(x)y^{(n-1)} + \cdots + a_n(x)y = f(x), \)

where \( a_r = \tilde{a}_r/\tilde{a}_0, \ r = 1, 2, \ldots, n, \) and \( f = \tilde{f}/\tilde{a}_0. \)

It is convenient to write 22.7.1.2 in the form

3. \( L[y(x)] = f(x), \)

where

4. \( L[y(x)] = y^{(n)} + a_1(x)y^{(n-1)} + \cdots + a_n(x)y. \)

The \( n \)th-order linear differential equation 22.7.1.2 is called \textbf{inhomogeneous (non-homogeneous)} when \( f(x) \neq 0, \) and \textbf{homogeneous} when \( f(x) \equiv 0. \)

The homogeneous equation corresponding to 22.7.1.2 is

5. \( L[y(x)] = 0. \)

This equation has \( n \) linearly independent solutions \( y_1(x), y_2(x), \ldots, y_n(x) \) and its general solution, also called the \textbf{complementary function}, is

6. \( y_c(x) = c_1y_1(x) + c_2y_2(x) + \cdots + c_ny_n(x), \)

where \( c_1, c_2, \ldots, c_n \) are arbitrary constants.

The \textbf{general solution} of the inhomogeneous equation 22.7.1.2 is

7. \( y(x) = y_c(x) + y_p(x), \)

where the form of the \textbf{particular integral} \( y_p(x) \) is determined by the inhomogeneous term \( f(x) \) and contains no arbitrary constants.

An \textbf{initial value problem} for 22.7.1.3 involves the determination of a solution satisfying the \textbf{initial conditions} at \( x = x_0, \)

8. \( y(x_0) = y_0, \quad y^{(1)}(x_0) = y_1, \ldots, y^{(n-1)}(x_0) = y_{n-1} \)

for some specified values of \( y_0, y_1, \ldots, y_{n-1}. \)

A \textbf{two-point boundary value problem} for a differential equation involves the determination of a solution satisfying suitable values of \( y \) and certain of its derivatives at the two distinct points \( x = a \) and \( x = b. \)

\section*{22.8 Constant Coefficient Linear Differential Equations—Homogeneous Case}

\subsection*{22.8.1

A special case of 22.7.1.3 arises when the coefficients \( a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n \) are real-valued absolute constants. Such equations are called \textbf{linear constant coefficient differential equations}.}
The determination of the \( n \) linearly independent solutions \( y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n \) that enter into the general solution

1. \( y_c = c_1 y_1(x) + c_2 y_2(x) + \cdots + c_n y_n(x) \)

of the associated constant coefficient homogeneous equation \( L[y(x)] = 0 \) may be obtained as follows:

(i) Form the \( n \)’th degree **characteristic polynomial** \( P_n(\lambda) \) defined as

(ii) \( P_n(\lambda) = \lambda^n + a_1 \lambda^{n-1} + \cdots + a_n \),

where \( a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n \) are the constant coefficients occurring in \( L[y(x)] = 0 \).

(iii) Factor \( P_n(\lambda) \) into a product of the form

\[
P_n(\lambda) = (\lambda - \lambda_1)^p (\lambda - \lambda_2)^q \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_m)^r,
\]

where

\[
p + q + \cdots + r = n,
\]

and \( \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_m \) are either real roots of \( P_n(\lambda) = 0 \) or, if they are complex, they occur in complex conjugate pairs [because the coefficients of \( P_n(\lambda) \) are all real]. Roots \( \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_m \) are said to have **multiplicities** \( p, q, \ldots, r \), respectively.

(iv) To every real root \( \lambda = \mu \) of \( P_n(\lambda) = 0 \) with multiplicity \( M \) there corresponds the \( M \) linearly independent solutions of \( L[y(x)] = 0 \):

\[
y_1(x) = e^{\mu x}, \quad y_2(x) = xe^{\mu x}, \quad y_3(x) = x^2 e^{\mu x}, \ldots, y_M(x) = x^{M-1} e^{\mu x}.
\]

(v) To every pair of complex conjugate roots of \( P_n(\lambda) = 0 \), \( \lambda = \alpha + i\beta \), and \( \lambda = \alpha - i\beta \), each with multiplicity \( N \), there corresponds the \( 2N \) linearly independent solutions of \( L[y(x)] = 0 \)

\[
y_1(x) = e^{\alpha x} \cos \beta x \quad \bar{y}_1(x) = e^{\alpha x} \sin \beta x \\
y_2(x) = xe^{\alpha x} \cos \beta x \quad \bar{y}_2(x) = xe^{\alpha x} \sin \beta x \\
\vdots \\
y_N(x) = x^{N-1} e^{\alpha x} \cos \beta x \quad \bar{y}_N(x) = x^{N-1} e^{\alpha x} \sin \beta x
\]

(vi) The general solution of the homogeneous equation \( L[y(x)] = 0 \) is then the sum of each of the linearly independent solutions found in (v) and (vi) multiplied by a real arbitrary constant. If a solution of an initial value problem is required for the homogeneous equation \( L[y(x)] = 0 \), the arbitrary constants in \( y_c(x) \) must be chosen so that \( y_c(x) \) satisfies the initial conditions.
Example 22.6  Find the general solution of the homogeneous equation

\[ y^{(3)} - 2y^{(2)} - 5y^{(1)} + 6y = 0, \]

and the solution of the initial value problem in which \( y(0) = 1 \), \( y^{(1)}(0) = 0 \), and \( y^{(2)}(0) = 2 \). The characteristic polynomial

\[ P_3(\lambda) = \lambda^3 - 2\lambda^2 - 5\lambda + 6 \]

\[ = (\lambda - 1)(\lambda + 2)(\lambda - 3), \]

so the roots of \( P_3(\lambda) = 0 \) are \( \lambda_1 = 1 \), \( \lambda_2 = -2 \), and \( \lambda_3 = 3 \), which are all real with multiplicity 1. Thus, the general solution is

\[ y(x) = c_1e^x + c_2e^{-2x} + c_3e^{3x}. \]

To solve the initial value problem the constants \( c_1 \), \( c_2 \), and \( c_3 \) must be chosen such that when \( x = 0 \), \( y = 1 \), \( dy/dx = 0 \), and \( d^2y/dx^2 = 2 \).

\[
\begin{align*}
y(0) = 1 & \quad \text{implies} \quad 1 = c_1 + c_2 + c_3 \\
y^{(1)}(0) = 0 & \quad \text{implies} \quad 0 = c_1 - 2c_2 + 3c_3 \\
y^{(2)}(0) = 0 & \quad \text{implies} \quad 2 = c_1 + 4c_2 + 9c_3
\end{align*}
\]

so \( c_1 = 2/3 \), \( c_2 = 1/3 \), and \( c_3 = 0 \) leading to the solution

\[ y(x) = \frac{2}{3}e^x + \frac{1}{3}e^{-2x}. \]

Example 22.7  Find the general solution of the homogeneous equation

\[ y^{(4)} + 5y^{(3)} + 8y^{(2)} + 4y^{(1)} = 0. \]

The characteristic polynomial

\[ P_4(\lambda) = \lambda^4 + 5\lambda^3 + 8\lambda^2 + 4\lambda \]

\[ = \lambda(\lambda + 1)(\lambda + 2)^2, \]

so the roots of \( P_4(\lambda) = 0 \) are \( \lambda_1 = 0 \), \( \lambda_2 = -1 \), and \( \lambda_2 = -2 \) (twice), which are all real, but \( \lambda_2 \) has multiplicity 2. Thus, the general solution is

\[ y(x) = c_1 + c_2e^{-x} + c_3e^{-2x} + c_4xe^{-2x}. \]
Example 22.8  Find the general solution of the homogeneous equation

\[ y^{(3)} + 3y^{(2)} + 9y^{(1)} - 13y = 0. \]

The characteristic polynomial

\[ P_3(\lambda) = \lambda^3 + 3\lambda^2 + 9\lambda - 13 \]

\[ = (\lambda - 1) (\lambda^2 + 4\lambda + 13), \]

so the roots of \( P_3(\lambda) = 0 \) are \( \lambda_1 = 1 \) and the pair of complex conjugate roots of the real quadratic factor, which are \( \lambda_2 = -2 - 3i \) and \( \lambda_3 = -2 + 3i \). All the roots have multiplicity 1. Thus, the general solution is

\[ y(x) = c_1 e^x + c_2 e^{-2x} \cos 3x + c_3 e^{-2x} \sin 3x. \]

Example 22.9  Find the general solution of the homogeneous equation

\[ y^{(5)} - 4y^{(4)} + 14y^{(3)} - 20y^{(2)} + 25y^{(1)} = 0. \]

The characteristic polynomial

\[ P_5(\lambda) = \lambda^5 - 4\lambda^4 + 14\lambda^3 - 20\lambda^2 + 25\lambda \]

\[ = \lambda (\lambda^2 - 2\lambda + 5)^2, \]

so the roots of \( P_5(\lambda) = 0 \) are the single real root \( \lambda_1 = 0 \) and the complex conjugate roots of the real quadratic factor \( \lambda_2 = 1 - 2i \) and \( \lambda_3 = 1 + 2i \), each with multiplicity 2. Thus, the general solution is

\[ y(x) = c_1 + c_2 e^x \cos 2x + c_3 xe^x \cos 2x + c_4 e^x \sin 2x + c_5 xe^x \sin 2x. \]

Example 22.10  Use the Laplace transform to solve the initial value problem in Example 22.6.

Taking the Laplace transform of the differential equation

\[ \frac{d^3 y}{dx^3} - 2 \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} - 5 \frac{dy}{dx} + 6y = 0 \]

gives, after using 19.1.21.2,

\[ \mathcal{L}[y^{(3)}] = s^3 Y(s) - y^{(2)}(0) - sy^{(1)}(0) - s^2 y(0) - 2(s^2 Y(s) - y^{(1)}(0) - sy(0)) \]

\[ - 5(sY(s) - y(0)) + 6Y(s) = 0. \]
After substituting the initial values $y(0) = 1$, $y^{(1)}(0) = 0$, and $y^{(2)}(0) = 2$ this reduces to

$$(s^3 - 2s^2 - 5s + 6)Y(s) = s^2 - 2s - 3,$$

so

$$Y(s) = \frac{s^2 - 2s - 3}{s^3 - 2s^2 - 5s + 6} = \frac{s + 1}{(s - 1)(s + 2)}.$$

When expressed in terms of partial fractions (see 1.7.2) this becomes

$$Y(s) = \frac{2}{3} \frac{1}{s - 1} + \frac{1}{3} \frac{1}{s + 2}.$$

Inverting this result by means of entry 5 in Table 19.1 leads to

$$y(x) = \frac{2}{3} e^x + \frac{1}{3} e^{-2x},$$

which is, of course, the solution obtained in Example 22.6.

### 22.9 LINEAR HOMOGENEOUS SECOND-ORDER EQUATION

#### 22.9.1

An important elementary equation that arises in many applications is the linear homogeneous second-order equation

1. $\frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + a \frac{dy}{dx} + by = 0$,

where $a$, $b$ are real-valued constants.

The characteristic polynomial is

2. $P_2(\lambda) = \lambda^2 + a\lambda + b$,

and the nature of the roots of $P_2(\lambda) = 0$ depends on the discriminant $a^2 - 4b$, which may be positive, zero, or negative.

**Case 1.** If $a^2 - 4b > 0$, the characteristic equation $P_2(\lambda) = 0$ has the two distinct real roots

3. $m_1 = \frac{1}{2} \left[-a - \sqrt{a^2 - 4b}\right] \quad \text{and} \quad m_2 = \frac{1}{2} \left[-a + \sqrt{a^2 - 4b}\right],$

and the solution is
4. \( y(x) = c_1e^{m_1x} + c_2e^{m_2x}. \)

This solution decays to zero as \( x \to +\infty \) if \( m_1, m_2 < 0 \), and becomes infinite if a root is positive.

**Case 2.** If \( a^2 - 4b = 0 \), the characteristic equation \( P_2(\lambda) = 0 \) has the two identical real roots (multiplicity 2)

5. \( m_1 = \frac{1}{2}a, \)

and the solution is

6. \( y(x) = c_1e^{m_1x} + c_2xe^{m_1x}. \)

This solution is similar to that of Case 1 in that it decays to zero as \( x \to +\infty \) if \( m_1 < 0 \) and becomes infinite if \( m_1 > 0 \).

**Case 3.** If \( a^2 - 4b < 0 \), the characteristic equation \( P_2(\lambda) = 0 \) has the complex conjugate roots

7. \( m_1 = \alpha + i\beta \) and \( m_2 = \alpha - i\beta, \)

where

8. \( \alpha = -\frac{1}{2}a \) and \( \beta = \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{4b-a^2}, \)

and the solution is

9. \( y(x) = e^{\alpha x}(c_1 \cos \beta x + c_2 \sin \beta x). \)

This solution is oscillatory and decays to zero as \( x \to +\infty \) if \( \alpha < 0 \), and becomes infinite if \( \alpha > 0 \).

### 22.10 LINEAR DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS—INHOMOGENEOUS CASE AND THE GREEN’S FUNCTION

#### 22.10.1

The general solution of the inhomogeneous constant coefficient \( n \)’th-order linear differential equation

1. \( y^{(n)} + a_1y^{(n-1)} + a_2y^{(n-2)} + \cdots + a_ny = f(x) \)

is of the form

2. \( y(x) = y_c(x) + y_p(x), \)
where the $y_c(x)$ is the general solution of the homogeneous form of the equation $L[y(x)] = 0$ and $y_p(x)$ is a particular integral whose form is determined by the inhomogeneous term $f(x)$. The solution $y_c(x)$ may be found by the method given in 22.8.1. The particular integral $y_p(x)$ may be obtained by using the method of variation of parameters. The result is

$$y_p(x) = \sum_{r=1}^{n} y_r(x) \int \frac{D_r(x)f(x)}{W[y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n]} \, dx,$$

where $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n$ are $n$ linearly independent solutions of $L[y(x)] = 0$, $W[y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n]$ is the Wronskian of these solutions (see 20.1.2.1.2), and $D_r(x)$ is the determinant obtained by replacing the $r$'th column of the Wronskian by $(0, 0, \ldots, 1)$.

If an initial value problem is to be solved, the constants in the general solution $y(x) = y_c(x) + y_p(x)$ must be chosen so that $y(x)$ satisfies the initial conditions.

**Example 22.11** Find the particular integral and general solution of

$$\frac{d^4 y}{dx^4} + 4 \frac{dy}{dx} = \tan 2x, \quad [-\pi/4 < x < \pi/4],$$

and solve the associated initial value problem in which $y(0) = y^{(1)}(0) = y^{(2)}(0) = 0$. In this case

$L[y(x)] = \frac{d^3 y}{dx^3} + 4 \frac{dy}{dx}$,

so the characteristic polynomial

$$P_3(\lambda) = \lambda^3 + 4\lambda = \lambda(\lambda^2 + 4).$$

The roots of $P_3(\lambda) = 0$ are $\lambda_1 = 0$, $\lambda_2 = 2i$, and $\lambda_3 = -2i$, so it follows that the three linearly independent solutions of $L[y(x)] = 0$ are

$$y_1(x) = 1, \quad y_2(x) = \cos 2x, \quad \text{and} \quad y_3(x) = \sin 2x,$$

and hence

$$y_c(x) = c_1 + c_2 \cos 2x + c_3 \sin 2x.$$
while
\[
D_1 = \begin{vmatrix}
0 & \cos 2x & \sin 2x \\
0 & -2 \sin 2x & 2 \cos 2x \\
1 & -4 \cos 2x & -4 \sin 2x
\end{vmatrix} = 2,
\]
\[
D_2 = \begin{vmatrix}
1 & 0 & \sin 2x \\
0 & 0 & 2 \cos 2x \\
0 & 1 & -4 \sin 2x
\end{vmatrix} = -2 \cos 2x,
\]
\[
D_3 = \begin{vmatrix}
1 & \cos 2x & 0 \\
0 & -2 \sin 2x & 0 \\
0 & -4 \cos 2x & 1
\end{vmatrix} = -2 \sin 2x,
\]

From 22.10.1.3 we have
\[
y_p(x) = \frac{1}{4} \int \tan 2x \, dx - \frac{1}{4} \cos 2x \int \cos 2x \tan 2x \, dx
\]
\[
-\frac{1}{4} \sin 2x \int \sin 2x \tan 2x \, dx,
\]
so
\[
y_p(x) = \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} \ln[\sec x] - \frac{1}{8} \sin 2x \ln[\sec 2x + \tan 2x].
\]

The general solution is
\[
y(x) = c_1 + c_2 \cos 2x + c_3 \sin 2x + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} \ln[\sec 2x] - \frac{1}{8} \sin 2x \ln[\sec 2x + \tan 2x]
\]
for $-\pi/4$, where the term $\frac{1}{8}$ follows by combining the terms $\frac{1}{8}(\cos^2 2x + \sin^2 2x)$.

To solve the initial value problem, the constants $c_1$, $c_2$, and $c_3$ in the general solution $y(x)$ must be chosen such that $y(0) = y^{(1)}(0) = y^{(2)}(0) = 0$. The equations for $c_1$, $c_2$, and $c_3$ that result when these conditions are used are:
\[
(y(0) = 0) \quad c_1 + c_2 = -\frac{1}{8}
\]
\[
y^{(1)}(0) = 0 \quad 2c_3 = 0
\]
\[
y^{(2)}(0) = 0 \quad -4c_2 - \frac{1}{2} = 0,
\]
so $c_1 = 0$, $c_2 = -\frac{1}{8}$, and $c_3 = 0$, and the solution of the initial value problem is
\[
y(x) = \frac{1}{8} - \frac{1}{8} \cos 2x - \frac{1}{8} \ln[\sec x] - \frac{1}{8} \sin 2x \ln[\sec 2x + \tan 2x].
\]
22.10 Linear Differential Equations—Inhomogeneous Case and the Green’s Function

22.10.2 The Green’s Function

Another way of solving initial and boundary value problems for inhomogeneous linear differential equations is in terms of an integral using a specially constructed function called a Green’s function. In what follows, only the solution of a second order equation will be considered, though the method extends in a straightforward manner to linear inhomogeneous equations of any order.

The Solution of a Linear Inhomogeneous Equation Using a Green’s Function

When expressed in terms of the Green’s function \( G(x, t) \), the solution of an initial value problem for the linear second order inhomogeneous equation

\[
p(x) \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + q(x) \frac{dy}{dx} + r(x)y = f(x),
\]

subject to the homogeneous initial conditions

\[y(0) = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad y'(0) = 0\]

can be written in the form

\[y(x) = \int_{0}^{x} G(x, t)f(t) \, dt,\]

where \( G(x, t) \) is the Green’s function.

The Green’s function can be found by solving the initial value problem

\[
p(x) \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + q(x) \frac{dy}{dx} + r(x)y = 0,
\]

subject to the initial conditions

\[y(t) = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad y'(t) = 1 \quad \text{for} \quad t < x.
\]

This way of finding the Green’s function is equivalent to solving equation 1 subject to homogeneous initial conditions, with a Dirac delta function \( \delta(x - t) \) as the inhomogeneous term. The linearity of the equation then allows solution 3 to be found by weighting the Green’s function response by the inhomogeneous term at \( x = t \) and integrating the result with respect to \( t \) over the interval \( 0 \leq t \leq x \).

The Green’s function can be defined as

\[G(x, t) = -\frac{1}{p(x)} \begin{vmatrix} \varphi_1(x) & \varphi_2(x) \\ \varphi_1(t) & \varphi_2(t) \\ \varphi'_1(t) & \varphi'_2(t) \end{vmatrix}, \quad \text{for} \quad 0 \leq t \leq x,
\]

where \( \varphi_1(x) \) and \( \varphi_2(x) \) are two linearly independent solutions of the homogeneous form of equation 1.
7. \( p(x) \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + q(x) \frac{dy}{dx} + r(x)y = 0. \)

The advantage of the Green’s function approach is that \( G(x, t) \) is independent of the inhomogeneous term \( f(x) \), so once \( G(x, t) \) has been found, result 3 gives the solution for any inhomogeneous term \( f(x) \).

If the initial conditions for equation 1 are not homogeneous, all that is necessary to modify result 3 is to find a solution of the homogeneous form of the differential equation that satisfies the inhomogeneous initial conditions and then to add it to the result in 3.

**Example 22.12** Use the Green’s function to solve (a) the initial value problem for

\[ y'' + y = \cos x, \]

subject to the homogeneous initial conditions \( y(0) = 0 \) and \( y'(0) = 0 \) and (b) the same equation subject to the inhomogeneous initial conditions \( y(0) = 2 \) and \( y'(0) = 0 \).

**Solution**

(a) A solution set \( \{ \varphi_1(x), \varphi_2(x) \} \) for the homogeneous form of this equation is given by \( \varphi_1(x) = \cos x \) and \( \varphi_2(x) = \sin x \). As \( p(x) = 1 \), and the inhomogeneous term \( f(x) = \cos x \), the Green’s function becomes

\[
G(x, t) = - \begin{vmatrix}
\cos x & \sin x \\
\cos t & \sin t 
\end{vmatrix} = \sin x \cos t - \cos x \sin t = \sin(x - t).
\]

Substituting for \( G(x, t) \) in 3 and setting \( f(t) = \cos t \), gives

\[ y(x) = \int_0^x \sin(x - t) \cos t \, dt, \]

so the solution subject to homogeneous initial conditions is

\[ y(x) = \frac{1}{2} x \sin x. \]

(b) The general solution of the homogeneous form of the equation is

\[ y_C(x) = A \sin x + B \cos x, \]

so if this is to satisfy the inhomogeneous initial conditions \( y_C(0) = 2 \) and \( y'_C(0) = 0 \), we must set \( A = 0 \) and \( B = 2 \), giving \( y_C(x) = 2 \cos x \). Thus the required solution subject to the inhomogeneous initial conditions becomes

\[ y(x) = y_C(x) + \int_0^x \sin(x - t) \cos t \, dt, \]

and so \( y(x) = 2 \cos x + \frac{1}{2} x \sin x. \)
When two-point boundary value problems over the interval \( a \leq x \leq b \) are considered for equations with inhomogeneous terms, where the solution must satisfy \textit{homogeneous} boundary conditions, it is necessary to modify the definition of a Green’s function. To be precise, the solution is required for a \textbf{two-point boundary value problem} over the interval \( a \leq x \leq b \), for the inhomogeneous equation

8. \[ p(x) \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + q(x) \frac{dy}{dx} + r(x)y = f(x), \]

that satisfies the \textbf{homogeneous two-point boundary conditions}

9. \[ \alpha_1 y(a) + \beta_1 y'(a) = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \alpha_2 y(b) + \beta_2 y'(b) = 0, \]

where the constants \( \alpha, \beta_1, \alpha_2, \) and \( \beta_2 \) are such that \( \alpha_1^2 + \beta_1^2 > 0 \) and \( \alpha_2^2 + \beta_2^2 > 0. \)

**The Solution of a Two-Point Boundary Value Problem Using a Green’s Function**

The solution of boundary value problem for equation 8, subject to the boundary conditions 9, will only exist if the problem is properly set, in the sense that it is possible for the solution to satisfy the boundary conditions. The condition for this is that the homogeneous form of the equation

10. \[ p(x) \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + q(x) \frac{dy}{dx} + r(x)y = 0, \]

subject to the boundary conditions 9, only has a trivial solution—that is, the only solution is the identically zero solution.

Let \( \phi_1(x) \) be a solution of the homogeneous equation 10 that satisfies boundary conditions 9 at \( x = a \), and let \( \phi_2(x) \) be a linearly independent solution of equation 10 that satisfies boundary conditions 9 at \( x = b \). Then the \textbf{Green’s function} for the homogeneous equation 10 is defined as

11. \[ G(x, t) = \begin{cases} \frac{\phi_1(t)\phi_2(x)}{p(t)W[\phi_1(t),\phi_2(t)]} & \text{for } a \leq x \leq t, \\ \frac{\phi_1(x)\phi_2(t)}{p(t)W[\phi_1(t),\phi_2(t)]} & \text{for } t \leq x \leq b. \end{cases} \]

The solution of the two-point boundary value problem for equation 8, subject to the boundary conditions 9, is

12. \[ y(x) = \int_a^b G(x, t)b(t)dt, \]

or equivalently

13. \[ y(x) = \phi_2(x) \int_a^x \frac{\phi_1(t)b(t)}{p(t)W[\phi_1(t),\phi_2(t)]} dt + \phi_1(x) \int_x^b \frac{\phi_2(t)b(t)}{p(t)W[\phi_1(t),\phi_2(t)]} dt. \]
Chapter 22 Solutions of Standard Ordinary Differential Equations

If required, this form of the solution can be derived by modifying the method of variation of parameters.

**Example 22.13** Verify that the two-point boundary value problem

\[ y'' + y = 1, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y(\pi/2) = 0 \]

has a solution, and find it with the aid of a Green’s function.

**Solution** The solution of the homogeneous form of the equation \( y'' + y = 0 \), subject to the boundary conditions \( y(0) = 0 \) \( y(\pi/2) = 0 \), only has the trivial solution \( y(x) \equiv 0 \), so the Green’s function method may be used to find the solution \( y(x) \).

The function \( \phi_1(x) \) must be constructed from a linear combination of the solutions of the homogeneous form of the equation, namely \( y'' + y = 0 \), with the solution set \( \{ \varphi_1(x), \varphi_2(x) \} \), where \( \varphi_1(x) = \cos x \) and \( \varphi_2(x) = \sin x \). So we set \( \phi_1(x) = c_1 \cos x + c_2 \sin x \) and require \( \phi_1(x) \) to satisfy the left boundary condition \( \phi_1(0) = 0 \). This shows we must set \( \phi_1(x) = c_2 \sin x \). However, the differential equation is homogeneous, so as this solution can be scaled arbitrarily, for simplicity we choose to set \( c_2 = 1 \) when \( \phi_1(x) = \sin x \).

The function \( \phi_2(x) \) must also be constructed from a linear combination of solutions of the homogeneous form of the equation \( y'' + y = 0 \), so now we set \( \phi_1(x) = d_1 \cos x + d_2 \sin x \) and require \( \phi_2(x) \) to satisfy the right boundary condition \( \phi_2(\pi/2) = 0 \). This shows that \( \phi_2(x) = d_2 \cos x \), but again, as the differential equation is homogeneous, this solution can also be scaled arbitrarily. So, for simplicity, we choose to set \( d_1 = 1 \) when \( \phi_2(x) = \cos x \).

In this case \( p(x) = 1 \), and the Wronskian

\[
W[\phi_1(x), \phi_2(x)] = \begin{vmatrix} \sin x & \cos x \\ \cos x & -\sin x \end{vmatrix} = -1,
\]

so the Green’s function

\[
G(x, t) = \begin{cases} -\sin t \cos x, & 0 \leq x \leq t \\ -\sin x \cos t, & t \leq x \leq \pi/2 \end{cases}
\]

As the inhomogeneous term \( f(x) = 1 \), we must set \( f(t) = 1 \), showing the solution of the boundary value problem is given by

\[
y(x) = -\int_0^x \sin t \cos x \, dt - \int_x^{\pi/2} \sin x \cos t \, dt,
\]

so the required solution is

\[
y(x) = 1 - \cos x - \sin x.
\]

To illustrate the necessity for the homogeneous form of the equation to have a trivial solution if the solution of the two-point boundary value problem is to exist, we need only consider the equation \( y'' + y = 1 \) subject to the boundary conditions \( y(0) = 0 \) and \( y(\pi) = 0 \). The
homogeneous form of the equation has the *non-trivial* solution \( y_0(x) = k \sin x \) for any constant \( k \neq 0 \), and this function satisfies *both* of the boundary conditions. The general solution of the equation is easily shown to be \( y(x) = C_1 \cos x + C_2 \sin x + 1 \), so the left boundary condition \( y(0) = 0 \) is satisfied provided \( C_1 = -1 \), leading to the result that \( y(x) = C_2 \sin x - \cos x + 1 \). The second boundary condition \( y(\pi) = 0 \) cannot be satisfied because when it is substituted into \( y(x) \), it produces the contradiction that \( 0 = 2 \), showing this two-point boundary value problem has no solution.

### 22.11 LINEAR INHOMOGENEOUS SECOND-ORDER EQUATION

#### 22.11.1

When the method of 22.10.1 is applied to the solution of the inhomogeneous second-order constant coefficient equation

\[
\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + a \frac{dy}{dx} + by = f(x),
\]

the general solution assumes a simpler form depending on the discriminant \( a^2 - 4b \).

**Case 1.** If \( a^2 - 4b > 0 \) the general solution is

\[
y(x) = c_1 e^{m_1 x} + c_2 e^{m_2 x} + \frac{e^{m_1 x}}{m_1 - m_2} \int e^{-m_1 x} f(x) \, dx - \frac{e^{m_2 x}}{m_2 - m_1} \int e^{-m_2 x} f(x) \, dx,
\]

where

\[
m_1 = \frac{1}{2} \left[ -a - \sqrt{a^2 - 4b} \right] \quad \text{and} \quad m_2 = \frac{1}{2} \left[ -a + \sqrt{a^2 - 4b} \right].
\]

**Case 2.** If \( a^2 - 4b = 0 \) the general solution is

\[
y(x) = c_1 e^{m_1 x} + c_2 e^{m_1 x} - e^{m_1 x} \int xe^{-m_1 x} f(x) \, dx + e^{m_1 x} \int e^{-m_1 x} f(x) \, dx,
\]

where

\[
m_1 = -\frac{1}{2} a.
\]

**Case 3.** If \( a^2 - 4b < 0 \) the general solution is

\[
y(x) = e^{\alpha x} (c_1 \cos \beta x + c_2 \sin \beta x) + e^{\alpha x} \frac{\sin \beta x}{\beta} \int e^{-\alpha x} f(x) \cos \beta x \, dx
\]

\[
- e^{\alpha x} \frac{\cos \beta x}{\beta} \int e^{\alpha x} f(x) \sin \beta x \, dx,
\]
where

\[ \alpha = -\frac{1}{2}a \quad \text{and} \quad \beta = \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{4b-a^2}. \]

### 22.12 DETERMINATION OF PARTICULAR INTEGRALS BY THE METHOD OF UNDETERMINED COEFFICIENTS

#### 22.12.1

An alternative method may be used to find a particular integral when the inhomogeneous term \( f(x) \) is simple in form. Consider the linear inhomogeneous \( n \)'th-order constant coefficient differential equation

\[ y^{(n)} + a_1 y^{(n-1)} + a_2 y^{(n-2)} + \cdots + a_n y = f(x), \]

in which the inhomogeneous term \( f(x) \) is a polynomial, an exponential, a product of a power of \( x \), and a trigonometric function of the form \( x^s \cos qx \) or \( x^s \sin qx \) or a sum of any such terms. Then the particular integral may be obtained by the method of undetermined coefficients (constants).

To arrive at the general form of the particular integral it is necessary to proceed as follows:

1. If \( f(x) = \text{constant} \), include in \( y_p(x) \) the undetermined constant term \( C \).
2. If \( f(x) \) is a polynomial of degree \( r \) then:
   - If \( L[y(x)] \) contains an undifferentiated term \( y \), include in \( y_p(x) \) terms of the form
     \[ A_0 x^r + A_1 x^{r-1} + \cdots + A_r, \]
     where \( A_0, A_1, \ldots, A_r \) are undetermined constants;
   - If \( L[y(x)] \) does not contain an undifferentiated \( y \), and its lowest order derivative is \( y^{(s)} \), include in \( y_p(x) \) terms of the form
     \[ A_0 x^{r+s} + A_1 x^{r+s-1} + \cdots + A_r x^s, \]
     where \( A_0, A_1, \ldots, A_r \) are undetermined constants.
3. If \( f(x) = e^{\alpha x} \) then:
   - If \( e^{\alpha x} \) is not contained in the complementary function (it is not a solution of the homogeneous form of the equation), include in \( y_p(x) \) the term \( B e^{\alpha x} \), where \( B \) is an undetermined constant;
   - If the complementary function contains the terms \( e^{\alpha x}, xe^{\alpha x}, \ldots, x^m e^{\alpha x} \), include in \( y_p(x) \) the term \( B x^{m+1} e^{\alpha x} \), where \( B \) is an undetermined constant.
(iv) If \( f(x) = \cos qx \) and/or \( \sin qx \) then:
(a) if \( \cos qx \) and/or \( \sin qx \) are not contained in the complementary function (they are not solutions of the homogeneous form of the equation), include in \( y_p(x) \) terms of the form
\[
C \cos qx \quad \text{and} \quad D \sin qx,
\]
where \( C \) and \( D \) are undetermined constants;
(b) if the complementary function contains terms \( x^s \cos qx \) and/or \( x^s \sin qs \) with \( s = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, m \), include in \( y_p(x) \) terms of the form
\[
x^{m+1} (C \cos qx + D \sin qx),
\]
where \( C \) and \( D \) are undetermined constants.
(v) The general form of the particular integral is then the sum of all the terms generated in (i) to (iv).
(vi) The unknown constant coefficients occurring in \( y_p(x) \) are found by substituting \( y_p(x) \) into 22.12.1.1, and then choosing them so that the result becomes an identity in \( x \).

**Example 22.14** Find the complementary function and particular integral of

\[
\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + \frac{dy}{dx} - 2y = x + \cos 2x + 3e^x,
\]

and solve the associated initial value problem in which \( y(0) = 0 \) and \( y^{(1)}(0) = 1 \).

The characteristic polynomial
\[
P_2(\lambda) = \lambda^2 + \lambda - 2 = (\lambda - 1)(\lambda + 2),
\]

so the linearly independent solutions of the homogeneous form of the equation are
\[
y_1(x) = e^x \quad \text{and} \quad y_2(x) = e^{-2x},
\]

and the complementary function is
\[
y_c(x) = c_1 e^x + c_2 e^{-2x}.
\]

Inspection of the inhomogeneous term shows that only the exponential \( e^x \) is contained in the complementary function. It then follows from (ii) that, corresponding to the term \( x \), we must include in \( y_p(x) \) terms of the form
\[
A + Bx.
\]
Similarly, from (iv)(a), corresponding to the term \( \cos 2x \), we must include in \( y_p(x) \) terms of the form

\[ C \cos 2x + D \sin 2x. \]

Finally, from (iii)(b), it follows that, corresponding to the term \( e^x \), we must include in \( y_p(x) \) a term of the form

\[ Exe^x. \]

Then from (v) the general form of the particular integral is

\[ y_p(x) = A + Bx + C \cos 2x + D \sin 2x + Exe^x. \]

To determine the unknown coefficients \( A, B, C, D, \) and \( E \) we now substitute \( y_p(x) \) into the original equation to obtain

\[ (-6C + 2D) \cos 2x - (2C + 6D) \sin 2x + 3Ee^x - 2Bx + B - 2A = x + \cos 2x + 3e^x. \]

For this to become an identity, the coefficients of corresponding terms on either side of this expression must be identical:

- (Coefficients of \( \cos 2x \)) \(-6C + 2D = 1\)
- (Coefficients of \( \sin 2x \)) \(-2C - 6D = 0\)
- (Coefficients of \( x \)) \(-2B = 1\)
- (Coefficients of \( e^x \)) \(3E = 3\)
- (Coefficients of constant terms) \(B - 2A = 0\)

Thus \( A = -\frac{1}{4}, \ B = -\frac{1}{2}, \ C = -\frac{3}{20}, \ D = \frac{1}{20}, \ E = 1, \) and hence the required particular integral is

\[ y_p(x) = -\frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{2}x - \frac{3}{20} \cos 2x + \frac{1}{20} \sin 2x + xe^x, \]

while the general solution is

\[ y(x) = y_c(x) + y_p(x). \]

The solution of the initial value problem is obtained by selecting the constants \( c_1 \) and \( c_2 \) in \( y(x) \) so that \( y(0) = 0 \) and \( y'(0) = 1. \) The equations for \( c_1 \) and \( c_2 \) that result when these conditions are used are:

\[
\begin{align*}
(y(0) = 0) & \quad c_1 + c_2 - \frac{2}{5} = 0 \\
(y'(0) = 1) & \quad c_1 - 2c_2 + \frac{3}{5} = 1,
\end{align*}
\]

so \( c_1 = \frac{2}{5} \) and \( c_2 = 0 \) and the solution of the initial value problem is

\[ y(x) = e^x \left[ x + \frac{2}{5} \right] - \frac{3}{20} \cos 2x + \frac{1}{20} \sin 2x - \frac{1}{2}x - \frac{1}{4}. \]
22.13 THE CAUCHY–EULER EQUATION

22.13.1

The Cauchy–Euler equation of order \( n \) is of the form

1. \( x^n y^{(n)} + a_1 x^{n-1} y^{n-1} + \cdots + a_n y = f(x) \),

where \( a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n \) are constants.

The change of variable

2. \( x = e^t \)

reduces the equation to a linear constant coefficient equation with the inhomogeneous term \( f(e^t) \), which may be solved by the method described in 22.10.1.

In the special case of the Cauchy–Euler equation of order 2, which may be written

3. \( x^2 \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + a_1 x \frac{dy}{dx} + a_2 y = f(x) \),

the change of variable 22.13.1.2 reduces it to

\[
\frac{d^2 y}{dt^2} + (a_1 - 1) \frac{dy}{dt} + a_2 y = f(e^t).
\]

The following solution of the homogeneous Cauchy–Euler equation of order 2 is often useful: If

4. \( x^2 \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + a_1 x \frac{dy}{dx} + a_2 y = 0 \),

and \( \lambda_1, \lambda_2 \) are the roots of the polynomial equation

5. \( \lambda^2 + (a_1 - 1) \lambda + a_2 = 0 \),

then, provided \( x \neq 0 \), the general solution of 22.13.1.4 is

6. \( y_c(x) = c_1 (|x|^\lambda_1 + c_2 |x|^\lambda_2), \) \quad \text{if} \ \lambda_1 \neq \lambda_2 \ \text{are both real},

\( y_c(x) = (c_1 + c_2 \ln |x|) |x|^\lambda_1, \) \quad \text{if} \ \lambda_1 \ \text{and} \ \lambda_2 \ \text{are real and} \ \lambda_1 = \lambda_2, 

\( y_c(x) = x^\alpha [c_1 \cos (\beta \ln |x|) + c_2 \sin (\beta \ln |x|)], \) \quad \text{if} \ \lambda_1 \ \text{and} \ \lambda_2 \ \text{are complex conjugates}

with \( \lambda_1 = \alpha + i\beta \) and \( \lambda_2 = \alpha - i\beta \).
**22.14 LEGENDRE’S EQUATION**

**22.14.1**

Legendre’s equation is

1. \((1 - x^2) \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - 2x \frac{dy}{dx} + n(n+1)y = 0,\)

where \(n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots\)

The general solution is

2. \(y(x) = c_1 P_n(x) + c_2 Q_n(x),\)

where \(P_n(x)\) is the Legendre polynomial of degree \(n\) and \(Q_n(x)\) is Legendre function of the second kind (see 18.2.4.2 and 18.2.7.1).

**22.15 BESSEL’S EQUATIONS**

**22.15.1**

Bessel’s equation is

1. \(x^2 \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + x \frac{dy}{dx} + (\lambda^2 x^2 - \nu^2) y = 0.\)

The general solution is

2. \(y(x) = c_1 J_\nu(\lambda x) + c_2 Y_\nu(\lambda x),\)

where \(J_\nu\) is the Bessel function of the first kind of order \(\nu\) and \(Y_\nu\) is the Bessel function of the second kind of order \(\nu\) (see 17.2.1 and 17.2.2). **Bessel’s modified equation** is

3. \(x^2 \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + x \frac{dy}{dx} - (\lambda^2 x^2 + \nu^2) y = 0.\)

The general solution is

4. \(y(x) = c_1 I_\nu(\lambda x) + c_2 K_\nu(\lambda x),\)

where \(I_\nu\) is the modified Bessel function of the first kind of order \(\nu\) and \(K_\nu\) is the modified Bessel function of the second kind of order \(\nu\) (see 17.7.1 and 17.7.2).

**Example 22.15** Solve the two-point boundary value problem

\(x^2 \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + x \frac{dy}{dx} + \lambda^2 x^2 = 0,\)
subject to the boundary conditions $y(0) = 2$ and $y^{(1)}(a) = 0$.

The equation is Bessel’s equation of order 0, so the general solution is

$$y(x) = c_1 J_0(\lambda x) + c_2 Y_0(\lambda x).$$

The boundary condition $y(0) = 2$ requires the solution to be finite at the origin, but $Y_0(0)$ is infinite (see 17.2.2.2.1) so we must set $c_2 = 0$ and require that $2 = c_1 J_0(0)$, so $c_1 = 2$ because $J_0(0) = 1$ (see 17.2.1.2.1). Boundary condition $y(a) = 0$ then requires that

$$0 = 2J_0(\lambda a),$$

but the zeros of $J_0(x)$ are $j_{0,1}, j_{0,2}, \ldots, j_{0,m}, \ldots$ (see Table 17.1), so $\lambda a = j_{0,m}, \text{ or } \lambda m = j_{0,m}/a,$

for $m = 1, 2, \ldots$. Consequently, the required solutions are

$$y_m(x) = 2J_0\left(\frac{j_{0,m} x}{a}\right) \quad [m = 1, 2, \ldots].$$

The numbers $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots$ are the **eigenvalues** of the problem and the functions $y_1, y_2, \ldots$, are the corresponding **eigenfunctions**. Because any constant multiple of $y_m(x)$ is also a solution, it is usual to omit the constant multiplier 2 in these eigenfunctions.

**Example 22.16**  Solve the two-point boundary value problem

$$x^2 \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + x \frac{dy}{dx} - (x^2 + 4) y = 0,$$

subject to the boundary conditions $y(a) = 0$ and $y(b) = 0$ with $0 < a < b < \infty$.

The equation is Bessel’s modified equation of order 2, so the general solution is

$$y(x) = c_1 I_2(\lambda x) + c_2 K_2(\lambda x).$$

Since $0 < a < b < \infty$, $I_2$, and $K_2$ are finite in the interval $a \leq x \leq b$, so both must be retained in the general solution (see 17.7.1.2 and 17.7.2.2).

Application of the boundary conditions leads to the conditions:

$$(y(a) = 0) \quad c_1 I_2(\lambda a) + c_2 K_2(\lambda a) = 0$$

$$(y(b) = 0) \quad c_1 I_2(\lambda b) + c_2 K_2(\lambda b) = 0,$$

and this homogeneous system only has a nontrivial solution ($c_1, c_2$ not both zero) if

$$\begin{vmatrix}
I_2(\lambda a) & K_2(\lambda a) \\
I_2(\lambda b) & K_2(\lambda b)
\end{vmatrix} = 0.$$
Thus, the required values $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots$ of $\lambda$ must be the zeros of the transcendental equation
\[ I_2(\lambda a)K_2(\lambda b) - I_2(\lambda b)K_2(\lambda a) = 0. \]

For a given $a, b$ it is necessary to determine $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots$, numerically. Here also the numbers $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots$, are the eigenvalues of the problem, and the functions
\[ y_m(x) = c_1 \left[ I_2(\lambda_m x) - \frac{I_2(\lambda_m a)}{K_2(\lambda_m a)} K_2(\lambda_m x) \right] \]
or, equivalently,
\[ y_m(x) = c_1 \left[ I_2(\lambda_m x) - \frac{I_2(\lambda_m b)}{K_2(\lambda_m b)} K_2(\lambda_m x) \right], \]
are the corresponding eigenfunctions. As in Example 22.15, because any multiple of $y_m(x)$ is also a solution, it is usual to set $c_1 = 1$ in the eigenfunctions.

### 22.16 POWER SERIES AND FROBENIUS METHODS

#### 22.16.1

To appreciate the need for the Frobenius method when finding solutions of linear variable coefficient differential equations, it is first necessary to understand the power series method and the reason for its failure in certain circumstances.

To illustrate the power series method, consider seeking a solution of
\[ \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + x \frac{dy}{dx} + y = 0 \]
in the form of a power series about the origin
\[ y(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n. \]

Differentiation of this expression to find $dy/dx$ and $d^2y/dx^2$, followed by substitution into the differential equation and the grouping of terms leads to the result
\[ (a_0 + 2a_2) + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} [(n + 1)(n + 2)a_{n+2} + (n + 1)a_n]x^n = 0. \]

For $y(x)$ to be a solution, this expression must be an identity for all $x$, which is only possible if $a_0 + 2a_2 = 0$ and the coefficient of every power of $x$ vanishes, so that
\[ (n + 1)(n + 2)a_{n+2} + (n + 1)a_n = 0 \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots]. \]
Thus, \( a_2 = -\frac{1}{2} a_0 \), and in general the coefficients \( a_n \) are given recursively by

\[
a_{n+2} = -\left( \frac{1}{n+2} \right) a_n .
\]

from which it follows that \( a_2, a_4, a_6, \ldots \) are all expressible in terms of an arbitrary nonzero constant \( a_0 \), while \( a_1, a_3, a_5, \ldots \) are all expressible in terms of an arbitrary nonzero constant \( a_1 \). Routine calculations then show that

\[
a_{2m} = \frac{(-1)^m}{2^m m!} a_0 \quad [m = 1, 2, \ldots],
\]

while

\[
a_{2m+1} = \frac{(-1)^m}{1.3.5 \cdots (2m+1)} a_1 \quad [m = 1, 2, \ldots].
\]

After substituting for the \( a_n \) in the power series for \( y(x) \) the solution can be written

\[
y(x) = a_0 \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^m}{2^m m!} x^{2m} + a_1 \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^m}{1.3.5 \cdots (2m+1)} x^{2m+1}
\]

\[
= a_0 \left( 1 - \frac{1}{2} x + \frac{1}{8} x^2 - \cdots \right) + a_1 \left( x - \frac{1}{3} x^3 + \frac{1}{15} x^5 - \cdots \right).
\]

Setting

\[
y_1(x) = 1 - \frac{1}{2} x + \frac{1}{8} x^2 - \cdots \quad \text{and} \quad y_2(x) = x - \frac{1}{3} x^3 + \frac{1}{15} x^5 - \cdots,
\]

it follows that \( y_1 \) and \( y_2 \) are linearly independent, because \( y_1 \) is an even function and \( y_2 \) is an odd function. Thus, because \( a_0, a_1 \) are arbitrary constants, the general solution of the differential equation can be written

\[
y(x) = a_0 y_1(x) + a_2 y_2(x).
\]

The power series method was successful in this case because the coefficients of \( \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2}, \frac{dy}{dx} \) and \( y \) in the differential equation were all capable of being expressed as Maclaurin series, and so could be combined with the power series expression for \( y(x) \) and its derivatives that led to \( y_1(x) \) and \( y_2(x) \). (In this example, the coefficients 1, \( x \), and 1 in the differential equation are their own Maclaurin series.) The method fails if the variable coefficients in a differential equation cannot be expressed as Maclaurin series (they are not analytic at the origin).

The Frobenius method overcomes the difficulty just outlined for a wide class of variable coefficient differential equations by generalizing the type of solution that is sought. To proceed further, it is first necessary to define regular and singular points of a differential equation.
The second-order linear differential equation with variable coefficients

1. \( \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + p(x) \frac{dy}{dx} + q(x)y = 0 \)

is said to have a **regular point** at the origin if \( p(x) \) and \( q(x) \) are analytic at the origin. If the origin is *not* a regular point it is called a **singular point**. A singular point at the origin is called a **regular singular point** if

2. \( \lim_{x \to 0} \{xp(x)\} \) is finite

and

3. \( \lim_{x \to 0} \{x^2q(x)\} \) is finite.

Singular points that are not regular are said to be **irregular**. The behavior of a solution in a neighborhood of an irregular singular point is difficult to determine and very erratic, so this topic is not discussed further.

There is no loss of generality involved in only considering an equation with a regular singular point located at the origin, because if such a point is located at \( x_0 \) the transformation \( X = x - x_0 \) will shift it to the origin.

If the behavior of a solution is required for large \( x \) (an asymptotic solution), making the transformation \( x = 1/z \) in the differential equation enables the behavior for large \( x \) to be determined by considering the case of small \( z \). If \( z = 0 \) is a regular point of the transformed equation, the original equation is said to have **regular point at infinity**. If, however, \( z = 0 \) is a regular singular point of the transformed equation, the original equation is said to have a **regular singular point at infinity**.

The **Frobenius method** provides the solution of the differential equation

4. \( \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + p(x) \frac{dy}{dx} + q(x)y = 0 \)

in a neighborhood of a regular singular point located at the origin. Remember that if the regular singular point is located at \( x_0 \), the transformation \( X = x - x_0 \) reduces the equation to the preceding case.

A solution is sought in the form

5. \( y(x) = x^\lambda \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n \quad [a_0 \neq 0] \),

where the number \( \lambda \) may be either real or complex, and is such that \( a_0 \neq 0 \).

Expressing \( p(x) \) and \( q(x) \) as their Maclaurin series

6. \( p(x) = p_0 + p_1(x) + p_2x^2 + \cdots \) and \( q(x) = q_0 + q_1(x) + q_2x^2 + \cdots \),
22.16 Power Series and Frobenius Methods

and substituting for $y(x)$, $p(x)$ and $q(x)$ in 22.16.1.4, as in the power series method, leads to an identity involving powers of $x$, in which the coefficient of the lowest power $x^{\lambda}$ is given by

$$[\lambda(\lambda - 1) + p_0\lambda + q_0]a_0 = 0.$$ 

Since, by hypothesis, $a_0 \neq 0$, this leads to the **indicial equation**

7. $\lambda(\lambda - 1) + p_0\lambda + q_0 = 0,$

from which the permissible values of the exponent $\lambda$ may be found.

The form of the two linearly independent solutions $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$ of 22.16.1.4 is determined as follows:

**Case 1.** If the indicial equation has distinct roots $\lambda_1$ and $\lambda_2$ that do not differ by an integer, then for $x > 0$

8. $y_1(x) = x^{\lambda_1} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n$

and

9. $y_2(x) = x^{\lambda_2} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n x^n,$

where the coefficients $a_n$ and $b_n$ are found recursively in terms of $a_0$ and $b_0$, as in the power series method, by equating to zero the coefficient of the general term in the identity in powers of $x$ that led to the indicial equation, and first setting $\lambda = \lambda_1$ and then $\lambda = \lambda_2$. Here the coefficients in the solution for $y_2(x)$ have been denoted by $b_n$, instead of $a_n$, to avoid confusion with the coefficients in $y_1(x)$. The same convention is used in Cases 2 and 3, which follow.

**Case 2.** If the indicial equation has a double root $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2 = \lambda$, then

10. $y_1(x) = x^{\lambda} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n$

and

11. $y_2(x) = y_1(x) \ln |x| + x^{\lambda} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n x^n.$

**Case 3.** If the indicial equation has roots $\lambda_1$ and $\lambda_2$ that differ by an integer and $\lambda_1 > \lambda_2$, then

12. $y_1(x) = x^{\lambda_1} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n$
and

13. \[ y_2(x) = Ky_1(x) \ln |x| + x^{\lambda_2} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n x^n, \]

where \( K \) may be zero.

In all three cases the coefficients \( a_n \) in the solutions \( y_1(x) \) are found recursively in terms of the arbitrary constant \( a_0 \neq 0 \), as already indicated. In Case 1 the solution \( y_2(x) \) is found in the same manner, with the coefficients \( b_n \) being found recursively in terms of the arbitrary constant \( b_0 \neq 0 \). However, the solutions \( y_2(x) \) in Cases 2 and 3 are more difficult to obtain. One technique for finding \( y_2(x) \) involves using a variant of the method of variation of parameters (see 22.10.1). If \( x < 0 \) replace \( x^\lambda \) by \(|x|^\lambda\) in results 5 to 13.

If \( y_1(x) \) is a known solution of

14. \[ \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + p(x) \frac{dy}{dx} + q(x)y = 0, \]

a second linearly independent solution can be shown to have the form

15. \[ y_2(x) = y_1(x)v(x), \]

where

16. \[ v(x) = \int \frac{\exp[-\int p(x)dx]}{[y_1(x)]^2} dx. \]

This is called the integral method for the determination of a second linearly independent solution in terms of a known solution. Often the integral determining \( v(x) \) cannot be evaluated analytically, but if the numerator and denominator of the integrand are expressed in terms of power series, the method of 1.11.1.4 may be used to determine their quotient, which may then be integrated term by term to obtain \( v(x) \), and hence \( y_2(x) \) in the form \( y_2(x) = y_1(x)v(x) \). This method will generate the logarithmic term automatically when it is required.

**Example 22.17** (distinct roots \( \lambda_1, \lambda_2 \) not differing by an integer). The differential equation

\[ x \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + \left( \frac{1}{2} - x \right) \frac{dy}{dx} + 2y = 0 \]

has a regular singular point at the origin.

The indicial equation is

\[ \lambda \left( \lambda - \frac{1}{2} \right) = 0, \]

which corresponds to Case 1 because

\[ \lambda_1 = 0, \lambda_2 = \frac{1}{2}. \]
The coefficient of $x^{n+\lambda-1}$ obtained when the Frobenius method is used is

$$a_n(n + \lambda)\left(n + \lambda - \frac{1}{2}\right) + a_{n-1}(n + \lambda - 3) = 0,$$

so the recursion formula relating $a_n$ to $a_{n-1}$ is

$$a_n = \frac{(n + \lambda - 3)}{(n + \lambda)(n + \lambda - \frac{1}{2})} a_{n-1}.$$

Setting $\lambda = \lambda_1 = 0$ we find that

$$a_1 = -4a_0, \quad a_2 = \frac{4}{3}a_0 \quad \text{and} \quad a_n = 0 \text{ for } n > 2.$$

The corresponding solution

$$y_1(x) = a_0\left(1 - 4x + \frac{4}{3}x^2\right)$$

is simply a second-degree polynomial.

Setting $\lambda = \lambda_2 = \frac{1}{2}$, a routine calculation shows the coefficient $b_n$ is given by

$$b_n = \frac{b_1}{(4n^2 - 1)(2n - 3)n!},$$

so the second linearly independent solution is

$$y_2(x) = b_0 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^{n+1/2}}{(4n^2 - 1)(2n - 3)n!}.$$

**Example 22.18** (equal roots $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2 = \lambda$). The differential equation

$$x \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + (1 - x) \frac{dy}{dx} + y = 0$$

has a regular singular point at the origin.

The indicial equation is

$$\lambda^2 = 0,$$

which corresponds to Case 2 since $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2 = 0$ is a repeated root.
The recursion formula obtained as in Example 22.17 is
\[ a_n = \frac{(n + \lambda - 2)}{(n + \lambda)^2} a_{n-1}. \]

Setting \( \lambda = 0 \) then shows that one solution is
\[ y_1(x) = a_0 (1 - x). \]

Using the integral method to find \( y_2(x) \) leads to the second linearly independent solution
\[ y_2(x) = b_0 (1 - x) \left[ \ln |x| + 3x + \frac{11}{4} x^2 + \frac{49}{18} x^3 + \cdots \right], \]
in which there is no simple formula for the general term in the series.

**Example 22.19** (roots \( \lambda_1, \lambda_2 \) that differ by an integer). The differential equation
\[ x \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} - x \frac{dy}{dx} + 2y = 0 \]
has a regular singular point at the origin.

The indicial equation is
\[ \lambda(\lambda - 1) = 0, \]
which corresponds to Case 3 because \( \lambda_1 = 1 \) and \( \lambda_2 = 0 \).

The recursion formula obtained as in Example 22.17 is
\[ a_n = \frac{(n + \lambda - 2)}{(n + \lambda)(n + \lambda - 1)} \quad [n \geq 1]. \]

Setting \( \lambda = 1 \) shows one solution to be
\[ y_1(x) = a_0 \left( x - \frac{1}{2} x^2 \right). \]

Using the integral method to find \( y_2(x) \) leads to the second linearly independent solution
\[ y_2(x) = 2 \left( x - \frac{1}{2} x^2 \right) \ln |x| + \left( -1 + \frac{1}{2} x + \frac{9}{4} x^2 + \cdots \right), \]
where again there is no simple formula for the general term in the series.
22.17 THE HYPERGEOMETRIC EQUATION

22.17.1

The hypergeometric equation due to Gauss contains, as special cases, many of the differential equations whose solutions are the special functions that arise in applications.

The general hypergeometric equation has the form

\[ x(1-x) \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - [(a + b + 1)x - c] \frac{dy}{dx} - aby = 0, \]

in which \( a, b, \) and \( c \) are real constants.

Using the Frobenius method the equation can be shown to have the general solution

\[ y(x) = Ay_1(x) + By_2(x), \]

where, for \(|x| < 1\) and \( c \neq 0, 1, 2, \ldots, \)

\[ y_1(x) = F(a, b, c; x) \]
\[ = 1 + \frac{ab}{c} x + \frac{a(a + 1)b(b + 1)}{c(c + 1)} \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{a(a + 1)(a + 2)b(b + 1)(b + 2)}{c(c + 1)(c + 2)} \frac{x^3}{3!} + \ldots \]
\[ y_2(x) = x^{1-c} F(a - c + 1, b - c + 1, 2 - c; x); \]

and for \(|x| > 1, a - b \neq 0, 1, 2, \ldots, \)

\[ y_1(x) = x^{-a} F(a, a - c + 1, a - b + 1; x^{-1}) \]
\[ y_2(x) = x^{-b} F(b, b - c + 1, b - a + 1; x^{-1}); \]

while for \((x - 1) < 1, a + b - c \neq 0, 1, 2, \ldots, \)

\[ y_1(x) = F(a, b, a + b - c + 1; 1 - x) \]
\[ y_2(x) = (1 - x)^{c-a-b} F(c - b, c - a, c - a - b + 1; 1 - x). \]

The confluent hypergeometric equation has the form

\[ x \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + (c - x) \frac{dy}{dx} - by = 0, \]

with \( b \) and \( c \) real constants, and the general solution obtained by the Frobenius method

\[ y(x) = Ay_1(x) + By_2(x), \]
where for $c \neq 0, 1, 2, \ldots$,

11. $y_1(x) = F(b, c; x) = 1 + \frac{b}{c}x + \frac{b(b+1)}{c(c+1)} \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{b(b+1)(b+2)}{c(c+1)(c+2)} \frac{x^3}{3!} + \cdots$

12. $y_2(x) = x^{1-c} F(b - c + 1, 2 - c; x)$.

### 22.18 NUMERICAL METHODS

#### 22.18.1

When numerical solutions to initial value problems are required that cannot be obtained by analytical means it is necessary to use numerical methods. From the many methods that exist we describe in order of increasing accuracy only Euler’s method, the modified Euler method, the fourth-order Runge–Kutta method and the Runge–Kutta–Fehlberg method. The section concludes with a brief discussion of how methods for the solution of initial value problems can be used to solve two-point boundary value problems for second-order equations.

**Euler’s method.** The Euler method provides a numerical approximation to the solution of the initial value problem

1. $\frac{dy}{dx} = f(x, y),$

which is subject to the initial condition

2. $y(x_0) = y_0.$

Let each increment (step) in $x$ be $h$, so that at the $n$th step

3. $x_n = x_0 + nh.$

Then the Euler algorithm for the determination of the approximation $y_{n+1}$ to $y(x_{n+1})$ is

4. $y_{n+1} = y_n + f(x_n, y_n)h.$

The method uses a tangent line approximation to the solution curve through $(x_n, y_n)$ in order to determine the approximation $y_{n+1}$ to $y(x_{n+1}).$ The local error involved is $O(h^2).$ The method does not depend on equal step lengths at each stage of the calculation, and if the solution changes rapidly the step length may be reduced in order to control the local error.

**Modified Euler method.** The modified Euler method is a simple refinement of the Euler method that takes some account of the curvature of the solution curve through $(x_n, y_n)$
when estimating \(y_{n+1}\). The modification involves taking as the gradient of the tangent line approximation at \((x_n, y_n)\) the average of the gradients at \((x_n, y_n)\) and \((x_{n+1}, y_{n+1})\) as determined by the Euler method.

The algorithm for the modified Euler method takes the following form: If

5. \(\frac{dy}{dx} = f(x, y)\),

subject to the initial condition

6. \(y(x_0) = y_0\),

and all steps are of length \(h\), so that after \(n\) steps

7. \(x_n = x_0 + nh\),

then

8. \(y_{n+1} = y_n + \frac{h}{2} [f(x_n, y_n) + f(x_n + h, y_n) + f(x_n, y_n)h]\).

The local error involved when estimating \(y_{n+1}\) from \(y_n\) is \(O(h^3)\). Here, as in the Euler method, if required the step length may be changed as the calculation proceeds.

**Runge–Kutta Fourth-Order Method.** The Runge–Kutta (R–K) fourth-order method is an accurate and flexible method based on a Taylor series approximation to the function \(f(x, y)\) in the initial value problem

9. \(\frac{dy}{dx} = f(x, y)\)

subject to the initial condition

10. \(y(x_0) = y_0\).

The increment \(h\) in \(x\) may be changed at each step, but it is usually kept constant so that after \(n\) steps

11. \(x_n = x_0 + nh\).

The Runge–Kutta algorithm for the determination of the approximation \(y_{n+1}\) to \(y(x_{n+1})\) is

12. \(y_{n+1} = y_n + \frac{1}{6} (k_1 + 2k_2 + 2k_3 + k_4)\),
where

13. \( k_1 = hf(x_n, y_n) \)
   \[ k_2 = hf\left(x_n + \frac{1}{2}h, y_n + \frac{1}{2}k_1\right) \]
   \[ k_3 = hf\left(x_n + \frac{1}{2}h, y_n + \frac{1}{2}k_2\right) \]
   \[ k_4 = hf\left(x_{n+1}, y_n + k_3\right). \]

The local error involved in the determination of \( y_{n+1} \) from \( y_n \) is \( O(h^5) \).

**The Runge–Kutta Method for Systems.** The Runge–Kutta method extends immediately to the solution of problems of the type

14. \( \frac{dy}{dx} = f(x, y, z) \)

15. \( \frac{dz}{dx} = g(x, y, z), \)

subject to the initial conditions

16. \( y(x_0) = y_0 \) and \( z(x_0) = z_0. \)

At the \( n \)th integration step, using a step of length \( h \), the Runge–Kutta algorithm for the system takes the form

17. \( y_{n+1} = y_n + \frac{1}{6}(k_1 + 2k_2 + 2k_3 + k_4) \)

18. \( z_{n+1} = z_n + \frac{1}{6}(K_1 + 2K_2 + 2K_3 + K_4), \)

where

19. \( k_1 = hf(x_n, y_n, z_n) \)
   \[ k_2 = hf\left(x_n + \frac{1}{2}h, y_n + \frac{1}{2}k_1, z_n + \frac{1}{2}K_1\right) \]
   \[ k_3 = hf\left(x_n + \frac{1}{2}h, y_n + \frac{1}{2}k_2, z_n + \frac{1}{2}K_2\right) \]
   \[ k_4 = hf\left(x_n + h, y_n + k_3, z_n + K_3\right) \]
and

20. \[ K_1 = hg(x_n, y_n, z_n) \]
\[ K_2 = hg\left(x_n + \frac{1}{2} h, y_n + \frac{1}{2} k_1, z_n + \frac{1}{2} K_1\right) \]
\[ K_3 = hg\left(x_n + \frac{1}{2} h, y_n + \frac{1}{2} k_2, z_n + \frac{1}{2} K_2\right) \]
\[ K_4 = hg(x_n + h, y_n + k_3, z_n + K_3). \]

As with the Runge–Kutta method, the local error involved in the determination of \( y_{n+1} \) from \( y_n \) and \( z_{n+1} \) from \( z_n \) is \( O(h^5) \).

This method may also be used to solve the second-order equation

21. \[ \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} = H(x, y, \frac{dy}{dx}) \]

subject to the initial conditions

22. \( y(x_0) = a \) and \( y'(x_0) = b, \)

by setting \( z = \frac{dy}{dx} \) and replacing the second-order equation by the system

23. \[ \frac{dy}{dx} = z \]

24. \[ \frac{dz}{dx} = H(x, y, z), \]

subject to the initial conditions

25. \( y(x_0) = a, z(x_0) = b. \)

Runge–Kutta–Fehlberg Method. The Runge–Kutta–Fehlberg (R–K–F) method is an adaptive technique that uses a Runge-Kutta method with a local error of order 5 in order to estimate the local error in the Runge–Kutta method of order 4. The result is then used to adjust the step length \( h \) so the magnitude of the global error is bounded by some given tolerance \( \varepsilon \). In general, the step length is changed after each step, but high accuracy is attained if \( \varepsilon \) is taken to be suitably small, though this may be at the expense of (many) extra steps in the calculation. Because of the computation involved, the method is only suitable for implementation on a computer, though the calculation is efficient because only six evaluations of the \( f(x, y) \) are required at each step compared with the four required for the Runge–Kutta method of order 4.

The R–K–F algorithm for the determination of the approximation \( \bar{y}_{n+1} \) to \( y(x_{n+1}) \) is as follows: It is necessary to obtain a numerical solution to the initial value problem
26. \( \frac{dy}{dx} = f(x, y) \),

subject to the initial condition

27. \( y(x_0) = y_0 \),

in which the magnitude of the global error is to be bounded by a given tolerance \( \epsilon \).

The approximation \( \tilde{y}_{n+1} \) to \( y(x_{n+1}) \) is given by

28. \( \tilde{y}_{n+1} = y_n = \frac{16}{135} k_1 + \frac{6656}{12825} k_3 + \frac{28561}{56430} k_4 - \frac{9}{50} k_5 + \frac{2}{55} k_6 \),

where \( y_{n+1} \) used in the determination of the step length is

29. \( y_{n+1} = y_n + \frac{25}{216} k_1 + \frac{1408}{2565} k_3 + \frac{2197}{4104} k_4 - \frac{1}{5} k_s \)

and

30. \( k_1 = hf(x_n, y_n) \)

\[ k_2 = hf \left( x_n + \frac{1}{4} h, y_n + \frac{1}{4} k_1 \right) \]

\[ k_3 = hf \left( x_n + \frac{3}{8} h, y_n + \frac{3}{32} k_1 + \frac{9}{32} k_2 \right) \]

\[ k_4 = hf \left( x_n + \frac{12}{13} h, y_n + \frac{1932}{2197} k_1 - \frac{7200}{2197} k_2 + \frac{7296}{2197} k_3 \right) \]

\[ k_5 = hf \left( x_n + h, y_n + \frac{439}{216} k_1 - 8k_2 + \frac{3680}{513} k_3 - \frac{845}{4104} k_4 \right) \]

\[ k_6 = hf \left( x_n + \frac{1}{2} h, y_n - \frac{8}{27} k_1 + 2k_2 - \frac{3544}{2565} k_3 + \frac{1859}{4104} k_4 - \frac{11}{40} k_5 \right) . \]

The factor \( \mu \) by which the new step length \( \mu h \) is to be determined so that the global error bound \( \epsilon \) is maintained is usually taken to be given

31. \( \mu = 0.84 \left( \frac{eh}{|\tilde{y}_{n+1} - y_{n+1}|} \right)^{1/4} \).

The relative accuracy of these methods is illustrated by their application to the following two examples.
Example 22.20  Solve the initial value problem

\[
x \frac{dy}{dx} = -6y + 3xy^{4/3},
\]

subject to the initial condition \(y(1) = 2\).

After division by \(x\), the differential equation is seen to be a Bernoulli equation, and a routine calculation shows its solution to be

\[
y = \left[ x + x^2 \left( \frac{1}{2}x^{2/3} - 1 \right) \right]^{-3}.
\]

The numerical solutions obtained by the methods described above are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(x_n)</th>
<th>(y_n) (\text{Euler})</th>
<th>(y_n) (\text{Modified Euler})</th>
<th>(y_n) (\text{R–K})</th>
<th>(y_n) (\text{R–K–F})</th>
<th>(y_n) (\text{Exact})</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>1.55953</td>
<td>1.624075</td>
<td>1.626173</td>
<td>1.626165</td>
<td>1.626165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>1.24815</td>
<td>1.354976</td>
<td>1.358449</td>
<td>1.358437</td>
<td>1.358437</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>1.027235</td>
<td>1.156977</td>
<td>1.161392</td>
<td>1.161378</td>
<td>1.161378</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>0.86407</td>
<td>1.008072</td>
<td>1.013169</td>
<td>1.013155</td>
<td>1.013155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>0.740653</td>
<td>0.894173</td>
<td>0.899801</td>
<td>0.899786</td>
<td>0.899786</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>0.645428</td>
<td>0.805964</td>
<td>0.812040</td>
<td>0.812025</td>
<td>0.812025</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>0.570727</td>
<td>0.737119</td>
<td>0.743608</td>
<td>0.743593</td>
<td>0.743593</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>0.51317</td>
<td>0.683251</td>
<td>0.690149</td>
<td>0.690133</td>
<td>0.690133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>0.46354</td>
<td>0.641264</td>
<td>0.648593</td>
<td>0.648578</td>
<td>0.648578</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>0.424781</td>
<td>0.608957</td>
<td>0.616762</td>
<td>0.616745</td>
<td>0.616745</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example 22.21  Solve Bessel’s equation

\[
x^2 \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + x \frac{dy}{dx} + (x^2 - n^2) y = 0
\]

in the interval \(1 \leq x \leq 5\) for the case \(n = 0\), subject to the initial conditions \(y(1) = 1\) and \(y'(1) = 0\).

This has the analytical solution

\[
y(x) = \frac{Y_1(1)J_0(x)}{J_0(1)Y_1(1) - J_1(1)Y_0(1)} - \frac{J_1(1)Y_0(x)}{J_0(1)Y_1(1) - J_1(1)Y_0(1)}.
\]

The numerical results obtained by the Runge–Kutta method with a uniform step length \(h = 0.4\) are shown in the second column of the following table, while the third and fourth columns show the results obtained by the R–K–F method with \(\epsilon = 10^{-6}\) and the exact result,
respectively. It is seen that in the interval \(1 \leq x \leq 5\), the R–K–F method and the exact result agree to six decimal places.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(x_n)</th>
<th>(\langle y_n \rangle)</th>
<th>R–K</th>
<th>R–K–F</th>
<th>Exact</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.000000</td>
<td>1.000000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>0.929215</td>
<td>0.929166</td>
<td>0.929166</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>0.74732</td>
<td>0.747221</td>
<td>0.747221</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>0.495544</td>
<td>0.495410</td>
<td>0.495410</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>0.214064</td>
<td>0.213918</td>
<td>0.213918</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>−0.058502</td>
<td>−0.058627</td>
<td>−0.058627</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>−0.288252</td>
<td>−0.288320</td>
<td>−0.288320</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>−0.449422</td>
<td>−0.449401</td>
<td>−0.449401</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>−0.527017</td>
<td>−0.526887</td>
<td>−0.526887</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.6</td>
<td>−0.518105</td>
<td>−0.517861</td>
<td>−0.517861</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>−0.431532</td>
<td>−0.431190</td>
<td>−0.431190</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Two-point boundary value problems—the shooting method.** A two-point boundary value problem for the second-order equation,

\[
\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = f(x, y, y') \quad [a \leq x \leq b],
\]

which may be either linear or nonlinear, involves finding the solution \(y(x)\) that satisfies the boundary conditions

\[y(a) = \alpha \quad \text{and} \quad y(b) = \beta\]

at the end points of the interval \(a \leq x \leq b\). Numerical methods for solving initial value problems for second-order equations cannot be used to solve this problem directly, because instead of specifying \(y\) and \(y'\) at an initial point \(x = a\), \(y\) alone is specified at two distinct points \(x = a\) and \(x = b\).

To understand the shooting method used to solve 22.18.1.31 subject to the boundary conditions of 22.18.1.32, let us suppose that one of the methods for solving initial value problems, say, the Runge–Kutta method, is applied twice to the equation with two slightly different sets of initial conditions. Specifically, suppose the same initial condition \(y(a) = \alpha\) is used in each case, but that two different initial gradients \(y'(a)\) are used, so that

(I) \[y(a) = \alpha \quad \text{and} \quad y'(a) = \gamma\]

and

(II) \[y(a) = \alpha \quad \text{and} \quad y'(a) = \delta\]
where $\gamma \neq \delta$ are chosen arbitrarily. Let the two different solutions $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$ correspond, respectively, to the initial conditions (I) and (II). Typical solutions are illustrated in Figure 22.1, in which $y_1(b)$ and $y_2(b)$ differ from the required result $y(b) \equiv \beta$.

The approach used to obtain the desired solution is called the **shooting method** because if each solution curve is considered as the trajectory of a particle shot from the point $x = a$ at the elevation $y(a) = \alpha$, provided there is a unique solution, the required terminal value $y(b) = \beta$ will be attained when the trajectory starts with the correct gradient $y'(a)$.

When 22.18.1.31 is a linear equation, and so can be written

$$y'' = p(x)y' + q(x)y + r(x) \quad [a \leq x \leq b],$$

the appropriate choice for $y'(a)$ is easily determined. Setting

$$y(x) = k_1y_1(x) + k_2y_2(x),$$

with

$$k_1 + k_2 = 1,$$

and substituting into 22.18.1.35 leads to the result

$$\frac{d^2}{dx^2} (k_1y_1 + k_2y_2) = p(x) \frac{d}{dx} (k_1y_1 + k_2y_2) + q(x)(k_1y_1 + k_2y_2) + r(x),$$

which shows that $y(x) = k_1y_1(x) + k_2y_2(x)$ is itself a solution. Furthermore, $y(x) = k_1y_1(x) + k_2y_2(x)$ satisfies the left-hand boundary condition $y(a) = \alpha$.

Setting $x = b, y(b) = \beta$ in 22.18.1.35 gives

$$\beta = k_1y_1(b) + k_2y_2(b),$$
which can be solved in conjunction with \( k_1 + k_2 = 1 \) to give

\[
38. \quad k_1 = \frac{\beta - y_2(b)}{y_1(b) - y_2(b)} \quad \text{and} \quad k_2 = 1 - k_1.
\]

The solution is then seen to be given by

\[
39. \quad y(x) = \left[ \frac{\beta - y_2(b)}{y_1(b) - y_2(b)} \right] y_1(x) + \left[ \frac{y_1(b) - \beta}{y_1(b) - y_2(b)} \right] y_2(x) \quad [a \leq x \leq b].
\]

A variant of this method involves starting from the two quite different initial value problems; namely, the original equation

\[
40. \quad y'' = p(x)y' + q(x)y + r(x),
\]

with the initial conditions

(III) \( y(a) = \alpha \) and \( y'(a) = 0 \)

and the corresponding homogeneous equation

\[
41. \quad y'' = p(x)y' + q(x)y,
\]

with the initial conditions

(IV) \( y(a) = 0 \) and \( y'(a) = 1 \).

Using the fact that adding to the solution of the homogeneous equation any solution of the inhomogeneous equation will give rise to the general solution of the inhomogeneous equation, a similar form of argument to the one used above shows the required solution to be given by

\[
42. \quad y(x) = y_3(x) + \left[ \frac{\beta - y_3(b)}{y_4(b)} \right] y_4(x),
\]

where \( y_3(x) \) and \( y_4(x) \) are, respectively, the solutions of 22.18.1.40 with boundary conditions (III) and 22.18.1.41 with boundary conditions (IV).

The method must be modified when 22.18.1.31 is \textbf{nonlinear}, because solutions of homogeneous equations are no longer additive. It then becomes necessary to use an iterative method to adjust repeated estimates of \( y'(a) \) until the terminal value \( y(b) = \beta \) is attained to the required accuracy.

We mention only the iterative approach based on the \textit{secant method of interpolation}, because this is the simplest to implement. Let the two-point boundary value problem be

\[
43. \quad y'' = f(x, y, y') \quad [a \leq x \leq b],
\]
subject to the boundary conditions

\[ y(a) = \alpha \quad \text{and} \quad y(b) = \beta. \]

Let \( k_0 \) and \( k_1 \) be two estimates of the initial gradient \( y'(a) \), and denote the solution of

\[ y'' = f(x, y, y'), \quad \text{with} \quad y(a) = \alpha \quad \text{and} \quad y'(a) = k_0, \]

by \( y_0(x) \), and the solution of

\[ y'' = f(x, y, y'), \quad \text{with} \quad y(a) = \alpha \quad \text{and} \quad y'(a) = k_1, \]

by \( y_1(x) \).

The iteration then proceeds using successive values of the gradient \( k_i \), for \( i = 2, 3, \ldots \), and the corresponding terminal values \( y_i(b) \), in the scheme

\[ k_i = k_{i-1} - \frac{(y_{i-1}(b) - \beta) (k_{i-1} - k_{i-2})}{y_{i-1}(b) - y_{i-2}(b)}, \]

starting from \( k_0 \) and \( k_1 \), until for some \( i = N \), \( |y_N(b) - y_{N-1}(b)| < \varepsilon \), where \( \varepsilon \) is a preassigned tolerance. The required approximate solution is then given by \( y_N(x) \), for \( a \leq x \leq b \).

In particular, it is usually necessary to experiment with the initial estimates \( k_0 \) and \( k_1 \) to ensure the convergence of the iterative scheme.
23.1 SCALARS AND VECTORS

23.1.1 Basic Definitions

23.1.1.1

A scalar quantity is completely defined by a single real number (positive or negative) that measures its magnitude. Examples of scalars are length, mass, temperature, and electric potential. In print, scalars are represented by Roman or Greek letters like \( r, m, T \), and \( \phi \).

A vector quantity is defined by giving its magnitude (a nonnegative scalar), and its line of action (a line in space) together with its sense (direction) along the line. Examples of vectors are velocity, acceleration, angular velocity, and electric field. In print, vector quantities are represented by Roman and Greek boldface letters like \( \nu, \ a, \ \Omega, \ and \ E \). By convention, the magnitudes of vectors \( \nu, \ a, \ and \ \Omega \) are usually represented by the corresponding ordinary letters \( \nu, \ a, \ and \ \Omega, \ etc \). The magnitude of a vector \( \mathbf{r} \) is also denoted by \(|\mathbf{r}|\), so that

1. \( r = |\mathbf{r}| \).

A vector of unit magnitude in the direction of \( \mathbf{r} \), called a unit vector, is denoted by \( \mathbf{e}_r \), so that

2. \( \mathbf{r} = r \mathbf{e}_r \).

The null vector (zero vector) \( \mathbf{0} \) is a vector with zero magnitude and no direction.

A geometrical interpretation of a vector is obtained by using a straight-line segment parallel to the line of action of the vector, whose length is equal (or proportional) to the magnitude of the vector, with the sense of the vector being indicated by an arrow along the line segment.

415
The end of the line segment from which the arrow is directed is called the initial point of the vector, while the other end (toward which the arrow is directed) is called the terminal point of the vector.

A right-handed system of rectangular cartesian coordinate axes $0\{x, y, z\}$ is one in which the positive direction along the $z$-axis is determined by the direction in which a right-handed screw advances when rotated from the $x$- to the $y$-axis. In such a system the signed lengths of the projections of a vector $\mathbf{r}$ with initial point $P(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ and terminal point $Q(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ onto the $x$-, $y$-, and $z$-axes are called the $x$, $y$, and $z$ components of the vector. Thus the $x$, $y$, and $z$ components of $\mathbf{r}$ directed from $P$ to $Q$ are $x_1 - x_0$, $y_1 - y_0$, and $z_1 - z_0$, respectively (Figure 23.1(a)). A vector directed from the origin 0 to the point $P(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ has $x_0$, $y_0$, and $z_0$ as its respective $x$, $y$, and $z$ components [Figure 23.1(b)]. Special unit vectors directed along the $x$-, $y$-, and $z$-axes are denoted by $\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{j}$, and $\mathbf{k}$, respectively.

The cosines of the angles $\alpha$, $\beta$, and $\gamma$ between $\mathbf{r}$ and the respective $x$-, $y$-, and $z$-axes shown in Figure 23.2 are called the direction cosines of the vector $\mathbf{r}$. If the components of $\mathbf{r}$ are $x$, $y$, and $z$, then the respective direction cosines of $\mathbf{r}$, denoted by $l$, $m$, and $n$, are

3. $l = \frac{x}{r}$, $m = \frac{y}{r}$, $n = \frac{z}{r}$ with $r = (x^2 + y^2 + z^2)^{1/2}$.

The direction cosines are related by

4. $l^2 + m^2 + n^2 = 1$.

Numbers $u$, $v$, and $w$ proportional to $l$, $m$, and $n$, respectively, are called direction ratios.

\[ \mathbf{r} = (x_1 - x_0) \mathbf{i} + (y_1 - y_0) \mathbf{j} + (z_1 - z_0) \mathbf{k} \]

(a)

\[ \mathbf{r} = x_0 \mathbf{i} + y_0 \mathbf{j} + z_0 \mathbf{k} \]

(b)

Figure 23.1.
23.1 Scalars and Vectors

23.1.2 Vector Addition and Subtraction

23.1.2.1

Vector addition of vectors \(\mathbf{a}\) and \(\mathbf{b}\), denoted by \(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}\), is performed by first translating vector \(\mathbf{b}\), without rotation, so that its initial point coincides with the terminal point of \(\mathbf{a}\). The vector sum \(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}\) is then defined as the vector whose initial point is the initial point of \(\mathbf{a}\), and whose terminal point is the new terminal point of \(\mathbf{b}\) (the triangle rule for vector addition) (Figure 23.3(a)).

The negative of vector \(\mathbf{c}\), denoted by \(-\mathbf{c}\), is obtained from \(\mathbf{c}\) by reversing its sense, as in Figure 23.3(b), and so

1. \(c = |c| = |-c|\).

The difference \(\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}\) of vectors \(\mathbf{a}\) and \(\mathbf{b}\) is defined as the vector sum \(\mathbf{a} + (-\mathbf{b})\). This corresponds geometrically to translating vector \(-\mathbf{b}\), without rotation, until its initial point coincides with the terminal point of \(\mathbf{a}\), when the vector \(\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}\) is the vector drawn from the initial point of \(\mathbf{a}\) to the new terminal point of \(-\mathbf{b}\) (Figure 23.4(a)). Equivalently, \(\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}\) is obtained by bringing into coincidence the initial points of \(\mathbf{a}\) and \(\mathbf{b}\) and defining \(\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}\) as the vector drawn from the terminal point of \(\mathbf{b}\) to the terminal point of \(\mathbf{a}\) [Figure 23.4(b)].

Vector addition obeys the following algebraic rules:

2. \(\mathbf{a} + (-\mathbf{a}) = \mathbf{a} - \mathbf{a} = 0\)

3. \(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c} = \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{a}\) (commutative law)

4. \((\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) + \mathbf{c} = \mathbf{a} + (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c})\) (associative law)
23.1.3 Scaling Vectors

23.1.3.1

A vector $\mathbf{a}$ may be scaled by the scalar $\lambda$ to obtain the new vector $\mathbf{b} = \lambda \mathbf{a}$. The magnitude $b = |\mathbf{b}| = |\lambda \mathbf{a}| = |\lambda| a$. The sense of $\mathbf{b}$ is the same as that of $\mathbf{a}$ if $\lambda > 0$, but it is reversed if $\lambda < 0$. The scaling operation performed on vectors obeys the laws:

1. $\lambda \mathbf{a} = a \lambda$  \hspace{1cm} (commutative law)
2. $(\lambda + \mu) \mathbf{a} = \lambda \mathbf{a} + \mu \mathbf{a}$ \hspace{1cm} (distributive law)
3. $\lambda(\mu \mathbf{a}) = \mu(\lambda \mathbf{a}) = (\lambda \mu) \mathbf{a}$ \hspace{1cm} (associative law)
4. $\lambda(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) = \lambda \mathbf{a} + \lambda \mathbf{b}$ \hspace{1cm} (distributive law)

where $\lambda$, $\mu$ are scalars and $\mathbf{a}$, $\mathbf{b}$ are vectors.
23.1 Scalars and Vectors

23.1.4 Vectors in Component Form

23.1.4.1

If \( \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}, \) and \( \mathbf{c} \) are any three noncoplanar vectors, an arbitrary vector \( \mathbf{r} \) may always be written in the form

1. \[ \mathbf{r} = \lambda_1 \mathbf{a} + \lambda_2 \mathbf{b} + \lambda_3 \mathbf{c}, \]

where the scalars \( \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \) and \( \lambda_3 \) are the components of \( \mathbf{r} \) in the triad of reference vectors \( \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}, \mathbf{c}. \) In the important special case of rectangular Cartesian coordinates \( \{x, y, z\} \), with unit vectors \( \mathbf{i}, \mathbf{j}, \) and \( \mathbf{k} \) along the \( x-, y-, \) and \( z- \)axes, respectively, the vector \( \mathbf{r} \) drawn from point \( P(x_0, y_0, z_0) \) to point \( Q(x_1, y_1, z_1) \) can be written (Figure 23.1(a))

2. \[ \mathbf{r} = (x_1 - x_0) \mathbf{i} + (y_1 - y_0) \mathbf{j} + (z_1 - z_0) \mathbf{k}. \]

Similarly, the vector drawn from the origin to the point \( P(x_0, y_0, z_0) \) becomes (Figure 23.1(b))

3. \[ \mathbf{r} = x_0 \mathbf{i} + y_0 \mathbf{j} + z_0 \mathbf{k}. \]
For 23.1.4.1.2 the magnitude of \( \mathbf{r} \) is

\[
4. \quad r = |\mathbf{r}| = \left( (x_1 - x_0)^2 + (y_1 - y_0)^2 + (z_1 - z_0)^2 \right)^{1/2},
\]

whereas for 23.1.4.1.3 the magnitude of \( \mathbf{r} \) is

\[
r = |\mathbf{r}| = \left( x_0^2 + y_0^2 + z_0^2 \right)^{1/2}.
\]

In terms of the direction cosines \( l, m, n \) (see 23.1.1.1.3) the vector \( \mathbf{r} = x\mathbf{i} + y\mathbf{j} + z\mathbf{k} \) becomes

\[
r = \mathbf{r}(l\mathbf{i} + m\mathbf{j} + n\mathbf{k}),
\]

where \( l\mathbf{i} + m\mathbf{j} + n\mathbf{k} \) is the unit vector in the direction of \( \mathbf{r} \).

If \( \mathbf{a} = a_1\mathbf{i} + a_2\mathbf{j} + a_3\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{b} = b_1\mathbf{i} + b_2\mathbf{j} + b_3\mathbf{k}, \) and \( \lambda \) and \( \mu \) are scalars, then

\[
5. \quad \lambda \mathbf{a} = \lambda a_1\mathbf{i} + \lambda a_2\mathbf{j} + \lambda a_3\mathbf{k},
6. \quad \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} = (a_1 + b_1)\mathbf{i} + (a_2 + b_2)\mathbf{j} + (a_3 + b_3)\mathbf{k},
7. \quad \lambda \mathbf{a} + \mu \mathbf{b} = (\lambda a_1 + \mu b_1)\mathbf{i} + (\lambda a_2 + \mu b_2)\mathbf{j} + (\lambda a_3 + \mu b_3)\mathbf{k},
\]

which are equivalent to the results in 23.1.3.

### 23.2 SCALAR PRODUCTS

#### 23.2.1

The **scalar product** (dot product or inner product) of vectors \( \mathbf{a} = a_1\mathbf{i} + a_2\mathbf{j} + a_3\mathbf{k} \) and \( \mathbf{b} = b_1\mathbf{i} + b_2\mathbf{j} + b_3\mathbf{k} \) inclined at an angle \( \theta \) to one another and written \( \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} \) is defined as the scalar (Figure 23.6)

\[
1. \quad \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}| |\mathbf{b}| \cos \theta
= ab \cos \theta
= a_1 b_1 + a_2 b_2 + a_3 b_3.
\]

If required, the angle between \( \mathbf{a} \) and \( \mathbf{b} \) may be obtained from

\[
2. \quad \cos \theta = \frac{\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{a}| |\mathbf{b}|} = \frac{a_1 b_1 + a_2 b_2 + a_3 b_3}{(a_1^2 + a_2^2 + a_3^2)^{1/2} (b_1^2 + b_2^2 + b_3^2)^{1/2}}.
\]
Properties of the scalar product. If $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are vectors and $\lambda$ and $\mu$ are scalars, then:

3. $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{a}$ (commutative property)
4. $(\lambda \mathbf{a}) \cdot (\mu \mathbf{b}) = \lambda \mu \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}$ (associative property)
5. $\mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}) = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c}$ (distributive property)

Special cases

6. $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 0$ if $\mathbf{a}$, $\mathbf{b}$ are orthogonal $(\theta = \pi/2)$
7. $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}| |\mathbf{b}| = ab$ if $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are parallel $(\theta = 0)$
8. $\mathbf{i} \cdot \mathbf{i} = \mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{k} = 1$ and $\mathbf{i} \cdot \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{k} = \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{i} = 0$.

23.3 VECTOR PRODUCTS

23.3.1

The vector product (cross product) of vectors $\mathbf{a} = a_1 \mathbf{i} + a_2 \mathbf{j} + a_3 \mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{b} = b_1 \mathbf{i} + b_2 \mathbf{j} + b_3 \mathbf{k}$ inclined at an angle $\theta$ to one another and written $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ is defined as the vector

1. $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}| |\mathbf{b}| \sin \theta \mathbf{n} = ab \sin \theta \mathbf{n}$,

where $\mathbf{n}$ is a unit vector normal to the plane containing $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ directed in the sense in which a right-handed screw would advance if rotated from $\mathbf{a}$ to $\mathbf{b}$ (Figure 23.7).

An alternative and more convenient definition of $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ is

2. $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \end{vmatrix}$.

If required, the angle $\theta$ between $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ follows from

3. $\sin \theta = \frac{|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}|}{ab}$,

though the result 23.2.1.2 is usually easier to use.

Figure 23.7.
Properties of the vector product. If \( \mathbf{a} \) and \( \mathbf{b} \) are vectors and \( \lambda \) and \( \mu \) are scalars, then

4. \( \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = -\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{a} \) (noncommutative)

5. \( (\lambda \mathbf{a}) \times (\mu \mathbf{b}) = \lambda \mu \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} \) (associative property)

6. \( \mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}) = \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{c} \) (distributive property)

Special cases

7. \( \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{0} \) if \( \mathbf{a} \) and \( \mathbf{b} \) are parallel (\( \theta = 0 \))

8. \( \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = ab \mathbf{n} \) if \( \mathbf{a} \) and \( \mathbf{b} \) are orthogonal (\( \theta = \pi/2 \)) (\( \mathbf{n} \) the unit normal)

9. \( \mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{k}, \quad \mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{k} = \mathbf{i}, \quad \mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{i} = \mathbf{j} \)

10. \( \mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{i} = \mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{k} = \mathbf{0} \)

23.4 TRIPLE PRODUCTS

23.4.1

The scalar triple product of the three vectors \( \mathbf{a} = a_1 \mathbf{i} + a_2 \mathbf{j} + a_3 \mathbf{k} \), \( \mathbf{b} = b_1 \mathbf{i} + b_2 \mathbf{j} + b_3 \mathbf{k} \), and \( \mathbf{c} = c_1 \mathbf{i} + c_2 \mathbf{j} + c_3 \mathbf{k} \), written \( \mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) \), is the scalar

1. \( \mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) = \mathbf{b} \cdot (\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{a}) = \mathbf{c} \cdot (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \).

In terms of components

2. \( \mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) = \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \\ c_1 & c_2 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} \).

The alternative notation \( [abc] \) is also used for the scalar triple product in place of \( \mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) \).

In geometrical terms the absolute value of \( \mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) \) may be interpreted as the volume \( V \) of a parallelepiped in which \( \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}, \) and \( \mathbf{c} \) form three adjacent edges meeting at a corner (Figure 23.8). This interpretation provides a useful test for the linear independence of any three vectors. The vectors \( \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}, \) and \( \mathbf{c} \) are linearly dependent if \( \mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) = 0 \), because \( V = 0 \) implies that the vectors are coplanar, and so \( \mathbf{a} = \lambda \mathbf{b} + \mu \mathbf{c} \) for some scalars \( \lambda \) and \( \mu \); whereas they are linearly independent if \( \mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) \neq 0 \).

The vector triple product of the three vectors \( \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}, \) and \( \mathbf{c} \), denoted by \( \mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) \), is given by

3. \( \mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) = (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c}) \mathbf{b} - (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) \mathbf{c} \).

The parentheses are essential in a vector triple product to avoid ambiguity, because \( \mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) \neq (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \times \mathbf{c} \).
23.6 Derivatives of Vector Functions of a Scalar $t$

23.6.1 Let $x(t)$, $y(t)$, and $z(t)$ be continuous functions of $t$ that are differentiable as many times as necessary, and let $\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{j}$, and $\mathbf{k}$ be the triad of fixed unit vectors introduced in 23.1.4. Then the vector $\mathbf{r}(t)$ given by

1. $\mathbf{r}(t) = x(t)\mathbf{i} + y(t)\mathbf{j} + z(t)\mathbf{k}$

is a vector function of the scalar variable $t$ that has the same continuity and differentiability properties as its components. The first- and second-order derivatives of $\mathbf{r}(t)$ with respect to $t$ are

2. $\frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} = \dot{\mathbf{r}} = \frac{dx}{dt}\mathbf{i} + \frac{dy}{dt}\mathbf{j} + \frac{dz}{dt}\mathbf{k}$

and

3. $\frac{d^2\mathbf{r}}{dt^2} = \ddot{\mathbf{r}} = \frac{d^2x}{dt^2}\mathbf{i} + \frac{d^2y}{dt^2}\mathbf{j} + \frac{d^2z}{dt^2}\mathbf{k}$.
Higher order derivatives are defined in similar fashion so that, in general,

4. \[
\frac{d^n r}{dt^n} = \frac{d^n x}{dt^n} \mathbf{i} + \frac{d^n y}{dt^n} \mathbf{j} + \frac{d^n z}{dt^n} \mathbf{k}.
\]

If \( r \) is the position vector of a point in space of time \( t \), then \( \dot{r} \) is its velocity and \( \ddot{r} \) is its acceleration (Figure 23.9).

**Differentiation of combinations of vector functions of a scalar \( t \).** Let \( u \) and \( v \) be continuous functions of the scalar variable \( t \) that are differentiable as many times as necessary, and let \( \phi(t) \) be a scalar function of \( t \) with the same continuity and differentiability properties as the components of the vector functions. Then the following differentiability results hold:

1. \[
\frac{d}{dt} (u + v) = \frac{du}{dt} + \frac{dv}{dt}
\]

2. \[
\frac{d}{dt} (\phi u) = \frac{d\phi}{dt} u + \phi \frac{du}{dt}
\]

3. \[
\frac{d}{dt} (u \cdot v) = \frac{du}{dt} \cdot v + u \cdot \frac{dv}{dt}
\]

4. \[
\frac{d}{dt} (\phi u \cdot v) = \frac{d\phi}{dt} u \cdot v + \phi \frac{du}{dt} \cdot v + \phi u \cdot \frac{dv}{dt}
\]

5. \[
\frac{d}{dt} (u \times v) = \frac{du}{dt} \times v + u \times \frac{dv}{dt}
\]

6. \[
\frac{d}{dt} (\phi u \times v) = \frac{d\phi}{dt} u \times v + \phi \frac{du}{dt} \times v + \phi u \times \frac{dv}{dt}
\]

![Figure 23.9.](image-url)
23.7 DERIVATIVES OF VECTOR FUNCTIONS OF SEVERAL SCALAR VARIABLES

23.7.1

Let \( u_i(x, y, z) \) and \( v_i(x, y, z) \) for \( i = 1, 2, 3 \) be continuous functions of the scalar variables \( x, y, \) and \( z, \) and let them have as many partial derivatives as necessary.

Define

1. \( u(x, y, z) = u_1i + u_2j + u_3k, \)
2. \( v(x, y, z) = v_1i + v_2j + v_3k, \)

where \( i, j, \) and \( k \) are the triad of fixed unit vectors introduced in 23.1.4. Then the following differentiability results hold:

3. \( \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial u_1}{\partial x}i + \frac{\partial u_2}{\partial x}j + \frac{\partial u_3}{\partial x}k, \)
4. \( \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial u_1}{\partial y}i + \frac{\partial u_2}{\partial y}j + \frac{\partial u_3}{\partial y}k, \)
5. \( \frac{\partial u}{\partial z} = \frac{\partial u_1}{\partial z}i + \frac{\partial u_2}{\partial z}j + \frac{\partial u_3}{\partial z}k, \)

with corresponding results of \( \partial v/\partial x, \partial v/\partial y, \) and \( \partial v/\partial z. \)

Second-order and higher derivatives of \( u \) and \( v \) are defined in the obvious manner:

6. \( \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right), \quad \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right), \quad \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial z} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial z} \right), \ldots \)
7. \( \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \right), \quad \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^2 \partial y} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y} \right), \quad \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^2 \partial z} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial z} \right), \ldots \)
8. \( \frac{\partial}{\partial x} (u \cdot v) = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \cdot v + u \cdot \frac{\partial v}{\partial x}, \)
9. \( \frac{\partial}{\partial x} (u \times v) = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \times v + u \times \frac{\partial v}{\partial x}, \)

with corresponding results for derivatives with respect to \( y \) and \( z \) and for higher order derivatives.

10. \( du = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} dx + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} dy + \frac{\partial u}{\partial z} dz \quad \text{(total differential)} \)
Chapter 23 Vector Analysis

and if \( x = x(t), \ y = y(t), \ z = z(t), \)

11. \[ du = \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \frac{dx}{dt} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \frac{dy}{dt} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial z} \frac{dz}{dt} \right) dt \] (chain rule)

23.8 INTEGRALS OF VECTOR FUNCTIONS OF A SCALAR VARIABLE \( t \)

23.8.1

Let the vector function \( f(t) \) of the scalar variable \( t \) be

1. \( f(t) = f_1(t)i + f_2(t)j + f_3(t)k, \)

where \( f_1, f_2, \) and \( f_3 \) are scalar functions of \( t \) for which a function \( F(t) \) exists such that

2. \( f(t) = \frac{dF}{dt}. \)

Then

3. \[ \int f(t) dt = \int \frac{dF}{dt} dt = F(t) + c, \]

where \( c \) is an arbitrary vector constant. The function \( F(t) \) is called an antiderivative of \( f(t), \) and result 23.8.1.3 is called an indefinite integral of \( f(t). \) Expressed differently, 23.8.1.3 becomes

4. \[ F(t) = i \int f_1(t) dt + j \int f_2(t) dt + k \int f_3(t) dt + c. \]

The definite integral of \( f(t) \) between the scalar limits \( t = t_1 \) and \( t = t_2 \) is

5. \[ \int_{t_1}^{t_2} f(t) dt = F(t_2) - F(t_1). \]

Properties of the definite integral. If \( \lambda \) is a scalar constant, \( t_3 \) is such that \( t_1 < t_3 < t_2, \) and \( u(t) \) and \( v(t) \) are vector functions of the scalar variable \( t, \) then

1. \[ \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \lambda u(t) dt = \lambda \int_{t_1}^{t_2} u(t) dt \] (homogeneity)

2. \[ \int_{t_1}^{t_2} [u(t) + v(t)] dt = \int_{t_1}^{t_2} u(t) dt + \int_{t_1}^{t_2} v(t) dt \] (linearity)

3. \[ \int_{t_1}^{t_2} u(t) dt = - \int_{t_2}^{t_1} u(t) dt \] (interchange of limits)
23.9 Line Integrals

23.9.1

Let $\mathbf{F}$ be a continuous and differentiable vector function of position $P(x, y, z)$ in space, and let $C$ be a path (arc) joining points $P_1(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ and $P_2(x_2, y_2, z_2)$. Then the line integral of $\mathbf{F}$ taken along the path $C$ from $P_1$ to $P_2$ is defined as (Figure 23.10)

1. $\int_C \mathbf{F} \cdot d\mathbf{r} = \int_{P_1}^{P_2} \mathbf{F} \cdot d\mathbf{r} = \int_C (F_1 \, dx + F_2 \, dy + F_3 \, dz)$,

where

2. $\mathbf{F} = F_1 \mathbf{i} + F_2 \mathbf{j} + F_3 \mathbf{k}$,

and

3. $d\mathbf{r} = dx \mathbf{i} + dy \mathbf{j} + dz \mathbf{k}$

is a differential vector displacement along the path $C$. It follows that

4. $\int_{P_1}^{P_2} \mathbf{F} \cdot d\mathbf{r} = -\int_{P_2}^{P_1} \mathbf{F} \cdot d\mathbf{r}$,
while for three points $P_1, P_2$ and $P_3$ on $C$,

5. $\int_{P_1}^{P_3} \mathbf{F} \cdot d\mathbf{r} = \int_{P_1}^{P_3} \mathbf{F} \cdot d\mathbf{r} + \int_{P_2}^{P_3} \mathbf{F} \cdot d\mathbf{r}.$

A special case of a line integral occurs when $\mathbf{F}$ is given by

6. $\mathbf{F} = \text{grad} \phi = \nabla \phi,$

where in rectangular Cartesian coordinates

7. $\text{grad} \phi = i \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x} + j \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial y} + k \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial z},$

for

8. $\int_C \mathbf{F} \cdot d\mathbf{r} = \int_{P_1}^{P_2} \mathbf{F} \cdot d\mathbf{r} = \phi(P_2) - \phi(P_1),$

and the line integral is independent of the path $C$, depending only on the initial point $P_1$ and terminal point $P_2$ of $C$. A vector field of the form

9. $\mathbf{F} = \text{grad} \phi$

is called a conservative field, and $\phi$ is then called a scalar potential. For the definition of grad $\phi$ in terms of other coordinate systems see 24.2.1 and 24.3.1.

In a conservative field, if $C$ is a closed curve, it then follows that

10. $\int_C \mathbf{F} \cdot d\mathbf{r} = \oint_C \mathbf{F} \cdot d\mathbf{r} = 0,$

where the symbol $\oint$ indicates that the curve (contour) $C$ is closed.

### 23.10 VECTOR INTEGRAL THEOREMS

#### 23.10.1

Let a surface $S$ defined by $z = f(x, y)$ that is bounded by a closed space curve $C$ have an element of surface area $d\sigma$, and let $\mathbf{n}$ be a unit vector normal to $S$ at a representative point $P$ (Figure 23.11).

Then the vector element of surface area $d\mathbf{S}$ of surface $S$ is defined as

1. $d\mathbf{S} = d\sigma \mathbf{n}.$

The surface integral of a vector function $\mathbf{F}(x, y, z)$ over the surface $S$ is defined as
23.10 Vector Integral Theorems

Figure 23.11.

2. \[ \int_S \mathbf{F} \cdot d\mathbf{S} = \int_S \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{n} \, d\sigma. \]

The **Gauss divergence theorem** states that if \( S \) is a closed surface containing a volume \( V \) with volume element \( dV \), and if the vector element of surface area \( dS = \mathbf{n} \, d\sigma \), where \( \mathbf{n} \) is the unit normal directed out of \( V \) and \( d\sigma \) is an element of surface area of \( S \), then

3. \[ \int_V \text{div} \, \mathbf{F} \, dV = \int_S \mathbf{F} \cdot d\mathbf{S} = \int_S \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{n} \, d\sigma. \]

The Gauss divergence theorem relates the volume integral of \( \text{div} \, \mathbf{F} \) to the surface integral of the normal component of \( \mathbf{F} \) over the closed surface \( S \).

In terms of the rectangular Cartesian coordinates \( \{x, y, z\} \), the **divergence** of the vector \( \mathbf{F} = F_1 \mathbf{i} + F_2 \mathbf{j} + F_3 \mathbf{k} \), written \( \text{div} \, \mathbf{F} \), is defined as

4. \[ \text{div} \, \mathbf{F} = \frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial F_2}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial F_3}{\partial z}. \]

For the definitions of \( \text{div} \, \mathbf{F} \) in terms of other coordinate systems see 24.2.1 and 24.3.1.

**Stoke’s theorem** states that if \( C \) is a closed curve spanned by an open surface \( S \), and \( \mathbf{F} \) is a vector function defined on \( S \), then

5. \[ \oint_C \mathbf{F} \cdot d\mathbf{r} = \int_S (\nabla \times \mathbf{F}) \cdot d\mathbf{S} = \int_S (\nabla \times \mathbf{F}) \cdot \mathbf{n} \, d\sigma. \]

In this theorem the direction of unit normal \( \mathbf{n} \) in the vector element of surface area \( dS = d\sigma \, \mathbf{n} \) is chosen such that it points in the direction in which a right-handed screw would advance
when rotated in the sense in which the closed curve $C$ is traversed. A surface for which the normal is defined in this manner is called an oriented surface.

The surface $S$ shown in Figure 23.11 is oriented in this manner when $C$ is traversed in the direction shown by the arrows. In terms of rectangular Cartesian coordinates $\{x, y, z\}$, the curl of the vector $F = F_1 \mathbf{i} + F_2 \mathbf{j} + F_3 \mathbf{k}$, written either $\nabla \times F$, or curl $F$, is defined as

$$6. \quad \nabla \times F = \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + j \frac{\partial}{\partial y} + k \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \right) \times F$$

$$= \left( \frac{\partial F_3}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial F_2}{\partial z} \right) \mathbf{i} + \left( \frac{\partial F_1}{\partial z} - \frac{\partial F_3}{\partial x} \right) \mathbf{j} + \left( \frac{\partial F_2}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial F_1}{\partial y} \right) \mathbf{k}.$$

For the definition of $\nabla \times F$ in terms of other coordinate systems see 24.2.1 and 24.3.1.

**Green’s first and second theorems (identities).** Let $U$ and $V$ be scalar functions of position defined in a volume $V$ contained within a simple closed surface $S$, with an outward-drawn vector element of surface area $dS$. Suppose further that the Laplacians $\nabla^2 U$ and $\nabla^2 V$ are defined throughout $V$, except on a finite number of surfaces inside $V$, across which the second-order partial derivatives of $U$ and $V$ are bounded but discontinuous. **Green’s first theorem** states that

$$7. \quad \int_S (U \nabla V \cdot dS = \int_V [U \nabla^2 V + (\nabla U) \cdot (\nabla V)] dV,$$

where in rectangular Cartesian coordinates

$$8. \quad \nabla^2 U = \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial z^2}.$$  

The Laplacian operator $\nabla^2$ is also often denoted by $\Delta$, or by $\Delta_n$ if it is necessary to specify the number $n$ of space dimensions involved, so that in Cartesian coordinates $\Delta_2 U = \partial^2 U/\partial x^2 + \partial^2 U/\partial y^2$.

For the definition of the Laplacian in terms of other coordinate systems see 24.2.1 and 24.3.1.

**Green’s second theorem** states that

$$9. \quad \int_V (U \nabla^2 V - V \nabla^2 U) \, dV = \int_S (U \nabla V - V \nabla U) \cdot dS.$$

In two dimensions $\{x, y\}$, **Green’s theorem in the plane** takes the form

$$10. \quad \oint_C (P \, dx + Q \, dy) = \int_A \left( \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial y} \right) \, dx \, dy,$$

where the scalar functions $P(x,y)$ and $Q(x,y)$ are defined and differentiable in some plane area $A$ bounded by a simple closed curve $C$ except, possibly, across an arc $\gamma$ in $A$ joining two distinct points of $C$, and the integration is performed counterclockwise around $C$. 
23.11 A VECTOR RATE OF CHANGE THEOREM
Let \( u \) be a continuous and differentiable scalar function of position and time defined throughout a moving volume \( V(t) \) bounded by a surface \( S(t) \) moving with velocity \( \mathbf{v} \). Then the rate of change of the volume integral of \( u \) is given by

\[
\frac{d}{dt} \int_{V(t)} u \, dV = \int_{V(t)} \left\{ \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + \text{div}(u\mathbf{v}) \right\} dV.
\]

23.12 USEFUL VECTOR IDENTITIES AND RESULTS
23.12.1
In each identity that follows the result is expressed first in terms of \( \text{grad}, \text{div}, \) and \( \text{curl} \), and then in operator notation. \( \mathbf{F} \) and \( \mathbf{G} \) are suitably differentiable vector functions and \( V \) and \( W \) are suitably differentiable scalar functions.

1. \( \text{div}(\text{curl} \mathbf{F}) \equiv \nabla \cdot (\nabla \times \mathbf{F}) \equiv 0 \)
2. \( \text{curl}(\text{grad} \, V) \equiv \nabla \times (\nabla V) \equiv 0 \)
3. \( \text{grad}(VW) \equiv V \text{grad} \, W + W \text{grad} \, V \equiv V\nabla W + W\nabla V \)
4. \( \text{curl}(\text{curl} \, \mathbf{F}) \equiv \text{grad}(\text{div} \, \mathbf{F}) - \nabla^2 \mathbf{F} \equiv \nabla(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{F}) - \nabla^2 \mathbf{F} \)
5. \( \text{div}(\text{grad} \, V) \equiv \nabla \cdot (\nabla V) \equiv \nabla^2 V \)
6. \( \text{div}(V\mathbf{F}) \equiv V \text{div} \, \mathbf{F} + \mathbf{F} \cdot \text{grad} \, V \equiv \nabla \cdot (V\mathbf{F}) \equiv V\nabla \cdot \mathbf{F} + \mathbf{F} \cdot \nabla V \)
7. \( \text{curl}(V\mathbf{F}) \equiv V \text{curl} \, \mathbf{F} - \mathbf{F} \times \text{grad} \, V \equiv V\nabla \times \mathbf{F} - \mathbf{F} \times \nabla V \)
8. \( \text{grad}(\mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{G}) \equiv \mathbf{F} \times \text{curl} \, \mathbf{G} + \mathbf{G} \times \text{curl} \, \mathbf{F} + (\mathbf{F} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{G} + (\mathbf{G} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{F} \equiv \mathbf{F} \times (\nabla \times \mathbf{G}) + \mathbf{G} \times (\nabla \times \mathbf{F}) + (\mathbf{F} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{G} + (\mathbf{G} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{F} \)
9. \( \text{div}(\mathbf{F} \times \mathbf{G}) \equiv \mathbf{G} \cdot \text{curl} \, \mathbf{F} - \mathbf{F} \cdot \text{curl} \, \mathbf{G} \equiv \mathbf{G} \cdot (\nabla \times \mathbf{F}) - \mathbf{F} \cdot (\nabla \times \mathbf{G}) \)
10. \( \text{curl}(\mathbf{F} \times \mathbf{G}) \equiv \mathbf{F} \text{div} \, \mathbf{G} - \mathbf{G} \text{div} \, \mathbf{F} + (\mathbf{G} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{F} - (\mathbf{F} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{G} \equiv \mathbf{F}(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{G}) - \mathbf{G}(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{F}) + (\mathbf{G} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{F} - (\mathbf{F} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{G} \)
11. \( \mathbf{F} \cdot \text{grad} \, V = \mathbf{F} \cdot (\nabla V) = (\mathbf{F} \cdot \nabla)V \) is proportional to the \textit{directional derivative} of \( V \) in the direction \( \mathbf{F} \) and it becomes the directional derivative of \( V \) in the direction \( \mathbf{F} \) when \( \mathbf{F} \) is a unit vector.
12. \( \mathbf{F} \cdot \text{grad} \, \mathbf{G} = (\mathbf{F} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{G} \) is proportional to the directional derivative of \( \mathbf{G} \) in the direction of \( \mathbf{F} \) and it becomes the directional derivative of \( \mathbf{G} \) in the direction of \( \mathbf{F} \) and \( \mathbf{F} \) is a unit vector.
Chapter 24
Systems of Orthogonal Coordinates

24.1 CURVILINEAR COORDINATES
24.1.1 Basic Definitions

24.1.1.1
Let \((x, y, z)\) and \((\xi_1, \xi_2, \xi_3)\) be related by the equations

1. \(x = X(\xi_1, \xi_2, \xi_3), \quad y = Y(\xi_1, \xi_2, \xi_3), \quad z = Z(\xi_1, \xi_2, \xi_3),\)

where the functions \(X, Y,\) and \(Z\) are continuously differentiable functions of their arguments, and the \textit{Jacobian} determinant

2. \(J = \begin{vmatrix} \frac{\partial X}{\partial \xi_1} & \frac{\partial X}{\partial \xi_2} & \frac{\partial X}{\partial \xi_3} \\ \frac{\partial Y}{\partial \xi_1} & \frac{\partial Y}{\partial \xi_2} & \frac{\partial Y}{\partial \xi_3} \\ \frac{\partial Z}{\partial \xi_1} & \frac{\partial Z}{\partial \xi_2} & \frac{\partial Z}{\partial \xi_3} \end{vmatrix}\)

does not vanish throughout some region \(R\) of space. Then \(R\) in 24.1.1.1 can be solved uniquely for \(\xi_1, \xi_2,\) and \(\xi_3\) in terms of \(x, y,\) and \(z\) to give

3. \(\xi_1 = \xi_1(x, y, z), \quad \xi_2 = \xi_2(x, y, z), \quad \xi_3 = \xi_3(x, y, z).\)
The position vector \( \mathbf{r} \) of a point in space with the rectangular Cartesian coordinates \((x, y, z)\) can be written

4. \( \mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(x, y, z) \).

Then the point \( P \) with the rectangular Cartesian coordinates \((x_0, y_0, z_0)\) corresponds to the point with the corresponding coordinates \((\xi_1^{(0)}, \xi_2^{(0)}, \xi_3^{(0)})\) in the new coordinate system, and so to the intersection of the three one-parameter curves (Figure 24.1) defined by

5. \( \mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(\xi_1^{(0)}, \xi_2^{(0)}, \xi_3^{(0)}), \quad \mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(\xi_1^{(0)}, \xi_2^{(0)}, \xi_3^{(0)}), \quad \mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(\xi_1^{(0)}, \xi_2^{(0)}, \xi_3^{(0)}). \)

In general, the coordinates \( \xi_1, \xi_2, \xi_3 \) are called \textbf{curvilinear coordinates}, and they are said to be \textbf{orthogonal} when the unit tangent vectors \( \mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{e}_2, \) and \( \mathbf{e}_3 \) to the curves \( \xi_1 = \xi_1^{(0)}, \xi_2 = \xi_2^{(0)}, \xi_3 = \xi_3^{(0)} \) through \( [\xi_1^{(0)}, \xi_2^{(0)}, \xi_3^{(0)}] \) identifying point \( P(x_0, y_0, z_0) \) are all mutually orthogonal.

The vectors \( \mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{e}_2, \) and \( \mathbf{e}_3 \) are defined by

6. \( \frac{\partial \mathbf{r}}{\partial \xi_1} = h_1 \mathbf{e}_1, \quad \frac{\partial \mathbf{r}}{\partial \xi_2} = h_2 \mathbf{e}_2, \quad \frac{\partial \mathbf{r}}{\partial \xi_3} = h_3 \mathbf{e}_3, \)

where the scale factors \( h_1, h_2, \) and \( h_3 \) are given by

7. \( h_1 = \left| \frac{\partial \mathbf{r}}{\partial \xi_1} \right|, \quad h_2 = \left| \frac{\partial \mathbf{r}}{\partial \xi_2} \right|, \quad h_3 = \left| \frac{\partial \mathbf{r}}{\partial \xi_3} \right|. \)
The following general results are valid for orthogonal curvilinear coordinates:

8. \( dr = h_1 d\xi_1 e_1 + h_2 d\xi_2 e_2 + h_3 d\xi_3 e_3, \)

and if \( ds \) is an element of arc length, then

\[
(ds)^2 = dr \cdot dr = h_1^2 d\xi_1^2 + h_2^2 d\xi_2^2 + h_3^2 d\xi_3^2.
\]

### 24.2 VECTOR OPERATORS IN ORTHOGONAL COORDINATES

#### 24.2.1

Let \( V \) be a suitably differentiable scalar function of position, and \( \mathbf{F} = F_1 e_1 + F_2 e_2 + F_3 e_3 \) be a vector function defined in terms of the orthogonal curvilinear coordinates \( \xi_1, \xi_2, \xi_3 \) introduced in 24.1.1. Then the vector operations of gradient, divergence, and curl and the scalar Laplacian operator \( \nabla^2 V \) take the form:

1. \( \text{grad} \ V = \nabla V = \frac{1}{h_1} \frac{\partial V}{\partial \xi_1} e_1 + \frac{1}{h_2} \frac{\partial V}{\partial \xi_2} e_2 + \frac{1}{h_3} \frac{\partial V}{\partial \xi_3} e_3 \)

2. \( \text{div} \ \mathbf{F} = \nabla \cdot \mathbf{F} = \frac{1}{h_1 h_2 h_3} \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi_1} (h_2 h_3 F_1) + \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi_2} (h_3 h_1 F_2) + \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi_3} (h_1 h_2 F_3) \right] \)

3. \( \text{curl} \ \mathbf{F} = \nabla \times \mathbf{F} = \frac{1}{h_1 h_2 h_3} \left| \begin{array}{ccc}
               h_1 e_1 & h_2 e_2 & h_3 e_3 \\
               \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi_1} & \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi_2} & \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi_3} \\
               h_1 F_1 & h_2 F_2 & h_3 F_3 
             \end{array} \right| \)

4. \( \nabla^2 V = \frac{1}{h_1 h_2 h_3} \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi_1} \left( \frac{h_2 h_3}{h_1} \frac{\partial V}{\partial \xi_1} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi_2} \left( \frac{h_3 h_1}{h_2} \frac{\partial V}{\partial \xi_2} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi_3} \left( \frac{h_1 h_2}{h_3} \frac{\partial V}{\partial \xi_3} \right) \right] \)

The above operations have the following properties:

5. \( \nabla (V + W) = \nabla V + \nabla W \)

6. \( \nabla \cdot (\mathbf{F} + \mathbf{G}) = \nabla \cdot \mathbf{F} + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{G} \)

7. \( \nabla \cdot (V \mathbf{F}) = V (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{F}) + (\nabla V) \cdot \mathbf{F} \)

8. \( \nabla \cdot (\nabla V) = \nabla^2 V \)

9. \( \nabla \times (\mathbf{F} + \mathbf{G}) = \nabla \times \mathbf{F} + \nabla \times \mathbf{G} \)

10. \( \nabla \times (V \mathbf{F}) = V (\nabla \times \mathbf{F}) + (\nabla V) \times \mathbf{F}, \)

where \( V, W \) are differentiable scalar functions and \( \mathbf{F}, \mathbf{G} \) are differentiable vector functions.
11. In general orthogonal coordinates, the Helmholtz equation \( H[V] = 0 \) in terms of the Laplacian becomes \( H[V] \equiv \nabla^2 V + \lambda V = 0 \), where \( \lambda \) is a parameter. The Helmholtz equation is usually obtained as a result of applying the method of separation of variables to the wave equation or the heat equation when the parameter \( \lambda \) enters as a separation constant.

### 24.3 SYSTEMS OF ORTHOGONAL COORDINATES

#### 24.3.1

The following are the most frequently used systems of orthogonal curvilinear coordinates. In each case the relationship between the curvilinear coordinates and Cartesian coordinates is given together with the scale factors \( h_1, h_2, h_3 \) and the form taken by \( \nabla V, \nabla \cdot F, \nabla \times F, \) and \( \nabla^2 V \).

1. In terms of a right-handed set of **rectangular Cartesian coordinates** \( \{x, y, z\} \) with the fixed unit vectors \( \mathbf{i}, \mathbf{j}, \mathbf{k} \) along the \( x-, y-, \) and \( z- \)axes, respectively, and scalar \( V \) and vector \( \mathbf{F} = F_1 \mathbf{i} + F_2 \mathbf{j} + F_3 \mathbf{k} \):

   (a) \( \mathbf{grad} V = \nabla V = \frac{\partial V}{\partial x} \mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial V}{\partial y} \mathbf{j} + \frac{\partial V}{\partial z} \mathbf{k} \)

   (b) \( \mathbf{div} \mathbf{F} = \nabla \cdot \mathbf{F} = \frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial F_2}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial F_3}{\partial z} \)

   (c) \( \mathbf{curl} \mathbf{F} = \nabla \times \mathbf{F} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ \partial_x & \partial_y & \partial_z \\ F_1 & F_2 & F_3 \end{vmatrix} \)

   (d) \( \nabla^2 V = \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial z^2} \)

   (e) The Helmholtz equation \( H[V] = 0 \) becomes

   \[
   \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial z^2} + \lambda V = 0
   \]

2. **Cylindrical polar coordinates** \( (r, \theta, z) \) are three-dimensional coordinates defined as in Figure 24.2.

   (a) \( x = r \cos \theta, \quad y = r \sin \theta, \quad z = z \quad [0 \leq \theta \leq 2\pi] \)

   (b) \( h_1^2 = 1, \quad h_2^2 = r^2, \quad h_3^2 = 1 \)

   (c) \( \mathbf{F} = F_1 \mathbf{e}_r + F_2 \mathbf{e}_\theta + F_3 \mathbf{e}_z \)

   (d) \( \mathbf{grad} V = \nabla V = \frac{\partial V}{\partial r} \mathbf{e}_r + \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial V}{\partial \theta} \mathbf{e}_\theta + \frac{\partial V}{\partial z} \mathbf{e}_z \)
24.3 Systems of Orthogonal Coordinates

(e) \( \text{div} \mathbf{F} = \nabla \cdot \mathbf{F} = \frac{1}{r} \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial r} (r F_1) + \frac{\partial F_2}{\partial \theta} + r \frac{\partial F_3}{\partial z} \right] \)

(f) \( \text{curl} \mathbf{F} = \nabla \times \mathbf{F} = \frac{1}{r} \begin{vmatrix} e_r & r e_\theta & e_z \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial r} & \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} & \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \\ F_1 & r F_2 & F_3 \end{vmatrix} \)

(g) \( \nabla^2 V = \frac{1}{r} \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial r} \left( r \frac{\partial V}{\partial r} \right) + \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \left( \frac{\partial V}{\partial \theta} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( r \frac{\partial V}{\partial z} \right) \right] \)

The corresponding expressions for \textbf{plane polar coordinates} follow from (a) to (g) above by omitting the terms involving \( z \), and by confining attention to the plane \( z = 0 \) in Figure 24.2.

(h) The Helmholtz equation \( H[V] = 0 \) becomes

\[
\frac{1}{r} \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial r} \left( r \frac{\partial V}{\partial r} \right) + \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \left( \frac{\partial V}{\partial \theta} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( r \frac{\partial V}{\partial z} \right) \right] + \lambda V = 0
\]

3. \textbf{Spherical coordinates} \((r, \theta, \phi)\) are three-dimensional coordinates defined as in Figure 24.3.

(a) \( x = r \sin \theta \cos \phi, \quad y = r \sin \theta \sin \phi, \quad z = r \cos \theta, \quad [0 \leq \theta \leq \pi, \ 0 \leq \phi < 2\pi] \)

(b) \( h_1^2 = 1, \quad h_2^2 = r^2, \quad h_3^2 = r^2 \sin^2 \theta \)
(c) \( \mathbf{F} = F_1 \mathbf{e}_r + F_2 \mathbf{e}_\theta + F_3 \mathbf{e}_\phi \)

(d) \( \text{grad} \, V = \frac{\partial V}{\partial r} \mathbf{e}_r + \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial V}{\partial \theta} \mathbf{e}_\theta + \frac{1}{r \sin \theta} \frac{\partial V}{\partial \phi} \mathbf{e}_\phi \)

(e) \( \text{div} \, \mathbf{F} = \nabla \cdot \mathbf{F} = \frac{1}{r^2} \frac{\partial}{\partial r} (r^2 F_1) + \frac{1}{r \sin \theta} \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} (\sin \theta F_2) + \frac{1}{r \sin \theta} \frac{\partial F_3}{\partial \phi} \)

(f) \( \text{curl} \, \mathbf{F} = \nabla \times \mathbf{F} = \frac{1}{r^2 \sin \theta} \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{e}_r & r \mathbf{e}_\theta & r \sin \theta \mathbf{e}_\phi \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial r} & \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} & \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} \\ F_1 & r F_2 & r \sin \theta F_3 \end{vmatrix} \)

(g) \( \nabla^2 V = \frac{1}{r^2} \frac{\partial}{\partial r} \left( r^2 \frac{\partial V}{\partial r} \right) + \frac{1}{r^2 \sin \theta} \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \left( \sin \theta \frac{\partial V}{\partial \theta} \right) + \frac{1}{r^2 \sin^2 \theta} \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial \phi^2} \)

(h) The Helmholtz equation \( H[V] = 0 \) becomes

\[
\frac{1}{r^2} \frac{\partial}{\partial r} \left( r^2 \frac{\partial V}{\partial r} \right) + \frac{1}{r^2 \sin \theta} \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \left( \sin \theta \frac{\partial V}{\partial \theta} \right) + \frac{1}{r^2 \sin^2 \theta} \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial \phi^2} + \lambda V = 0
\]

4. Bipolar coordinates \((u, v, z)\) are three-dimensional coordinates defined as in Figure 24.4, which shows the coordinate system in the plane \( z = 0 \). In three dimensions the translation of these coordinate curves parallel to the \( z \)-axis generates cylindrical coordinate surfaces normal to the plane \( z = 0 \).
24.3 Systems of Orthogonal Coordinates

Figure 24.4.

(a) \[ x = \frac{a \sinh v}{\cosh v - \cos u}, \quad y = \frac{a \sin u}{\cosh v - \cos u}, \quad z = z \]
\[ 0 \leq u < 2\pi, \quad -\infty < v < \infty, \quad -\infty < z < \infty \]

(b) \[ h_1^2 = h_2^2 = R^2 = \frac{a^2}{(\cosh v - \cos u)^2}, \quad h_3^2 = 1 \]

(c) \[ \mathbf{F} = F_1 \mathbf{e}_u + F_2 \mathbf{e}_v + F_3 \mathbf{e}_z \]

(d) \[ \nabla V = \frac{1}{R} \left( \frac{\partial V}{\partial u} \mathbf{e}_u + \frac{\partial V}{\partial v} \mathbf{e}_v + \frac{\partial V}{\partial z} \mathbf{e}_z \right) \]

(e) \[ \text{div} \mathbf{F} = \nabla \cdot \mathbf{F} = \frac{1}{R^2} \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial u} (RF_1) + \frac{\partial}{\partial v} (RF_2) + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} (R^2 F_3) \right] \]
Chapter 24 Systems of Orthogonal Coordinates

(f) \( \text{curl} \, \mathbf{F} = \nabla \times \mathbf{F} = \frac{1}{R^2} \begin{vmatrix} Re_u & Re_v & e_z \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial u} & \frac{\partial}{\partial v} & \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \\ RF_1 & RF_2 & RF_3 \end{vmatrix} \)

(g) \( \nabla^2 V = \frac{1}{R^2} \left( \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial u^2} + \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial v^2} \right) + \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial z^2} \)

(h) The Helmholtz equation follows from \( H[V] = \nabla^2 V + \lambda V = 0 \), by substituting the Laplacian in (g).

5. Toroidal coordinates \((u, v, \phi)\) are three-dimensional coordinates defined in terms of two-dimensional bipolar coordinates. They are obtained by relabeling the \(y\)-axis in Figure 24.4 as the \(z\)-axis, and then rotating the curves \(u = \text{const.}\) and \(v = \text{const.}\) about the new \(z\)-axis so that each curve \(v = \text{const.}\) generates a torus. The angle \(\phi\) is measured about the \(z\)-axis from the \((x, z)\)-plane, with \(0 \leq \phi < 2\pi\).

(a) \( x = \frac{a \sinh v \cos \phi}{\cosh v - \cos u} \), \( y = \frac{a \sinh v \sin \phi}{\cosh v - \cos u} \), \( z = \frac{a \sinh u}{\cosh v - \cos u} \)

\[ \left[ 0 \leq u < 2\pi, \, -\infty < v < \infty, \, 0 \leq \phi < 2\pi \right] \]

(b) \( h_1^2 = h_2^2 = R^2 = \frac{a^2}{(\cosh v - \cos u)^2} \), \( h_3^2 = \frac{a^2 \sinh^2 v}{(\cosh v - \cos u)^2} \)

(c) \( \mathbf{F} = F_1 \mathbf{e}_u + F_2 \mathbf{e}_v + F_3 \mathbf{e}_\phi \)

where \(\mathbf{e}_u, \mathbf{e}_v, \mathbf{e}_\phi\) are the unit vectors in the toroidal coordinates.

(d) \( \text{grad} \, V = \nabla V = \frac{1}{R} \left( \frac{\partial V}{\partial u} \mathbf{e}_u + \frac{\partial V}{\partial v} \mathbf{e}_v \right) + \frac{1}{R \sinh v} \frac{\partial V}{\partial \phi} \mathbf{e}_\phi \)

(e) \( \text{div} \, \mathbf{F} = \nabla \cdot \mathbf{F} = \frac{1}{R^3 \sinh v} \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial u} \left( R^2 \sinh v F_1 \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial v} \left( R^2 \sinh v F_2 \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} \left( R^2 F_3 \right) \right] \)

(f) \( \text{curl} \, \mathbf{F} = \nabla \times \mathbf{F} = \frac{1}{\sinh v} \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{e}_u & \mathbf{e}_v & \mathbf{e}_\phi \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial u} & \frac{\partial}{\partial v} & \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} \\ F_1 & F_2 & \sinh v F_3 \end{vmatrix} \)

(g) \( \nabla^2 V = \frac{1}{R^3 \sinh v} \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial u} \left( R \sinh v \frac{\partial V}{\partial u} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial v} \left( R \sinh v \frac{\partial V}{\partial v} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} \left( \frac{R}{\sinh v} \frac{\partial V}{\partial \phi} \right) \right] \)

(h) The Helmholtz equation follows from \( H[V] = \nabla^2 V + \lambda V = 0 \), by substituting the Laplacian in (g).
6. **Parabolic cylindrical coordinates** \((u, v, z)\) are three-dimensional coordinates defined as in Figure 24.5, which shows the coordinate system in the plane \(z = 0\). In three dimensions the translation of these coordinate curves parallel to the \(z\)-axis generates parabolic cylindrical coordinate surfaces normal to the plane \(z = 0\).

(a) \(x = \frac{1}{2}(u^2 - v^2), \quad y = uv, \quad z = z\)

(b) \(h_1^2 = h_2^2 = h^2 = u^2 + v^2, \quad h_3^2 = 1\)

(c) \(\mathbf{F} = F_1 \mathbf{e}_u + F_2 \mathbf{e}_v + F_3 \mathbf{e}_z\)

(d) \(\text{grad} \, V = \nabla V = \frac{1}{h} \left( \frac{\partial V}{\partial u} \mathbf{e}_u + \frac{\partial V}{\partial v} \mathbf{e}_v \right) + \frac{1}{uv} \frac{\partial V}{\partial z} \mathbf{e}_z\)

(e) \(\text{div} \, \mathbf{F} = \nabla \cdot \mathbf{F} = \frac{1}{h^2} \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial u} (hF_1) + \frac{\partial}{\partial v} (hF_2) + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} (h^2F_3) \right]\)

(f) \(\text{curl} \, \mathbf{F} = \nabla \times \mathbf{F} = \frac{1}{h^2} \begin{vmatrix} h \mathbf{e}_u & h \mathbf{e}_v & \mathbf{e}_z \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial u} & \frac{\partial}{\partial v} & \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \\ hF_1 & hF_2 & F_3 \end{vmatrix}\)

(g) \(\nabla^2 V = \frac{1}{h^2} \left( \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial u^2} + \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial v^2} \right) + \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial z^2}\)

(h) The Helmholtz equation follows from \(H[V] = \nabla^2 V + \lambda V = 0\), by substituting the Laplacian in (g).
7. Paraboloidal coordinates \((u, v, \phi)\) are three-dimensional coordinates defined in terms of two-dimensional parabolic cylindrical coordinates. They are obtained by relabeling the \(x\)- and \(y\)-axes in Figure 24.5 as the \(z\)- and \(x\)-axes, respectively, and then rotating the curves about the new \(z\)-axis, so that each parabola generates a paraboloid. The angle \(\phi\) is measured about the \(z\)-axis from the \((x, z)\)-plane, with \(0 \leq \phi < 2\pi\).

(a) \(x = uv \cos \phi, \quad y = uv \sin \phi, \quad z = \frac{1}{2} (u^2 - v^2) \quad [u \geq 0, v \geq 0, 0 \leq \phi < 2\pi]\)

(b) \(h_1^2 = h_2^2 = h^2 = u^2 + v^2, \quad h_3^2 = u^2v^2\)

(c) \(F = F_1 e_u + F_2 e_v + F_3 e_\phi\)

where \(e_u, e_v, e_\phi\) are the unit vectors in the paraboloidal coordinates.

(d) \(\text{grad} \ V = \nabla V = \frac{1}{h} \left( \frac{\partial V}{\partial u} e_u + \frac{\partial V}{\partial v} e_v \right) + \frac{1}{uv} \frac{\partial V}{\partial \phi} e_\phi\)

(e) \(\text{div} \ F = \nabla \cdot F = \frac{1}{h^2uv} \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial u} (huvF_1) + \frac{\partial}{\partial v} (huvF_2) + \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} (h^2F_3) \right]\)

(f) \(\text{curl} \ F = \nabla \times F = \left| \begin{array}{ccc} e_u & e_v & uv \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial u} & \frac{\partial}{\partial v} & \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} \\ F_1 & F_2 & \frac{uv}{h} F_3 \end{array} \right|\)

(g) \(\nabla^2 V = \frac{1}{h^2u} \frac{\partial}{\partial u} \left( u \frac{\partial V}{\partial u} \right) + \frac{1}{h^2v} \frac{\partial}{\partial v} \left( v \frac{\partial V}{\partial v} \right) + \frac{1}{uv^2} \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial \phi^2}\)

(h) The Helmholtz equation follows from \(H[V] = \nabla^2 V + \lambda V = 0\), by substituting the Laplacian in (g).

8. Elliptic cylindrical coordinates \((u, v, z)\) are three-dimensional coordinates defined as in Figure 24.6, which shows the coordinate system in the plane \(z = 0\). In three-dimensions the translation of the coordinate curves parallel to the \(z\)-axis generates elliptic cylinders corresponding to the curves \(u = \text{const.}\), and parabolic cylinders corresponding to the curves \(v = \text{const.}\).

(a) \(x = a \cosh u \cos v, \quad y = a \sinh u \sin v, \quad z = z \quad [u \geq 0, 0 \leq v < 2\pi, -\infty < z < \infty]\)

(b) \(h_1^2 = h_2^2 = h^2 = a^2 (\sinh^2 u + \sin^2 v), \quad h_3^2 = 1\)

(c) \(F = F_1 e_u + F_2 e_v + F_3 e_z\)
24.3 Systems of Orthogonal Coordinates

(d) \( \text{grad} \ V = \frac{1}{h} \frac{\partial V}{\partial u} \mathbf{e}_u + \frac{1}{h} \frac{\partial V}{\partial v} \mathbf{e}_v + \frac{\partial V}{\partial z} \mathbf{e}_z \)

(e) \( \text{div} \ F = \nabla \cdot F = \frac{1}{h} \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial u} (hF_1) + \frac{\partial}{\partial v} (hF_2) \right] + \frac{\partial F_3}{\partial z} \)

(f) \( \text{curl} \ F = \nabla \times F = \frac{1}{h^2} \begin{vmatrix} h \mathbf{e}_u & h \mathbf{e}_v & \mathbf{e}_z \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial u} & \frac{\partial}{\partial v} & \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \\ hF_1 & hF_2 & F_3 \end{vmatrix} \)

(g) \( \nabla^2 V = \frac{1}{h^2} \left( \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial u^2} + \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial v^2} \right) + \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial z^2} \)

(h) The Helmholtz equation follows from \( H[V] = \nabla^2 V + \lambda V = 0 \), by substituting the Laplacian in (g).

9. **Prolate spheroidal coordinates** \((\xi, \eta, \phi)\) are three-dimensional coordinates defined in terms of two-dimensional elliptic cylindrical coordinates. They are obtained by relabeling the \(x\)-axis in Figure 24.6 as the \(z\)-axis, rotating the coordinate curves about the new \(z\)-axis, and taking as the family of coordinate surfaces planes containing this axis. The curves \(u = \text{const.} \) then generate prolate spheroidal surfaces.
Chapter 24 Systems of Orthogonal Coordinates

(a) \( x = a \sinh \xi \sin \eta \cos \phi, \quad y = a \sinh \xi \sin \eta \sin \phi, \quad z = a \cosh \xi \cos \eta \quad [\xi \geq 0, \ 0 \leq \eta \leq \pi, \ 0 \leq \phi < 2\pi] \)

(b) \( h_1^2 = h_2^2 = h^2 = a^2 (\sinh^2 \xi + \sin^2 \eta), \quad h_3^2 = a^2 \sinh^2 \xi \sin^2 \eta \)

(c) \( \mathbf{F} = F_1 \mathbf{e}_\xi + F_2 \mathbf{e}_\eta + F_3 \mathbf{e}_\phi \)

(d) \( \nabla V = \frac{1}{h} \frac{\partial V}{\partial \xi} \mathbf{e}_\xi + \frac{1}{h} \frac{\partial V}{\partial \eta} \mathbf{e}_\eta + \frac{1}{h_3} \frac{\partial V}{\partial \phi} \mathbf{e}_\phi \)

(e) \( \nabla \cdot \mathbf{F} = \nabla \cdot \mathbf{F} = \frac{1}{h_2 h_3} \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} (h h_3 F_1) + \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} (h h_3 F_2) \right] + \frac{1}{h_3} \frac{\partial F_3}{\partial \phi} \)

(f) \( \nabla \times \mathbf{F} = \nabla \times \mathbf{F} = \frac{1}{h^2 h_3} \left| \begin{array}{ccc} h \mathbf{e}_\xi & h \mathbf{e}_\eta & h_3 \mathbf{e}_\phi \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} & \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} & \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} \\ h F_1 & h F_2 & h_3 F_3 \end{array} \right| \)

(g) \( \nabla^2 V = \frac{1}{h^2 \sinh \xi} \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \left( \sinh \xi \frac{\partial V}{\partial \xi} \right) + \frac{1}{h^2 \sin \eta} \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \left( \sin \eta \frac{\partial V}{\partial \eta} \right) + \frac{1}{a^2 \sinh^2 \xi \sin^2 \eta} \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial \phi^2} \)

(h) The Helmholtz equation follows from \( H[V] = \nabla^2 V + \lambda V = 0 \), by substituting the Laplacian in (g).

10. Oblate spheroidal coordinates \((\xi, \eta, \phi)\) are three-dimensional coordinates defined in terms of two-dimensional elliptic cylindrical coordinates. They are obtained by relabeling the \(y\)-axis in Figure 24.6 as the \(z\)-axis, rotating the coordinate curves about the new \(z\)-axis, and taking as the third family of coordinate surfaces planes containing this axis. The curves \( u = \text{const.} \) then generate oblate spheroidal surfaces.

(a) \( x = a \cosh \xi \cos \eta \cos \phi, \quad y = a \cosh \xi \cos \eta \sin \phi, \quad z = a \sinh \xi \sin \eta \quad [\xi \geq 0, \ -\pi/2 \leq \eta \leq \pi/2, \ 0 \leq \phi < 2\pi] \)

(b) \( h_1^2 = h_2^2 = h^2 = a^2 (\sinh^2 \xi + \sin^2 \eta), \quad h_3^2 = a^2 \cosh^2 \xi \cos^2 \eta \)

(c) \( \mathbf{F} = F_1 \mathbf{e}_\xi + F_2 \mathbf{e}_\eta + F_3 \mathbf{e}_\phi \)

(d) \( \nabla V = \nabla \mathbf{V} = \frac{1}{h} \frac{\partial V}{\partial \xi} \mathbf{e}_\xi + \frac{1}{h} \frac{\partial V}{\partial \eta} \mathbf{e}_\eta + \frac{1}{h_3} \frac{\partial V}{\partial \phi} \mathbf{e}_\phi \)

(e) \( \nabla \cdot \mathbf{F} = \nabla \cdot \mathbf{F} = \frac{1}{h^2 h_3} \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} (h h_3 F_1) + \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} (h h_3 F_2) \right] + \frac{1}{h_3} \frac{\partial F_3}{\partial \phi} \)
(f) \( \text{curl } \mathbf{F} = \nabla \times \mathbf{F} = \frac{1}{h^2 h_3} \begin{vmatrix} h e_\xi & h e_\eta & h_3 e_\phi \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} & \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} & \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} \\ h F_1 & h F_2 & h_3 F_3 \end{vmatrix} \)

(g) \( \nabla^2 V = \frac{1}{h^2 \cosh \xi} \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \left( \cosh \xi \frac{\partial V}{\partial \xi} \right) + \frac{1}{h^2 \cos \eta} \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \left( \cos \eta \frac{\partial V}{\partial \eta} \right) + \frac{1}{a^2 \cosh^2 \xi \cos^2 \eta} \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial \phi^2} \)

(h) The Helmholtz equation follows from \( H[V] = \nabla^2 V + \lambda V = 0 \), by substituting the Laplacian in (g).
25.1 FUNDAMENTAL IDEAS
25.1.1 Classification of Equations

25.1.1.1
A partial differential equation (PDE) of order \( n \), for an unknown function \( \Phi \) of the \( m \) independent variables \( x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_m (m \geq 2) \), is an equation that relates one or more of the \( n \)th-order partial derivatives of \( \Phi \) to some or all of \( \Phi \), \( x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_m \) and the partial derivatives of \( \Phi \) or order less than \( n \).

The most general second-order PDE can be written

\[
F \left( x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_m, \Phi, \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial x_1}, \ldots, \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial x_m}, \frac{\partial^2 \Phi}{\partial x_1^2}, \ldots, \frac{\partial^2 \Phi}{\partial x_1 \partial x_j}, \ldots, \frac{\partial^2 \Phi}{\partial x_m^2} \right) = 0,
\]

where \( F \) is an arbitrary function of its arguments. A solution of 25.1.1.1 in a region \( R \) of the space to which the independent variables belong is a twice differentiable function that satisfies the equation throughout \( R \).

A boundary value problem for a PDE arises when its solution is required to satisfy conditions on a boundary in space. If, however, one of the independent variables is the time \( t \) and the solution is required to satisfy certain conditions when \( t = 0 \), this leads to an initial value problem for the PDE. Many physical situations involve a combination of both of these situations, and they then lead to an initial boundary value problem.
A linear second-order PDE for the function $\Phi(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_m)$ is an equation of the form

$$2. \sum_{i,j=1}^{m} A_{ij} \frac{\partial^2 \Phi}{\partial x_i \partial x_j} + \sum_{i=1}^{m} B_i \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial x_i} + C \Phi = f,$$

where the $A_{ij}$, $B_i$, $C$, and $f$ are functions of the $m$ independent variables $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_m$. The equation is said to be homogeneous if $f \equiv 0$, otherwise it is inhomogeneous (non-homogeneous).

The most general linear second-order PDE for the function $\Phi(x, y)$ of the two independent variables $x$ and $y$ is

$$3. A(x, y) \frac{\partial^2 \Phi}{\partial x^2} + 2B(x, y) \frac{\partial^2 \Phi}{\partial x \partial y} + C(x, y) \frac{\partial^2 \Phi}{\partial y^2} + d(x, y) \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial x} + e(x, y) \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial y} + f(x, y) \Phi = g(x, y),$$

where $x, y$ may be two spatial variables, or one space variable and the time (usually denoted by $t$).

An important, more general second-order PDE that is related to 25.1.1.1.1 is

$$4. A \frac{\partial^2 \Phi}{\partial x^2} + 2B \frac{\partial^2 \Phi}{\partial x \partial y} + C \frac{\partial^2 \Phi}{\partial y^2} = H(x, y, \Phi, \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial y}),$$

where $A$, $B$, and $C$, like $H$, are functions of $x, y, \Phi, \partial \Phi/\partial x,$ and $\partial \Phi/\partial y$. A PDE of this type is said to be quasilinear (linear in its second (highest) order derivatives).

Linear homogeneous PDEs such as 25.1.1.1.2 and 25.1.1.1.3 have the property that if $\Phi_1$ and $\Phi_2$ are solutions, then so also is $c_1 \Phi_1 + c_2 \Phi_2$, where $c_1$ and $c_2$ are arbitrary constants. This behavior of solutions of PDEs is called the linear superposition property, and it is used for the construction of solutions to initial or boundary value problems.

The second-order PDEs 25.1.1.1.3 and 25.1.1.1.4 are classified throughout a region $R$ of the $(x, y)$-plane according to certain of their mathematical properties that depend on the sign of $\Delta = B^2 - AC$. The equations are said to be of hyperbolic type (hyperbolic) whenever $\Delta > 0$, to be of parabolic type (parabolic) whenever $\Delta = 0$, and to be of elliptic type (elliptic) whenever $\Delta < 0$.

The most important linear homogeneous second-order PDEs in one, two, or three space dimensions and time are:

$$5. \frac{1}{c^2} \frac{\partial^2 \Phi}{\partial t^2} = \nabla^2 \Phi \quad \text{(wave equation: hyperbolic)}$$

$$6. k \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial t} = \nabla^2 \Phi \quad \text{[diffusion (heat) equation: parabolic]}$$

$$7. \nabla^2 \Phi = 0 \quad \text{(Laplace’s equation: elliptic)},$$
where \( c \) and \( k \) are constants, and the form taken by the Laplacian \( \nabla^2 \Phi \) is determined by the coordinate system that is used. Laplace’s equation is independent of the time and may be regarded as the steady-state form of the two previous equations, in the sense that they reduce to it if, after a suitably long time, their time derivatives may be neglected.

Only in exceptional cases is it possible to find general solutions of PDEs, so instead it becomes necessary to develop techniques that enable them to be solved subject to auxiliary conditions (initial and boundary conditions) that identify specific problems. The most frequently used initial and boundary conditions for second-order PDEs are those of Cauchy, Dirichlet, Neumann, and Robin. For simplicity these conditions are now described for second-order PDEs involving two independent variables, although they can be extended to the case of more independent variables in an obvious manner.

When the time \( t \) enters as an independent variable, a problem involving a PDE is said to be a pure initial value problem if it is completely specified by describing how the solution starts at time \( t = 0 \), and no spatial boundaries are involved. If only a first-order time derivative \( \partial \Phi / \partial t \) of the solution \( \Phi \) occurs in the PDE, as in the heat equation, the initial condition involving the specification of \( \Phi \) at \( t = 0 \) is called a Cauchy condition. If, however, a second-order time derivative \( \partial^2 \Phi / \partial t^2 \) occurs in the PDE, as in the wave equation, the Cauchy conditions on the initial line involve the specification of both \( \Phi \) and \( \partial \Phi / \partial t \) at \( t = 0 \).

In each of these cases, the determination of the solution \( \Phi \) that satisfies both the PDE and the Cauchy condition(s) is called a Cauchy problem. More generally, Cauchy conditions on an arc \( \Gamma \) involve the specification of \( \Phi \) and \( \partial \Phi / \partial n \) on \( \Gamma \), where \( \partial \Phi / \partial n \) is the derivative of \( \Phi \) normal to \( \Gamma \).

In other problems only the spatial variables \( x \) and \( y \) are involved in a PDE that contains both the terms \( \partial^2 \Phi / \partial x^2 \) and \( \partial^2 \Phi / \partial y^2 \) and governs the behavior of \( \Phi \) in a region \( D \) of the \((x, y)\)-plane. The region \( D \) will be assumed to lie within a closed boundary curve \( \Gamma \) that is smooth at all but a finite number of points, at which sharp corners occur (region \( D \) is bounded). A Dirichlet condition for such a PDE involves the specification of \( \Phi \) on \( \Gamma \). If \( \partial \Phi / \partial n = n \cdot \text{grad} \Phi \), with \( n \) the inward drawn normal to \( \Gamma \), a Neumann condition involves the specification of \( \partial \Phi / \partial n \) on \( \Gamma \). A Robin condition arises when \( \Phi \) is required to satisfy the condition \( \alpha (x, y) \Phi + \beta (x, y) \partial \Phi / \partial n = h(x, y) \) on \( \Gamma \), where \( h \) may be identically zero.

The determinations of the solutions \( \Phi \) satisfying both the PDE and Dirichlet, Neumann, or Robin conditions on \( \Gamma \) are called boundary value problems of the Dirichlet, Neumann, or Robin types, respectively.

When a PDE subject to auxiliary conditions gives rise to a solution that is unique (except possibly for an arbitrary additive constant), and depends continuously on the data in the auxiliary conditions, it is said to be well posed, or properly posed. An ill-posed problem is one in which the solution does not possess the above properties.

Well-posed problems for the Poisson equation (the inhomogeneous Laplace equation)

8. \( \nabla^2 \Phi (x, y) = H(x, y) \)

involving the above conditions are as follows:
The Dirichlet problem

9. \[ \nabla^2 \Phi(x, y) = H(x, y) \text{ in } D \] with \( \Phi = f(x, y) \) on \( \Gamma \)
yields a unique solution that depends continuously on the inhomogeneous term \( H(x, y) \) and
the boundary data \( f(x, y) \).

The Neumann problem

10. \[ \nabla^2 \Phi(x, y) = H(x, y) \text{ in } D \] with \( \partial \Phi / \partial n = g(x, y) \) on \( \Gamma \)
yields a unique solution, apart from an arbitrary additive constant, that depends continuously
on the inhomogeneous term \( H(x, y) \) and the boundary data \( g(x, y) \), provided that \( H \) and \( g \)
satisfy the compatibility condition

11. \[ \int_D H(x, y) dA = \int_\Gamma g d\sigma, \]

where \( dA \) is the element of area in \( D \) and \( d\sigma \) is the element of arc length along \( \Gamma \). No solution
exists if the compatibility condition is not satisfied.

The Robin problem

12. \[ \nabla^2 \Phi(x, y) = H(x, y) \text{ in } D \] with \( \alpha \Phi + \beta \partial \Phi / \partial n = h \) on \( \Gamma \)
yields a unique solution that depends continuously on the inhomogeneous term \( H(x, y) \) and
the boundary data \( \alpha(x, y), \beta(x, y), \) and \( h(x, y) \).

If the PDE holds in a region \( D \) that is unbounded, the above conditions that ensure
well-posed problems for the Poisson equation must be modified as follows:

Dirichlet conditions Add the requirement that \( \Phi \) is bounded in \( D \).

Neumann conditions Delete the compatibility condition and add the requirement that \( \Phi(x, y) \to 0 \) as \( x^2 + y^2 \to \infty \).

Robin conditions Add the requirement that \( \Phi \) is bounded in \( D \).

The variability of the coefficients \( A(x, y), B(x, y), \) and \( C(x, y) \) in 25.1.1.1.3 can cause the
equation to change its type in different regions of the \( (x, y) \)-plane. An equation exhibiting this
property is said to be of mixed type. One of the most important equations of mixed type is the Tricomi equation

\[
\frac{\partial^2 \Phi}{\partial x^2} + y \frac{\partial^2 \Phi}{\partial y^2} = 0,
\]

which first arose in the study of transonic flow. This equation is elliptic for \( y > 0 \), hyperbolic
for \( y < 0 \), and degenerately parabolic along the line \( y = 0 \). Such equations are difficult to study
because the appropriate auxiliary conditions vary according to the type of the equation. When
a solution is required in a region within which the parabolic degeneracy occurs, the matching
of the solution across the degeneracy gives rise to considerable mathematical difficulties.
25.2 METHOD OF SEPARATION OF VARIABLES

25.2.1 Application to a Hyperbolic Problem

25.2.1.1

The method of separation of variables is a technique for the determination of the solution of a boundary value or an initial value problem for a linear homogeneous equation that involves attempting to separate the spatial behavior of a solution from its time variation (temporal behavior). It will suffice to illustrate the method by considering the special linear homogeneous second-order hyperbolic equation

\[ \text{div} (k \nabla \phi) - h \phi = \rho \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial t^2}, \]

in which \( k > 0, \ h \geq 0, \) and \( \phi(x, t) \) is a function of position vector \( x \), and the time \( t \). A typical homogeneous boundary condition to be satisfied by \( \phi \) on some fixed surface \( S \) in space bounding a volume \( V \) is

\[ \left( k_1 \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial n} + k_2 \phi \right)_S = 0, \]

where \( k_1, \ k_2 \) are constants and \( \partial / \partial n \) denotes the derivative of \( \phi \) normal to \( S \). The appropriate initial conditions to be satisfied by \( \phi \) when \( t = 0 \) are

\[ \phi(S, 0) = \phi_1(S) \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial t}(S, 0) = \phi_2(S). \]

The homogeneity of both 25.2.1.1.1 and the boundary condition 25.2.1.1.2 means that if \( \tilde{\phi}_1 \) and \( \tilde{\phi}_2 \) are solutions of 25.2.1.1.1 by satisfying 25.2.1.1.2, then the function \( c_1 \tilde{\phi}_1 + c_2 \tilde{\phi}_2 \) with \( c_1, \ c_2 \) being arbitrary constants will also satisfy the same equation and boundary condition.

The method of separation of variables proceeds by seeking a solution of the form

\[ \phi(x, t) = U(x)T(t), \]

in which \( U(x) \) is a function only on the spatial position vector \( x \), and \( T(t) \) is a function only of the time \( t \).

Substitution of 25.2.1.1.4 into 25.2.1.1.1, followed by division by \( \rho U(x)T(t) \), gives

\[ \frac{L[U]}{\rho U} = \frac{T''}{T}, \]

where \( T'' = d^2T/dt^2 \), and we have set

\[ L[U] = \text{div} (k \nabla U) - hU. \]

The spatial vector \( x \) has been separated from the time variable \( t \) in 25.2.1.1.5, so the left-hand side is a function only of \( x \), whereas the right-hand side is a function only of \( t \). It is only possible for these functions of \( x \) and \( t \) to be equal for all \( x \) and \( t \) if

\[ \frac{L[U]}{\rho U} = \frac{T''}{T} = -\lambda, \]
with $\lambda$ an absolute constant called the \textbf{separation constant}. This result reduces to the equation

8. $L[U] + \lambda \rho U = 0,$

with the boundary condition

9. $\left( k_1 \frac{\partial U}{\partial n} + k_2 U \right)_S = 0$

governing the spatial variation of the solution, and the equation

10. $T'' + \lambda T = 0,$

with

11. $T(0) = \phi_1$ and $T'(0) = \phi_2,$

governing the time variation of the solution.

Problem 25.2.1.1.8 subject to boundary condition 25.2.1.1.9 is called a \textbf{Sturm-Liouville problem}, and it only has \textbf{nontrivial solutions} (not identically zero) for special values $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots$ of $\lambda$ called the \textbf{eigenvalues} of the problem. The solutions $U_1, U_2, \ldots,$ corresponding to the eigenvalues $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots,$ are called the \textbf{eigenfunctions} of the problem.

The solution of 25.2.1.1.10 for each $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots,$ subject to the initial conditions of 25.2.1.1.11, may be written

12. $T_n(t) = C_n \cos \sqrt{\lambda_n} t + D_n \sin \sqrt{\lambda_n} t \quad [n = 1, 2, \ldots]$  

so that

$$\Phi_n(x, t) = U_n(x) T_n(t).$$

The solution of the original problem is then sought in the form of the linear combination

13. $\phi(x, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} U_n(x) [C_n \cos \sqrt{\lambda_n} t + D_n \sin \sqrt{\lambda_n} t].$

To determine the constants $C_n$ and $D_n$ it is necessary to use a fundamental property of eigenfunctions. Setting

14. $\|U_n\|^2 = \int_D \rho(x) U_n^2(x) dV,$

and using the Gauss divergence theorem, it follows that the eigenfunctions $U_n(x)$ are orthogonal over the volume $V$ with respect to the \textbf{weight function} $\rho(x)$, so that

15. $\int_D \rho(x) U_m(x) U_n(x) dV = \begin{cases} 0, & m \neq n, \\ \|U_n\|^2, & m = n. \end{cases}$

The constants $C_n$ follow from 25.2.1.13 by setting $t = 0$, replacing $\phi(x, t)$, by $\phi_1(x)$, multiplying by $U_m(x)$, integrating over $D$, and using 25.2.1.1.15 to obtain
25.3 The Sturm–Liouville Problem and Special Functions

16. \[ C_m = \frac{1}{\|U_m\|^2} \int_D \rho(x) \phi_1(x) U_m(x) \, dV. \]

The constants \( D_m \) follow in similar fashion by differentiating \( \phi(x, t) \) with respect to \( t \) and then setting \( t = 0 \), replacing \( \partial \phi / \partial t \) by \( \phi_2(x) \) and proceeding as in the determination of \( C_m \) to obtain

17. \[ D_m = \frac{1}{\|U_m\|^2} \int_D \rho(x) \phi_2(x) U_m(x) \, dV. \]

The required solution to 25.2.1.1.1 subject to the boundary condition 25.2.1.1.2 and the initial conditions 25.2.1.1.3 then follows by substituting for \( C_n, D_n \) in 25.2.1.1.13.

If in 25.2.1.1.1 the term \( \rho \partial^2 \phi / \partial t^2 \) is replaced by \( \rho \partial \phi / \partial t \) the equation becomes *parabolic*. The method of separation of variables still applies, though in place of 25.2.1.1.10, the equation governing the time variation of the solution becomes

18. \[ T' + \lambda T = 0, \]

and so

19. \[ T(t) = e^{-\lambda t}. \]

Apart from this modification, the argument leading to the solution proceeds as before.

Finally, 25.2.1.1.1 becomes elliptic if \( \rho \equiv 0 \), for which only an appropriate boundary condition is needed. In this case, separation of variables is only performed on the spatial variables, though the method of approach is essentially the same as the one already outlined. The boundary conditions lead first to the eigenvalues and eigenfunctions, and then to the solution.

### 25.3 THE STURM–LIOUVILLE PROBLEM AND SPECIAL FUNCTIONS

#### 25.3.1

In the Sturm–Liouville problem 25.2.1.1.8, subject to the boundary condition 25.2.1.1.9, the operator \( L[\phi] \) is a purely spatial operator that may involve any number of space dimensions. The coordinate system that is used determines the form of \( L[\phi] \) (see 24.2.1) and the types of special functions that enter into the eigenfunctions.

To illustrate matters we consider as a representative problem 25.2.1.1.1 in cylindrical polar coordinates \((r, \theta, z)\) with \( k = \text{const.}, \rho = \text{const.}, \) and \( h \equiv 0 \), when the equation takes the form

1. \[ \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial r^2} + \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r^2} \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial \theta^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial z^2} = \frac{1}{c^2} \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial t^2}, \]

where \( c^2 = k/\rho \).

The first step in separating variables involves separating out the time variation by writing

2. \[ \phi(r, \theta, z, t) = U(r, \theta, z) T(t). \]

Substituting for \( \phi \) in 25.3.1.1 and dividing by \( UT \) gives
3. \[
\frac{1}{U} \left[ \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial r^2} + \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial U}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r^2} \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial \theta^2} + \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial z^2} \right] = \frac{1}{c^2 T} \frac{d^2 T}{dt^2} .
\]

Introducing a separation constant \(-\lambda^2\) by setting \(1/(c^2T) \frac{d^2T}{dt^2} = -\lambda^2\) reduces 25.3.1.3 to the two differential equations

4. \[
\frac{d^2T}{dt^2} + c^2 \lambda^2 T = 0 \quad \text{(time variation equation)}
\]

and

5. \[
\frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial r^2} + \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial U}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r^2} \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial \theta^2} + \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial z^2} + \lambda^2 U = 0 .
\]

(The Sturm–Liouville equation)

The separation constant has been chosen to be negative because solutions of wave-like equations must be oscillatory with respect to time (see 25.3.1.4).

To separate the variables in this last equation, while is the Sturm–Liouville equation, it is necessary to set

6. \[U(r, \theta, z) = R(r)\Theta(\theta)Z(z)\]

and to introduce two further separation constants. However, a considerable simplification results if fewer independent variables are involved. This happens, for example, in the cylindrical polar coordinate system when the solution in planes parallel to \(z = 0\) is the same, so there is no variation with \(z\). This reduces the mathematical study of the three-dimensional problem to a two-dimensional one involving the plane polar coordinates \((r, \theta)\). Removing the term \(\partial^2 U/\partial z^2\) in the Sturm–Liouville equation reduces it to

7. \[
\frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial r^2} + \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial U}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r^2} \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial \theta^2} + \lambda^2 U = 0 .
\]

To separate the variables in 25.3.1.7 we now set

8. \[U(r, \theta) = R(r)\Theta(\theta),\]

substitute for \(U\), and multiply by \(r^2/(R\Theta)\) to obtain

9. \[
\frac{1}{R} \left( r^2 \frac{\partial^2 R}{\partial r^2} + r \frac{\partial R}{\partial r} + \lambda^2 r^2 R \right) = -\frac{1}{\Theta} \frac{d^2 \Theta}{d\theta^2} ,
\]

where the expression on the left is a function only of \(r\), whereas the one on the right is a function only of \(\theta\). Introducing a new separation constant \(\mu^2\) by writing \(\mu^2 = -(1/\Theta) \frac{d^2 \Theta}{d\theta^2}\) shows that

10. \[
\frac{d^2 \Theta}{d\theta^2} + \mu^2 \Theta = 0
\]

and

11. \[
r^2 \frac{d^2 R}{dr^2} + r \frac{d R}{dr} + (\lambda^2 r^2 - \mu^2) R = 0 .
\]
To proceed further we must make use of the boundary condition for the problem which, as yet, has not been specified. It will be sufficient to consider the solution of 25.3.1.1 in a circular cylinder of radius \( a \) with its axis coinciding with the \( z \)-axis, inside of which the solution \( \phi \) is finite, while on its surface \( \phi = 0 \). Because the solution \( \phi \) will be of the form \( \phi(r, \theta, z, t) = R(r)\Theta(\theta)T(t) \), it follows directly from this that the boundary condition \( \phi(a, \theta, z, t) = 0 \) corresponds to the condition

12. \( R(a) = 0 \).

The solution of 25.3.1.10 is

13. \( \Theta(\theta) = \tilde{A} \cos \mu \theta + \tilde{B} \sin \mu \theta \),

where \( \tilde{A}, \tilde{B} \) are arbitrary constants. Inside the cylinder \( r = a \) the solution must be invariant with respect to a rotation through \( 2\pi \), so that \( \Theta(\theta + 2\pi) = \Theta(\theta) \), which shows that \( \mu \) must be an integer \( n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \). By choosing the reference line from which \( \theta \) is measured 25.3.1.3 may be rewritten in the more convenient form

14. \( \Theta_n(\theta) = A_n \cos n\theta \).

The use of integer values of \( n \) in 25.3.1.11 shows the variation of the solution \( \phi \) with \( r \) to be governed by Bessel’s equation of integer order \( n \)

15. \( r^2 \frac{d^2 R}{dr^2} + r \frac{dR}{dr} + (\lambda^2 r^2 - n^2) R = 0 \),

which has the general solution (see 17.1.1.1.8)

16. \( R(r) = BJ_n(\lambda r) + CY_n(\lambda r) \).

The condition that the solution \( \phi \) must be finite inside the cylinder requires us to set \( C = 0 \), because \( Y_n(\lambda r) \) is infinite at the origin (see 17.2.22.2), while the condition \( R(a) = 0 \) in 25.3.1.12 requires that

17. \( J_n(\lambda a) = 0 \),

which can only hold if \( \lambda a \) is a zero of \( J_n(x) \). Denoting the zeros of \( J_n(x) \) by \( j_{n,1}, j_{n,2}, \ldots \) (see 17.5.11) it follows that

18. \( \lambda_{n,m} = j_{n,m}/a \quad [n = 0, 1, \ldots; m = 1, 2, \ldots] \).

The possible spatial modes of the solution are thus described by the eigenfunctions

19. \( U_{n,m}(r, \theta) = J_n \left( \frac{j_{n,m}r}{a} \right) \cos n\theta \quad [n = 0, 1, \ldots; m = 1, 2, \ldots] \).
The solution $\phi$ is then found by setting

$$\phi(r, \theta, z, t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} J_n \left( \frac{j_n m r}{a} \right) \cos m \theta \left[ A_{nm} \cos(\lambda_n m c t) + B_{nm} \sin(\lambda_n m c t) \right],$$

and choosing the constants $A_{nm}, B_{nm}$ so that specified initial conditions are satisfied. In this result the multiplicative constant $A_n$ in 25.3.1.14 has been incorporated into the arbitrary constants $A_{nm}, B_{nm}$ introduced when 25.3.1.4 was solved.

The eigenfunctions 25.3.1.19 may be interpreted as the possible spatial modes of an oscillating uniform circular membrane that is clamped around its circumference $r = a$. Each term in 25.3.1.20 represents the time variation of a possible mode, with the response to specified initial conditions comprising a suitable sum of such terms.

Had 25.2.1.1 been expressed in terms of spherical polar coordinates $(r, \theta, \phi)$, with $k = \text{const.}, h \equiv 0$, and $p = 0$, the equation would have reduced to Laplace’s equation $\nabla^2 \phi = 0$.

In the case where the solution is required to be finite and independent of the azimuthal angle $\phi$, separation of variables would have led to eigenfunctions of the form

$$U_n(r, \theta) = Ar^n P_n(\cos \theta),$$

where $P_n(\cos \theta)$ is the Legendre polynomial of degree $n$.

Other choices of coordinate systems may lead to different and less familiar special functions, the properties of many of which are only to be found in more advanced reference works.

### 25.4 A FIRST-ORDER SYSTEM AND THE WAVE EQUATION

#### 25.4.1

Although linear second-order partial differential equations govern the behavior of many physical systems, they are not the only type of equation that is of importance. In most applications that give rise to second-order equations, the equations occur as a result of the elimination of a variable, sometimes a vector, between a coupled system of more fundamental first-order equations. The study of such first-order systems is of importance because when variables cannot be eliminated in order to arrive at a single higher order equation the underlying first-order system itself must be solved.

A typical example of the derivation of a single second-order equation from a coupled system of first-order equations is provided by considering Maxwell’s equations in a vacuum. These comprise a first-order linear system of the form

1. $\frac{\partial E}{\partial t} = \text{curl} \, \mathbf{H}, \quad \frac{\partial \mathbf{H}}{\partial t} = -\text{curl} \, \mathbf{E}, \quad \text{with div} \, \mathbf{E} = 0.$

Here $\mathbf{E} = (E_1, E_2, E_3)$ is the electric vector, $\mathbf{H} = (H_1, H_2, H_3)$ is the magnetic vector, and the third equation is the condition that no distributed charge is present.

Differentiation of the first equation with respect to $t$ followed by substitution for $\partial \mathbf{H}/\partial t$ from the second equation leads to the following second-order vector differential equation for $\mathbf{E}$:

2. $\frac{\partial^2 \mathbf{E}}{\partial t^2} = -\text{curl} \, (\text{curl} \, \mathbf{E}).$
Using vector identity 23.1.1.4 together with the condition \( \text{div } \mathbf{E} = 0 \) shows that \( \mathbf{E} \) satisfies the vector wave equation

3. \( \frac{\partial^2 \mathbf{E}}{\partial t^2} = \nabla^2 \mathbf{E} \).

The linearity of this equation then implies that each of the components of \( \mathbf{E} \) separately must satisfy this same equation, so

4. \( \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial t^2} = \nabla^2 U \),

where \( U \) may be any component of \( \mathbf{E} \).

An identical argument shows that the components of \( \mathbf{H} \) satisfy this same scalar wave equation. Thus the study of solutions of the first-order system involving Maxwell’s equations reduces to the study of the single second-order scalar wave equation.

An example of a first-order quasilinear system of equations, the study of which cannot be reduced to the study of a single higher order equation, is provided by the equations governing compressible gas flow

5. \( \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \text{div}(\rho \mathbf{u}) = 0 \)

6. \( \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial t} + \mathbf{u} \cdot \text{grad } \mathbf{u} + \frac{1}{\rho} \text{grad } p = 0 \)

7. \( p = f(\rho) \),

where \( \rho \) is the gas density, \( \mathbf{u} \) is the gas velocity, \( p \) is the gas pressure, and \( f(\rho) \) is a known function of \( \rho \) (it is the constitutive equation relating the pressure and density). Only in the case of linear acoustics, in which the pressure variations are small enough to justify linearization of the equations, can they be reduced to the study of the scalar wave equation.

### 25.5 Conservation Equations (Laws)

#### 25.5.1

A type of first-order equation that is of fundamental importance in applications is the conservation equation, sometimes called a conservation law. In the one-dimensional case let \( u = u(x, t) \) represent the density per unit volume of a quantity of physical interest. Then in a cylindrical volume of cross-sectional area \( A \) normal to the \( x \)-axis and extending from \( x = a \) to \( x = b \), the amount present at time \( t \) is

1. \( Q = A \int_a^b u(x, t) \, dx \).

Let \( f(x, t) \) at position \( x \) and time \( t \) be the amount of \( u \) that is flowing through a unit area normal to the \( x \)-axis per unit time. The quantity \( f(x, t) \) is called the flux of \( u \) at position \( x \) and time \( t \). Considering the flux at the ends of the cylindrical volume we see that
2. \( Q = A [f(a, t) - f(b, t)] \),

because in a one-dimensional problem there is no flux normal to the axis of the cylinder (through the curved walls).

If there is an internal source for \( u \) distributed throughout the cylinder it is necessary to take account of its effect on \( u \) before arriving at a final balance equation (conservation law) for \( u \). Suppose \( u \) is created (or removed) at a rate \( h(x, t, u) \) at position \( x \) and time \( t \). Then the rate of production (or removal) of \( u \) throughout the volume = \( A \int_a^b h(x, t, u) \, dx \). Balancing all three of these results to find the rate of change of \( Q \) with respect to \( t \) gives

\[
3. \frac{d}{dt} \int_a^b u(x, t) \, dx = f(a, t) - f(b, t) + \int_a^b h(x, t, u) \, dx.
\]

This is the integral form of the conservation equation for \( u \).

Provided \( u(x, t) \) and \( f(x, t) \) are differentiable, this may be rewritten as

\[
4. \int_a^b \left[ \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} - h(x, t, u) \right] \, dx = 0,
\]

for arbitrary \( a \) and \( b \). The result can only be true for all \( a \) and \( b \) if

\[
5. \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = h(x, t, u),
\]

which is the differential equation form of the conservation equation for \( u \).

In more space dimensions the differential form of the conservation equation becomes the equation in divergence form

\[
6. \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + \text{div} \, f = h(x, t, u).
\]

### 25.6 THE METHOD OF CHARACTERISTICS

#### 25.6.1

Because the fundamental properties of first-order systems are reflected in the behavior of single first-order scalar equations, the following introductory account will be restricted to this simpler case. Consider the single first-order quasilinear equation

\[
1. a(x, t, u) \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + b(x, t, u) \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = h(x, t, u),
\]

subject to the initial condition \( u(x, 0) = g(x) \).

Let a curve \( \Gamma \) in the \((x, t)\)-plane be defined parametrically in terms of \( \sigma \) by \( t = t(\sigma), x = x(\sigma) \). The tangent vector \( T \) to \( \Gamma \) has components \( dx/d\sigma, dt/d\sigma \), so the directional derivative of \( u \) with respect to \( \sigma \) along \( \Gamma \) is
2. \[ \frac{du}{d\sigma} = \mathbf{T} \cdot \text{grad } u = \frac{dx}{d\sigma} \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{dt}{d\sigma} \frac{\partial u}{\partial t}. \]

Comparison of this result with the left-hand side of 25.6.1.1 shows that it may be rewritten in the first characteristic form

3. \[ \frac{du}{d\sigma} = h(x, t, u), \]

along the characteristic curves in the \((x, t)\)-plane obtained by solving

4. \[ \frac{dt}{d\sigma} = a(x, t, u) \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{dx}{d\sigma} = b(x, t, u). \]

On occasion it is advantageous to retain the parameter \(\sigma\), but it is often removed by multiplying \(\frac{du}{d\sigma}\) and \(\frac{dx}{d\sigma}\) by \(\frac{d\sigma}{dt}\) to obtain the equivalent second characteristic form for the partial differential equation 25.6.1.1.

5. \[ \frac{du}{dt} = \frac{h(x, t, u)}{a(x, t, u)}, \]

along the characteristic curves obtained by solving

6. \[ \frac{dx}{dt} = \frac{b(x, t, u)}{a(x, t, u)}. \]

This approach, called solution by the method of characteristics, has replaced the original partial differential equation by the solution of an ordinary differential equation that is valid along each member of the family of characteristic curves in the \((x, t)\)-plane. If a characteristic curve \(C_0\) intersects the initial line at \((x_0, 0)\), it follows that at this point the initial condition for \(u\) along \(C_0\) must be \(u(x_0, 0) = g(x_0)\).

This situation is illustrated in Figure 25.1, which shows typical members of a family of characteristics in the \((x, t)\)-plane together with the specific curve \(C_0\).
When the partial differential equation is linear, the characteristic curves can be found independently of the solution, but in the quasilinear case they must be determined simultaneously with the solution on which they depend. This usually necessitates the use of numerical methods.

**Example 25.1** This example involves a constant coefficient first-order equation. Consider the equation

\[ 7. \quad \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + c \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = 0 \quad [c > 0 \text{ a const.}], \]

sometimes called the advection equation, and subject to the initial condition \( u(x, 0) = g(x) \). When written in the second characteristic form this becomes

\[ 8. \quad \frac{du}{dt} = 0 \]

along the characteristic curves given by integrating \( dx/dt = c \). Thus the characteristic curves are the family of parallel straight lines \( x = ct + \xi \) that intersects the initial line \( t = 0 \) (the \( x \)-axis) at the point \((\xi, 0)\). The first equation shows that \( u = \text{const.} \) along a characteristic, but at the point \((\xi, 0)\) we have \( u(\xi, 0) = g(\xi) \), so \( u(x, t) = g(\xi) \) along this characteristic. Using the fact that \( \xi = x - ct \) it then follows that the required solution is

\[ 9. \quad u(x, t) = g(x - ct). \]

The solution represents a traveling wave with initial shape \( g(x) \) that moves to the right with constant speed \( c \) without change of shape. The nature of the solution relative to the characteristics is illustrated in Figure 25.2.
Example 25.2 In this example we solve the linear variable coefficient first-order equation

10. \( \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + t \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = xt \),

subject to the initial condition \( u(x, 0) = \sin x \). Again expressing the equation in the second characteristic form gives

11. \( \frac{du}{dt} = xt \)

along the characteristics given by integrating \( dx/dt = t \). Integration shows that the characteristic curves are

12. \( \int dx = \int t dt \) or \( x = \frac{1}{2} t^2 + \xi \),

where the constant of integration \( \xi \) defines point \( (\xi, 0) \) on the initial line through which the characteristic curve passes, while from the initial condition \( u(\xi, 0) = \sin \xi \).

Substituting for \( x \) in \( du/dt = xt \) and integrating gives

13. \( \int du = \int \left( \frac{1}{2} t^3 + \xi t \right) dt \) or \( u = \frac{1}{8} t^4 + \frac{1}{2} \xi t^2 + k(\xi) \),

where for the moment the “constant of integration” \( k(\xi) \) is an unknown function of \( \xi \). The function \( k(\xi) \) is constant along each characteristic, but it differs from characteristic to characteristic, depending on the value of \( \xi \) associated with each characteristic.

Because \( \xi = x - \frac{1}{2} t^2 \), it follows that

14. \( u(x, t) = \frac{1}{8} t^4 + \frac{1}{2} \left( x - \frac{1}{2} t^2 \right) t^2 + k \left( x - \frac{1}{2} t^2 \right) \).

Setting \( t = 0 \) and using the initial condition \( u(x, 0) = \sin x \) reduces this last result to

15. \( \sin x = k(x) \),

so the unknown function \( k \) has been determined. Replacing \( x \) in \( k(x) \) by \( x - \frac{1}{2} t^2 \), and using the result in the expression for \( u(x, t) \) gives

16. \( u(x, t) = \frac{1}{8} t^4 + \frac{1}{2} \left( x - \frac{1}{2} t^2 \right) t^2 + \sin \left( x - \frac{1}{2} t^2 \right) \).

This expression for \( u(x, t) \) satisfies the initial condition and the differential equation, so it is the required solution.

Example 25.3 This example involves a simple first-order quasilinear equation. We now use the method of characteristics to solve the initial value problem
17. \( \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + f(u) \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = 0, \)

subject to the initial condition \( u(x, 0) = g(x) \), where \( f(u) \) and \( g(x) \) are known continuous and differentiable functions.

Proceeding as before, the second characteristic form for the equation becomes

18. \( \frac{du}{dt} = 0 \)

along the characteristic curves given by integrating \( dx/dt = f(u) \). The first equation shows \( u \) = constant along a characteristic curve. Using this result in the second equation and integrating shows the characteristic curves to be the family of straight lines

19. \( x = tf(u) + \xi, \)

where \((\xi, 0)\) is the point on the initial line from which the characteristic emanates. From the initial condition it follows that the value of \( u \) transported along this characteristic must be \( u = g(\xi) \). Because \( \xi = x - tf(u) \), if follows that the solution is given implicitly by

20. \( u(x, t) = g[ x - tf(u) ]. \)

The implicit nature of this solution indicates that the solution need not necessarily always be unique. This can also be seen by computing \( \partial u/\partial x \), which is

21. \( \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = \frac{g'(x - tf(u))}{1 + tg'(x - tf(u)) f'(u)}. \)

If the functions \( f \) and \( g \) are such that the denominator vanishes for some \( t = t_c > 0 \), the derivative \( \partial u/\partial x \) becomes unbounded when \( t = t_c \). When this occurs, the differential equation can no longer govern the behavior of the solution, so it ceases to have meaning and the solution may become nonunique.

The development of the solution when \( f(u) = u \) and \( g(x) = \sin x \) is shown in Figure 25.3. The wave profile is seen to become steeper due to the influence of nonlinearity until \( t = t_c \), where the tangent to part of the solution profile becomes infinite. Subsequent to time \( t_c \) the solution is seen to become many valued (nonunique). This result illustrates that, unlike the linear case in which \( f(u) = c \) (const.), a quasilinear equation of this type cannot describe traveling waves of constant shape.

### 25.7 DISCONTINUOUS SOLUTIONS (SHOCKS)

25.7.1

To examine the nature of discontinuous solutions of first-order quasilinear hyperbolic equations, it is sufficient to consider the scalar conservation equation in differential form
25.7 Discontinuous Solutions (Shocks)

1. \( \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + \text{div } f = 0 \),

where \( u = u(x,t) \) and \( f = f(u) \). Let \( V(t) \) be an arbitrary volume bounded by a surface \( S(t) \) moving with velocity \( \mathbf{\nu} \). Provided \( u \) is differentiable in \( V(t) \), it follows from 23.11.1.1 that the rate of change of the volume integral of \( u \) is

2. \[ \frac{d}{dt} \int_{V(t)} u \, dV = \int_{V(t)} \left\{ \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + \text{div } (u\mathbf{\nu}) \right\} dV. \]

Substituting for \( \partial u/\partial t \) gives

3. \[ \frac{d}{dt} \int_{V(t)} u \, dV = \int_{V(t)} \left[ \text{div}(u\mathbf{\nu}) - \text{div } f \right] dV, \]

and after use of the Gauss divergence theorem 23.9.1.3 this becomes

4. \[ \frac{d}{dt} \int_{V(t)} u \, dV = \int_{S(t)} (u\mathbf{\nu} - f) \cdot d\sigma, \]

where \( d\sigma \) is the outward drawn vector element of surface area of \( S(t) \) with respect to \( V(t) \).

Now suppose that \( V(t) \) is divided into two parts \( V_1(t) \) and \( V_2(t) \) by a moving surface \( \Omega(t) \) across which \( u \) is discontinuous, with \( u = u_1 \) in \( V_1(t) \) and \( u = u_2 \) in \( V_2(t) \). Subtracting from this last result the corresponding results when \( V(t) \) is replaced first by \( V_1(t) \) and then by \( V_2(t) \) gives

5. \[ 0 = \int_{\Omega(t)} (u\mathbf{\nu} - f)_1 \cdot d\Omega_1 + \int_{\Omega(t)} (u\mathbf{\nu} - f)_2 \cdot d\Omega_2, \]

where now \( \mathbf{\nu} \) is restricted to \( \Omega(t) \), and so is the velocity of the discontinuity surface, while \( d\Omega_i \) is the outwardly directed vector element of surface area of \( \Omega(t) \) with respect to \( V_i(t) \) for
$i = 1, 2$. As $d\Omega_1 = -d\Omega_2 = n\,d\Omega$, say, where $n$ is the outward drawn unit normal to $\Omega_1(t)$ with respect to $V_1(t)$, it follows that

6. $0 = \int_{\Omega(t)} [(u\nu - f)_1 \cdot n - (u\nu - f)_2 \cdot n] \,d\Omega = 0$.

The arbitrariness of $V(t)$ implies that this result must be true for all $\Omega(t)$, which can only be possible if

7. $(u\nu - f)_1 \cdot n = (u\nu - f)_2 \cdot n$.

The speed of the discontinuity surface along the normal $n$ is the same on either side of $\Omega(t)$, so setting $\nu_1 \cdot n = \nu_2 \cdot n = s$, leads to the following algebraic jump condition that must be satisfied by a discontinuous solution

8. $(u_1 - u_2) s = (f_1 - f_2) \cdot n$.

This may be written more concisely as

9. $[u] s = [f] \cdot n$,

where $[\alpha] = \alpha_1 - \alpha_2$ denotes the jump in $\alpha$ across $\Omega(t)$.

In general, $f = f(u)$ is a nonlinear function of $u$, so for any given $s$, specifying $u$ on one side of the discontinuity and using the jump condition to find $u$ on the other side may lead to more than one value. This possible nonuniqueness of discontinuous solutions to quasilinear hyperbolic equations is typical, and in physical problems a criterion (selection principle) must be developed to select the unique physically realizable discontinuous solution from among the set of all mathematically possible but nonphysical solutions.

In gas dynamics the jump condition is called the Rankine--Hugoniot jump condition, and a discontinuous solution in which gas flows across the discontinuity is called a shock, or a shock wave. In the case in which a discontinuity is present, but there is no gas flow across it, the discontinuity is called a contact discontinuity. In gas dynamics two shocks are possible mathematically, but one is rejected as nonphysical by appeal to the second law of thermodynamics (the selection principle used there) because of the entropy decrease that occurs across it, so only the compression shock that remains is a physically realizable shock. To discuss discontinuous solutions, in general it is necessary to introduce more abstract selection principles, called entropy conditions, which amount to stability criteria that must be satisfied by solutions.

The need to work with conservation equations (equations in divergence form) when considering discontinuous solutions can be seen from the preceding argument, for only then can the Gauss divergence theorem be used to relate the solution on one side of the discontinuity to that on the other.
25.8 SIMILARITY SOLUTIONS

25.8.1

When characteristic scales exist for length, time, and the dependent variables in a physical problem it is advantageous to free the equations from dependence on a particular choice of scales by expressing them in nondimensional form. Consider, for example, a cylinder of radius \( \rho_0 \) filled with a viscous fluid with viscosity \( \nu \), which is initially at rest at time \( t = 0 \). This cylinder is suddenly set into rotation about the axis of the cylinder with angular velocity \( \omega \). Although this is a three-dimensional problem, because of radial symmetry about the axis, the velocity \( u \) at any point in the fluid can only depend on the radius \( \rho \) and the time \( t \) if gravity is neglected.

Natural length and time scales are \( \rho_0 \), which is determined by the geometry of the problem, and the period of a rotation \( \tau = 2\pi/\omega \), which is determined by the initial condition. Appropriate nondimensional length and time scales are thus \( r = \rho/\rho_0 \) and \( T = t/\tau \). The dependent variable in the problem is the fluid velocity \( u(r, t) \), which can be made nondimensional by selecting as a convenient characteristic speed \( u_0 = \omega \rho_0 \), which is the speed of rotation at the wall of the cylinder. Thus, an appropriate nondimensional velocity is \( U = u/u_0 \).

The only other quantity that remains to be made nondimensional is the viscosity \( \nu \). It proves most convenient to work with \( 1/\nu \) and to define the Reynolds number \( \text{Re} = u_0 \rho_0 / \nu \), which is a dimensionless quantity. Once the governing equation has been reexpressed in terms of \( r \), \( T \), \( U \), and \( \text{Re} \), and its dimensionless solution has been found, the result may be used to provide the solution appropriate to any choice of \( \rho_0 \), \( \omega \), and \( \nu \) for which the governing equations are valid.

Equations that have natural characteristic scales for the independent variables are said to be scale-similar. The name arises from the fact that any two different problems with the same numerical values for the dimensionless quantities involved will have the same nondimensional solution.

Certain partial differential equations have no natural characteristic scales for the independent variables. These are equations for which self-similar solutions can be found. In such problems the nondimensionalization is obtained not by introducing characteristic scales, but by combining the independent variables into nondimensional groups.

The classic example of a self-similar solution is provided by considering the unsteady heat equation

\[
1. \quad \frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial x^2} = \frac{1}{\kappa} \frac{\partial T}{\partial t}
\]

applied to a semi-infinite slab of heat conducting material with thermal diffusivity \( \kappa \), with \( x \) measured into the slab normal to the bounding face \( x = 0 \). Suppose that for \( t < 0 \) the material is all at the initial temperature \( T_0 \), and that at \( t = 0 \) the temperature of the face of the slab is suddenly changed to \( T_1 \). Then there is a natural characteristic temperature scale provided by the temperature difference \( T_1 - T_0 \), so a convenient nondimensional temperature is \( \tau = (T - T_0)/(T_1 - T_0) \). However, in this example, no natural length and time scales can be introduced.
If a combination \( \eta \), say, of variables \( x \) and \( t \) is to be introduced in place of the separate variables \( x \) and \( t \) themselves, the one-dimensional heat equation will be simplified if this change of variable reduces it to a second-order ordinary differential equation in terms of the single independent variable \( \eta \). The consequence of this approach will be that instead of there being a different temperature profile for each time \( t \), there will be a single profile in terms of \( \eta \) from which the temperature profile at any time \( t \) can be deduced. It is this scaling of the solution on itself that gives rise to the name *self-similar solution*.

Let us try setting

2. \( \eta = Dx/t^n \) and \( \tau = f(\eta) \) \([D = \text{const.}]\)

in the heat equation, where a suitable choice for \( n \) has still to be made. Routine calculation shows that the heat equation becomes

3. \[
\frac{d^2 f}{d\eta^2} + \frac{n}{\kappa D^2} t^{2n-1} \eta \frac{df}{d\eta} = 0.
\]

For this to become an ordinary differential equation in terms of the independent variable \( \eta \), it is necessary for the equation to be independent of \( t \), which may be accomplished by setting \( n = \frac{1}{2} \) to obtain

4. \[
\frac{d^2 f}{d\eta^2} + \frac{1}{2\kappa D^2 \eta} \frac{df}{d\eta} = 0.
\]

It is convenient to choose \( D \) so that \( 2\kappa D^2 = 1 \), which corresponds to

5. \( D = 1/\sqrt{2\kappa}. \)

The heat equation then reduces to the variable coefficient second-order ordinary differential equation

6. \[
\frac{d^2 f}{d\eta^2} + \frac{df}{d\eta} = 0, \quad \text{with } \eta = x/\sqrt{\kappa t}.
\]

The initial condition shows that \( f(0) = 1 \), while the temperature variation must be such that for all time \( t \), \( T \to T_0 \) as \( \eta \to \infty \), so another condition on \( f \) is \( f(\eta) \to 0 \) as \( \eta \to \infty \). Integration of the equation for \( f \) subject to these conditions can be shown to lead to the result

7. \[
T = T_0 + (T_1 - T_0) \text{erfc} \left( \frac{x}{2\sqrt{\kappa t}} \right).
\]

Sophisticated group theoretic arguments must be used to find the similarity variable in more complicated cases. However, this example illustrates the considerable advantage of this approach when a similarity variable can be found, because it reduces by one the number of independent variables involved in the partial differential equation.
As a final simple example of self-similar solutions, we mention the cylindrical wave equation

8. \[ \frac{\partial^2 \Phi}{\partial r^2} + \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial r} = \frac{1}{c^2} \frac{\partial^2 \Phi}{\partial t^2}, \]

which has the self-similar solution

9. \[ \Phi(r, t) = rf(\eta), \quad \text{with } \eta = \frac{r}{ct}, \]

where \( f \) is a solution of the ordinary differential equation

10. \[ \eta(1 - \eta^2)f''(\eta) + (3 - 2\eta^2)f' + f/\eta = 0. \]

If the wave equation is considered to describe an expanding cylindrically symmetric wave, the radial speed of the wave \( v_r \) can be shown to be

11. \[ v_r = -[f(\eta) + \eta f'(\eta)], \]

which in turn can be reduced to

12. \[ v_r = \begin{cases} A(1 - \eta^2)/\eta, & \eta \leq 1, \\ 0, & \eta > 1, \end{cases} \]

where \( A \) is a constant of integration.

Other solutions of 25.8.1.8 can be found if appeal is made to the fact that solutions are invariant with respect to a time translation, so that in the solution \( t \) may be replaced by \( t - t^* \), for some constant \( t^* \).

Result 25.8.1.12 then becomes

13. \[ v_r = \begin{cases} A(t^*)[c^2(t - t^*)^2 - r^2]^{1/2}/r, & t^* \leq t - r/c, \\ 0, & t^* > t - r/c, \end{cases} \]

and different choices for \( A(t^*) \) will generate different solutions.

25.9 BURGERS’S EQUATION, THE KdV EQUATION, AND THE KdVB EQUATION

25.9.1

In time-dependent partial differential equations, certain higher order spatial derivatives are capable of interpretation in terms of important physical effects. For example, in Burgers’s equation
1. \[ \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + u \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = \nu \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \quad [\nu > 0]. \]

the term on the right may be interpreted as a **dissipative** effect; namely, as the removal of energy from the system described by the equation. In the **Korteweg–de Vries (KdV)** equation

2. \[ \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + u \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \mu \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3} = 0, \]

the last term on the left represents a **dispersive** effect; namely, a smoothing effect that causes localized disturbances in waves that are propagated to spread out and disperse.

Burgers’s equation serves to model a gas shock wave in which energy dissipation is present \((\nu > 0)\). The steepening effect of nonlinearity in the second term on the left can be balanced by the dissipative effect, leading to a traveling wave of constant form, unlike the case examined earlier corresponding to \(\nu = 0\) in which a smooth initial condition evolved into a discontinuous solution (shock). The steady traveling wave solution for Burgers’s equation that describes the so-called **Burgers’s shock wave** is

3. \[ u(\zeta) = \frac{1}{2}(u^-_\infty + u^+_\infty) - \frac{1}{2}(u^-_\infty - u^+_\infty) \tanh \left( \frac{u^-_\infty - u^+_\infty}{4\nu} \right) \zeta, \]

where \(\zeta = x - ct\), with the speed of propagation \(c = \frac{1}{2}(u^-_\infty + u^+_\infty)\), \(u^-_\infty > u^+_\infty\), and \(u^-_\infty\) and \(u^+_\infty\) denote, respectively, the solutions at \(\zeta \to -\infty\) and \(\zeta \to +\infty\). This describes a smooth transition from \(u^-_\infty\) to \(u^+_\infty\). The Burgers’s shock wave profile is shown in Figure 25.4.

The celebrated KdV equation was first introduced to describe the propagation of long waves in shallow water, but it has subsequently been shown to govern the asymptotic behavior of many other physical phenomena in which nonlinearity and dispersion compete. In the KdV equation, the smoothing effect of the dispersive term can balance the steepening effect of the nonlinearity in the second term to lead to a traveling wave of constant shape in the form of

![Figure 25.4](image-url)
25.9 Burgers's Equation, the KdV Equation, and the KdVB Equation

a pulse called a **solitary wave**. The solution for the KdV solitary wave in which \( u \to u_\infty \) as \( \zeta \to \pm \) is

\[
u(\zeta) = u_\infty + a \ \text{sech}^2 \left( \frac{a}{12\mu} \right)^{1/2} \left[ u_\infty > 0 \right],\]

where \( \zeta = x - ct \), with the speed of propagation \( c = u_\infty + \frac{1}{3}a \).

Notice that, relative to \( u_\infty \), the speed of propagation of the solitary wave is proportional to the amplitude \( a \). It has been shown that these solitary wave solutions of the KdV equation have the remarkable property that, although they are solutions of a nonlinear equation, they can **interact** and **preserve their identity** in ways that are similar to those of linear waves. However, unlike linear waves, during the interaction the solutions are *not* additive, though after it they have interchanged their positions. This property has led to these waves being called **solitons**. Interaction between two solitons occurs when the amplitude of the one on the left exceeds that of the one on the right, for then overtaking takes place due to the speed of the one on the left being greater than the speed of the one on the right. This interaction is illustrated in Figure 25.5; the waves are **unidirectional** since only a first-order time derivative is present in the KdV equation.

**The Korteweg–de Vries–Burgers’s (KdVB) equation**

\[
\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + u \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} - \nu \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \mu \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3} = 0 \quad [\nu > 0],
\]

describes wave propagation in which the effects of nonlinearity, dissipation, and dispersion are all present. In steady wave propagation the combined smoothing effects of dissipation and dispersion can balance the steepening effect of nonlinearity and lead to a traveling wave solution moving to the right given by

\[
u(\zeta) = \frac{3\nu^2}{100\mu} \left[ \text{sech}^2 (\zeta/2) + 2 \tanh (\zeta/2) + 2 \right],
\]

with

\[
\zeta = -\frac{\nu}{5\mu} \left( x - \frac{6\nu^2}{25\mu} t \right) \quad \text{and} \quad \text{speed} \ c = \frac{6\nu^2}{(25\mu)},
\]

or to one moving to the left given by

Figure 25.5.
8. \( u(\zeta) = \frac{3\nu^2}{100\mu} \left[ \text{sech}^2(\zeta/2) - 2\tanh(\zeta/2) - 2 \right] \),

with

9. \( \zeta = \frac{\nu}{5\mu} \left( x + \frac{6\nu^2}{25\mu} t \right) \) and speed \( c = -6\nu^2/(25\mu) \).

The wave profile for a KdVB traveling wave is very similar to that of the Burgers’s shock wave.

### 25.10 THE POISSON INTEGRAL FORMULAS

There are two fundamental boundary value problems for a solution \( u \) of the Laplace equation in the plane that can be expressed in terms of integrals. The first involves finding the solution (a harmonic function) in the upper half of the \((x, y)\)-plane when Dirichlet conditions are imposed on the \(x\)-axis. The second involves finding the solution (a harmonic function) inside a circle of radius \( R \) centered on the origin when Dirichlet conditions are imposed on the boundary of the circle. The two results are called the Poisson integral formulas for solutions of the Laplace equation in the plane, and they take the following forms:

**The Poisson integral formula for the half-plane**

Let \( f(x) \) be a real valued function that is bounded and may be either continuous or piecewise continuous for \(-\infty < x < \infty\). Then, when the integral exists, the function

\[
1. \quad u(x, y) = \frac{y}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{f(s)ds}{(x-s)^2 + y^2}
\]

is harmonic in the half-plane \( y > 0 \) and on the \(x\)-axis assumes the boundary condition \( u(x, 0) = f(x) \) wherever \( f(x) \) is continuous.

**The Poisson integral formula for a disk**

Let \( f(\theta) \) be a real valued function that is bounded and may be either continuous or piecewise continuous for \(-\pi < \theta < \pi\). Then, when the integral exists, the function

\[
2. \quad u(r, \theta) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{0}^{2\pi} \frac{(R^2 - r^2) f(\psi)d\psi}{R^2 - 2rR \cos(\psi - \theta) + r^2}
\]

is harmonic inside the disk \( 0 \leq r < R \), and on the boundary of the disk \( r = R \), it assumes the boundary condition \( u(R, \theta) = f(\theta) \) wherever \( f(\theta) \) is continuous.

These integrals have many applications, and they are often used in conjunction with conformal mapping when a region of complicated shape is mapped either onto a half-plane or onto a disk when these formulas will give the solution. However, unless the boundary conditions are simple, the integrals may be difficult to evaluate, though they may always be used to provide numerical results.
Example 25.4  Find the harmonic function \( u \) in the half-plane \( y > 0 \) when \( u(x, 0) = -1 \) for \( -\infty < x < 0 \) and \( u(x, 0) = 1 \) for \( 0 < x < \infty \).

Setting \( f(x) = -1 \) for \( -\infty < x < 0 \) and \( f(x) = 1 \) for \( 0 < x < \infty \) in formula 1 and integrating gives

\[
u(x, y) = -\frac{1}{2} \frac{(\pi - 2 \arctan(x/y))}{\pi} \quad \text{for} \quad -\infty < x < 0
\]

and

\[
u(x, y) = \frac{1}{2} \frac{(\pi + 2 \arctan(x/y))}{\pi} \quad \text{for} \quad 0 < x < \infty.
\]

Notice that in this case the boundary condition \( f(x) \) is discontinuous at the origin. These solutions do not assign a value for \( u \) at the origin, but this is to be expected because none exists, and as the results are derived from formula 1 on the assumption that \( y \neq 0 \), the formula vanishes when \( y = 0 \).

Example 25.5  Find the harmonic function \( u \) inside the unit disk centered on the origin when on its boundary \( u(1, \theta) = \sin^2 \theta \).

Setting \( R = 1 \) and \( f(\theta) = \sin^2 \theta \) in formula 2 leads to the integrand \( \frac{(1 - r^2) \sin^2 \psi}{1 - 2r \cos(\psi - \theta) + r^2} \).

The change of variable to \( z = e^{i\psi} \) converts the integral into a complex integral with a pole of order 2 and also a simple pole inside the unit circle. An application of the residue theorem then shows the required solution to be \( u(r, \theta) = \frac{1}{2} (1 - r^2 \cos 2\theta) \).

25.11 THE RIEMANN METHOD

The Riemann method of solution applies to linear hyperbolic equations when Cauchy conditions are prescribed along a finite arc \( \Gamma_{QR} \) in the \((x, y)\)-plane. It gives the solution \( u(x_0, y_0) \) at an arbitrary point \((x_0, y_0)\) in terms of an integral representation involving a function \( v(x, y; x_0, y_0) \) called the Riemann function, where \( u(x, y) \) satisfies the equation

1. \( \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y} + a(x, y) \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + b(x, y) \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + c(x, y) u = f(x, y) \).

In this representation \( x_0 \) and \( y_0 \) are considered to be parameters of a point \( P \) in the \((x, y)\)-plane at which the solution is required, and their relationships to the points \( Q \) and \( R \) are shown in Figure 25.6.

The Riemann function \( v \) is a solution of the homogeneous adjoint equation associated with 1

2. \( \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x \partial y} - \frac{\partial (av)}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial (bv)}{\partial y} + cv = 0 \),
subject to the conditions

3. \( v(x, \eta; x_0, y_0) = \exp\left( \int_{x_0}^{x} b(\sigma, y_0) \, d\sigma \right) \) and \( v(x_0, y; x_0, y_0) = \exp\left( \int_{y_0}^{y} a(x_0, \sigma) \, d\sigma \right) \).

When equation 1 is written as \( L[u] = f(x, y) \) and equation 2 as \( M[v] = 0 \), equation 1 will be self-adjoint when the operators \( L \) and \( M \) are such that \( L \equiv M \). In general, solving the adjoint equation for \( v \) is as difficult as solving the original equation for \( u \), so a significant simplification results when the equation is self-adjoint.

The Riemann integral formula for the solution \( u(x_0, y_0) \) at a point \( P \) in the \((x, y)\)-plane terms of the Riemann function \( v \) is

4. \( u(x_0, y_0) = \frac{1}{2}(uv)_R + \frac{1}{2}(uv)_Q + \iint_{PQR} F v \, dx \, dy \)

\[ - \int_{\Gamma_{QR}} \left[ buv + \frac{1}{2}(vu_x - uv_x) \right] \, dx - \left[ auv + \frac{1}{2}(vu_y - uv_y) \right] \, dy, \]

where \( \iint_{PQR} F \, dx \, dy \) denotes the integral over the region \( PQR \).

This method only gives closed form solutions when the equations involved are simple, so its main use is in deriving information about domains of dependence and influence for equation 1 of a rather general type.

Figure 25.6. Points \( P, Q, \) and \( R \) and the arc \( \Gamma_{QR} \) along which the Cauchy conditions for \( u \) are specified.
Chapter 26
Qualitative Properties of the Heat and Laplace Equation

26.1 THE WEAK MAXIMUM/MINIMUM PRINCIPLE FOR THE HEAT EQUATION
Let \( u(x, t) \) satisfy the heat (diffusion) equation

\[ u_t = k^2 u_{xx} \]

in the space-time rectangle \( 0 \leq x \leq L, \ 0 \leq t \leq T \). Then the maximum value of \( u(x, t) \) occurs either initially when \( t = 0 \), or on the sides of the rectangle \( x = 0 \) or \( x = L \) for \( 0 \leq t \leq T \). Similarly, the minimum value of \( u(x, t) \) occurs either initially when \( t = 0 \), or on the sides of the rectangle \( x = 0 \) or \( x = L \) for \( 0 \leq t \leq T \).

26.2 THE MAXIMUM/MINIMUM PRINCIPLE FOR THE LAPLACE EQUATION
Let \( D \) be a connected bounded open region in two or three space dimensions, and let the function \( u \) be harmonic and continuous throughout \( D \) and on its boundary \( \partial D \). Then if \( u \) is not constant it attains its maximum and minimum values only on the boundary \( \partial D \).

26.3 GAUSS MEAN VALUE THEOREM FOR HARMONIC FUNCTIONS IN THE PLANE
If \( u \) is harmonic in a region \( D \) of the plane, the value of \( u \) at any interior point \( P \) of \( D \) is the average of the values of \( u \) around any circle centered on \( P \) and lying entirely inside \( D \).
26.4 GAUSS MEAN VALUE THEOREM FOR HARMONIC FUNCTIONS IN SPACE

If $u$ is harmonic in a region $D$ of space, the value of $u$ at any interior point $P$ of $D$ is the average of the values of $u$ around the surface of any sphere centered on $P$ and lying entirely inside $D$. 
Chapter 27
Solutions of Elliptic, Parabolic, and Hyperbolic Equations

The standard solutions of the Laplace, heat (diffusion), and wave equation that follow are expressed in terms of eigenfunction expansions obtained by the method of separation of variables described in Section 25.2.1.

27.1 ELLIPTIC EQUATIONS (THE LAPLACE EQUATION)
1. The boundary value problem:

\[ u_{xx}(x, y) + u_{yy}(x, y) = 0, \quad \text{in the rectangle } 0 < x < a, \ 0 < y < b, \]

subject to the four Dirichlet boundary conditions

\[ u(0, y) = 0, \quad u(a, y) = 0, \ 0 < y < b, \]
\[ u(x, 0) = f(x), \quad u(x, b) = 0, \ 0 < x < a. \]

Solution

\[ u(x, y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \sinh \left( \frac{n\pi (b - y)}{a} \right) \sin \left( \frac{n\pi x}{a} \right), \]

with

\[ c_n = \frac{2}{a \sinh(n\pi b/a)} \int_0^a f(x) \sin \left( \frac{n\pi x}{a} \right) dx. \]
2. The boundary value problem:

\[ u_{xx}(x, y) + u_{yy}(x, y) = 0, \quad \text{in the rectangle } 0 < x < a, \ 0 < y < b, \]

subject to the two Dirichlet boundary conditions

\[ u(x, 0) = 0, \quad u(x, b) = f(x) \quad \text{for } 0 < x < a, \]

and the two Neumann conditions

\[ u_x(0, y) = 0, \quad u_x(a, y) = 0 \quad \text{for } 0 < y < b. \]

**Solution**

\[
 u(x, y) = c_0 y + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \sinh\left(\frac{n\pi y}{a}\right) \cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{a}\right),
\]

with

\[
 c_n = \frac{2}{a \sinh(n\pi b/a)} \int_0^a f(x) \cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{a}\right) \, dx.
\]

3. The boundary value problem:

\[ u_{xx}(x, y) + u_{yy}(x, y) = 0, \quad \text{in the semi-infinite strip } x > 0, \ 0 < y < b, \]

subject to the four Dirichlet boundary conditions

\[ u(x, 0) = 0, \quad u(x, b) = 0 \quad \text{for } x > 0, \]

\[ u(0, y) = U(\text{constant}) \quad \text{for } 0 < y < b, \quad \text{and } u(x, y) \text{ finite as } x \to \infty. \]

**Solution**

\[
 u(x, y) = \frac{2U}{\pi} \arctan\left(\frac{\sin(\pi y/b)}{\sinh(\pi x/b)}\right).
\]

4. The boundary value problem:

\[ r^2 u_{rr}(r, \theta) + ru_r(r, \theta) + u_{\theta\theta}(r, \theta) = 0, \]

with \( u(r, \theta) \), in polar coordinates, *inside* a circle of radius \( R \) subject to the Dirichlet boundary condition on the circumference

\[ u(R, \theta) = f(\theta), \quad \text{for } 0 < \theta \leq 2\pi. \]
Solution

\[ u(r, \theta) = \frac{1}{2} a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{r}{R} \right)^n (a_n \cos n\theta + b_n \sin n\theta), \]

with \( r < R \) and

\[ a_n = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} f(\theta) \cos n\theta \, d\theta, \quad n = 0, 1, \ldots, \]

\[ b_n = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} f(\theta) \sin n\theta \, d\theta, \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots. \]

5. The boundary value problem:

\[ r^2 u_{rr}(r, \theta) + ru_r(r, \theta) + u_{\theta\theta}(r, \theta) = 0, \]

with \( u(r, \theta) \), in polar coordinates, outside a circle of radius \( R \) subject to the Dirichlet boundary condition on the circumference

\[ u(R, \theta) = f(\theta), \quad \text{for } 0 < \theta \leq 2\pi. \]

Solution

\[ u(r, \theta) = \frac{1}{2} a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{R}{r} \right)^n (a_n \cos n\theta + b_n \sin n\theta), \]

with \( r > R \) and

\[ a_n = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} f(\theta) \cos n\theta \, d\theta, \quad n = 0, 1, \ldots, \]

\[ b_n = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} f(\theta) \sin n\theta \, d\theta, \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots. \]

6. The boundary value problem:

\[ r^2 u_{rr}(r, \theta) + ru_r(r, \theta) + u_{\theta\theta}(r, \theta) = 0, \]

with \( u(r, \theta) \), in polar coordinates, inside a circle of radius \( R \) subject to the Neumann boundary condition on the circumference \( u_r(R, \theta) = f(\theta) \), and satisfying the condition \( \int_0^{2\pi} f(\theta) \, d\theta = 0 \) necessary for the existence of a solution.

Solution

\[ u(r, \theta) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{r^n}{nR^{n-1}} \right) (a_n \cos n\theta + b_n \sin n\theta) + C, \]
with \( r < R, C \) an arbitrary constant, and

\[
a_n = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} f(\theta) \cos n\theta \, d\theta, \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots,
\]

\[
b_n = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} f(\theta) \sin n\theta \, d\theta, \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots.
\]

7. The boundary value problem:

\[ r^2 u_{rr}(r, \theta) + ru_r(r, \theta) + u_{\theta\theta}(r, \theta) = 0, \]

with \( u(r, \theta) \), in polar coordinates, outside a circle of radius \( R \) subject to the Neumann boundary condition on the circumference \( u_r(R, \theta) = f(\theta) \), and satisfying the condition \( \int_0^{2\pi} f(\theta) \, d\theta = 0 \), necessary for the existence of a solution.

Solution

\[
u(r, \theta) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{R^{n+1}}{n\pi^n} \right) (a_n \cos n\theta + b_n \sin n\theta) + C,
\]

with \( C \) an arbitrary constant \( r > R \) and

\[
a_n = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} f(\theta) \cos n\theta \, d\theta, \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots,
\]

\[
b_n = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} f(\theta) \sin n\theta \, d\theta, \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots.
\]

8. The boundary value problem:

\[ r^2 u_{rr}(r, \theta) + ru_r(r, \theta) + u_{\theta\theta}(r, \theta) = 0, \]

with \( u(r, \theta) \), in polar coordinates in a semicircle of radius \( R \), subject to the homogeneous Neumann conditions on the diameter of the semicircle

\[
u_r(r, 0) = 0, \quad u_r(r, \pi) = 0, \quad 0 < r < R,
\]

and the Dirichlet condition on the curved boundary of the semicircle

\[
u(R, \theta) = f(\theta), \quad 0 < \theta < \pi.
\]

Solution

\[
u(r, \theta) = \frac{1}{2} a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \left( \frac{R}{r} \right)^n \cos n\theta, \quad \text{with} \quad a_n = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^{\pi} f(\theta) \cos n\theta \, d\theta.
\]
9. The boundary value problem in a semiannulus $1 < r < R$, $0 < \theta < \pi$:

$$r^2 u_{rr}(r, \theta) + ru_r(r, \theta) + u_{\theta\theta}(r, \theta) = 0,$$

with $u(r, \theta)$, in the polar coordinates, and subject to the Dirichlet conditions

$$u(r, 0) = 0, \quad u(r, \pi) = 0 \quad \text{on} \quad 1 < r < R,$$

and

$$u(1, \theta) = 0, \quad u(R, \theta) = U \quad \text{on} \quad 0 < \theta < \pi.$$

Solution

$$u(r, \theta) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \left( r^n - 1/r^n \right) \sin n\theta, \quad \text{with} \quad c_n = \frac{2U}{\pi} \left[ \frac{1 - (-1)^n}{n(R^n - 1/R^n)} \right].$$

10. The boundary value problem in a sector of an annulus:

$$r^2 u_{rr}(r, \theta) + ru_r(r, \theta) + u_{\theta\theta}(r, \theta) = 0,$$

with $u(r, \theta)$ in polar coordinates, in the circular sector of the annulus $r = R_1$, $r = R_2$, between radii $\theta = 0$ and $\theta = \Theta$, subject to the Dirichlet conditions $u(R_1, \theta) = f_1(\theta)$ and $u(R_2, \theta) = f_2(\theta)$.

Solution

$$u(r, \theta) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( a_n r^{\pi n/\Theta} + b_n/r^{\pi n/\Theta} \right) \sin(\pi n\theta/\Theta), \quad R_1 < r < R_2,$$

with

$$a_n = \frac{R_2^{\pi n/\Theta} g_n - R_1^{\pi n/\Theta} h_n}{R_2^{2\pi n/\Theta} - R_1^{2\pi n/\Theta}}, \quad b_n = \frac{R_2^{\pi n/\Theta} h_n - R_1^{\pi n/\Theta} g_n}{R_2^{2\pi n/\Theta} - R_1^{2\pi n/\Theta}} (R_1 R_2)^{\pi n/\Theta},$$

and

$$g_n = \frac{2}{a} \int_{\Theta} f_2(\phi) \sin(\pi n\theta/\Theta) d\phi, \quad h_n = \frac{2}{a} \int_{\Theta} f_1(\theta) \sin(\pi n\theta/\Theta) d\theta.$$

11. The boundary value problem inside the finite cylinder $r \leq R, 0 \leq z \leq L$:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial r} \left( r \frac{\partial u}{\partial r} \right) + \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \left( r \frac{\partial u}{\partial \theta} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( r \frac{\partial u}{\partial z} \right) = 0,$$

with $u(r, \theta, z)$ in cylindrical polar coordinates, subject to the Dirichlet boundary conditions

$$u(R, \theta, z) = 0, \quad u(r, \theta, 0) = f(r, \theta), \quad u(r, \theta, L) = F(r, \theta).$$
Solution

\[
    u(r, \theta, z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \left( A_{mn} \cos n\theta + B_{mn} \sin n\theta \right)
    \times J_n \left( \frac{\mu_m^{(n)} r}{R} \right) \frac{\sinh \left[ \frac{\mu_m^{(n)} (L - z)}{R} \right]}{\sinh \left( \frac{\mu_m^{(n)} L}{R} \right)}
    + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \left( P_{mn} \cos n\theta + Q_{mn} \sin n\theta \right) J_n \left( \frac{\mu_m^{(n)} r}{R} \right) \frac{\sinh \left[ \frac{\mu_m^{(n)} z}{R} \right]}{\sinh \left( \frac{\mu_m^{(n)} L}{R} \right)},
\]

where \( \mu_m^{(n)} \) is the \( m \)th positive root of \( J_n(\mu) = 0 \),

\[
    A_{mn} = \frac{2}{R^2 \pi \alpha_n \left[ J'_n \left( \mu_m^{(n)} \right) \right]^2} \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^R f(r, \theta) \cos n\theta J_n \left( \frac{\mu_m^{(n)} r}{R} \right) r \, dr \, d\theta
\]

with \( \alpha_n = \begin{cases} 2, & n = 0 \\ 1, & n \neq 0 \end{cases} \),

\[
    B_{mn} = \frac{2}{R^2 \pi \alpha_n \left[ J'_n \left( \mu_m^{(n)} \right) \right]^2} \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^R f(r, \theta) \sin n\theta J_n \left( \frac{\mu_m^{(n)} r}{R} \right) r \, dr \, d\theta,
\]

where \( P_{mn} \) is defined similarly to \( A_{mn} \) with \( f(r, \theta) \) replaced by \( F(r, \theta) \), and \( Q_{mn} \) is defined similarly to \( B_{mn} \) with \( f(r, \theta) \) replaced by \( F(r, \theta) \).

12. The boundary value problem:

\[
    \frac{\partial}{\partial r} \left( r^2 \frac{\partial u}{\partial r} \right) + \frac{1}{\sin \theta} \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \left( \sin \theta \frac{\partial u}{\partial \theta} \right) + \frac{1}{\sin^2 \theta} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial \phi^2} = 0
\]

with \( u(r, \theta, \phi) \) in the spherical polar coordinates related to Cartesian coordinates by \( x = r \sin \theta \cos \phi, y = r \sin \theta \sin \phi, z = r \cos \theta \), \( 0 \leq \theta \leq \pi, 0 \leq \phi \leq 2\pi \), inside a sphere of radius \( R \) and subject to the Dirichlet condition

\[
    u(R, \theta, \phi) = f(\theta, \phi).
\]

Solution

\[
    u(r, \theta, \phi) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left( \frac{r}{R} \right)^n Z_n(\theta, \phi), \quad r < R,
\]

where \( Z_n(\theta, \phi) \) are the spherical harmonics.
where

\[ Z_n(\theta, \phi) = \sum_{k=0}^{n} (A_{nk} \cos k\phi + B_{nk} \sin k\phi) P_n^k(\cos \theta), \]

with \( P_n^k(x) = (1 - x^2)^{k/2} d^k P_n(x)/dx^k \) the \textit{associated Legendre function} and

\[ A_{00} = \frac{1}{4\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^\pi f(\theta, \phi) \sin \theta \, d\theta \, d\phi, \]

\[ A_{nk} = \frac{(2n + 1)(n - k)!}{2\pi (n + k)!} \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^\pi f(\theta, \phi) P_n^k(\cos \theta) \]
\[ \times \cos k\phi \sin \theta \, d\theta \, d\phi \quad (n > 0), \]

\[ B_{nk} = \frac{(2n + 1)(n - k)!}{2\pi (n + k)!} \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^\pi f(\theta, \phi) P_n^k(\cos \theta) \sin k\phi \sin \theta \, d\theta \, d\phi. \]

13. The boundary value problem:

\[ \frac{\partial}{\partial r} \left( r^2 \frac{\partial u}{\partial r} \right) + \frac{1}{\sin \theta} \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \left( \sin \theta \frac{\partial u}{\partial \theta} \right) + \frac{1}{\sin^2 \theta} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial \phi^2} = 0 \]

with \( u(r, \theta, \phi) \) in the spherical polar coordinates related to cartesian coordinates by

\[ x = r \sin \theta \cos \phi, \quad y = r \sin \theta \sin \phi, \quad z = r \cos \theta, \quad 0 \leq \theta \leq \pi, \quad 0 \leq \phi \leq 2\pi, \]

outside a sphere of radius \( R \) and subject to the Dirichlet condition

\[ u(a, \theta, \phi) = f(\theta, \phi). \]

Solution

\[ u(r, \theta, \phi) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(R/r)^{n+1}}{(n+k)!} (A_{nk} \cos k\phi + B_{nk} \sin k\phi) P_n^k(\cos \theta), \quad r > R, \]

with the \( A_{nk}, B_{nk} \) and \( P_n^k(\cos \theta) \) defined as in 12.

14. The boundary value problem:

\[ \frac{\partial}{\partial r} \left( r^2 \frac{\partial u}{\partial r} \right) + \frac{1}{\sin \theta} \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \left( \sin \theta \frac{\partial u}{\partial \theta} \right) + \frac{1}{\sin^2 \theta} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial \phi^2} = 0 \]

with \( u(r, \theta, \phi) \) in the spherical polar coordinates related to cartesian coordinates by

\[ x = r \sin \theta \cos \phi, \quad y = r \sin \theta \sin \phi, \quad z = r \cos \theta, \quad 0 \leq \theta \leq \pi, \quad 0 \leq \phi \leq 2\pi, \]

inside a sphere of radius \( R \) subject to the Neumann condition

\[ u_r(R, \theta, \phi) = f(\theta, \phi), \]
and the requirement that
\[ \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^\pi f(\theta, \phi) \, d\theta \, d\phi = 0, \]
necessary for the existence of a solution.

**Solution**

\[ u(r, \theta, \phi) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \left( \frac{r^n}{nR^{n-1}} \right) (A_{nk} \cos k\phi + B_{nk} \sin k\phi) P_n^k(\cos \theta) + C, \]

where \( C \) is an arbitrary constant, and the \( A_{nk}, B_{nk} \) and \( P_n^k(\cos \theta) \) are defined as in 12.

15. The boundary value problem:

\[ \frac{\partial}{\partial r} \left( r^2 \frac{\partial u}{\partial r} \right) + \frac{1}{\sin \theta} \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \left( \sin \theta \frac{\partial u}{\partial \theta} \right) + \frac{1}{\sin^2 \theta} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial \phi^2} = 0 \]

with \( u(r, \theta, \phi) \) in the spherical polar coordinates related to cartesian coordinates by
\[ x = r \sin \theta \cos \phi, \quad y = r \sin \theta \sin \phi, \quad z = r \cos \theta, \quad [0 \leq \theta \leq \pi, \ 0 \leq \phi \leq 2\pi], \]
inside a sphere of radius \( R \) subject to the Neumann condition
\[ -u_r(R, \theta, \phi) = f(\theta, \phi), \]
where the negative sign occurs because the derivative is along the outward-drawn normal to the surface of the sphere, and the requirement that
\[ \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^\pi f(\theta, \phi) \, d\theta \, d\phi = 0, \]
necessary for the existence of a solution.

**Solution**

\[ u(r, \theta, \phi) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{R^{n+2}}{(n+1)r^{n+1}} \right) Z_n(\theta, \phi) + C, \quad r > R, \]

with \( Z_n(\theta, \phi) \) defined as in 12 and \( C \) an arbitrary constant.

### 27.2 Parabolic Equations (The Heat or Diffusion Equation)

1. The initial boundary value problem:
\[ u_t(x, t) = \kappa^2 u_{xx}(x, t) \quad \text{in the strip} \quad 0 < x < L, \]
subject to the initial condition
\[ u(x, 0) = f(x), \]
and the homogeneous Dirichlet boundary conditions
\[ u(0, t) = 0, \quad u(L, t) = 0. \]

**Solution**
\[ u(x, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \exp\left[ -\left( \frac{n\pi \kappa}{L} \right)^2 t \right] \sin\left( \frac{n\pi x}{L} \right), \]
\[ c_n = \frac{2}{L} \int_{0}^{L} f(x) \sin\left( \frac{n\pi x}{L} \right) dx. \]

2. The initial boundary value problem:
\[ u_t(x, t) = \kappa^2 u_{xx}(x, t) \quad \text{in the strip} \ 0 < x < L, \]
subject to the initial condition
\[ u(x, 0) = f(x), \quad 0 < x < L, \]
and the homogeneous Neumann boundary conditions
\[ u_x(0, t) = 0, \quad u_x(L, t) = 0 \quad \text{for} \ t > 0. \]

**Solution**
\[ u(x, t) = \frac{1}{2} a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \exp\left[ -\left( \frac{n\pi \kappa}{L} \right)^2 t \right] \cos\left( \frac{n\pi x}{L} \right), \]
with
\[ a_n = \frac{2}{L} \int_{0}^{L} f(x) \cos\left( \frac{n\pi x}{L} \right) dx, \quad n = 0, 1, \ldots. \]

3. The initial boundary value problem:
\[ u_t(x, t) = \kappa^2 u_{xx}(x, t) \quad \text{in the strip} \ 0 < x < L, \]
subject to the initial condition
\[ u(x, 0) = f(x), \quad 0 < x < L, \]
the homogeneous Dirichlet boundary condition
\[ u(0, t) = 0 \quad \text{for } t > 0, \]
and the homogeneous Neumann boundary condition
\[ u_x(L, t) = 0 \quad \text{for } t > 0. \]

Solution

\[ u(x, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_{2n-1} \exp\left[-(2n-1)^2 \pi^2 \kappa^2 t / 4\right] \sin(2n-1\pi x / 2L), \]
with
\[ a_{2n-1} = \frac{2}{L} \int_0^L f(x) \sin[(2n-1)\pi x / 2] \, dx. \]

4. The initial boundary value problem:

\[ u_t(x, t) = \kappa^2 u_{xx}(x, t) + f(x, t) \quad \text{in the strip } 0 < x < L, \]
subject to the homogeneous initial condition
\[ u(x, 0) = 0 \quad \text{for } 0 < x < L, \]
and the homogeneous Dirichlet boundary conditions
\[ u(0, t) = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad u(L, t) = 0 \quad \text{for } t > 0. \]

Solution

\[ u(x, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left\{ \int_0^t \exp\left[-(n\pi\kappa/L)^2 (t - \tau)\right] f_n(\tau) \, d\tau \right\} \sin(n\pi x / L), \]
with
\[ f_n(t) = \frac{2}{L} \int_0^L f(x, t) \sin(n\pi x / L) \, dx. \]

5. The initial boundary value problem inside a sphere of radius \( R \):

\[ u_t(r, t) = \kappa^2 \left( u_{rr} + \frac{2}{r} u_r \right), \quad r < R, \quad t > 0, \]
for \( u(r, t) \) in spherical polar coordinates with spherical symmetry subject to the homogeneous Dirichlet boundary conditions

\[
\begin{align*}
  u(0, t) &= 0, \quad u(R, t) = 0, \quad t > 0, \\
\end{align*}
\]

and the initial condition

\[
  u(r, 0) = rf(r).
\]

**Solution**

\[
  u(r, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_n \exp\left[ -\left( \frac{n\pi \kappa}{R \mu_n} \right)^2 t \right] \frac{\sin(n\pi r/R)}{r}, \quad r < R,
\]

with

\[
  A_n = \frac{2}{r} \int_{0}^{R} rf(r) \sin(n\pi r/R) \, dr.
\]

6. The initial boundary value problem for \( u(r, t) \) inside a sphere of radius \( R \):

\[
  \begin{align*}
    u_t(r, t) &= \kappa^2 \left( u_{rr} + \frac{2}{r} u_r \right), \quad r < R, \quad t > 0, \\
  \end{align*}
\]

with \( u(r, t) \) in spherical polar coordinates with spherical symmetry, subject to the mixed boundary condition on the surface of the sphere

\[
  (\lambda u_r = q)_{r=R}, \quad t > 0,
\]

and the initial condition

\[
  u(r, 0) = U, \quad 0 \leq r < R.
\]

**Solution**

\[
  u(r, t) = U + \frac{q R}{\lambda} \left\{ \frac{3 \kappa^2 t}{R^2} - \frac{3 R^2 - 5 r^2}{10 R^2} \right. \\
  \left. - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2 R \exp(-\kappa^2 \mu_n^2 t/R^2) \sin(\mu_n r/R)}{\mu_n^2 \cos \mu_n} \frac{\sin(\mu_n r/R)}{r} \right. \}, \quad r < R,
\]

with the constants \( \mu_n \) the positive roots of \( \tan \mu = \mu \).

7. The initial boundary value problem inside a sphere of radius \( R \):

\[
  \begin{align*}
    u_t(r, t) &= \kappa^2 \left( u_{rr} + \frac{2}{r} u_r \right), \quad r < R, \quad t > 0, \\
  \end{align*}
\]
with \( u(r, t) \) in spherical polar coordinates with spherical symmetry, subject to the Robin boundary condition on the surface of the sphere

\[
(u_r + hu)_r = 0, \quad t > 0,
\]

and the initial condition

\[
u(r, 0) = f(r), \quad 0 \leq r < R.
\]

**Solution**

\[
u(r, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_n \exp(-\kappa^2 \mu_n^2 t) \frac{\sin \mu_n r}{r}, \quad r < R,
\]

with the constants \( \mu_n \) the positive roots of

\[
tan \mu R = \frac{\mu R}{1 - Rh},
\]

and

\[
A_n = \frac{2}{R} \frac{R^2 \mu_n^2 + (Rh - 1)^2}{R^2 \mu_n^2 + (Rh - 1)Rh} \int_0^R r f(r) \sin \lambda_n r \, dr.
\]

8. The initial boundary value problem *inside* an infinite cylinder of radius \( R \):

\[
u_t = \kappa^2 \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial}{\partial r} \left( r \frac{\partial u}{\partial r} \right),
\]

for \( u(r, t) \) in cylindrical polar coordinates with cylindrical symmetry, subject to the initial condition

\[
u(r, 0) = 0, \quad 0 \leq r < R,
\]

and the boundary condition

\[
u(R, t) = U(\text{constant}), \quad t > 0.
\]

**Solution**

\[
u(r, t) = U \left[ 1 - 2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \exp(-\mu_n^2 \kappa^2 t/R^2) \right] \frac{J_0(\mu_n r/R)}{\mu_n J_1(\mu_n)},
\]

where the numbers \( \mu_n \) are the positive roots of \( J_0(\mu) = 0 \).

9. The initial boundary value problem *inside* an infinite cylinder of radius \( R \):

\[
u_t = \kappa^2 \left[ u_{rr} + (1/r) u_r \right], \quad 0 \leq r < R, \quad t > 0,
\]
for $u(r, t)$ in cylindrical polar coordinates, subject to the boundary condition

$$(\lambda u_r = q)_{r=R}, \ t > 0,$$

and the initial condition

$$u(r, 0) = U \text{(constant)}.$$

**Solution**

$$u(r, t) = U + \frac{qR}{\lambda} \left[ \frac{2\kappa^2 t}{R^2} - \frac{1}{4} \left( 1 - \frac{2r^2}{R^2} \right) \right] - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2\exp(-\kappa^2 \mu_n^2 t/R^2)}{\mu_n^2 J_0(\mu_n)} J_0(\mu_n r/R),$$

where the constants $\mu_n$ are the positive roots of $J_0'(\mu) = 0$.

10. The initial boundary value problem *inside* an infinite cylinder of radius $R$:

$$u_t = \kappa^2 [u_{rr} + (1/r)u_r], \ 0 \leq r < R, \ t > 0,$$

for $u(r, t)$ in cylindrical polar coordinates, subject to the Robin condition

$$(u_r + hu)_{r=R} = 0, \ t > 0,$$

and the initial condition

$$u(r, 0) = f(r).$$

**Solution**

$$u(r, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_n \exp(-\mu_n^2 \kappa^2 t/R^2) J_0(\mu_n r/R),$$

with

$$A_n = \frac{2\mu_n^2}{R^2 (\mu_n^2 + h^2 R^2)} \int_0^R r f(r) J_0(\mu_n r/R) \, dr,$$

where the numbers $\mu_n$ are the positive roots of

$$\mu J_0'(\mu) + hR J_0(\mu) = 0.$$
27.3 HYPERBOLIC EQUATIONS (WAVE EQUATION)

1. The D’Alembert solution, which is not derived by the methods of Section 25.2.1, concerns traveling waves and is of fundamental importance, because it shows how initial conditions specified at \( t = 0 \) on the infinite initial line influence the solution of the wave equation

\[
   u_{tt} = c^2 u_{xx}, \quad -\infty < x < \infty, \quad t > 0,
\]

subject to the initial conditions

\[
   u(x, 0) = f(x), \quad u_t(x, 0) = k(x).
\]

The D’Alembert solution is

\[
   u(x, t) = \frac{1}{2} \left[ f(x - ct) + f(x + ct) \right] + \frac{1}{2c} \int_{x-ct}^{x+ct} k(\xi) d\xi.
\]

This shows that the solution at a point \((x_0, t_0)\) in the upper half of the \((x, t)\)-plane depends only on the values of \( f(x) \) at the ends of the interval \( x_0 - ct_0 \) and \( x_0 + ct_0 \) on the initial line, and on the behavior of \( g(x) \) throughout this interval.

2. The wave equation on the interval \( 0 < x < L \):

\[
   u_{tt} = c^2 u_{xx}, \quad t > 0,
\]

subject to the homogeneous boundary conditions

\[
   u(0, t) = 0, \quad u(L, t) = 0,
\]

and the initial conditions

\[
   u(x, 0) = f(x), \quad u_t(x, 0) = g(x), \quad 0 < x < L.
\]

Solution

\[
   u(x, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left[ a_n \cos(n\pi ct/L) + b_n \sin(n\pi ct/L) \right] \sin(n\pi x/L),
\]

with

\[
   a_n = \frac{2}{L} \int_0^L f(x) \sin(n\pi x/L) dx, \quad b_n = \frac{2}{n\pi L} \int_0^L g(x) \sin(n\pi x/L) dx.
\]

3. The nonhomogeneous wave equation on the interval \( 0 < x < L \):

\[
   u_{tt} = c^2 u_{xx} + f(x, t), \quad t > 0,
\]
subject to the homogeneous boundary conditions

\[ u(0, t) = 0, \quad u(L, t) = 0, \]

and the initial conditions

\[ u(x, 0) = \varphi(x), \quad u_t(x, 0) = \psi(x), \quad 0 < x < L. \]

**Solution**

\[ u(x, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} U_n(t) \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left[ a_n \cos\left(\frac{n\pi c t}{L}\right) + b_n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi c t}{L}\right) \right] \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right), \]

where

\[ U_n(t) = \frac{2}{n\pi c} \int_{0}^{t} \sin\left[ n\pi c(t - \tau) / L \right] d\tau \int_{0}^{L} f(x, \tau) \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) dx, \]

and the function \( f(x, t) \) is given by

\[ f(x, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} f_n(t) \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right), \]

with

\[ f_n(t) = \frac{2}{L} \int_{0}^{L} f(x, t) \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) dx, \]

and

\[ a_n = \frac{2}{L} \int_{0}^{L} \varphi(x) \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) dx, \quad b_n = \frac{2}{n\pi c} \int_{0}^{L} \psi(x) \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) dx. \]

4. The wave equation in the rectangle \( 0 < x < a, 0 < y < b \):

\[ u_{tt} = c^2 (u_{xx} + u_{yy}), \quad 0 < x < a, \quad 0 < y < b, \]

subject to the homogeneous boundary conditions

\[ u(0, y, t) = 0, \quad u(a, y, t) = 0, \]
\[ u(x, 0, t) = 0, \quad u(x, b, t) = 0, \quad t > 0, \]

and the initial conditions

\[ u(x, y, 0) = \varphi(x, y), \quad u_t(x, y, 0) = \psi(x, y). \]
Solution

\[ u(x, y, t) = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (A_{mn} \cos ck_{mn} t + B_{mn} \sin ck_{mn} t) \sin\left(\frac{m\pi x}{a}\right) \sin\left(\frac{n\pi y}{b}\right), \]

where

\[ A_{mn} = \frac{4}{ab} \int_0^a \int_0^b \varphi(x, y) \sin\left(\frac{m\pi x}{a}\right) \sin\left(\frac{n\pi y}{b}\right) \, dx \, dy, \]

\[ B_{mn} = \frac{4}{ck_{mn} \cdot ab} \int_0^a \int_0^b \psi(x, y) \sin\left(\frac{m\pi x}{a}\right) \sin\left(\frac{n\pi y}{b}\right) \, dx \, dy, \]

and the numbers \( k_{mn} \) are given by

\[ k_{mn}^2 = \pi^2 \left(\frac{m^2}{a^2} + \frac{n^2}{b^2}\right). \]

5. The wave equation in a circle of radius \( R \):

\[ u_{tt} = c^2 \left[ u_{rr} + \left(\frac{1}{r}\right) u_r \right], \quad 0 \leq r \leq R, \quad t > 0, \]

with \( u(r, t) \) in polar coordinates, subject to the Dirichlet boundary condition

\[ u(R, t) = 0, \]

and the initial conditions

\[ u(r, 0) = \varphi(r), \quad u_t(r, 0) = \psi(r). \]

Solution

\[ u(r, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left[ a_n \cos\left(\frac{c\mu_n t}{R}\right) + b_n \sin\left(\frac{c\mu_n t}{R}\right)\right] J_0(\mu_n r/R), \]

where

\[ a_n = \frac{2}{R^2 J_1(\mu_n)^2} \int_0^R r \varphi(r) J_n(\mu_n r/R) \, dr, \]

\[ b_n = \frac{2}{c\mu_n R J_1(\mu_n)^2} \int_0^R r \psi(r) J_n(\mu_n r/R) \, dr, \]

and the numbers \( \mu_n \) are the positive roots of \( J_0(\mu) = 0 \).

6. The nonhomogeneous wave equation in a circle of radius \( R \):

\[ u_{tt} = c^2 \left[ u_{rr} + \left(\frac{1}{r}\right) u_r \right] + P, \quad 0 \leq r \leq R, \quad t > 0 (P = \text{constant}), \]
with \( u(r, t) \) in polar coordinates, subject to the boundary condition
\[
u(R, t) = 0, \quad t > 0,
\]
and the initial conditions
\[
u(r, 0) = 0, \quad u_t(r, 0) = 0, \quad 0 \leq r \leq R.
\]

**Solution**
\[
u(r, t) = \frac{P}{c^2} \left[ \frac{R^2 - r^2}{4} - 2R^2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{J_0(\mu_n r/R)}{\mu_n^2 J_1(\mu_n)} \cos(c\mu_n t/R) \right],
\]
where the numbers \( \mu_n \) are the positive roots of \( J_0(\mu) = 0 \).

7. The wave equation in a circle of radius \( R \):
\[
u_{tt} = c^2 \left[ u_{rr} + \left( \frac{1}{r} \right) u_r \right], \quad 0 \leq r \leq R, \quad t > 0,
\]
with \( u(r, t) \) in polar coordinates, subject to
\[
u(R, \theta, t) = f(t) \cos n\theta, \quad f(0) = 0, \quad f'(0) = 0, \quad \text{with } n \text{ an integer}.
\]

**Solution**
\[
u(r, \theta, t) = \left[ U(r, t) + (r/R)^2 f(t) \right] \cos n\theta,
\]
where
\[
U(r, t) = \frac{R}{c} \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \frac{J_n(\mu_m r/R)}{\mu_m} \int_0^t \Phi_m(\tau) \sin[c\mu_m (t - \tau)/R] d\tau,
\]
with
\[
\Phi_m(t) = \frac{2}{R^4} \int_0^R r [3c^2 f(t) - r^2 f''(t)] J_m(\mu_m r/R) dr,
\]
and the numbers \( \mu_m \) the positive roots of \( J_n(\mu) = 0 \).

8. The wave equation in the annulus \( R_1 < r < R_2 \):
\[
u_{tt} = c^2 \left[ u_{rr} + \left( \frac{1}{r} \right) u_r \right], \quad R_1 \leq r \leq R_2, \quad t > 0,
\]
with \( u(r, t) \) in polar coordinates, subject to the boundary conditions
\[
u(R_1, t) = 0, \quad u(R_2, t) = 0, \quad t > 0,
\]
and the initial conditions
\[ u(r, 0) = \varphi(r), \quad u_t(r, 0) = \psi(r). \]

**Solution**

\[ u(r, t) = K_n(r) \left[ \cos \left( \frac{\mu_n c t}{R_2} \right) \int_{R_1}^{R_2} \rho \varphi(\rho) U_{\mu n}(\rho) \, d\rho \\
+ \frac{R_2}{\mu_n c} \sin \left( \frac{\mu_n c t}{R_2} \right) \int_{R_1}^{R_2} \rho \psi(\rho) U_{\mu n}(\rho) \, d\rho \right], \]

where
\[ K_n(r) = \frac{2}{R_2^2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\mu_n^2 U_{\mu n}(r)}{(4/\pi^2) - R_1^2 \left[ U_{\mu n}'(R_1) \right]^2}, \]
\[ U_{\mu}(r) = Y_0(\mu) J_0(\mu r/R_2) - J_0(\mu) Y_0(\mu r/R_2), \]

and the numbers \( \mu_n \) are the positive roots of \( U_{\mu}(R_1) = 0. \)
28.1 THE z-TRANSFORM AND TRANSFORM PAIRS

The z-transform converts a numerical sequence \( x[n] \) into a function of the complex variable \( z \), and it takes two different forms. The bilateral or two-sided z-transform, denoted here by \( Z_b\{ x[n] \} \), is used mainly in signal and image processing, while the unilateral or one-sided z-transform, denoted here by \( Z_u\{ x[n] \} \), is used mainly in the analysis of discrete time systems and the solution of linear difference equations.

The bilateral z-transform \( X_b(z) \) of the sequence \( x[n] = \{ x_n \}_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \) is defined as

\[
Z_b\{x[n]\} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x_n z^{-n} = X_b(z),
\]

and the unilateral z-transform \( X_u(z) \) of the sequence \( x[n] = \{ x_n \}_{n=0}^{\infty} \) is defined as

\[
Z_u\{x[n]\} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x_n z^{-n} = X_u(z),
\]

where each series has its own domain of convergence (DOC). The series \( X_b(z) \) is a Laurent series, and \( X_u(z) \) is the principal part of the Laurent series of \( X_b(z) \). When \( x_n = 0 \) for \( n < 0 \),

493
the two z-transforms \( X_b(z) \) and \( X_u(z) \) are identical. In each case the sequence \( x[n] \) and its associated z-transform is called a **z-transform pair**.

The inverse z-transformation \( x[n] = Z^{-1}\{X(z)\} \) is given by

\[
x[n] = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_\Gamma X(z) z^{n-1} dz,
\]

where \( X(z) \) is either \( X_b(z) \) or \( X_u(z) \), and \( \Gamma \) is a simple closed contour containing the origin and lying entirely within the domain of convergence of \( X(z) \). In many practical situations the z-transform is either found by using a series expansion of \( X(z) \) in the inversion integral or, if \( X(z) = N(z)/D(z) \) where \( N(z) \) and \( D(z) \) are polynomials in \( z \), by means of partial fractions and the use of an appropriate table of z-transform pairs. In order that the inverse z-transform is unique it is necessary to specify the domain of convergence, as can be seen by comparison of entries 3 and 4 of Table 28.2.

Table 28.1 lists general properties of the bilateral z-transform, and Table 28.2 lists some bilateral z-transform pairs. In what follows, use is made of the **unit integer function**

\[
h(n) = \begin{cases} 0, & n < 0 \\ 1, & n \geq 0 \end{cases}
\]

that is a generalization of the Heaviside step function, and the **unit integer pulse function**

\[
\Delta(n - k) = \begin{cases} 1, & n = k \\ 0, & n \neq k \end{cases}
\]

that is a generalization of the delta function.

The relationship between the Laplace transform of a continuous function \( x(t) \) sampled at \( t = 0, T, 2T, \ldots \) and the unilateral z-transform of the function \( \hat{x}(t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(nT)\delta(t - nT) \) follows from the result

\[
L\{\hat{x}(t)\} = \int_0^\infty \left[ \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} x(kT)\delta(t - kT) \right] e^{-st} dt
\]

\[
= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} x(kT) e^{-ksT}.
\]

Setting \( z = e^{sT} \) this becomes

\[
L\{\hat{x}(t)\} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} x(kT)z^{-k} = X(z),
\]

showing that the unilateral z-transform \( X_u(z) \) can be considered to be the Laplace transform of a continuous function \( x(t) \) for \( t \geq 0 \) sampled at \( t = 0, T, 2T, \ldots. \)

Table 28.3 lists some general properties of the unilateral z-transform, and Table 28.4 lists some unilateral z-transform pairs.

As an example of the use of the unilateral z-transform when solving a linear constant coefficient difference equation, consider the difference equation

\[
x_{n+2} - 4x_{n+1} + 4x_n = 0 \quad \text{with the initial conditions } x_0 = 2, \ x_1 = 3.
\]
### Table 28.1. General Properties of the Bilateral $z$-Transform $X_b(n) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x_n z^{-n}$

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term in sequence</th>
<th>$z$-Transform $X_b(z)$</th>
<th>Domain of convergence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. $\alpha x_n + \beta y_n$</td>
<td>$\alpha X_b(z) + \beta Y_b(z)$</td>
<td>Intersection of DOCs of $X_b(z)$ and $Y_b(z)$ with $\alpha, \beta$ constants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. $x_{n-N}$</td>
<td>$z^{-N}X_b(z)$</td>
<td>DOC of $X_b(z)$ to which it may be necessary to add or delete the origin or the point at infinity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. $nx_n$</td>
<td>$-zdX_b(z)/dz$</td>
<td>DOC of $X_b(z)$ to which it may be necessary to add or delete the origin and the point at infinity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. $z_0^n x_n$</td>
<td>$X_b(z/z_0)$</td>
<td>DOC of $X_b(z)$ scaled by $</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. $nz_0^n x_n$</td>
<td>$-zdX_b(z/z_0)/dz$</td>
<td>DOC of $X_b(z)$ scaled by $</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. $x_{-n}$</td>
<td>$X_b(1/z)$</td>
<td>DOC of radius $1/R$, where $R$ is the radius of convergence of DOC of $X_b(z)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. $nx_{-n}$</td>
<td>$-zdX_b(1/z)/dz$</td>
<td>DOC of radius $1/R$, where $R$ is the radius of convergence of DOC of $X_b(z)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. $\mathfrak{x}_n$</td>
<td>$\overline{X}_b(\overline{z})$</td>
<td>The same DOC as $x_n$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Re $x_n$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{2} {X_b(z) + \overline{X}_b(\overline{z})}$</td>
<td>DOC contains the DOC of $x_n$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Im $x_n$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{2i} {X_b(z) - \overline{X}_b(\overline{z})}$</td>
<td>DOC contains the DOC of $x_n$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. $\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} x_k y_{n-k}$</td>
<td>$X_b(z)Y_b(z)$</td>
<td>DOC contains the intersection of the DOCs of $X_b(z)$ and $Y_b(z)$ (convolution theorem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. $x_n y_n$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma} X_b(\zeta) Y_b(z/\zeta)\zeta^{-1} d\zeta$</td>
<td>DOC contains the DOCs of $X_b(z)$ and $Y_b(z)$, with $\Gamma$ inside the DOC and containing the origin (convolution theorem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Parseval formula</td>
<td>$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x_n \overline{y}_n$</td>
<td>$= \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma} X_b(\zeta) \overline{Y}_b(1/\zeta)\zeta^{-1} d\zeta$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Initial value theorem for $x_n h(n)$</td>
<td>$x_0 = \lim_{z \to \infty} X_b(z)$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 28.2. Basic Bilateral z-Transforms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term in sequence</th>
<th>z-Transform $X_k(z)$</th>
<th>Domain of convergence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. $\Delta(n)$</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Converges for all $z$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. $\Delta(n-N)$</td>
<td>$z^{-N}$</td>
<td>When $N &gt; 0$ convergence is for all $z$ except at the origin. When $N &lt; 0$ convergence is for all $z$ except at $\infty$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. $a^n h(n)$</td>
<td>$\frac{z}{z-a}$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. $a^n h(-n-1)$</td>
<td>$\frac{z}{z-a}$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. $na^n h(n)$</td>
<td>$\frac{az}{(z-a)^2}$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. $na^n h(-n-1)$</td>
<td>$\frac{az}{(z-a)^2}$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. $n^2 a^n h(n)$</td>
<td>$\frac{az}{(z-a)^3} + \frac{bz}{(z-a)}$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. ${(1/a)^n + (1/b)^n} h(n)$</td>
<td>$z(1-(a/z)^N)$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. $a^n h(n-N)$</td>
<td>$\frac{z}{az - a}$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. $h(n) a^n \sin \Omega n$</td>
<td>$\frac{z^2 - 2az \cos \Omega + a^2}{az \sin \Omega}$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. $h(n) a^n \cos \Omega n$</td>
<td>$\frac{z(z - a \cos \Omega)}{z^2 - 2az \cos \Omega + a^2}$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. $e^{-an} h(n)$</td>
<td>$\frac{z}{z - e^a}$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. $h(n) e^{-an} \sin \Omega n$</td>
<td>$\frac{z e^a \sin \Omega}{z^2 e^{2a} - 2z e^a \cos \Omega + 1}$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. $h(n) e^{-an} \cos \Omega n$</td>
<td>$\frac{z e^a (z e^a - \cos \Omega)}{z^2 e^{2a} - 2z e^a \cos \Omega + 1}$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Direct calculation shows that the first few terms of this difference equation are $x_0 = 2$, $x_1 = 3$, $x_2 = 4$, $x_3 = 4$, $x_4 = 0$, $x_5 = -16, \ldots$. Taking the unilateral z-transform of this difference equation and using the linearity of the transform (entry 1 in Table 28.3) with entry 2 in the same table gives

$$\left(\frac{z^2 X_u - z^2 x_0 - zx_1}{Z_u \{x_{n+2}\}_{n=0}^\infty}\right) - \frac{4(zX_u - zx_0)}{Z_u \{x_{n+1}\}_{n=0}^\infty} + \frac{X_u}{Z_u \{x_n\}_{n=0}^\infty} = 0,$$
### Table 28.3. General Properties of the Unilateral z-Transform $X_u(n) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x_n z^{-n}$

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term in sequence</th>
<th>z-Transform $X_u(z)$</th>
<th>Domain of convergence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. $\alpha x_n + \beta y_n$</td>
<td>$\alpha X_u(z) + \beta Y_u(z)$</td>
<td>Intersection of DOCs of $X_u(z)$ and $Y_u(z)$ with $\alpha, \beta$ constants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. $x_{n+k}$</td>
<td>$z^k X_u(z) - z^k x_0 - z^{k-1} x_1 - z^{k-2} x_2 - \cdots - z x_{k-1}$</td>
<td>DOC of $X_u(z)$ to which it may be necessary to add or delete the origin and the point at infinity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. $nx_n$</td>
<td>$-zdX_u(z)/dz$</td>
<td>DOC of $X_u(z)$ scaled by $</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. $z_0^n x_n$</td>
<td>$X_u(z/z_0)$</td>
<td>DOC of $X_u(z)$ scaled by $</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. $nz_0^n x_n$</td>
<td>$-zdX_u(z/z_0)/dz$</td>
<td>DOC of $X_u(z)$ scaled by $</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. $\pi_n$</td>
<td>$X_u(\pi)$</td>
<td>The same DOC as $x_n$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Re$x_n$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{2} {X_u(z) + X_u(\bar{z})}$</td>
<td>DOC contains the DOC of $x_n$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. $\frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha} x_n(\alpha)$</td>
<td>$\frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha} X_u(z, \alpha)$</td>
<td>Same DOC as $x_n(\alpha)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Initial value theorem</td>
<td>$x_0 = \lim_{z \to \infty} X_u(z)$</td>
<td>$X_u(z) = \frac{2z^2 - 5z}{(z - 2)^2}$, when $x_n = \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha} x_n(\alpha)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Final value theorem</td>
<td>$\lim_{n \to \infty} x_n = \lim_{z \to 1} \left[ \left( \frac{z - 1}{z} \right) X_u(z) \right]$</td>
<td>$X_u(z) = \frac{2z - 5}{(z - 2)^2}$, when $X_u(z) = N(z)/D(z)$ with $N(z), D(z)$ polynomials in $z$ and the zeros of $D(z)$ inside the unit circle $</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To determine the inverse $z$-transform by means of entries in Table 28.4, $X_u(z)$ must first be written in the form

$$\frac{X_u(z)}{z} = \frac{2z - 5}{(z - 2)^2}.$$
Table 28.4. Basic Unilateral z-Transforms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term in sequence</th>
<th>z-Transform $X_u(z)$</th>
<th>Domain of convergence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. $\Delta(n)$</td>
<td>$1$</td>
<td>Converges for all $z$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. $\Delta(n - k)$</td>
<td>$z^{-k}$</td>
<td>Convergence for all $z \neq 0$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. $a^n h(n)$</td>
<td>$\frac{z}{z - a}$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. $na^n h(n)$</td>
<td>$\frac{az}{(z - az)^2}$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. $n^2 a^n h(n)$</td>
<td>$\frac{za(z + a)}{(a - z)^3}$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. $na^{n-1} h(n)$</td>
<td>$\frac{z}{(z - a)^2}$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. $(n - 1)a^n h(n)$</td>
<td>$\frac{z(2a - z)}{(z - a)^2}$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. $e^{-an} h(n)$</td>
<td>$\frac{ze^a}{ze^a - 1}$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. $ne^{-an} h(n)$</td>
<td>$\frac{ze^{-a}}{(z - e^{-a})^2}$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. $n^2 e^{-an} h(n)$</td>
<td>$\frac{ze^{-a}(z + e^{-a})}{(z - e^{-a})^3}$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. $h(n) e^{-an} \sin \Omega n$</td>
<td>$\frac{ze^a \sin \Omega}{z^2 e^{2a} - 2ze^a \cos \Omega + 1}$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. $h(n) e^{-an} \cos \Omega n$</td>
<td>$\frac{ze^a (ze^a - \cos \Omega)}{z^2 e^{2a} - 2ze^a \cos \Omega + 1}$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. $h(n) \sinh an$</td>
<td>$\frac{z \sinh a}{z^2 - 2z \cosh a + 1}$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. $h(n) \cosh an$</td>
<td>$\frac{z(z - \cosh a)}{z^2 - 2z \cosh a + 1}$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. $h(n) a^{n-1} e^{-an} \sin \Omega n$</td>
<td>$\frac{ze^a \sin \Omega}{z^2 e^{2a} - 2ze^a \cos \Omega + a^2}$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. $h(n) a^n e^{-an} \cos \Omega n$</td>
<td>$\frac{ze^a (ze^a - a \cos \Omega)}{z^2 - 2ze^a \cos \Omega + a^2}$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A partial fraction representation gives

$$X_u(z) = \frac{2z}{z - 2} - \frac{z}{(z - 2)^2}.$$ 

Using entries 3 and 4 of Table 28.4 to find the inverse unilateral $z$-transform shows that

$$x_n = 2 \cdot 2^n - n2^{n-1}, \quad \text{or} \quad x_n = 2^{n-1}(4 - n) \quad \text{for } n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots.$$
Chapter 29
Numerical Approximation

29.1 INTRODUCTION
The derivation of numerical results usually involves approximation. Some of the most common reasons for approximation are round-off error, the use of interpolation, the approximate values of elementary functions generated by computer sub-routines, the numerical approximation of definite integrals, and the numerical solution of both ordinary and partial differential equations. This section outlines some of the most frequently used methods of approximation, ranging from linear interpolation, spline function fitting, the economization of series and the Padé approximation of functions, to finite difference approximations for ordinary and partial derivatives. More detailed information about these methods, their use, and suitability in varying circumstances can be found in the numerical analysis references at the end of the book.

29.1.1 Linear Interpolation
Linear interpolation is the simplest way to determine the value of a function \( f(x) \) at a point \( x = c \) in the interval \( x_0 \leq x \leq x_1 \) when it is known only at the data points \( x = x_0 \) and \( x = x_1 \) at the ends of the interval, where it has the respective values \( f(x_0) \) and \( f(x_1) \). This involves fitting a straight line \( L \) through the data points \( (x_0, f(x_0)) \) and \( (x_1, f(x_1)) \), and approximating \( f(c) \) by the point on line \( L \) where \( x = c \), with \( x_0 < c < x_1 \). The formula for linear interpolation is

\[
f(x) = f(x_0) + \left[ \frac{f(x_1) - f(x_0)}{x_1 - x_0} \right] (x - x_0), \quad x_0 \leq x \leq x_1.
\]
29.1.2 Lagrange Polynomial Interpolation

If a function \( f(x) \) is known only at the data points \( x_0, x_1, \ldots, x_n \) where its values are, respectively, \( f(x_0), f(x_1), \ldots, f(x_n) \), the Lagrange interpolation polynomial \( F(x) \) of degree \( n \) for \( f(x) \) in the interval \( x_0 \leq x \leq x_n \) is

\[
F(x) = \sum_{r=0}^{n} f(x_r)L_r(x)
\]

where

\[
L_r(x) = \frac{(x - x_0)(x - x_1) \cdots (x - x_{r-1})(x - x_{r+1}) \cdots (x - x_n)}{(x_r - x_0)(x_r - x_1) \cdots (x_r - x_{r-1})(x_r - x_{r+1}) \cdots (x_r - x_n)}.
\]

Inspection of this interpolation polynomial shows that it passes through each of the known data points \( (x_0, f(x_0)), (x_1, f(x_1)), \ldots, (x_n, f(x_n)) \). However it is not advisable to use Lagrange interpolation over many more than three points, because interpolation by polynomials of degree greater than three is likely to cause \( F(x) \) to be subject to large oscillations between the data interpolation points.

When interpolation is necessary and more than three data points are involved, a possible approach is to use Lagrange interpolation polynomials between successive groups of three data points. This has the disadvantage that where successive interpolation polynomials meet at a data interpolation point \( x = x_r \), say, neither takes account of the variation of the other in the vicinity of \( x_r \). Consequently, when the set of interpolation polynomials is graphed, although the resulting curve is continuous, it has discontinuities in its derivative wherever consecutive pairs of interpolation polynomials meet. This difficulty can be overcome by using spline interpolation that is outlined next.

29.1.3 Spline Interpolation

Cubic spline interpolation is the most frequently used form of spline interpolation, and it is particularly useful when a smooth curve needs to be generated between known fixed points. The idea is simple, and it involves fitting a cubic equation between each pair of interpolation data points and requiring that where consecutive polynomials meet their functional values coincide, and both the slope of each polynomial and its second derivative are continuous.

When graphed, a cubic spline interpolation approximation is a smooth curve that passes through each data point. The data points where the cubics meet are called the knots of the spline interpolation. The generation of cubic spline interpolation polynomials, and their subsequent graphing is computationally intensive, so it is only performed by computer.

Many readily available numerical packages provide the facility for spline function interpolation that allows for different conditions at the ends of the interval over which interpolation is required. A natural or linear spline end condition allows the interpolation function to become linear at an end, a parabolic spline end condition causes the cubic spline to reduce to a parabolic approximation at the end of the interval and periodic spline end conditions are suitable for functions that are believed to be periodic over the interval of approximation.
29.2 Economization of Series

A cubic spline interpolation of the function \( f(x) = x \sin 5x \) over the interval \( 0 \leq x \leq 1.5 \), using eight data points and with natural end conditions is illustrated in Figure 29.1, where the data points are shown as dots, the spline function interpolation is shown as the thin line and the original function \( f(x) = x \sin 5x \) as the thick line.

29.2 ECONOMIZATION OF SERIES

When a power series approximation is used repeatedly, as in a subroutine, it is often desirable to minimize the number of multiplications that are involved by using a process called the economization of series. This is based on the use of Chebyshev polynomials, where the objective is that given a series \( f(x) = \sum_{r=0}^{n} a_r x^r \) in an interval \(-1 \leq x \leq 1\), and a number \( R > 0 \) representing the absolute error that is to be allowed, it is required to find an approximation \( F(x) = \sum_{r=0}^{N} b_r x^r \) where \( N \) is as small as possible, such that \(|F(x) - f(x)| < R\).

The approach uses the special property of Chebyshev polynomials that enables them to provide approximations in which the maximum deviation from the function to be approximated is made as small as possible. It involves first replacing each power of \( x \) in the series \( f(x) \) by its representation in terms of the Chebyshev polynomials \( T_r(x) \), and then collecting terms so that \( f(x) \) is expressed as the sum \( f(x) = \sum_{r=0}^{n} b_r T_r(x) \). As Chebyshev polynomials have the property that \(|T_n(x)| \leq 1 \) for \(-1 \leq x \leq 1\) (see Section 18.3), the objective is attained within the required accuracy by using the truncated approximation \( F(x) = \sum_{r=0}^{N} b_r T_r(x) \) where \( N \) is such that \( \sum_{r=N+1}^{n} |b_r| < R \). The required economized polynomial approximation in terms of \( x \) is obtained by expressing the truncated series \( F(x) \) in terms of powers of \( x \).

To illustrate this approach we find an economized polynomial approximation for

\[
f(x) = 1 + \frac{1}{3} x + \frac{1}{5} x^2 + \frac{1}{7} x^3 + \frac{1}{9} x^5 \quad \text{for} \ -1 \leq x \leq 1, \quad \text{with} \ R = 0.01.
\]
Replacing powers of \( x \) by their representation in terms of Chebyshev polynomials gives

\[
f(x) = \left(1 + \frac{1}{10}\right) T_0 + \left(\frac{1}{3} + \frac{3}{28} + \frac{5}{72}\right) T_1 + \frac{1}{10} T_2 + \left(\frac{1}{28} + \frac{5}{144}\right) T_3 + \frac{1}{144} T_5,
\]
or

\[
f(x) = \frac{11}{10} T_0 + \frac{771}{1512} T_1 + \frac{1}{10} T_2 + \frac{71}{1008} T_3 + \frac{1}{144} T_5.
\]

An approximation with \( R = 0.01 \) is given by

\[
F(x) = \frac{11}{10} T_0 + \frac{771}{1512} T_1 + \frac{1}{10} T_2 + \frac{71}{1008} T_3,
\]
because

\[
|b_5| = \left|\frac{1}{144}\right| = 0.00694 < 0.01.
\]

When expressed in terms of powers of \( x \) this gives the approximation

\[
F(x) = 1 + 0.298612x + 0.2x^2 + 0.281744x^3 \quad \text{for } -1 \leq x \leq 1.
\]

The error \( f(x) - F(x) \) is shown in Figure 29.2, from which it can be seen that the Chebyshev polynomials used in the approximation distribute the error over the interval \( -1 \leq x \leq 1 \). This

![Figure 29.2. The error \( f(x) - F(x) \) as a function of \( x \) for \( -1 \leq x \leq 1 \).](image)
contrasts with a Taylor polynomial approximation of the same degree (in this case the first four terms of $f(x)$), that has the least absolute error close to the origin and the greatest absolute error at the ends of the interval $-1 \leq x \leq 1$, where in this case it is $1/9$.

If a representation is required over the interval $a \leq x \leq b$, a change of variable must first be made to scale the interval to $-1 \leq x \leq 1$.

### 29.3 Padé Approximation

An effective and concise form of approximation is provided by Padé approximation in which a function $f(x)$ defined over an interval $a \leq x \leq b$ is approximated by a function of the form $F(x) = N(x)/D(x)$, where $N(x)$ and $D(x)$ are polynomials with no common zeros. This type of approximation can be used with functions $f(x)$ that are analytic over the interval $a \leq x \leq b$, and also with functions that have singularities in the interval at which the function becomes infinite. In the latter case the zeros of $D(x)$ are chosen to coincide with the singularities of $f(x)$ inside the interval.

Unless there is a reason to do otherwise, the degrees of the polynomial $N(x)$ in the numerator and $D(x)$ in the denominator of a Padé approximation are usually chosen to be the same. If, however, the function $f(x)$ to be approximated is an even function, $N(x)$ and $D(x)$ are both chosen to be even functions, while if $f(x)$ is odd, one of the functions $N(x)$ and $D(x)$ is chosen to be even and the other to be odd. As already stated, when the function to be approximated has singularities in the interval, the zeros of $D(x)$ are taken to coincide with the singularities.

The determination of a Padé approximation $F(x)$ for $f(x)$ over the interval $a \leq x \leq b$ is determined as follows where, by way of example, $f(x)$ is supposed to be neither even nor odd so the degrees of $N(x)$ and $D(x)$ are both taken to be $n$. Setting

$$F(x) = \frac{a_1(x-a)^n + a_2(x-a)^{n-1} + \cdots + a_n(x-a) + f(a)}{b_1(x-a)^n + b_2(x-a)^{n-1} \cdots b_n(x-a) + 1},$$

the values of $f(x)$ are computed at $2n$ points $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{2n}$ distributed over the interval $a \leq x \leq b$ in such a way that the functional values at these points provide a good representation of $f(x)$ away from any singularities that might occur. Set $f_r = f(x_r)$ with $r = 1, 2, \ldots, 2n$, where the initial point $x = a$ is excluded from this set of $2n$ points. Then, for each value $x_r$ set $F(x_r) = f_r$, so that after multiplication of $F(x)$ by $b_1(x_r-a)^n + \cdots b_n(x_r-a) + 1$,

$$a_1(x_r-a)^n + \cdots a_n(x_r-a) + f(a) = f_r [b_1(x_r-a)^n + \cdots b_n(x_r-a) + 1],$$

with $r = 1, 2, \ldots, 2n$. These $2n$ equations determine the $2n$ coefficients $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n, b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_n$ to be used in the Padé approximation.
The approach is different if \( f(x) \) is analytic in an interval of interest that contains no singularities of \( f(x) \) and the function is known in the form of a power series. The method used in such a case is illustrated by finding a Padé approximation for \( \sin x \) based on the first four terms of its Maclaurin series

\[
\sin x = x - \frac{1}{6} x^3 + \frac{1}{120} x^5 - \frac{1}{5040} x^7.
\]

The sine function is an odd function, so a Padé approximation is sought of the form

\[
x - \frac{1}{6} x^3 + \frac{1}{120} x^5 - \frac{1}{5040} x^7 = \frac{x + a_1 x^3}{1 + b_1 x^2 + b_2 x^4},
\]

where the numerator is an odd polynomial function of degree three and the denominator is an even polynomial function of degree four.

Multiplying this representation by \( 1 + b_1 x^2 + b_2 x^4 \) and equating corresponding powers of \( x \) on each side of the equation gives:

\[
b_1 - \frac{1}{6} = a_1, \quad b_2 - \frac{1}{6} b_1 + \frac{1}{120} = 0, \quad -\frac{1}{5040} + \frac{1}{120} b_1 - \frac{1}{6} b_2 = 0,
\]

so \( a_1 = -31/294, b_1 = 3/49 \) and \( b_2 = 11/5880 \). Substituting for \( a_1, b_1 \) and \( b_2 \) in the original expression and clearing fractions shows that the required Padé approximation to be

\[
\sin x \approx F(x) = \frac{5880x - 620x^3}{5880 + 360x^2 + 11x^4}.
\]

The positive zero of the numerator at 3.07959 provides a surprisingly good approximation to the zero of \( \sin x \) at \( \pi = 3.14159 \ldots \), despite the very few terms used in the Maclaurin series for \( \sin x \). The Padé approximations \( F(1) = 0.84147, F(2) = 0.90715 \) and \( F(3) = 0.08990 \), should be compared with the true values \( \sin 1 = 0.84147 \ldots, \sin 2 = 0.90929 \ldots \) and \( \sin 3 = 0.14112 \ldots \).

An example of a Padé approximation to an analytic function that is neither even nor odd is provided by an approximation to \( \exp(-x) \), based on the first nine terms of its Maclaurin series expansion and a rational approximation in which the numerator and denominator are both of degree four, yields

\[
\exp(-x) \approx F(x) = \frac{1680 - 840x + 180x^2 - 20x^3 + x^4}{1680 + 840x + 180x^2 + 20x^3 + x^4}.
\]

This approximation gives \( F(-1) = 2.718281 \), that should be compared with the true value \( \exp(1) = e = 2.718281 \ldots \), similarly \( F(-2) = 7.388889 \) should be compared with the true
value \( \exp(2) = 7.389056 \ldots \), and \( F(-3) = 20.065421 \) should be compared with the true value \( \exp(3) = 20.085536 \ldots \).

A final example is provided by the Padé approximation to the odd function \( \tan x \), based on the first five terms of its Maclaurin series expansion and a rational function approximation in which the numerator is an odd function of degree five and the denominator is an even function of degree four.

In this case the Padé approximation becomes

\[
\tan x \approx F(x) = \frac{945x - 105x^3 + x^5}{945 - 420x^2 + 15x^4}.
\]

The smallest positive zero of the denominator \( 945 - 420x^2 + 15x^4 \) gives for the approximation to \( \pi/2 = 1.57079 \ldots \) the surprisingly accurate estimate \( \pi/2 \approx 1.57081 \). The value \( F(1.1) = 2.57215 \) should be compared with the true value \( \tan 1.1 = 2.57215 \ldots \), the value \( F(1.5) = 14.10000 \) should be compared with the true value \( \tan 1.5 = 14.10141 \ldots \) and the value \( F(1.57) = 1237.89816 \) should be compared with the true value \( \tan 1.57 = 1255.76559 \ldots \).

### 29.4 Finite Difference Approximations to Ordinary and Partial Derivatives

Taylor’s theorem can be used to approximate ordinary derivatives of a suitably differentiable function \( u(x) \) at a point \( x = x_0 \) in terms of values of \( u(x) \) at one or more points to the left and right of \( x_0 \) that are separated from each other by an increment \( \pm h \). For example, an approximation to \( f'(x_0) \) can be obtained from Taylor’s theorem with a remainder as follows:

\[
u(x_0 + h) = u(x_0) + hu'(x_0) + \frac{1}{2}h^2u''(x_0 + \xi h), \quad 0 < \xi < 1,
\]

\[
u(x_0 - h) = u(x_0) - hu'(x_0) + \frac{1}{2}h^2u''(x_0 + \eta h), \quad 0 < \eta < 1.
\]

Differencing these expressions and rearranging terms gives

\[
u'(x_0) = \frac{1}{2h} (u_1 - u_{-1}) + O(h^2),
\]

where \( u_{-1} = u(x_0 - h) \) and \( u_1 = u(x_0 + h) \). So, to order \( h^2 \),

\[
u'(x_0) = \frac{1}{2h} (u_1 - u_{-1}).
\]
Similar arguments lead to the following finite difference approximations to an accuracy $O(h^2)$ to higher order derivatives of a suitably differentiable function $u(x)$, where the notation $u_{\pm n} = u(x_0 \pm nh)$, $n = 0, 1, 2$.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ordinary derivative</th>
<th>Finite difference approximation</th>
<th>Order of error</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$u'(x_0)$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{2h}(u_1 - u_{-1})$</td>
<td>$O(h^2)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$u''(x_0)$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{h^2}(u_1 - 2u_0 + u_{-1})$</td>
<td>$O(h^2)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$u'''(x_0)$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{2h^3}(u_2 - 2u_1 + 2u_{-1} - u_{-2})$</td>
<td>$O(h^2)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$u^{(4)}(x_0)$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{h^4}(u_2 - 4u_1 + 6u_0 - 4u_{-1} + u_{-2})$</td>
<td>$O(h^2)$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The same method can be used to derive finite difference approximations to an accuracy $O(h^2)$ to the partial derivatives of a suitably differentiable function $u(x,y)$ about a point $(x_0, y_0)$ in terms of values of $u(x,y)$ at points separated from each other by increments $\pm h$. Using the notation $U_{\pm m, \pm n} = u(x_0 \pm mh, y_0 \pm nh)$, the following are commonly used finite difference approximations to partial derivatives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Partial derivative</th>
<th>Finite difference approximation</th>
<th>Order of error</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$u_x(x_0, y_0)$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{2h}(u_{1,0} - u_{-1,0})$</td>
<td>$O(h^2)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$u_y(x_0, y_0)$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{2h}(u_{0,1} - u_{0,-1})$</td>
<td>$O(h^2)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$u_{xy}(x_0, y_0)$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{4h^2}(u_{1,1} - u_{1,-1} - u_{-1,1} + u_{-1,-1})$</td>
<td>$O(h^2)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$u_{xx}(x_0, y_0)$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{h^2}(u_{1,0} - 2u_{0,0} + u_{-1,0})$</td>
<td>$O(h^2)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$u_{yy}(x_0, y_0)$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{h^2}(u_{0,1} - 2u_{0,0} + u_{0,-1})$</td>
<td>$O(h^2)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$u_{xxy}(x_0, y_0)$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{h^3}(u_{2,0} - 4u_{1,0} + 6u_{0,0} - 4u_{-1,0} + u_{-2,0})$</td>
<td>$O(h^2)$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Laplacian at $(x_0, y_0)$

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Partial derivative</th>
<th>Finite difference approximation</th>
<th>Order of error</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$u_{xx}(x_0, y_0)$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{h^2}(u_{1,0} + u_{0,1} + u_{-1,0} + u_{0,-1} - 4u_{0,0})$</td>
<td>$O(h^2)$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The pattern of points around $(x_0, y_0)$ leading to a finite difference approximation to a partial derivative is called a *computational molecule* and the patterns for the above partial derivatives are as follows:
29.4 Finite Difference Approximations to Ordinary and Partial Derivatives

The Laplacian
at \((x_0, y_0)\)
30.1 ANALYTIC FUNCTIONS AND THE CAUCHY-RIEMANN EQUATIONS

A complex function \( w = f(z) = u + iv \), where either \( z = x + iy \) or \( z = re^{i\theta} \), is said to be **analytic** in a domain \( D \) of the complex plane if, and only if, it is differentiable at every point of \( D \). Other terms used in place of **analytic** but with the same meaning are **regular** and **holomorphic**. A function \( f(z) \) that is analytic throughout the entire complex \( z \)-plane is called an **entire function** an example of which is \( f(z) = \exp(z) \). For a function \( f(z) \) to be analytic in a domain \( D \) in the complex \( z \)-plane, it is necessary that it satisfies the Cauchy-Riemann equations at every points of \( D \). In Cartesian form the Cauchy-Riemann equations are

1. \( \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} \) and \( \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} = -\frac{\partial v}{\partial x} \).

while in modulus/argument form—that is, when expressed in terms of \( r \) and \( \theta \)—the Cauchy-Riemann equations become

2. \( \frac{\partial u}{\partial r} = \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial v}{\partial \theta} \) and \( \frac{\partial v}{\partial r} = -\frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial u}{\partial \theta} \), \( r \neq 0 \).

If \( w = f(z) \) is analytic, when expressed in Cartesian form its derivative \( dw/dz = f'(z) \) is given by

3. \( f'(z) = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + i \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} - i \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \).
30.2 HARMONIC CONJUGATES AND THE LAPLACE EQUATION

If \( f(z) = u + iv \) is analytic in a domain \( D \), the real functions \( u \) and \( v \) that satisfy the Cauchy-Riemann equations are said to be **harmonic conjugates**. However, if \( f(z) = u_1 + iv_1 \) and \( g(z) = u_2 + iv_2 \) are analytic, then although \( u_1 \) and \( v_1 \) are harmonic conjugates, as are \( u_2 \) and \( v_2 \), when paired differently the functions \( u_1 \) and \( v_2 \), and the functions \( u_2 \) and \( v_1 \) are **not** harmonic conjugates.

The differentiability of \( f(z) \) implies the equality of the mixed derivatives \( u_{xy} \) and \( u_{yx} \) and also of \( v_{xy} \) and \( v_{yx} \). So, working with the Cartesian form of the equations, differentiation of the first Cauchy-Riemann equation first with respect to \( x \) and the second with respect to \( y \) shows that \( u \) satisfies the two-dimensional Laplace equation

\[
\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = 0,
\]

while differentiation in the reverse order shows that \( v \) is also a solution of the two-dimensional Laplace equation

\[
\frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial y^2} = 0.
\]

Similar reasoning shows that when the Cauchy-Riemann equations are expressed in modulus/argument form, the Laplace equations satisfied by \( u \) and \( v \) become

\[
\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial r^2} + \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial u}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r^2} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial \theta^2} = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial r^2} + \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial v}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r^2} \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial \theta^2} = 0.
\]

A real valued function \( \Phi(x, y) \) that satisfies the Laplace equation

\[
\frac{\partial^2 \Phi}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \Phi}{\partial y^2} = 0
\]

is said to be a **harmonic function**, so \( u \) and \( v \), the respective real and imaginary parts of an analytic function \( f(z) \), are **harmonic functions**.

30.3 CONFORMAL TRANSFORMATIONS AND ORTHOGONAL TRAJECTORIES

It is a direct consequence of the Cauchy-Riemann equations that if \( f(z) = u + iv \) is an analytic function, the curves \( u = \text{const.} \) and \( v = \text{const.} \) when drawn in the \( (x, y) \)-plane form mutually **orthogonal trajectories** (they intersect at right angles). However, at certain isolated points called **critical points**, this property ceases to be true (see 30.5).

Let two curves \( \gamma_1 \) and \( \gamma_2 \) drawn in the complex \( z \)-plane intersect at a point \( P \), as shown in Figure 30.1(a), where their angle of intersection is \( \alpha \), and suppose the sense of rotation from \( \gamma_1 \) to \( \gamma_2 \) is counterclockwise. Then, when an analytic function \( w = f(z) \) maps these curves in
the complex $z$-plane into their images $\Gamma_1$ and $\Gamma_2$ that intersect at a point $P'$ in the complex $w$-plane, their angle of intersection $\alpha$ is preserved, and the sense of rotation from $\gamma_1$ to $\gamma_2$ is also preserved when $\Gamma_1$ and $\Gamma_2$ are mapped, as shown in Figure 30.1(b). It is these two properties, namely the preservation of both the angle and the sense of rotation between intersecting curves in the complex $z$- and $w$-planes, that characterizes a complex mapping by an analytic function $w = f(z)$.

### 30.4 BOUNDARY VALUE PROBLEMS

The Laplace equation describes many physical phenomena, and the requirement that a real valued function $\Phi$ satisfies the Laplace equation in a region $R$, while on the boundary of $R$ it satisfies some prescribed auxiliary conditions, constitutes what is called a **boundary value problem** (bvp). The most frequently occurring auxiliary conditions, called **boundary conditions**, are of two types.

**Dirichlet conditions:** the assignment of the prescribed values $\Phi$ is to assume on part or all of the boundary.

**Neumann conditions:** the assignment of the prescribed values the derivative $\partial \Phi / \partial n$—that is, the derivative of $\Phi$ normal to the boundary—is to assume on part or all of the boundary.

In typical boundary value problems a Dirichlet condition is prescribed on parts of the boundary, and a **homogeneous Neumann condition** $\partial \Phi / \partial n = 0$ is prescribed on the remainder of the boundary.

Conformal transformations use two complex planes, the first of which is the $z$-plane from which a region with a simple shape is to be transformed by a given analytic function $w = f(z)$. The second complex plane is the $w$-plane generated by the transformation $w = f(z)$, which will, in general, map the first region into a more complicated one. The importance of conformal
transformations when working with boundary value problems is because, if a solution satisfies
the Laplace equation in the \( z \)-plane, the effect of a conformal transformation will be to produce
a solution that also satisfies the Laplace equation in the \( w \)-plane. Furthermore, Dirichlet or
homogeneous Neumann conditions imposed on boundaries in the \( z \)-plane are transformed
unchanged to the corresponding boundaries in the \( w \)-plane. This has the result that if the
solution can be found in the \( z \)-plane, it can be transformed at once into the solution in the
\( w \)-plane, thereby enabling a complicated solution to be found from a simpler one.

In a typical case the temperature satisfies the Laplace equation. In this case, the specification
of Dirichlet conditions on part of a boundary is equivalent to specifying the temperature on
that part of the boundary, while the specification of homogeneous Neumann conditions on
another part of the boundary corresponds to thermal insulation on that part of the boundary
because there can be no heat flux across a thermally insulated boundary. In such a case,
the curves \( u = \text{const.} \) will correspond to isothermals (curves of constant temperature), while
their orthogonal trajectories \( v = \text{const.} \) will correspond to heat flow lines. Plotting the lines
\( u = \text{const.} \) and \( v = \text{const.} \) then shows graphically the isothermals to each of which can be
associated the appropriate temperature. If desired, plotting the curves \( v = \text{const.} \) will show
the heat flow lines relative to the isothermals.

The idea underlying the use of conformal mapping to solve a boundary value problem for the
Laplace equation inside a region with a complicated shape is straightforward. It involves first
using separation of variables to find an analytical solution of a related problem in a simply
shaped region, like a rectangle or circle, for which the boundaries coincide with constant
coordinate lines. The choice of such a simple shape is necessary if a solution is to be found
inside the region by means of separation of variables. A conformal mapping is then used to
transform the simply shaped region, together with its solution, into a more complicated region
of interest, along with its solution, which otherwise would be difficult to find.

### 30.5 SOME USEFUL CONFORMAL MAPPINGS

In the atlas of diagrams that follow, the boundary of a region in the complex \( z \)-plane is shown
on the left, and the diagram on the right shows how that boundary is mapped to the \( w \)-plane
by the given function \( w = f(z) \). Important points on the boundary of the region on the left are
marked with letters \( A, B, C, \ldots \), and their images on the boundary of the transformed region
on the right are shown as \( A', B', C', \ldots \).

The shaded region in the diagram on the left maps to the shaded region in the diagram
on the right. This agrees with the property of conformal mapping that as a point \( P \) on the
boundary of the region on the left moves around it in a \textit{counterclockwise} sense, so the region
that lies to the \textit{left} of the boundary will map to the image region that lies to the \textit{left} as
the image point \( P' \) of \( P \) moves \textit{counterclockwise} around the image boundary. Notice how, in
some cases, finite points on one boundary may correspond to points at infinity on the other
boundary.

It may happen that an analytic function \( w = f(z) \) contains branches and so is multivalued.
This occurs, for example, with the \textbf{logarithmic function}, and when this function appears in
the mappings that follow, the principal branch of the function is used and will be denoted by
\textbf{Log}. When displaying the mapping of a function with branches, in order to keep the function
single-valued, it is necessary to cut the \(w\)-plane. In such cases a cut is to be interpreted as a boundary that may not be crossed, as it separates different values of the solution on either side of the cut. A cut is shown in a diagram as a solid line with a dashed line on either side. A cut is considered to have zero thickness. A typical cut from the origin to the point \(w = 1\) on the \(u = \) axis is shown in Figure 30.26, where the mapping of a semi-infinite strip by the function \(f(z) = \coth \left(\frac{z}{2}\right)\) is also shown.

Let a function \(f(z)\) be analytic at a point \(z_0\), where \(f'(z_0) = 0\). Then \(z_0\) is called a critical point of \(f(z)\), and at a critical point the conformal nature of the mapping \(w = f(z)\) fails. An important property of critical points can be expressed as follows. Let \(z_0\) be a critical point, and suppose that for some \(n > 1\) it is true that \(f''(z_0) = f'''(z_0) = \ldots = f^{(n-1)}(z_0) = 0\) but that \(f^{(n)}(z_0) \neq 0\). Then, if \(\alpha\) is the angle between two smooth curves \(\gamma_1\) and \(\gamma_2\) that pass through \(z_0\), the sense of rotation of the angle between their image curves \(\Gamma_1\) and \(\Gamma_2\) in the \(w\)-plane that pass through the image point \(P'\) of \(P\) is preserved, but the angle is magnified by a factor \(n\) to become \(n\alpha\). This can be seen in Figure 30.3, where the function \(f(z) = z^2\) has a critical point at the origin because \(f'(0) = 0\). However, \(f''(0) = 2 \neq 0\), so the right angle in the boundary curve at point \(B\) in the diagram on the left is doubled, so when the boundary is mapped to the \(w\)-plane on the right, it changes the boundary to the straight line \(A'B', B'C'\).

Every analytic function will provide a conformal mapping, but only experimentation will show if a chosen analytic function will map simple regions in the \(z\)-plane with a boundary formed by lines parallel to the \(x\)- and \(y\)-axes onto a usefully shaped region in the \(w\)-plane.

Entries in the following atlas of mappings may be combined to form composite mappings. This approach is usually necessary when a set of simple mappings is used sequentially to arrive at a single mapping with properties that cannot be found directly from the results in the atlas. An example of a composite mapping is shown in Figure 30.30 at the end of the atlas.

The diagrams that follow show how the boundary at the left is mapped to the boundary on the right by the analytic function \(w = f(z)\). However, the diagrams can be used in the reverse sense because the inverse function \(z = f^{-1}(w)\) will map the boundary on the right to the one on the left. Whenever such a reverse mapping is used, care must always be taken if the inverse function contains branches, because when this happens the correct branch must be used.

Figure 30.2. The mapping \(w = z^2\).
Figure 30.3. The mapping $w = z^2$.

Figure 30.4. The mapping $w = 1/z$.

Figure 30.5. The mapping $w = \left(\frac{i-z}{i+z}\right)$. 
30.5 Some Useful Conformal Mappings

Figure 30.6. The mapping $w = z + \frac{1}{z}$.

Figure 30.7. The mapping $w = \frac{a}{2} \left( z + \frac{1}{z} \right)$.

Figure 30.8. The mapping $w = \frac{a}{2} \left( z + \frac{1}{z} \right)$. 
Chapter 30  Conformal Mapping and Boundary Value Problems

Figure 30.9. The mapping \( w = z + \frac{1}{2} \).

Figure 30.10. The mapping \( w = \frac{1 + z}{1 - z} \).

Figure 30.11. The mapping \( w = \left( \frac{z - \delta}{\delta z - 1} \right) \).
30.5 Some Useful Conformal Mappings

**Figure 30.12.** The mapping \( w = f(z) = \frac{z - k}{kz - 1} \).

\[
k = 1 + \alpha\beta + \frac{(\alpha^2 - 1)(\beta^2 - 1)}{\alpha + \beta}
\]

**Figure 30.13.** The mapping \( w = \frac{z - k}{z + k} \).

\[
k = \sqrt[\alpha\beta]{}
\]

**Figure 30.14.** The mapping \( w = \left(\frac{1 + z}{1 - z}\right)^2 \).
Chapter 30 Conformal Mapping and Boundary Value Problems

Figure 30.15. The mapping \( w = \left( \frac{1 + z^a}{1 - z^a} \right)^2 \).

Figure 30.16. The mapping \( w = \exp(\pi z/a) \).

Figure 30.17. The mapping \( w = \exp(\pi z/a) \).
30.5 Some Useful Conformal Mappings

Figure 30.18. The mapping $w = \exp(z)$.

Figure 30.19. The mapping $w = \exp(z)$.

Figure 30.20. The mapping $w = \exp(z)$.
Chapter 30  Conformal Mapping and Boundary Value Problems

Figure 30.21. The mapping \( w = \sin(\pi z/a) \).

Figure 30.22. The mapping \( w = \cos(\pi z/a) \).

Figure 30.23. The mapping \( w = \left( \frac{1 - \cos z}{1 + \cos z} \right) \).

Figure 30.24. The mapping \( w = \cosh(\pi z/a) \).
30.5 Some Useful Conformal Mappings

\[ w = \tanh z \]

Figure 30.25. The mapping \( w = \tanh z \).

\[ w = \coth \frac{1}{2} z \]

Figure 30.26. The mapping \( w = \coth \frac{1}{2} z \).

\[ w = \frac{h}{2} \left( \sqrt{z^2 - 1} + \cosh^{-1} z \right) \]

Figure 30.27. The mapping \( w = \frac{h}{2} \left( \sqrt{z^2 - 1} + \cosh^{-1} z \right) \).
The following is a typical example of a composite mapping. It shows how, by using a sequence of simple mappings, the interior of a displaced semi-infinite wedge with internal angle $\pi/2$, indented at its vertex by an arc of radius $R$, with its vertex at $z = a$, may be mapped onto the upper half of the $w$-plane. The mapping $t_1$ shifts the vertex to the origin, mapping $t_2$ scales the
radius of the indentation to 1, $t_3$ doubles the angle of the wedge, while $t_4$ uses the Joukowski transformation (see mapping 30.8 in the atlas) to map the region in $t_3$ onto the upper half of the $w$-plane. When combined, this sequence of mappings shows that the direct mapping from the $z$-plane to the $w$-plane is given by

$$w = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \left( \frac{z-a}{R} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{R}{z-a} \right)^2 \right].$$

Figure 30.31. The mapping $w = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \left( \frac{z-a}{R} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{R}{z-a} \right)^2 \right]$.
As a result of this mapping, the points $A, B, C, D, E$ in the $z$-plane map to the points $A', B', C', D', E'$ in the $w$-plane.

This mapping shows the solution of the Laplace equation in the interior of the displaced and indented wedge in the $z$-plane, with Dirichlet conditions on its boundary, is equivalent to solving the Laplace equation in the upper half of the $w$-plane plane with the same Dirichlet conditions transferred to the real axis in the $w$-plane. The solution in the $w$-plane can be found immediately from the Poisson integral formula for the plane (see section 25.10.1) and then transformed back to give the solution in the $z$-plane. Because if point $z_1$ in the indented wedge maps to the point $w_1$ in the $w$-plane, the solution of the Laplace equation at point $w_1$ in the half-plane maps to the solution of the Laplace equation at point $z_1$ in the indented wedge. However, if the Dirichlet conditions are piecewise constant, a simpler approach to the solution in the $w$-plane is possible. See, for example, Section 5.2.3 in the book by Jeffrey in the Complex Analysis references.
Short Classified Reference List

**General Tables of Integrals**


**General Reading**


**Special Functions**


**Asymptotics**


**Elliptic Integrals**


**Integral Transforms**


**Orthogonal Functions and Polynomials**


**Series**


**Numerical Tabulations and Approximations**


**Ordinary and Partial Differential Equations**


**Numerical Analysis**


**Complex Analysis**
A
Abel’s test, for convergence, 74, 103
Abel’s theorem, 81
Absolute convergence
infinite products, 77–78
series, 72
Absolute value
complex number, 28
integral quality, 99
Acceleration of convergence, 49–50
Addition, see Sum
Adjoint matrix, 59
Advection equation, 460
Algebraic function
definition, 153
derivatives, 149–150
indefinite integrals, 5–7, 154–174
nonrational, see Nonrational
algebraic functions
rational, see Rational
algebraic functions
Algebraic jump condition, 464
Algebraically homogeneous
differential equation, 376
Alternant, 55
Alternating series, 49, 74
Amplitude, of Jacobian elliptic
function, 247
Analytic functions, 509, 513
Annulus
gometry of, 19
properties of, 19
Annulus, of circle, 18
Antiderivative, 96–97, 426, see also Indefinite integral
Arc
circular, 17–18
length, 106–107
line integral along, 427
Area
under a curve, 105
geometric figures, 12–26
surface, 428
surface of revolution, 107
Argument, of complex
number, 109
Arithmetic–geometric
inequality, 30
Arithmetic–geometric series, 36, 74
Arithmetic series, 36
Associated Legendre functions,
316–317
Associative laws, of vector
operations, 417, 421, 422
Asymptotic expansions
definition, 89–91
error function, 257
Hermite polynomial, 332
normal distribution, 253–254
order notation, 88–89
spherical Bessel functions,
306
Asymptotic representation
Bernoulli numbers, 46–47
Bessel functions, 294, 299
gamma function, 233
n!, 233
Asymptotic series, 93–95
B
Bernoulli distribution, see
Binomial distribution
Bernoulli number
asymptotic relationships for,
45
definitions, 40, 42
list of, 41, 42
occurrence in series, 43–44
relationships with Euler
numbers and
polynomials, 42
series representations for, 43
sums of powers of integers,
36–37
Bernoulli polynomials, 40, 43,
46–47
Bernoulli’s equation, 374–375
Bessel functions, 289–308
asymptotic representations,
294, 299
definite integrals, 303–304
expansion, 292
of fractional order, 292–293
graphs, 295
indefinite integrals, 302–303
integral representations, 302
modified, 294–297
of first and second kind,
296
relationships between,
299–302
series expansions, 290–292,
297–298
spherical, 304–307
zeros, 294
Bessel’s equation
forms of, 289–290, 394–396
partial differential equations,
389
Bessel’s inequality, 93
Bessel’s modified equation,
294–297, 394–396
Beta function, 235
Big O, 88
Binomial coefficients, 32
definition, 31
generation, 31–32
Binomial coefficients (continued)
permutations, 67
relationships between, 34
sums of powers of integers, 36–37
table, 33
Binomial expansion, 32, 75
Binomial distribution
approximations in, 254–255
mean value of, 254
variance of, 254
Binomial series, 10
Binomial theorem, 32–33
Bipolar coordinates, 438–440
Bisection method, for
determining roots, 114–115
Bode’s rule, for numerical
integration, 365
Boundary conditions, 387
Dirichlet conditions, 511
Neumann conditions, 511
Boundary value problems,
511–512
ordinary differential
equations, 377, 410–413
partial differential equations,
381–382, 383
Bounded variation, 90
Burger’s equation, 467
Burger’s shock wave, 468–470
C
Cardano formula, 113
Carleman’s inequality, 31
Cartesian coordinates, 419–482
Cartesian representation, of
complex number, 109
Cauchy condition, for partial
differential equations, 449
Cauchy criterion, for
divergence, 72, 80
Cauchy–Euler equation, 393
Cauchy form, of Taylor series
remainder term, 87
Cauchy integral test, 74
Cauchy n-th root test, 73
Cauchy principal value, 102
Cauchy problem, 449
Cauchy–Riemann equations,
509–510
Cauchy–Schwarz–Buniakowsky
inequality, 29
Cayley–Hamilton theorem, 61
Center of mass (gravity), 107
Centroid, 12–24, 106, 108
Chain rule, 95, 426
Characteristic curve, 459
Characteristic equation, 60, 61
Characteristic form, of partial
differential equation, 459
Characteristic method, for
partial differential
equations, 458–462
Characteristic parameter, 242
Characteristic polynomial, 378,
379, 380, 383
Chebyshev polynomial,
320–324, 501–502
Chebyshev’s inequality, 30
Circle geometry, 17–19
Circle of convergence, 82
Circulant, 66
Circumference, 17
Closed-form summation,
285–288
Closed-type integration
formula, 363–367
Components, of vectors, 416,
419–420
Composite integration formula,
364
Composite mapping, 513, 522
Compressible gas flow, 457
Computational molecule, 506
Conditionally convergent series,
72
Cone geometry, 21–23
Confluent hypergeometric
equation, 403
Conformal mapping, 512–524
Conformal transformations,
510–511
Conservation equation, 457–458
Conservative field, 428
Constant
e, 3
Euler–Mascheroni, 232
Euler’s, 232
gamma, 3
of integration, 97
log e, log 10 e, 3
method of undetermined
coefficients, 390
pi, 3
Constitutive equation, 457
Contact discontinuity, 464
Convergence
acceleration of, 49
Complex Fourier series, 91, 284
Complex numbers
Cartesian representation, 109
conjugate, 28
de Moivre’s theorem, 110
definitions, 109–110
difference, 55, 27–28, 134–135
equality, 27
Euler’s formula, 110
identities, 1, 77
imaginary part, 27
imaginary unit, 27
inequalities, 28, 29
modulus, 28
modulus–argument form, 109
principal value, 110
quotient, 28
real part, 27
roots, 111–112
sums of powers of integers, 36
triangle inequality, 28
Index
of functions, see Roots of functions
improper integrals, 101–103
infinite products, 77–78
Convergence of series
  absolute, 72
  Cauchy criterion for, 72
divergence, 72
Fourier, 89–90, 275–283
infinite products, 77–78
partial sum, 72
power, 82
Taylor, 86–89
  Abel’s test, 74
  alternating series test, 49, 74
  Cauchy integral test, 74
  Cauchy nth root test, 73
  comparison test, 73
  Dirichlet test, 74
  limit comparison test, 73
  Raabe’s test, 73
types of, 72
uniform convergence, 79–81
Convex function, 30–31
Convexity, 31
Convolution theorem, 339
Coordinates
  bipolar, 438–440
  Cartesian, 416, 436
curvilinear, 433–436
  cylindrical, 436–437, 441, 442–443
definitions, 433–435
  elliptic cylinder, 442–443
  oblate spheroidal, 444–445
  orthogonal, 433–445
  parabolic cylinder, 441
  paraboloidal, 442
  polar, 436–437
  prolate spheroidal, 443–444
  rectangular, 436
  spherical, 437–438
  spheroidal, 443–444
toroidal, 440
Cosine
  Fourier series, 277–283
  Fourier transform, 357–362
  Cramer’s rule, 55
  Critical points, 510, 513
  Cross product, 421–422
Cube, 14
Cubic spline interpolation, 500
Curl, 429–430, 435
Curvilinear coordinates, see Coordinates
Cylindrical geometry, 19–21
Cylindrical coordinates, 436–437, 441, 442–443
Cylindrical wave equation, 467
D
D’Alembert’s ratio test, 72
D’Alembert solution, 488
De Moivre’s theorem, 110–111
Definite integral
  applications, 104–108
  Bessel functions, 303–304
  definition, 97
  exponential function, 270–271
  Hermite polynomial, 331–332
  hyperbolic functions, 273
  incomplete gamma function, 236–237
  involving powers of x, 265–267
  Legendre polynomial, 366
  logarithmic function, 273–274
  trigonometric functions, 267–269
  vector functions, 427
Delta amplitude, 247
Delta function, 151, 494
Derivative
  algebraic functions, 149–150
  approximation to, 504
  directional, 431
  error function, 257
  exponential function, 149–150
  Fourier series, 92
  function of a function, 4
  hyperbolic functions, 151
  inverse hyperbolic functions, 152
  inverse trigonometric functions, 150–151
  Jacobian elliptic function, 250
  Laplace transform of, 338
  logarithmic function, 149–150
  matrix, 64–65
  power series, 82
  trigonometric functions, 150
vector functions, 423–424
Determinant
  alternant, 55
  basic properties, 53
  circulant, 56
  cofactors, 51
  Cramer’s rule, 55
  definition, 50–51
  expansion of, 50–51
  Hadamard’s inequality, 54–55
  Hadamard’s theorem, 54
Jacobi’s, 56
Jacobian, 56
Jacobi’s theorem, 53–54
Laplace expansion, 51
minor, 51
Routh–Hurwitz theorem, 57–58
Vandermonde’s, 55
Wronskian, 372–373
Diagonal matrix, 58, 61–62
Diagonally dominant matrix, 55, 60
Diagonals, of geometric figures, 12–15
Difference equations
  z-transform and, 498
  numerical methods for, 499–507
Differential equations
  Bessel’s, see Bessel functions;
  Bessel’s equation
  Chebyshev polynomials, 320–325
  Hermite polynomials, 329
  Laguerre polynomials, 325
  Legendre polynomials, 310, 313, 394
  ordinary, see Ordinary differential equations
  partial, see Partial differential equations
  solution methods, 377–413, 451–472
Differentiation
  chain rule, 95
  elementary functions, 3, 149
  exponential function, 149
  hyperbolic functions, 151
  integral containing a parameter, 4
  inverse hyperbolic functions, 152
Differentiation (continued)
inverse trigonometric functions, 150–151
logarithmic functions, 149
product, 4, 95
quotient, 4, 95
rules of, 4, 95–96
sums of powers of integers, 3
term by term, 81
trigonometric functions, 150

Digamma function, 234
Dini’s condition, for Fourier series, 90
Dirac delta function, 340
Direction cosine, 416
Direction ratio, 416
Directional derivative, 431
Dirichlet condition, 511, 524
Fourier series, 90
Fourier transform, 353
partial differential equations, 449, 460
Dirichlet integral representation, 92
Dirichlet kernel, 92
Dirichlet problem, 450
Dirichlet’s result, 90
Dirichlet’s test, for convergence, 74, 103
Dirichlet’s theorem, 81
Discontinuous functions, and Fourier series, 285–288
Discontinuous solution, to partial differential equation, 462–464
Discriminant, 381
Dispersive effect, 468
Dissipative effect, 468
Distributions, 253–257
Distributive laws, of vector operations, 418, 421, 422
Divergence
infinite products, 77
vectors, 428, 430, 435
Divergence form, of conservation equation, 458
Divergent series, 72, 73, 94
Division algorithm, 114
Dot product, 420
Double arguments, in Jacobian elliptic function, 242
Dummy variable, for integration, 97

E
e, see also Exponential function
constant, 3
definitions, 123
numerical value, 2, 113
series expansion for, 113
series involving, 75
Economization of series, 501–503
Eigenfunction
Bessel’s equations, 394–396
partial differential equations, 447
Eigenvalues, 62
Bessel’s equations, 390–395
definition, 40
diagonal matrix, 66
partial differential equations, 386
Eigenvectors, 60, 62, 66
Elementary function, 241
Elliptic function
definition, 250
Jacobian, 250–251
Elliptic integrals, 241–248
definitions, 231–234
series representation, 243–245
tables of values, 243–244, 246
types, 241, 265
Elliptic partial differential equations, 447
Entropy conditions, 464
Error function, 253–257
derivatives, 249
integral, 201–207
relationship with normal probability distribution, 253
table of values, 255
Euler integral, 231
Euler–Mascheroni constant, 232
Euler–Maclaurin summation formula, 48
Euler numbers
definitions, 40–42
list of, 41
relationships with Bernoulli numbers, 42
series representation, 43
Euler polynomial, 46–47
Euler’s constant, 232
Euler’s formula, 110
Euler’s method, for differential equations, 404
Even function
definition, 124
trigonometric, 125
Exact differential equation, 325
Exponential Fourier series, 279
Exponential Fourier transform, 333
Exponential function derivatives, 149
Euler’s formula, 110
inequalities involving, 147
ingtegrals, 4, 7, 8, 168–171
definite, 265
limiting values, 147
series representation, 123
Exponential integral, integrands involving, 176, 274

F
Factorial, asymptotic approximations to, 223, see also Gamma function
False position method, for determining roots, 115
Faltung theorem, 339, 355
Finite difference methods, 505–507
Finite sum, 32–39
First fundamental theorem of calculus, 97
Fourier-Bessel expansions, 307–308
Fourier-Chebyshev expansion, 321
Fourier convolution, 354–355
Fourier convolution theorem, inverse, 355
Fourier cosine transform, 357–358
Fourier-Hermite expansion, 330
Fourier-Laguerre expansion, 326
Fourier-Legendre expansion, 310
Fourier series, 89–90
Bessel’s inequality, 93
bounded variation, 90
coefficients, 67, 275–278
complex form, 91
convergence, 72–73
definitions, 89–93
differentiation, 64, 93, 95
Dini’s condition, 90
Dirichlet condition, 90
Dirichlet expression for \(n\)’th partial sum, 92
Dirichlet kernel, 92
discontinuous functions, 285–288
discontinuous functions, examples, 260–268
forms of, 275–294
half-range forms, 82–83
integration, 96
Parseval identity, 93
Parseval relations, 275–284
periodic extension, 285
Riemann–Lebesgue lemma, 91
total variation, 90
Fourier sine transform, 358
Fourier transform, 353–362
basic properties, 354, 358
convolution operation, 339
inversion integral, 354
sine and cosine transforms, 358
transform pairs, 353, 355
tables, 356–357, 359–362
Fractional order, of Bessel functions, 292–293, 298–299
Fresnel integral, 261–264
Frobenius method, for differential equations, 398–402
Frustum, 22
Function
algebraic functions, 153
beta, 235
complementary error, 257
error, 257
even, 124
exponential function, 123, 147, 149
gamma, 231, 232, 233
hyperbolic, 109
inverse hyperbolic, 9, 12, 141, 142
inverse trigonometric, 8, 11, 139
logarithmic, 104, 121, 147
odd, 114, 124
periodic, 124
psi (digamma), 234
rational, 103
transcendental, 153
trigonometric, 109
Functional series, 79–81
Abel’s theorem, 81
definitions, 73–74
Dirichlet’s theorem, 81
region of convergence, 79, 81, 82
termwise differentiation, 74
termwise integration, 74
uniform convergence, 79
Weierstrass \(M\) test, 80
Fundamental interval, for Fourier series, 265
Fundamental theorems of calculus, 97
Generating functions, for orthogonal polynomials, 325, 435
Geometric figures, reference data, 30
Geometric series, 36, 74
Geometry, applications of definite integrals, 96, 99
Gerschgorin circle theorem, 67
Gradient, vector operation, 435
Green’s first theorem, 430
Green’s theorem, 430
Green’s theorem in the plane, 430

G
Gamma function
asymptotic representation, 233, 294
definition, 221
definition, 221
graph, 235
identities, 77
incomplete, see Incomplete gamma function
properties, 232–233
series, 77
special numerical values, 223
table of values, 243–244
Gauss divergence theorem, 429, 452
Gauss mean value theorem for harmonic functions
in plane, 473
in space, 474
Gaussian probability density function, 253–254
Gaussian quadrature, 366–367
General solution, of differential equations, 340, 371
Generalized Laguerre polynomials, 327–329
Generalized Laguerre polynomials, 327–329
Generalized L’Hôpital’s rule, 96
Generalized Parseval identity, 93
Hadamard’s inequality, 54
Hadamard’s theorem, 54
Half angles
hyperbolic identities, 132–137
trigonometric identities, 124–132
Half arguments, in Jacobian elliptic functions, 248
Half-range Fourier series, 89–93
Harmonic conjugates, 510
Harmonic function, 471, 510
Heat equation, 436
Heaviside step function, 338, 494
Hermite polynomial, 329–332
asymptotic expansion, 332
definite integrals, 331–332
powers of \(x\), 331
series expansion of, 331
Hermitian matrix, 60
Hermitian transpose, 59
Hessian determinant, 57
Helmholtz equation, 304, 436–438, 440–444
Holder’s inequality, 28–29
Homogeneous boundary conditions, 387
Homogeneous equation differential, 376, 377
Homogeneous equation
(continued)
differential linear, 327–332
partial differential, 447
Hyperbolic equation solutions, 451, 462
Hyperbolic functions
basic relationships, 125–127
definite integrals, 265
definitions, 132
derivatives, 151–152
graphs, 133
half-argument form, 137
identities, 2, 111, 112, 132, 134, 137
inequalities, 147
integrals, 9, 93, 179, 181
inverse, see Inverse
hyperbolic functions
multiple argument form, 135–136
powers, 136
series, 12, 145
sum and difference, 134
Hyperbolic partial differential equation, 448
Hyperbolic problem, 451–453
Hypergeometric equation, 403–404

Identity matrix, 58
Identity matrix, 58
Ill-posed partial differential equation, 449
Imaginary part, of complex number, 27
Imaginary unit, 27
Improper integral
convergence, 101–103
definitions, 101–102
divergence, 101–102
evaluation, 101–102
first kind, 101
second kind, 101
Incomplete elliptic integral, 242
Incomplete gamma function
definite integrals, 236–237
functional relations, 236
series representations, 236
Indefinite integral, see also Antiderivative
algebraic functions, 5–7, 153–174
Bessel functions, 302–303
definition, 97, 426
exponential function, 175–179
hyperbolic functions, 189–199
inverse hyperbolic functions,
201–205
inverse trigonometric functions, 225–229
logarithmic function, 181–187
nonrational function, 166–174
rational functions, 154–166
simplification by substitution, 207–209
trigonometric functions,
177–179, 207–209
Indicial equation, 399
Induction
mathematical, 38
Inequalities
absolute value integrals, 99
arithmetic-geometric, 30
Bessel’s, 93
Carleman’s, 31
Cauchy–Schwarz–Buniakowsky inequality, 29
Chebyshev, 30
comparision of integrals, 99
exponential function, 147
Hadamard’s, 54
Holder, 30
hyperbolic, 148
Jensen, 31
logarithmic, 147
Minkowski, 29–30
real and complex, 28–32
trigonometric, 148
Infinite products
absolute convergence, 78
convergence, 77
divergence, 77
examples, 78–79
Vieta’s formula, 79
Wallis’s formula, 79
Infinite series, 74–77
Inhomogeneous differential equation ordinary, 382–389
Initial conditions, 377
Initial point, of vector, 416
Inner product, 420–421
Integral
definite, see Definite integral
eLLiptic, see Elliptic integral
of error function, 258–259
of Fourier series, 92
Fresnel, 261–262
improper, see Improper integral
indefinite, see Indefinite integral
inequalities, 99
inversion, 338, 354, 358
of Jacobian elliptic functions, 250, 251
line, 427–428
mean value theorem for integrals, 99
n’th repeated, 258–259
particular, see Particular integral
standard, 4–10
surface, 428
volume, 431
Integral form
conservation equation, 458
Taylor series, 86
Integral method, for differential equations, 400
Integrating factor, 373
Integration
by parts, 97, 97–99
Cauchy principal value, 102
contiguous intervals, 97
correction of improper type, 102–103
definitions, 97
differentiation with respect to a parameter, 99
of discontinuous functions, 85
dummy variable, 97
first fundamental theorem, 97
limits, 97
of matrices, 65
numerical, 363–369
of power series, 82
rational functions, 103–104
reduction formulas, 99
Romberg, 367–369
rules of, 95
second fundamental form, 97
substitutions, 98
trigonometric, 207–209
term by term, 81
of vector functions, 426–431
zero length interval, 98
Integration formulas, open and closed, 363–369
Interpolation methods, 499–500
Lagrange, 500
linear, 499
spline, 500–501
Inverse Fourier convolution theorem, 355
Inverse hyperbolic functions
definitions, 3, 139, 153
derivatives, 152
domains of definition, 139
graphs, 141
identities, 139, 142–143
integrals, 9–10, 201–205
principal values, 139
relationships between, 143
series, 10–12, 146
Inverse Jacobian elliptic function, 247
Jacobian elliptic function, 247
Jacobi polynomials, 332–334
asymptotic formula for, 335
graphs of, 335
Jacobi’s theorem, 53–54
Jensen inequality, 31–32
Joukowski transformation, 523
Jacobian determinant, 56, 433–434
Jacobian elliptic function, 247
K
KdV equation, see Korteweg-de Vries equation
KdVB equation, see Korteweg-de Vries-Burger’s equation
Korteweg-de Vries equation, 467–468
Korteweg-de Vries-Burger’s equation, 469
Kronecker delta, 52
Kronecker delta, 52
Lagrange form, of Taylor series
remainder term, 87
Lagrange’s identity, 29
Laguerre polynomials, 325–328
associated, see Generalized
Laguerre polynomials
integrals involving, 327
Lagrange trigonometric identities, 130
Laplace convolution, 339
Laplace convolution theorem, inverse, 339
Laplace expansion, 51
Laplace transform
basic properties, 338
convolution operation, 339
definition, 337
delta function, 340
for solving initial value problems, 340–341
initial value theorem, 339
inverse, 66
inversion integral, 338
of Heaviside step function, 338
pairs, 337, 340–352
pairs, table, 340–352
z-transform and, 497
Laplace’s equation, 448, 510, 512
Laplacian partial differential equations, 383–384
vectors, 429, 435
Leading diagonal, 58
Legendre functions, 313–314
associated, 316–317
Legendre normal form, of elliptic integrals, 241–242
Legendre polynomials, 313, 456
definite integrals involving, 315
Legendre’s equation, 394
Leibnitz’s formula, 96
Length of arc by integration, 106
L’Hôpital’s rule, 96
Limit comparison test, 73
Limiting values
exponential function, 147
Fresnel integrals, 262
logarithmic function, 147
trigonometric functions, 148
Line integral, 427–428
Linear constant coefficient
partial differential equation, 377
Linear dependence, 371–373
Linear inhomogeneous equation, 385
Linear interpolation, 499
Linear second-order partial
partial differential equation, 448
Linear superposition property, 448
Logarithm to base e, 122
Logarithmic function
base of, 3
basic results, 121–122
definitions, 123
derivatives, 3, 149–151
identities, 132
inequalities involving, 147
integrals, 4, 8, 181–187
definite, 256
limiting values, 147
series, 12, 76, 137
Lower limit, for definite
integral, 97
Lower triangular matrix, 59

M
Maclaurin series
Bernoulli numbers, 40
definition, 86
Mass of lamina, 108
Mathematical induction, 38–40
Matrix, 58–67
adjoint, 59
Cayley–Hamilton theory, 61
characteristic equation, 60, 61
definitions, 58–61
derivatives, 64–65
diagonal dominance, 55, 60
diagonalization of, 62
differentiation and
integration, 64–65
eigenvalue, 60
eigenvector, 60
equality, 60
equivalent, 59
exponential, 65
Hermitian, 54
Hermitian transpose, 59
idempotent, 60
identity, 58
inverse, 59
irreducible, 59
leading diagonal, 58
lower-triangular form, 59
multiplication, 57–58
nilpotent, 60
nonnegative definite, 60
nonsingular, 55, 59
normal, 60
null, 58
orthogonal, 61
positive definite, 60
product, 58–60
quadratic forms, 62–63
reducible, 59
scalar multiplication, 57
singular, 59
skew-symmetric, 59
square, 58
subtraction, 95
sums of powers of integers,
36
symmetric, 59
transpose, 59
Hermitian, 59
unitary, 60
Matrix exponential, 65
computation of, 66
Maximum/minimum principle
for Laplace equation, 473
Maxwell’s equations, 456–457
Mean
of binomial distribution,
254
of normal distribution, 253
of Poisson distribution, 255
Mean-value theorem
for derivatives, 96
for integrals, 99
Midpoint rule, for numerical
integration, 364
Minkowski’s inequality, 29–30
Minor, of determinant element,
51–53
Mixed type, partial differential
equation, 450
Modified Bessel functions,
294–299
Modified Bessel’s equation,
294–296
Modified Euler’s method, for
differential equations,
404–405
Modular angle, 242
Modulus
complex number, 28, 109
elliptic integral, 241
Modulus-argument
representation, 109–110
Moment of inertia, 107
Multinomial coefficient, 68
Multiple angles/arguments
hyperbolic identities, 135–136
trigonometric identities, 124
Multiplicative inverse, of
matrix, 59
Multiplicity, 113, 378

N
Naperian logarithm, 122
Natural logarithm, 122
Negative, of vector, 417
Nested multiplication, in
polynomials, 119
Neumann condition, 511
for partial differential
equations, 449, 450
Neumann function, 290
Neumann problem, 450
Newton’s algorithm, 118
Newton-Cotes formulas,
365–366
Newton-Raphson method, for
determining roots, 117–120
Newton’s method, for
determining roots, 117–120
Nilpotent matrix, 60
Noncommutativity, of vector
product, 421–422
Nonhomogeneous differential
equation, see
Inhomogeneous differential
equation
Nonnegative definite matrix,
60
Nonrational algebraic functions,
integrals, 166–174
Nonsingular matrix, 55, 59
Nontrivial solution, 452
Norm, of orthogonal
polynomials, 309
Normal probability distribution,
240
definition, 253
relationship with error
function, 253
Normalized polynomial, 309
n’th repeated integral, 258–259
n’th roots of unity, 111
Null matrix, 58
Null vector, 415
Numerical approximation,
499–507
Index

Numerical integration
  (quadrature)
  composite mid-point rule, 364
  composite Simpson’s rule, 364
  composite trapezoidal rule, 364
  definition, 463
  Gaussian, 366–367
  Newton–Cotes, 365–366
  open and closed formulas, 363–364
  Romberg, 367–369
Numerical methods
  approximation in, 499–507
  for differential equations, 404–413
Numerical solution of differential equations
  Euler’s method, 404
  modified Euler’s method, 404–405
  Runge–Kutta–Fehlberg method, 407–410
  Runge–Kutta method, 406, 407
  two-point boundary value problem, 410–413

O
  Oblate spheroidal coordinates, 444–445
  Oblique prism, 17
  Odd function
    definition, 124–125
    Jacobian elliptic, 247
    trigonometric, 125
  Open-type integration formula, 364–367
Order
  of determinant, 50
  of differential equations, 447
Order notation, 77
Ordinary differential equations
  approximations in, 465–467
  Bernoulli’s equation, 374–375
  Bessel’s equation, 394–396
  Cauchy–Euler type, 393
  characteristic polynomial, 378
  complementary function, 377
  definitions, 371
  exact, 375
  general solution, 376–377
  homogeneous, 376–382
  hypergeometric, 403–404
  inhomogeneous, 377, 381–382
  initial value problem, 377
  integral method, 400
  Legendre type, 394
  linear, 376–392
    first order, 373–374
    linear dependence and independence, 371
    linear homogeneous constant coefficient, 377–381
    second-order, 381–382
  linear inhomogeneous
    constant coefficient, 382
    second-order, 389–390
  particular integrals, 377, 383, 390–392
  separation of variables, 373
  singular point, 397
  solution methods, 377–413
  Frobenius, 397–402
  Laplace transform, 380
  numerical, 404–413
  variation of parameters, 383
  two-point boundary value problem, 377
Oriented surface, 430
Orthogonal coordinates, 433–445
Orthogonal matrix, 59
Orthogonal polynomials
  Chebyshev, 320–325
  definitions, 309–310
  Hermite, 329–332
  Jacobi, 332–335
  Laguerre, 325–329
  Legendre, 310–320
  orthonormal, 309
  Rodrigues’ formula, 310, 320, 325, 329
  weight functions, 309
Orthogonal trajectories,
  510–511
Orthogonality relations, 310, 317, 320–321, 325, 328–329, 333

P
  Padé approximation, 503–505
  Pappus’s theorem, 26, 107
  Parabolic cylindrical coordinates, 441
  Parabolic equation solutions, 482–487
  Parabolic partial differential equation, 448
  Paraboloidal coordinates, 442
  Parallelepiped, 14
  Parallelogram geometry, 13
  Parameter of elliptic integral, 242
  Parseval formula, 495
  Parseval relations, 275, 354, 359
  Parseval’s identity, 93
  Partial differential equations
    approximations in, 505–507
    boundary value problem, 447
    Burger’s equation, 467, 470
    Cauchy problem, 449
    characteristic curves, 459
    characteristics, 458–462
    classification, 447–450
    conservation law, 457–458
    definitions, 446–450
    Dirichlet condition, 357, 449
    eigenfunctions, 452
    eigenvalues, 395
    elliptic type, 448
    hyperbolic type, 448
    ill-posed problem, 449
    initial boundary value problem, 448
    initial value problem, 448
    KdV equation, 467–470
    KdVB equation, 467–470
    Laplacian, 449
    linear inhomogeneous, 448
    Neumann condition, 449–450
    parabolic type, 448
    physical applications, 390–392, 396–402
    Poisson’s equation, 449
    Rubin condition, 449, 450
    separation constant, 452
    separation of variables, 451–453
    shock solutions, 462–464
    similarity solution, 465–467
    soliton solution, 469
    solution methods, 385–402
Partial differential equations  
(continued)  
systems, 456, 458  
Tricomi’s equation, 450  
well-posed problem, 450  
Partial fractions, 69–70  
Partial sums, 72  
Fourier series, 92  
Particular integral, and  
ordinary differential  
equations  
definition, 377, 382–383  
undetermined coefficients  
method, 390–392  
Particular solution, of ordinary  
differential equation, 371  
Pascal’s triangle, 33–34  
Path, line integral along,  
427–428  
Periodic extension, of Fourier  
series, 285  
Periodic function, 124, 127  
Permutations, 67  
Physical applications  
center of mass, 107  
compressible gas flow, 457  
conservation equation,  
457–458  
heat equation, 465–467  
Maxwell’s equations, 456–457  
moments of inertia, 108  
radius of gyration, 108  
Sylvester’s law of inertia, 63  
waves, 460, 462–464, 467–470  
Pi  
constant, 3  
series, 75  
Pi function, 231–232  
Plane polar coordinates, 437  
Poisson distribution, mean and  
variance of, 255  
Poisson equation, 449–450  
Poisson integral formula  
for disk, 470  
for half-plane, 470  
Polar coordinates, plane, 437  
Polynomial  
Bernoulli’s, 46–47  
characteristic, 378  
Chebyshev, 320–325, 501–503  
definition, 113–114  
Euler, 47–48  
evaluation, 119  
Hermite, 329–332  
interpolation, 499–501  
Laguerre, 325–329  
Legendre, 310–320  
orthogonal, see Orthogonal  
polynomials  
roots, 111, 113–120  
Position vector, 424, 434  
Positive definite matrix, 60  
Positive definite quadratic form,  
63  
Positive semidefinite quadratic  
form, 63  
Power  
hyperbolic functions, 137  
integrals, 36–37, 44–45  
of series, 83–84  
trigonometric functions,  
124–132  
Power series, 82–86  
Cauchy–Hadamard formula,  
82  
circle of convergence, 82  
definitions, 82–86  
derivative, 83  
error function, 257–259  
integral, 82–83  
normal distribution, 253  
product, 85  
quotient, 83–84  
radius of convergence, 82  
remainder terms, 86  
reversion, 86  
standard, 4  
Power series method, for  
differential equations,  
396–397  
Powers of  
x  
Hermite polynomial, 331  
inegrands involving, 7,  
265–267  
Principle value, of complex  
argument, 110  
Prism geometry, 17  
Probability density function,  
253–254  
Products  
differentiation, 4, 95  
infinite, see Infinite product  
matrix, 60–62  
of power series, 85  
types, in vector analysis,  
358–361  
Prolate spheroidal coordinates,  
443–444  
Properly posed partial for a  
differential equation, 449  
Psi (digamma) function, 234  
Pure initial value problem, 449  
Purely imaginary number, 28  
Purely real number, 27  
Pyramid geometry, 15  
Q  
Quadratic equation, 112  
Quadratic forms  
basic theorems, 63–64  
inner product, 62  
positive definite, 63  
positive semi-definite, 63  
signature, 63  
Quadratic formula, for  
determining roots, 112  
Quadratic function, 112  
Quadrature formula, 363  
Quasilinear partial differential  
equation, 448  
Quotient  
differentiation, 4, 95  
of power series, 83–84  
of trigonometric functions,  
131  
R  
R–K–F method, see  
Runge–Kutta–Fehlberg  
method  
Raabe’s test, for convergence,  
73  
Radius of convergence, 82  
Radius of gyration, 108  
Raising to a power, 84  
Rankine–Hugoniot jump  
condition, 464  
Rate of change theorem, 431  
Rational algebraic functions  
definitions, 63, 154  
integrals, 154–166  
integration rules, 103–104  
Rayleigh formulas, 306  
Real numbers, inequalities, 28  
Real part, of complex number,  
28–32
Index

Rectangular Cartesian coordinates, 416, 436
Rectangular parallelepiped geometry, 14
Rectangular wedge geometry, 16
Reducible matrix, 59
Reduction formula, 99
Reflection formula, for gamma function, 232
Region of convergence, 79
Regula falsi method, for determining roots, 115
Regular point, of differential equation, 398
Remainder in numerical integration, 363
in Taylor series, 86
Reverse mapping, 513
Reversion, of power series, 86
Reynolds number, 465
Rhombus geometry, 13
Riemann function, 471
Riemann integral formula, 472
Riemann–Lebesgue lemma, 91
Right-handed coordinates, 416
Robin conditions, for partial differential equations, 449, 450
Robin problem, 450
Rodrigues’ formulas, 310, 320, 325, 328–329
Romberg integration, 367–369
Romberg method, 368–369
Roots of complex numbers, 111–112
Roots of functions, 113–120
bisection method, 114
false position method, 115–116
multiplicity, 113, 378
Newton’s method, 117–120
secant method, 116–117
Roots of unity, 111
Rouche form, of Taylor series remainder term, 87
Routh–Hurwitz conditions, for determinants, 58
Routh–Hurwitz theorem, 57–58
Runge–Kutta methods, for differential equations, 407–410
Runge–Kutta–Fehlberg method, for differential equations, 407–410
Runge–Kutta methods, for differential equations, 405–410
S
Saltus, 90, 98
Scalar, 415
Scalar potential, 428
Scalar product, 60, 420–421
Scalar triple product, 422
Scale factor, for orthogonal coordinates, 434
Scale-similar partial differential equation, 465
Scaling, of vector, 418
Schlömilch form, of Taylor series remainder term, 87
Secant method of determining roots, 116
of interpolation, 412
Second fundamental theorem of calculus, 97
Second order determinant, 50–51
Sector circular, 18
spherical, 24
Sectoral harmonics, 319
Segment circular, 18
spherical, 24
Self-similar partial differential equation, 465
Self-similar solution, to partial differential equations, 465–467
Sense of vector, 415
Separable variables, 373
Separation of variables method ordinary differential equation, 373
partial differential equation, 451–453
Series alternating, 74
arithmetic, 36
arithmetic–geometric, 36, 74
asymptotic, 93–95
Bernoulli numbers, 41–45
binomial, 10, 75
convergent, see Convergence of series
differentiation of, 81
divergent, 72–73, 93
e, 76
elliptic integrals, 244–245
error function, 257–259
Euler numbers, 40
exponential, 11, 123
Fourier, see Fourier series
Fresnel integrals, 261–262
functional, 79–81
gamma function, 77
geometric, 36, 74–75
hyperbolic, 12, 145
infinite, 74–77
integration of, 81
inverse hyperbolic, 12, 146–147
inverse trigonometric, 11, 146
logarithmic, 11, 76–77, 137–139
Maclaurin, see Maclaurin series
normal distribution, 253
pi, 75–76
power, see Power series
sums with integer coefficients, 36–38, 44–45
Taylor, 86–89
telescoping, 286
trigonometric, 11, 144–145, 245–247
Series expansion Bessel functions, 289–292, 298–299
of Hermite polynomials, 331
Jacobian elliptic functions, 247–249
Shock wave, 462–464, 467–470
Shooting method, for differential equations, 410–411
Signature, of quadratic form, 63
Signed complementary minor, 54
Simpson’s rules, for numerical integration, 364, 365
Sine Fourier series, 278, 283
Sine Fourier transform, 355, 357–358
Sine integrals, 261–264
Singular point, of differential equation, 398
Skew-symmetric matrix, 59
of normal distribution, 253
of Poisson distribution, 255
Variation of parameters
  (constants), 390
Vector
  algebra, 417–419
  components, 419–420
  definitions, 415–416
  derivatives, 423–426
direction cosines, 416–417
divergence theorem, 429
Green’s theorem, 430
identities, 431
integral theorems, 428–430
line integral, 427–428
null, 415
position, 424, 434
rate of change theorem, 431
scalar product, 420–421
Stoke’s theorem, 429
subtraction, 417–418
sum, 417–418
triple product, 422–423
unit, 415
  vector product, 421–423
Vector field, 428
Vector function
  derivatives, 423–426
  integrals, 426–431
  rate of change theorem, 431
Vector operator, in orthogonal coordinates, 435–436
Vector product, 421–423
Vector scaling, 418
Vieta’s formula, 79
Volume
  geometric figures, 12–26
  of revolution, 105–107
Volume by integration, 105
W
  Wallis’s formula, 79
  Waves, 460, 462–464, 467–470
Weak maximum/minimum
  principle for heat equation, 473
Wedge, 16, 21
Weierstrass’s $M$ test, for
  convergence, 80
Weight function
  orthogonal polynomials, 309, 320–321, 325–329
Well-posed partial differential equation, 447
Wronskian
  determinant, 57, 371–372
test, 371–373
Z
  $z$-transform, 493–498
    bilateral, 493, 495–496
    unilateral, 493, 497–498
Zero
  of Bessel functions, 294
  of function, 113
Zero complex number, 28
Zonal surface harmonics, 319